
STUDY MATERIAL

EXECUTIVE PROGRAMME

**SECURITIES LAWS
AND CAPITAL MARKETS**

MODULE 2

PAPER 6



**THE INSTITUTE OF
Company Secretaries of India**

भारतीय कम्पनी सचिव संस्थान

IN PURSUIT OF PROFESSIONAL EXCELLENCE

Statutory body under an Act of Parliament

(Under the jurisdiction of Ministry of Corporate Affairs)

TIMING OF HEADQUARTERS

Monday to Friday
Office Timings – 9.00 A.M. to 5.30 P.M.

Public Dealing Timings
Without financial transactions – 9.30 A.M. to 5.00 P.M.
With financial transactions – 9.30 A.M. to 4.00 P.M.

Phones
011-41504444, 45341000

Fax
011-24626727

Website
www.icsi.edu

E-mail
info@icsi.edu

EXECUTIVE PROGRAMME

SECURITIES LAWS AND CAPITAL MARKETS

The securities markets are vital to the growth, development and strength of market economies and the maturity of an economy are decided based on the robustness of securities market of an economy. Considering that the Securities market is the core area of practice for the Company Secretaries, it becomes very important for the professionals to be fully aware of various laws and regulations, both for practice and guiding the Board of Directors on securities laws related matters. The securities market is governed by various regulations enacted in the course of time by the competent legislative body and regulating bodies. This study is divided into two Parts, Part I deals with Securities Laws and Part II deals with Capital Market & Intermediaries.

Part I of the Study provides an in depth analysis of the legal principles applicable to listed companies in addition to the Companies Act, 2013. The Regulatory Body Securities Exchange Board of India (SEBI) having extended SEBI's jurisdiction over corporates in the issuance of capital and transfer of securities, during the course of time has come out with several regulations for smooth functioning of the market, thereby also giving paramount importance to the stakeholders. Therefore, this study discusses various legislative and regulatory guidance such as Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, 1956, Depositories Act, 1996, SEBI (Issue of Capital and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2018, SEBI (Listing Obligations and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2015, SEBI (Prohibition of Insider Trading) Regulations, 2015, etc.

Part II of the study deals with analyses of the secondary market or the capital market, which is the bridge between the investors and the corporates. There are several intermediaries and institutions involved in dealing with the capital market. SEBI has also jurisdiction over all such intermediaries and persons associated with the securities market. In connection with the same, SEBI has regulated their functioning through various regulations, which have been discussed in this part.

In the era of plethora of legislations, rules, and regulations, a Company Secretary professional is expected to be well aware of these rules and principles, as these compliances make the functioning of the markets smooth while violations leads to severe penalties.

This study material is published to aid the students in preparing the paper on Securities Laws and Capital Markets for Executive Programme. It is part of the educational kit and takes the students step by step through each phase of preparation emphasizing key concepts, principles, legal fundamentals and procedures. Company Secretaryship being a professional course, the examination standards are set very high, with focus on knowledge of concepts, their application, procedures and case laws, for which sole reliance on the contents of this study material may not be enough. This study material may, therefore, be regarded as the basic material and must be read alongwith the Bare Acts, Rules, Regulations, Case Law.

The legislative changes made upto July, 2021 have been incorporated in the study material. The students to be conversant with the amendments to the laws made upto six months preceding the date of examination. It may happen that some developments might have taken place during the printing of the study material and its supply to the students. The students are therefore advised to refer to the updations at the Regulator's website, Supplement relevant for the subject issued by ICSI and ICSI Journal Chartered Secretary and other publications for updation of study material.

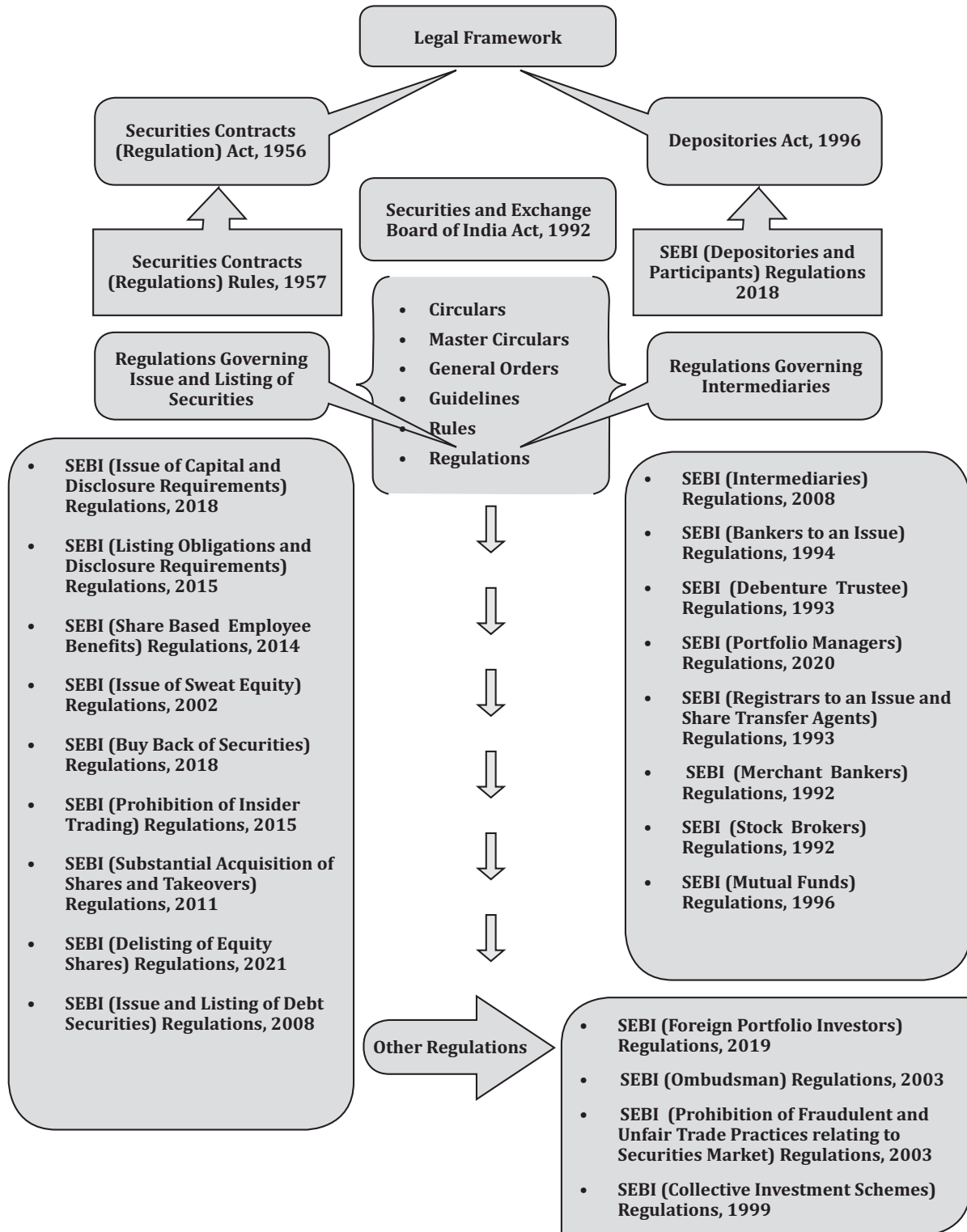
In the event of any doubt, students may write to the Directorate of Academics of the Institute for clarification at academics@icsi.edu.

Although due care has been taken in publishing this study material, the possibility of errors, omissions and/or discrepancies cannot be ruled out. This publication is released with an understanding that the Institute shall not be responsible for any errors, omissions and/or discrepancies or any action taken in that behalf.

Should there be any discrepancy, error or omission noted in the study material, the Institute shall be obliged if the same is brought to its notice for issue of corrigendum in the e-bulletin 'Student Company Secretary'.

LEGAL AND REGULATORY FRAMEWORK

The Legal and Regulatory Framework of Securities Laws and Capital Markets in India is given below :



EXECUTIVE PROGRAMME

Module 2

Paper 6

SECURITIES LAWS AND CAPITAL MARKETS (Max Marks 100)

Syllabus

Objective:

Part I: To provide expert knowledge in the legislations, rules and regulations governing the entities listed on the stock exchanges.

Part II: To provide the basic understanding of the working of capital markets in India.

PART I : SECURITIES LAWS (70 MARKS)

Detailed Contents

- 1. Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, 1956 :** Objectives of the SCR Act, Rules and Regulations made there under; Important Definitions; Recognized Stock Exchange, Clearing Corporation; Public issue and listing of securities; Rules relating to Public Issue and Listing of Securities under Securities Contracts (Regulation) Rules, 1957.
- 2. Securities and Exchange Board of India Act, 1992:** Objective; Powers and functions of SEBI; Securities Appellate Tribunal; Penalties and appeals.
- 3. Depositories Act, 1996 :** Depository System in India; Role & Functions of Depositories; Depository Participants; Admission of Securities; Dematerialization & Re-materialisation; Depository Process; Inspection and Penalties; Internal Audit and Concurrent Audit of Depository Participants.
- 4. An Overview of SEBI (Issue of Capital and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2009.**
SEBI (Issue of Capital and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2009 rechristened as SEBI (Issue of Capital and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2018.
- 5. An Overview of SEBI (Listing Obligations and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2015.**
- 6. An Overview of SEBI (Substantial Acquisition of Shares and Takeovers) Regulations, 2011.**
- 7. SEBI (Buyback of Securities) Regulations, 1998 :** Conditions of buy-back; Buy back Methods: Tender Offer, Open Market (Book building and Stock Exchange); General obligations; Penalties.
SEBI (Buyback of Securities) Regulations, 1998 rechristened as SEBI (Buyback of Securities) Regulations, 2018.
- 8. SEBI (Delisting of Equity Shares) Regulations, 2009 :** Delisting of Equity Shares; Voluntary Delisting; Exit Opportunity; Compulsory Delisting.
SEBI (Delisting of Equity Shares) Regulations, 2009 rechristened as SEBI (Delisting of Equity Shares) Regulations, 2021.
- 9. An Overview of SEBI (Share Based Employee Benefits) Regulations, 2014.**
- 10. An Overview of SEBI (Issue of Sweat Equity) Regulations, 2002.**
- 11. SEBI (Prohibition of Insider Trading) Regulations, 2015 :** Unpublished price sensitive information (UPSI); Disclosures; Codes of fair disclosure and conduct; Penalties and Appeals.

- 12. Mutual Funds :** Types of Mutual Funds and Schemes; Key players in Mutual Funds: Sponsor, Asset Management Company, Trustee, Unit holder, Evaluating performance of Mutual funds- Net Asset Value, Expense Ratio, Holding Period Return.
- 13. Collective Investment Schemes :** Regulatory Framework; Restrictions on Business Activities; Submission of Information and Documents; Trustees and their Obligations.
- 14. SEBI (Ombudsman) Regulations, 2003 :** Procedure for Redressal of Grievances; Implementation of the Award; Display of the particulars of the Ombudsman, SCORES, SEBI (Informal Guidance) Scheme, 2003.

This Lesson has renamed as "Resolution of Complaints and Guidance".

Case Laws, Case Studies & Practical Aspects

PART II: CAPITAL MARKET & INTERMEDIARIES (30 MARKS)

15. STRUCTURE OF CAPITAL MARKET

i. Primary Market

- (a) Capital Market Investment Institutions-Domestic Financial Institutions (DFI), Qualified Institutional Buyers (QIB), Foreign Portfolio Investors (FPI), Private Equity, Angel Funds, HNIs, Venture Capital, Pension Funds, Alternative Investment Funds.
- (b) Capital Market Instruments-Equities, Preference Shares, Shares with Differential Voting Rights, Corporate Debt, Non-Convertible Debentures (NCD), Partly, Fully and Optionally Convertible Debentures, Bonds, Foreign Currency Convertible Bonds (FCCB), Foreign Currency Exchangeable Bonds (FCEB) Indian Depository Receipts (IDR), Derivatives, Warrants;
- (c) Aspects of Primary Market- Book Building, ASBA, Green Shoe Option.

ii. Secondary Market

Development of Stock market in India; Stock market & its operations, Trading Mechanism, Block and Bulk deals, Grouping, Basis of Sensex, Nifty; Suspension and Penalties; Surveillance Mechanism; Risk management in Secondary market, Impact of various Policies on Stock Markets such as Credit Policy of RBI, Fed Policy, Inflation index, CPI, WPI, etc.

- 16. Securities Market intermediaries :** Primary Market and Secondary Market Intermediaries: Role and Functions, Merchant Bankers, Stock Brokers, Syndicate Members, Registrars and Transfer Agents, Underwriters, Bankers to an Issue, Portfolio Managers, Debenture Trustees, Investment Advisers, Research Analysts, Market Makers, Credit Rating Agencies; Internal Audit of Intermediaries by Company Secretary in Practice.

Case Laws, Case Studies & Practical Aspects.

LESSON WISE SUMMARY

SECURITIES LAWS AND CAPITAL MARKETS

PART I – SECURITIES LAWS

Lesson 1 – Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, 1956

Stock Market plays a significant role in the development of Economy. Stock Market facilitates mobilization of funds from small investors and channelizes these resources into various development needs of various sectors of the economy. The Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, 1956 (“SCRA”) is an important piece of legislation which regulates the stock exchanges and contracts in securities.

The SCRA was enacted to prevent undesirable exchanges in securities and to control the working of stock exchange in India. It came into force on February 20, 1957. This Act gives powers to regulate and govern the stock exchanges and their working. There are certain powers which are delegated to SEBI under this Act.

The Government of India promulgated the Securities Contracts (Regulations) Rules, 1957 (“SCRR”) for carrying into effect the objects of the SCRA.

The SCRA and SCRR also prescribes the conditions for listing of securities on the stock exchanges. It also provides for amount of public holding required in every public company seeking listing.

This lesson will give an insight into the various Powers of Central Government, Stock Exchange and SEBI under the SCRA Act, the penal provisions, procedures, offences, the procedure for appeal to SAT, Right of Investors and various listing and delisting provisions under Securities Contract (Regulations) Rules, 1957 etc. At the end of this lesson, the student will be able to understand:

- Registration of stock exchange(s);
- Powers of Central Government in various cases;
- Powers of Recognised Stock Exchange to make rules and bye-laws;
- Powers of SEBI under SCRA;
- Clearing Corporation and its functions;
- Issue of securities to the Public;
- Delisting of securities from recognised stock exchange;
- Procedure to file an appeal to Securities appellate tribunal;
- Various penalties for various offences as prescribed under the Act; and
- Requirements for listing of securities with recognised stock exchange;

Lesson 2 – Securities and Exchange Board of India Act, 1992

With an aim to regulate the securities market in India, the Govt. of India set up a regulatory body i.e. Securities and Exchange Board of India (“SEBI”) in 1988. It became an autonomous body by the Government of India on 12 April 1992 and given statutory powers in 1992 with SEBI Act, 1992 being passed by the Indian Parliament. The Preamble of the Securities and Exchange Board of India is “to protect the interests of investors in securities and to promote the development of, and to regulate the securities market and for matters connected therewith or incidental thereto”.

The SEBI Act is the main Act from which several other Rules and Regulations have originated. The Act constitutes a Board (“the SEBI”) to protect the investors’ interest in securities and to promote the development and to regulate the securities market. The SEBI replaces the erstwhile Controller of Capital Issues. The SEBI has various powers under the Act including to issue various Regulations to better regulate the securities market

and for better investor protection. It governs and regulates the market intermediaries. It has wide powers of investigation, survey, search and seizure, powers to impound documents, take statements on oath, etc. Thus, the powers enshrined in the SEBI are of a very wide amplitude. It also has powers to issue “directions, e.g., cease and desist” orders, by virtue of which, it can prohibit any person or intermediary from carrying out certain operations. The Act provides for stringent penalties for different types of offences and violations.

The objective of this lesson, is to provide a broader information regarding various powers and functions of SEBI, various stringent penalties for protecting the interest of investors and and inspection of various regulated entities, etc. to the students. At the end of this lesson, the student will able to understand :

- Powers and functions of SEBI;
- Conditions for offer of collective investment scheme by a company;
- Investigations procedure by the SEBI;
- Various penalties imposed by the SEBI for various failures, default, non-disclosure and other offenses;
- Procedure & Conditions for registration of an intermediaries; and
- Formation of the Securities Appellant Tribunal, its compositions, tenure, requirements for appeal and its powers.

Lesson 3 – Depositories Act, 1996

A Depository is an organization like a Central Bank where the securities of a shareholder are held in the electronic form at the request of the shareholder through the medium of a Depository Participant. A DP can be a bank, financial institution, a broker, or any entity eligible as per SEBI norms and is responsible for the final transfer of shares from the depository to investors. The investor, at the end of a transaction receives a confirmation from the depository.

In India, there is Depository System for securities trading in which book entry is done electronically and no paper work is involved. The physical form of securities is extinguished and shares or securities are held in an electronic form. Before the introduction of the depository system through the Depository Act, 1996, the process of sale, purchase and transfer of securities was a huge problem, and there was no safety at all.

The Depositories Act, 1996 provides a legal framework for establishment of depositories to facilitate holding of securities including shares in the demat form (electronic form) and to effect transfer of securities through book entry. The Act establishes the depository system in India by providing for setting up of one or more depositories to enable the investors to hold securities in non-physical form (known as dematerialized form) and to affect transfer of securities by way of book entries in accounts maintained by the depository.

Every depository is required to be registered with SEBI and will have to obtain a Certificate for commencement of business on fulfillment of the prescribed conditions. There are two types of depositories in India, namely National Securities Depository Limited (NSDL) and Central Depository Services Limited (CDSL). The functioning of Depository and its constituents in India is primarily governed by the Depository Act 1996, SEBI (Depository & Participant) Regulations, 2018, Bye-laws and business rules of respective depositories.

The operational and functional issues relating to depository system have been discussed in this lesson to give an idea of the practical implications of various statutory and regulatory provisions. Further, a Practising Company Secretary has been recognised by SEBI for various types of Audit of Depository participants. At the end of this lesson, the student will able to understand :

- Basics of depository and its benefits;
- Models of depository and its functions;
- Process of dematerialisation and rematerialisation of securities;
- Securities which are eligible to be issue in depository mode;
- The concept of fungibility and rights of depository & beneficial owner;

- The applicability of SEBI (Depositories and Participants) Regulations, 2018;
- Audit of depositories i.e., Internal Audit and Concurrent Audit by a Practising Company Secretary; and
- Audit of Reconciliation of Share Capital by a Practising Company Secretary.

Lesson 4 – An Overview of SEBI (Issue of Capital and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2018

The SEBI (Issue of Capital and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2009 (the ICDR Regulations) were notified with the objective to bring more clarity to the provisions of the rescinded SEBI DIP Guidelines by removing the redundant provisions and modifying certain provisions on account of changes necessitated due to market design.

The SEBI in order to align its provisions under ICDR Regulations with the Companies Act, 2013 and allied regulations, had come with its consultation paper on May, 04, 2018 detailing the suggestive changes under various fund raising options by listed issuers. The SEBI constituted a committee named “ICDR Committee” under the chairmanship of Sri Prithvi Haldea in June, 2017 to review the ICDR Regulations which suggested certain policy changes in continuation to the same, the SEBI on September, 11, 2018 notified the SEBI (ICDR) Regulations, 2018 effective from the 60th day of its publication in official Gazette. SEBI (ICDR) Regulations, 2018, lay down various provisions and procedures for various types of issue including public and rights issue.

SEBI’s emphasis on disclosure based regulation has witnessed a proliferation of disclosure norms for various types of capital raising activities by Indian companies. SEBI has gradually expanded the disclosure norms and prospectus requirements, culminating in the presently applicable SEBI ICDR Regulations. It lay down guidelines relating to conditions for various kinds of issues including public and rights issue. The ICDR Regulations provide detailed provisions relating to public issue such as conditions relating to an IPO and Further Public Offer (FPO), conditions relating to pricing in public offerings, conditions governing promoter’s contribution, restriction on transferability of promoter’s contribution, minimum offer to public, reservations, manner of disclosures in offer documents, etc.

At the end of this lesson, the student will able to understand:

- Types of Issue;
- Concept of draft offer document, letter of offer and red herring prospectus;
- Contribution of promoters in case of Public Issue & exemption from the same;
- Concept of underwriting, Opening of Public issue & Minimum Subscription;
- Minimum number of share applications and application money;
- Pre-issue advertisement & Post issue advertisement;
- Restriction on further issue of capital & Reservation on competitive basis; and
- Detailed procedure for issue of securities by companies.

Lesson 5 – An Overview of SEBI (Listing Obligations and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2015

Listing agreement means where the securities are listed on the application of any person in any recognised stock exchange, such person shall comply with the conditions of the listing agreement with that stock exchange. It is a basic document which is executed between companies and the stock exchange when companies are listed on the stock exchange. Listing Agreement entered into by listed companies with the stock exchanges prescribes initial and continuous disclosure norms. The modifications to provisions of Listing Agreement are prescribed by SEBI. The Listing Agreement has been modified from time to time to align with the regulatory requirements arising out of the dynamic changes in the capital market.

With a view to consolidate and streamline the provisions of existing listing agreements for different segments of the capital market and to align the provision relating to listed entities with the Companies Act 2013, SEBI has notified the SEBI (Listing Obligations and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2015 hereinafter referred as ‘Listing Regulations’.

The SEBI Listing Regulations lay down the broad principles for periodic disclosures to be given by the listed entities operating in different segments of the capital markets. The Listing Regulations have been structured to provide ease of reference by consolidating into one single document across various types of securities listed on the Stock Exchanges.

This lesson will give an overview of :

- Obligations of listed entities;
- Various compliances & disclosures required to be made by the listed entities;
- Types of Board committee under listing regulations;
- Concept of Vigil Mechanism and Related Party Transactions; and
- Role of Company Secretary as a compliance officer as per listing regulations.

Lesson 6 – An Overview of SEBI (Substantial Acquisition of Shares and Takeovers) Regulations, 2011

One of the most popular modes of corporate expansion is by the acquisition of an existing company. However, when the company being acquired is a listed company, then along with the promoters' stake, there are a lot of other interests, such as, public shareholders, financial institutions, foreign shareholders, etc. It is essential that all these shareholders also get a fair deal in case of an acquisition. To address all such concerns, SEBI has framed the SEBI (Substantial Acquisition of Shares and Takeover) Regulations, 1997 which have evolved significantly over the years and notified the SEBI (Substantial Acquisition of Shares and Takeover) Regulations, 2011 ('SAST Regulations') repealing the old regulation, providing for Acquisition of shares and takeover of listed companies popularly known as "Takeover Code".

Takeover code prescribes a systematic framework for acquisition of stake in listed companies. By these laws the regulatory system ensures that the interests of the shareholders of listed companies are not compromised in case of an acquisition or takeover. It also protect the interests of minority shareholders, which is also a fundamental attribute of corporate governance principle.

After going through this lesson, the students will have the knowledge about the various procedural aspects of takeover by an acquirer and target company with respect to acquisitions and takeover. At the end of this lesson, the student will have the conceptual clarity about the following aspects of SEBI Takeover Code:

- Triggering point while making an open offer by an acquirer;
- Open offer to the public;
- Concept of Public announcement i.e., timing of Public announcement & Detailed Public announcement;
- Procedural compliances related to letter of offer, opening of the offer etc.;
- Obligations of the acquirer and target company;
- Various disclosures requirements;
- Exemptions available to the acquirer in case of open offer; and
- Practical aspects of takeover.

Lesson 7 – SEBI (Buy-Back of Securities) Regulations, 2018

Buy-back of securities is a corporate financial strategy which involves capital restructuring and is resorted by companies to achieve the varied objectives of increasing earnings per share, averting hostile takeovers, improving returns to stakeholders and realigning the capital structure.

Buy-back of securities, like any other transaction of corporate restructuring, brings into play several issues, both financial and non-financial, and the process of buy-back needs to be structured in a way that all the issues are taken care of favourably.

The concept of buy-back was introduced in the Companies Act, 1956 by the Companies (Amendment) Act, 1999

by the insertion of Sections 77A, 77AA and 77B. Consequently, SEBI also issued the SEBI (Buy-Back of Securities) Regulations, 1998 ("Old Regulation") on 14th November 1998 with an objective of simplyfying the language, removing redundant provisions and inconsistencies updating the references to the Companies Act, 2013/other new SEBI Regulations and incorporating the relevant circulars, FAQ's informal guidance in the regulations, the SEBI notified the SEBI (Buyback of Securities) Regulations, 2018 on September 11, 2018 repeal the old Regulation. These regulations are applicable to the buyback of securities of a company listed on a stock exchange. Under the Companies Act, 2013 buyback is governed by sections 68, 69 and 70 and listed companies are governed by the SEBI (Buy-Back of Securities) Regulations, 2018.

This lesson will give an insight to the students into various methods of buy back available, prohibitions, objectives and process of buy back etc. At the end of this lesson, the student will able to understand:

- Methods of buy back of securities;
- Procedure for buyback of securities from existing or security shareholders, from open market and from odd-lot holders;
- Compliances related to extinguishing of bought back securities; and
- Obligations of the company and Merchant Banker.

Lesson 8 – SEBI (Delisting of Equity Shares) Regulations, 2021

With the new trends towards regulatory simplification to facilitate growth of businesses, barriers to free entry and exit to companies could ultimately prove to be prohibitive in terms of loss of Capital, resources and expertise. Internationally, stock exchanges do not impose any restriction on delisting and allow delisting subject to certain conditions such as minimum notice period for the company, exit offers to investors, etc.

Similarly in India, SEBI (Delisting of Equity Shares) Regulations, 2009 ("the delisting regulations") gives an option to the listed company to either get itself delisted from all the recognised stock exchanges where it is listed through reverse book building or only from some of the stock exchanges and continue to be listed on the exchanges having nationwide terminals through a simplified process. Additionally, these regulations provide simplified procedure for delisting of shares of smaller companies.

In order to provide a statutory backing for the delisting framework, the Government has also notified delisting rules under Rule 21 of Securities Contract (Regulations) Rules, 1957 (the SCR Rules) dealing primarily with substantive aspect on delisting. The Delisting Regulations deal with the delisting of equity shares exclusively, as against the erstwhile Delisting Guidelines which dealt with securities generally.

This lesson will make the student acquainted with the various provisions of delisting, reasons for delisting and the various requirements to be complied with. At the end of this lesson, the student will able to understand:

- Agencies involved in delisting process and their Role;
- Concept of voluntary delisting and its different modes;
- Comprehensive procedure for delisting of equity shares from all the stock exchanges or few stock exchange;
- Meaning of small companies and how it can voluntary delist its equity shares;
- Compulsory delisting of shares and its detailed procedure; and
- Special powers of the recognised stock exchange in case of delisting of equity shares.

Lesson 9 – SEBI (Share Based Employee Benefits) Regulations, 2014 – An Overview

In this very dynamic era, most of the organisations are faced with a persistent challenge of attracting and retaining talented employees. Equity based compensation or stock based incentive schemes are widely used by the organisations in India and across the globe for their perceived benefits to both employer and employees in the long run.

The SEBI, in the year 1999, had framed "the SEBI (Employee Stock Option Scheme and Employee Stock Purchase Scheme) Guidelines, 1999" (hereinafter "existing guidelines") which provides for the stock based incentive

schemes to employees. On 28th October, 2014, the SEBI had notified the **SEBI (Share Based Employee Benefits) Regulations, 2014** (hereinafter “Regulations”) repealing the existing guidelines. These Regulations apply to ESOS, ESPS, General Employee Benefit Schemes (GEBS), Retirement Benefit Schemes (RBS) and SAR Schemes of the listed companies.

This lesson will enable the students to learn the various provisions of SEBI (Share Based Employee Benefits) Regulations, 2014. At the end of this lesson, the student will be able to:

- Understand the provisions of Companies Act, 2013 with respect to Employee stock option;
- Specify the companies eligible to issue ESOP/ESPS/GEBS/RBS/SARS;
- Familiarize with the types of schemes offered by the listed company;
- Understand the full procedure for issue of fresh shares for ESOPs;
- Determine the implementation of scheme through trust;
- Understand the concept of compensation committee & cases where shareholders’ approval required;
- Explain the administration of specific schemes like ESOS/ESPS/GEBS/RBS/SARS;
- Specify the provisions of SEBI LODR which is applicable to ESOP/ESPS; and
- Role of company secretary in issue of ESOP/ESPS/GEBS/RBS/SARS.

Lesson 10 – SEBI (Issue of Sweat Equity) Regulations, 2002 – An Overview

Sweat equity shares refers to equity shares given to the company’s employees on favourable terms, in recognition of their work. Sweat equity shares is one of the modes of making share based payments to employees of the company. The issue of sweat equity shares allows the company to retain the employees by rewarding them for their services.

Further, Sweat equity shares enables greater employee stake and interest in the growth of an organization as it encourages the employees to contribute more towards the company in which they feel they have a stake.

Issue of sweat equity is governed by the provisions of section 54 of the Companies Act, 2013, relevant rules and SEBI (Issue of Sweat Equity) Regulations, 2002. These regulations applicable to issue of sweat equity shares by the listed companies. At the end of this lesson, the student will be able to:

- Correlate the provision of Companies Act with SEBI Issue of Sweat Equity Regulations;
- Specify the eligible person for issue of sweat equity shares;
- Understand the requirement of shareholders’ approval by passing special resolution;
- Determine the pricing of sweat equity shares and its accounting treatment & valuation IPRs; and
- Enumerate the ceiling on Managerial remuneration & Lock-in of sweat equity shares.

Lesson 11 – SEBI (Prohibition of Insider Trading) Regulations, 2015

In India, insider trading is not only a tort i.e. a civil wrong but also a crime. The SEBI Act does not define the term by itself although it refers to the term “insider trading” in many provisions. However, using the powers to make regulations and in discharge of its functions, SEBI has made regulations prohibiting insider trading in the form of the PIT Regulations, 1992. The PIT Regulations, 1992 have had their challenges in their drafting, interpretation and reach. So, SEBI notified and issued SEBI (Prohibition of Insider Trading) Regulations, 2015 repealing the SEBI (Prohibition of Insider Trading) Regulations, 1992. The objective of these regulations is to strengthen the legal and enforcement framework, align Indian regime with international practices, provide clarity with respect to the definitions and concepts, and facilitate legitimate business transactions.

At present, insider trading of securities by directors and key managerial personnel shall be administered by the SEBI Regulations. These regulations are comprehensive and covering all the provisions of insider trading of securities. At the end of this lesson, the student will be able to:

- Understand the important definitions i.e., Connected person, Person deemed to be connected person, Insider, Unpublished price sensitive information;
- Explain the information/communication related to company which shall not be provide to any person;
- Elucidate trading when in possession of Unpublished price sensitive information;
- Understand the concept of trading plans;
- Specify the disclosures of trading and interest by certain persons;
- Familiarize with the code of Fair disclosure and conduct; and
- Understand the various penalties for violations under SEBI Act.

Lesson 12 – Mutual Funds

A mutual fund allows a group of investors to pool their money together with a predetermined investment objective. The mutual fund will have a fund manager who is responsible for investing the gathered money into specific securities (stocks or bonds). When an investor, invest in a mutual fund, buying units or portions of the mutual fund and thus on investing becomes a shareholder or unit holder of the fund.

Mutual funds are considered as one of the best available investments as compare to others they are very cost efficient and also easy to invest in, thus by pooling money together in a mutual fund, investors can purchase stocks or bonds with much lower trading costs than if they tried to do it on their own. But the biggest advantage to mutual funds is diversification, by minimizing risk & maximizing returns. A mutual fund is the most suitable investment scope for common people as it offers an opportunity to invest in a diversified, professionally managed basket of securities at a relatively lower cost.

The mutual fund industry in India began in 1963 with the formation of the Unit Trust of India (UTI) as an initiative of the Government of India and Reserve Bank of India. Much later, in 1987, SBI Mutual Fund became the first non-UTI mutual fund in India. In 1996, SEBI had formulated the regulation on Mutual Fund i.e., SEBI (Mutual Fund) Regulations, 1996, which for the first time, established a comprehensive regulatory framework for the mutual fund industry. Since then, several mutual funds have been set up by the private and joint sectors.

Mutual fund provides the information about the investment particulars of the corpus (company and sector-wise), credit ratings, market value of investments, NAVs, returns, repurchase and sale price of the schemes. At the end of this lesson, the student will able to:

- Familiarize with the structure of mutual fund and understand the risks associated with Mutual fund;
- Specify the types of Mutual fund in India;
- Determine the key players of the Mutual Fund;
- Understand the concept of Sponsor, Asset Management Company (AMC), Trustee and Unit Holder;
- Meaning of Net Asset Value, Expense Ratio and Holding Period Return; and
- Correlate the compliances of SEBI Mutual Funds Regulations with SEBI LODR.

Lesson 13 – Collective Investment Schemes

A CIS is any scheme or arrangement which pools funds from investors and involves a corpus amount of ₹100 crore or more. Every CIS has to compulsorily register itself with SEBI, file offer documents for its schemes and obtain a credit rating from a recognised rating agency, before it launches a scheme.

Collective Investment Scheme are regulated by SEBI (Collective Investment Scheme) Regulations, 1999 which was notified on October 15, 1999. These regulations defines Collective Investment Management Company to mean a company incorporated under the Companies Act, 2013 and registered with SEBI under these regulations, whose object is to organize, operate and manage a collective investment.

This lesson will give an overview of collective investment scheme, listing of schemes and its winding up etc. At the end of this lesson, the student will be able to:

- Understand the business activities which are restrictions under CIS regulation;
- Understand the compliances related to quarterly report of CIS;
- Determine the obligations of collective investment management company (CIMC), trustee;
- Understand the conditions of the termination of the agreement with the CIMC; and
- Specify the procedure for allotment, transfer of units and winding up of scheme.

Lesson 14 – Resolution of Complaints and Guidance

SCORES is a web based centralized grievance redress system of SEBI which enables investors to lodge and follow up their complaints and track the status of redressal of such complaints online from the above website from anywhere.

Ombudsman in its literal sense is an independent person appointed to hear and act upon citizen's complaint about government services. In this regard, SEBI had notified the SEBI (Ombudsman) Regulations, 2003 on August 21, 2003 which deals with establishment of office of Ombudsman, powers and functions of Ombudsman, procedure for redressal of Grievances and implementation of the award. This lesson also covers provisions related to SEBI Complaints Redress System (SCORES), and SEBI (Informal Guidance) Scheme, 2003.

SEBI (Informal Guidance) Scheme, 2003 deals with various aspects such as the nature of request fees to be accompanied along with letter disposal of requests, SEBI discretion not request and certain types of request and confidentiality of requests, etc.

In this lesson, a student will be able to know about SCORES, SEBI Ombudsman Regulations and Informal Guidance Scheme, etc. At the end of this lesson, the student will be able to know:

- How to file a complaint in SCORES site;
- When a case can be referred for arbitration;
- Concept of Ombudsman and its powers & functions;
- Procedure for redressal of grievance; and
- Concept of Informal Guidance.

PART II – CAPITAL MARKET AND INTERMEDIARIES

Lesson 15 – Structure of Capital Market

Capital is one of the important factors of production in any economy. A well organized financial system provides adequate capital formation through savings, finance and investments. An investment depends upon Savings and in turn Savings depends upon earnings of an individual or profits of the organization. This system may be viewed as a set of sub-systems with so many elements which are interdependent and interlinking with each other to produce the purposeful result within the boundary. Hence, the term system in the context of finance means a set of complex and closely connected financial institutions, instruments, agents, markets and so on which are interdependent and interlinking with each other to produce the economic growth within the country.

In any economy, financial Institutions play an important role because all the financial dealings and matters are handled and monitored by such Institutions. In the primary market, there are four key players: corporations, institutions, investment banks, and public accounting firms. Institutions invest capital in corporations that seek to expand and grow their businesses, while corporations issue debt or equity to the institutions in return for their capital investment. Investment banks are hired to match institutions and corporations based on their risk profile and investment style. Finally, public accounting firms are responsible for the preparation, review, and auditing of financial statements, tax work, consulting on accounting systems, M&A, and capital raising.

A second important division falls between the stock markets is capital market instruments. Capital Market Instruments are responsible for generating funds for companies, corporations and sometimes governments. These are used by the investors to make a profit out of their respective markets.

Secondary Market refers to a market where securities are traded after being initially offered to the public in the primary market and/or listed on the Stock Exchange. Majority of the trading is done in the secondary market. Secondary market comprises of equity markets and the debt markets. There are many other factors also such as integration with global financial market, policy decision which affect the working of stock markets.

At the end of this lesson, the student will be able to understand:

- Different categories of Investment Institutions in detail;
- Various Capital Markets Instruments;
- Book building, Application Supported by Block Amount, Green Shoe Option etc.; and
- Concept of Secondary Market & its trading mechanism etc.

Lesson 16 – Securities Market Intermediaries

Intermediaries are service providers and are an integral part of any financial system. The objective of these intermediaries is to smoothen the process of investment and to establish a link between the investors and the users of funds. The Market Regulator, i.e., SEBI regulates various intermediaries in the primary and secondary markets through its Regulations for these respective intermediaries. These Regulations also empower SEBI to inspect the functioning of these intermediaries and to collect fees from them and to impose penalties on erring entities.

At the end of this lesson, the student would have an overview about various types of intermediaries operating in Capital Market and its role & responsibility, Internal Audit of Intermediaries by Company Secretary in Practice, etc.

LIST OF RECOMMENDED BOOKS

PAPER 6 : SECURITIES LAWS AND CAPITAL MARKETS

READINGS

- | | | | |
|----|--|---|--|
| 1. | Sanjeev Aggarwal | : | Guide to Indian Capital Market; Bharat Law House, 22, Tarun Enclave, Pitampura, New Delhi – 110034. |
| 2. | M.Y. Khan | : | Indian Financial Systems; Tata McGraw Hill, 4/12, Asaf Ali Road, New Delhi – 110002. |
| 3. | S. Suryanarayanan & V. Varadarajan | : | SEBI – Law, Practice & Procedure; Commercial Law Publishers (India) Pvt. Ltd., 151, Rajindra Market, Opp. Tis Hazari Court, Delhi - 110054 |
| 4. | Taxmann | : | SEBI Manual |
| 5. | Shashi K Gupta
Nishja Aggarwal
Neeti Gupta | : | Financial Institutions and Markets ; Kalyani Publishers, 4863/2B, Bharat Ram Road, 24, Daryaganj, New Delhi -110002 |

REFERENCES

- | | | | |
|----|--------------------|---|--|
| 1. | SEBI Annual Report | : | SEBI, Mumbai. |
| 2. | Website | : | www.sebi.gov.in
www.nseindia.com
www.bseindia.com
www.rbi.org.in
www.mca.gov.in |

JOURNALS

- | | | | |
|----|-------------------------|---|---|
| 1. | SEBI and Corporate Laws | : | Taxmann, 59/32, New Rohtak Road, New Delhi-110005. |
| 2. | Corporate Law Adviser | : | Corporate Law Adviser, Post Bag No. 3, Vasant Vihar, New Delhi-110052. |
| 3. | SEBI Monthly Bulletin | : | SEBI, Mumbai. |
| 4. | NSE News | : | National Stock Exchange of India Ltd., Exchange Plaza, Bandra Kurla Complex, Bandra (E), Mumbai-400051. |

Note : Students are advised to read relevant Bare Acts and Rules and Regulations relating thereto. E-Bulletin 'Student Company Secretary', 'Monthly Updates', 'Regulatory Updates' and 'Chartered Secretary' should also be read regularly for updating the knowledge.

ARRANGEMENT OF STUDY LESSONS

Module-2 Paper-6 Securities Laws and Capital Markets

PART I – SECURITIES LAWS

Sl. No.	Lesson Title
---------	--------------

- | | |
|-----|---|
| 1. | Securities Contracts (Regulations) Act, 1956 |
| 2. | Securities and Exchange Board of India Act, 1992 |
| 3. | Depositories Act, 1996 |
| 4. | An Overview of SEBI (Issue of Capital and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2018 |
| 5. | An Overview of SEBI (Listing Obligations and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2015 |
| 6. | An Overview of SEBI (Substantial Acquisition of Shares and Takeovers) Regulations, 2011 |
| 7. | SEBI (Buy-Back of Securities) Regulations, 2018 |
| 8. | SEBI (Delisting of Equity Shares) Regulations, 2021 |
| 9. | SEBI (Share Based Employee Benefits) Regulations, 2014 – An Overview |
| 10. | SEBI (Issue of Sweat Equity) Regulations, 2002 – An Overview |
| 11. | SEBI (Prohibition of Insider Trading) Regulations, 2015 |
| 12. | Mutual Funds |
| 13. | Collective Investment Schemes |
| 14. | Resolution of Complaints and Guidance |

PART II – CAPITAL MARKET AND INTERMEDIARIES

- | | |
|-----|----------------------------------|
| 15. | Structure of Capital Market |
| 16. | Securities Market Intermediaries |

CONTENTS

SECURITIES LAWS (PART I)

LESSON 1

SECURITIES CONTRACTS (REGULATION) ACT, 1956

Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, 1956	2
Key Definitions	3
Non-Applicability	5
Recognition of Stock Exchanges	6
Powers of Central Government	7
Powers of Recognised Stock Exchange	11
Punishments for Contraventions	13
Case Laws	13
Clearing Corporation	15
Powers of the SEBI	16
Additional Trading Floor	18
Licensing Of Dealers in Certain Areas	19
Public Issue and Listing of Securities	19
Contracts in Derivatives	19
Stock Exchanges other than recognised Stock Exchanges prohibited	19
Listing of Securities	20
Delisting of Securities	20
Right to Appeal	20
Procedure and powers of Securities Appellate Tribunal	21
Appeal to Supreme Court	22
Penalties and Procedures	22
Case Laws	24
Factors to be taken into account while adjudging the quantum of penalty by the Adjudicating Officer	24
Settlement of Administrative and Civil Proceedings	25
Recovery of Amounts	25
Continuance of Proceedings	26
Crediting sum realised by way of penalties to consolidated fund of India	26
Appeal to Securities Appellate Tribunal	26
Offences	27
Composition of certain Offences	28

Contravention by Companies	28
Certain offences to be Cognizable	28
Cognizance of Offences by Courts	28
Establishment of Special Courts	28
Offences Triable by Special Courts	28
Appeal and Revision	29
Application of Code to Proceeding before Special Court	29
Transitional Provisions	29
Miscellaneous Provisions	29
Securities Contracts (Regulation) Rules, 1957	31
Requirements of Listing of Securities with Recognised Stock Exchanges	32
Conditions precedent to submission of application for listing by Stock Exchange	34
Application for listing of new securities	36
Suspension or withdrawal of admission to dealings in securities on stock exchange	36
Minimum Shareholding	37
Delisting of Securities	37
Role of Company Secretary	38
Lesson Round up	39
Glossary	39
Test Yourself	40

LESSON 2

SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE BOARD OF INDIA ACT, 1992

Introduction	42
Objective of SEBI	42
SEBI Act, 1992	42
Establishment of the Securities and Exchange Board of India (SEBI)	43
Management of the SEBI	43
Functions and powers of the SEBI	43
Case Laws	50
Registration of Intermediaries	51
Prohibition of Manipulative and Deceptive Devices, Insider Trading etc.	52
Penalties and Adjudication	52
Adjudication	55
Case Laws	56
Settlement of Administrative and Civil Proceedings	57
Case Snippets	58

Securities Appellate Tribunal	58
Appeal to the Securities Appellate Tribunal	62
Powers of Securities Appellate Tribunal	62
Right to Legal Representation	63
Appeal to Supreme Court	63
Powers of Central Government	64
Returns and Reports	66
Delegation of Powers	66
Appeal to the Central Government	66
Bar of Jurisdiction	66
Public Servants	66
Offences	67
Cognizance of Offences by Courts	67
Contravention by Companies	68
Recovery of Amounts	69
Role of Company Secretary	70
Lesson Round Up	71
Glossary	71
Test Yourself	72

LESSON 3

DEPOSITORIES ACT, 1996

Introduction	74
Legal Framework	74
Depository System – An Overview	75
Bank–Depository - an Analogy	76
Depository Functions	76
Benefits of Depository System	76
Models of Depository	77
Legal Linkage	77
Depository Participant	78
Issuer	78
Dematerialisation	78
Rematerialisation	79
Electronic credit in New Issues	80
Trading System	80
Corporate Actions	80

Depositories Act, 1996	80
Power of the SEBI	84
Penalties and Adjudication	85
Offences and Cognizance	86
Power of Central Government to make Rules	88
Power of Depositories to make Bye-Laws	89
SEBI (Depositories and Participants) Regulations, 2018	89
Reconciliation	90
Audit under SEBI (Depositories and Participants) Regulations, 2018	90
Internal Audit of Operations of Depository Participants	90
Concurrent Audit	91
Role of Company Secretary	92
Case Laws	92
Lesson Round Up	93
Glossary	93
Test Yourself	94

LESSON 4

AN OVERVIEW OF SEBI (ISSUE OF CAPITAL AND DISCLOSURE REQUIREMENTS) REGULATIONS, 2018

Introduction	96
Genesis	96
Types of Issues	97
Applicability of the SEBI (Issue of Capital and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2018 [Regulation 3]	98
Meaning of Draft Offer Document, Letter of Offer and Red Herring Prospectus	98
Initial Public Offer / Further Public Offer	99
Eligibility requirements to be complied with for IPO	99
General Conditions [Regulation 7]	102
Additional conditions for an offer for sale [Regulation 8]	103
Issue of Warrants [Regulation 13]	104
Eligibility Criteria for Further Public Offer (FPO)	105
General Conditions for FPO [Regulation 104]	105
Issue of Warrants [Regulation 111]	106
Promoters' Contribution [Regulation 113]	106
Lock-in Requirements	109
Other Requirements for IPO & FPO	111
Appointment of Lead Managers, Other Intermediaries and Compliance Officer [Regulation 23 & 121]	111
Disclosures in draft offer document and offer document [Regulation 24 & 122]	111

Filing of offer Document [Regulations 25 & 123]	112
Draft offer document and offer document to be available to the public [Regulations 26 & 124]	113
Pricing [Regulations 28 & 126]	113
Minimum Offer to Public [Regulation 31]	114
Reservation on Competitive Basis [Regulations 33 & 130]	114
Underwriting [Regulations 40 & 136]	115
Monitoring Agency [Regulations 41 & 137]	116
Public Communications, Publicity Materials, Advertisements and Research Reports [Regulations 42 & 138]	116
Opening of the Issue [Regulations 44 & 140]	117
Minimum Subscription [Regulations 45 & 141]	117
Period of Subscription [Regulations 46 & 142]	117
Application and Minimum Application Value [Regulations 47 & 143]	117
Allotment Procedure and Basis of Allotment [Regulations 49 & 145]	118
Oversubscription [Proviso to Regulations 49(2) & 145(2)]	118
Allotment, Refund and Payment of Interest [Regulations 50 & 146]	120
Post-issue Advertisements [Regulations 51 & 147]	120
Post-issue responsibilities of the lead manager(s) [Regulations 52 & 148]	121
Release of subscription money [Regulations 53 & 149]	121
Post-issue reports [Regulations 55 & 151]	121
Restriction on Further Capital Issues [Regulation 152]	122
Fast track FPO	122
Exit Opportunity to Dissenting Shareholders [Scheduled xx]	123
Rights Issue	125
Preferential Issue	126
Qualified Institutions Placement	127
Initial Public Offer of Indian Depository Receipts	128
Rights Issue of Indian Depository Receipts	129
Initial Public Offer by Small and Medium Enterprises	130
Innovators Growth Platform	131
Bonus Issue	132
Power to Relax Strict Enforcement of the Regulations	133
Procedure for Issue of Securities	133
Role of Company Secretary	136
Lesson Round Up	136
Glossary	137
Test Yourself	138

LESSON 5
AN OVERVIEW OF SEBI (LISTING OBLIGATIONS AND DISCLOSURE REQUIREMENTS)
REGULATIONS, 2015

Introduction	142
SEBI (Listing Obligations and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2015	142
Regulatory Framework	142
Key Definitions	144
Applicability	145
Obligations of Listed Entities	145
Common Obligations of Listed Companies	146
Compliances under SEBI (LODR) Regulations	147
Corporate Governance under SEBI (LODR) Regulations, 2015	152
Key Provisions pertaining to Corporate Governance	154
Composition of Board of Directors	154
Maximum age of non-executive directors	155
Minimum Directors Requirement	156
Meetings of Board	156
Quorum of board meeting	156
Key Compliance Requirements for Board	156
Maximum Number of Directorships / Committee Membership & Chairpersonship	156
Board Committees	157
Vigil Mechanism	161
Related Party Transactions	161
Corporate Governance requirements related to Subsidiary	163
Secretarial Audit and Secretarial Compliance Report	164
Obligations in Respect of Independent Directors	164
Obligation in Respect of Employees including senior Management, key Managerial persons, Directors and Promoters	165
Prior Intimations [Regulation 29]	165
Disclosure of Events or Information [Regulation 30]	166
Meetings of Shareholders and Voting [Regulation 44]	167
Regulations applicable on Top 500, Top 1000 And Top 2000 Listed Entities	167
Compliances under SEBI Listing Regulations for the Listed Entity which has listed its non-convertible debt Securities or Non- Convertible Redeemable Preference Shares or both	168
Policies covered under SEBI (LODR) Regulations	169
Liability of a Listed Entity for Contravention.	170
Role of Company Secretary	170

Case Laws	171
Case Studies	171
Lesson Round Up	176
Glossary	177
Test Yourself	177

LESSON 6

AN OVERVIEW OF SEBI (SUBSTANTIAL ACQUISITION OF SHARES AND TAKEOVERS) REGULATIONS, 2011

Introduction	180
Genesis	181
SEBI (Substantial Acquisition of Shares and Takeovers) Regulations, 2011	182
Important Definitions	182
Applicability & Exemptions	185
Trigger Point for making an Open Offer by an Acquirer	186
Open Offer	186
Mandatory Open Offer	187
Delisting Offer	189
Voluntary Offer	190
Minimum Offer Size	192
Conditional Offer	192
Public Announcement	192
Offer Price	194
Filing of Letter of Offer with the SEBI	197
Dispatch of Letter of Offer	197
Opening of the Offer	198
Completion of Requirements	198
Process at Glance	198
Obligations on further Acquisition	199
Completion of Acquisition	200
Disclosures for Acquisition during Offer Period	200
Payment of Interest in Case of Delay	200
Provision of Escrow	200
Mode of Payment	202
Competing Offer	203
Withdrawal of Open Offer	203
Obligations of the Target Company	204

Obligations of the Acquirer	206
Obligations of the Manager to the Open Offer	206
Disclosures	207
Exemptions	209
Power of SEBI to relax Strict Enforcement of the Regulations	215
Case Laws	216
Lesson Round Up	218
Glossary	219
Test Yourself	219

LESSON 7

SEBI (BUY-BACK OF SECURITIES) REGULATIONS, 2018

Introduction	222
Objectives of Buy-Back	223
Provisions of the Companies Act, 2013	224
SEBI (Buy-Back) Regulations, 2018	224
Applicability	225
Important Definitions	225
Conditions for Buyback of Shares or Other Securities	226
Methods of Buyback	227
Sources of Buyback	228
Prohibitions for Buy-back	228
Authorisation for Buy-back	228
Explanatory Statement	229
Additional Disclosures	229
Buy-back Process	230
Buy-back through Tender Offer	231
Additional Disclosures	231
Offer Procedure	232
Escrow Account	233
Closure and Payment to Securities holders	234
Extinguishment of Certificate and Other Closure Compliances	234
Odd-lot Buy-back	235
Buy-back from the Open Market	235
Buy-back of Shares through Stock Exchange	235
Buy-back through Book Building	237
Obligations for all buy-back of Shares or other Specified Securities	238

Power of SEBI to relax strict enforcement of the Regulations	240
Buyback vis-a-vis compliance under SEBI (SAST) Regulations, 2011	240
Role of Company Secretary	241
Lesson Round Up	241
Glossary	242
Test Yourself	243

LESSON 8

SEBI (DELISTING OF EQUITY SHARES) REGULATIONS, 2021

Introduction	246
Genesis	246
Regulatory Framework of SEBI (Delisting of Equity Shares) Regulations, 2021	247
Applicability	247
Non-Applicability	248
Conditions for Delisting	248
Voluntary Delisting	249
Appointment of peer reviewer Company Secretary to carry out the Due-Diligence	251
Obligations of the Company (Regulation 28)	257
Obligations of the Acquirer (Regulation 30)	257
Procedure for Voluntary delisting from all the stock exchanges	258
Compulsory Delisting	259
Consequences of Compulsory Delisting	261
Procedure for Compulsory Delisting	261
Special Provisions for Delisting	262
Power of SEBI to relax strict enforcement of the Regulations	263
Role of Company Secretary in Delisting	264
Lesson Round Up	264
Glossary	265
Test Yourself	265

LESSON 9

SEBI (SHARE BASED EMPLOYEE BENEFITS) REGULATIONS, 2014 - AN OVERVIEW

Introduction	268
Genesis	268
Provisions under Companies Act, 2013	269
SEBI (Share Based Employee Benefits) Regulations, 2014	269
Applicability	270
Companies Covered	270

Non-Applicability	270
Important Definitions	270
Schemes - Implementation and Process	272
Eligibility Criteria	276
Compensation Committee	276
Shareholders Approval	277
Variation of Terms of the Schemes	277
Winding up of the Schemes	278
Non-Transferability	278
Listing	278
Schemes Implemented By Unlisted Companies	278
Compliances and Conditions	279
Certificate from Auditors	279
Disclosures	279
Accounting Policies	279
Administration of Specific Schemes	280
Employee Stock Option Scheme (ESOS)	280
Employee Stock Purchase Scheme (ESPS)	280
Stock Appreciation Rights Scheme (SARS)	281
General Employee Benefits Scheme (GEBS)	281
Retirement Benefit Scheme (RBS)	282
Power of SEBI to relax strict enforcement of the Regulations	282
Directions by the SEBI and action in case of default	282
SEBI (Listing Obligations & Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2015 for ESOP/ESPS	283
SEBI (Prohibition of Insider Trading) Regulations, 2015 for ESOP/ESPS	283
Procedure for Issuing ESOP by a Listed Company	284
Role of Company Secretary	285
Lesson Round Up	285
Glossary	286
Test Yourself	286

LESSON 10

SEBI (ISSUE OF SWEAT EQUITY) REGULATIONS, 2002 – AN OVERVIEW

Introduction	290
Sweat Equity Shares Provisions as under Companies Act, 2013	290
SEBI (Issue of Sweat Equity) Regulations, 2002	291
Applicability	291

Sweat Equity Shares may be issued to Employee and Directors	292
Special Resolution	292
Issue of Sweat Equity Shares to Promoters	292
Pricing of Sweat Equity Shares	293
Valuation of Intellectual Property	293
Accounting Treatment	294
Placing of Auditors before Annual General Meeting	294
Ceiling on Managerial Remuneration	294
Lock-in	294
Listing	294
Applicability of Takeover	294
Power to relax strict enforcement of the Regulations	294
Lesson Round Up	295
Glossary	295
Test Yourself	296

LESSON 11

SEBI (PROHIBITION OF INSIDER TRADING) REGULATIONS, 2015

Introduction	298
Regulatory Framework	299
Key Definitions	300
Restriction on Communication or Procurement of Unpublished Price Sensitive Information (UPSI) (Regulations 3)	303
Trading when in Possession of Unpublished Price Sensitive Information (UPSI): Permission & Limitation	305
Trading plans	306
Disclosure Requirements	308
Informant incentives and Rewards	310
Codes of Fair Disclosure and Conduct	311
Penalty provisions for violations of the Regulations	317
Appeal to Securities Appellate Tribunal	317
Role of Company Secretary as Compliance Officer	318
Checklists under SEBI (Prohibition of Insider Trading) Regulations 2015	319
Judgments and Developments	321
Major Case Studies on Insider Trading	321
Lesson Round Up	322
Glossary	323
Test Yourself	323

LESSON 12

MUTUAL FUNDS

Introduction	326
Structure of a Mutual Fund	327
Overview of Mutual Funds Industry in India	329
Types of Mutual Funds	329
Schemes according to Investment Objective	330
Advantages of Mutual Funds	331
Risks involved in Mutual Funds	332
Key Players in Mutual Fund	332
Net Asset Value	337
Expense Ratio	339
Holding Period Return	340
Evaluating Performance of Mutual Fund	340
SEBI (Mutual Funds) Regulations, 1996 – Overview	340
Registration of Mutual Funds	341
Constitution and Management of Asset Management Company and Custodian	343
Schemes of Mutual Fund	344
Code of Conduct of Mutual Funds	345
Advertisement of Conduct of Mutual Funds	345
Restriction on Investment by Mutual Funds	345
Pricing of Units of Mutual Fund	346
Facilitating transaction in Mutual Fund Schemes through the Stock Exchange Infrastructure	347
Power to relax strict enforcement of the Regulations	347
SEBI (Listing Obligations and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2015	347
Case Laws	348
Lesson Roundup	349
Glossary	349
Test Yourself	350

LESSON 13

COLLECTIVE INVESTMENT SCHEMES

Meaning of Collective Investment Schemes (CIS)	352
Genesis	352
SEBI (Collective Investment Schemes) Regulations, 1999 – An Overview	353
Registration of Collective Investment Management Company	355

Business Activities and Obligations of Collective Investment Management Company	357
Trustees and their Obligations	358
Collective Investment Schemes of Collective Investment Management Company	362
General Obligations of Collective Investment Management Company	366
Procedure for Action in case of Default	367
Penal Provisions	369
Key Aspects for Launching Collective Investment Scheme	370
Role of Company Secretary	370
Case Laws	371
Lesson Round Up	374
Glossary	374
Test Yourself	375

LESSON 14

RESOLUTION OF COMPLAINTS AND GUIDANCE

Introduction	378
Matters not considered as Complaints in SCORES	378
Type of Companies not covered under SCORES	379
Timeline for lodging Complaint on SCORES	379
Process for lodging Complaint Online on SCORES by Investors	380
Handling of the Complaints by Listed Entities and SEBI registered Intermediaries	380
Handling of SCORES Complaints by Stock Exchange	381
When are Investor Complaints Disposed of?	383
When can SEBI take Action for Non-Resolution of Investor Complaints?	384
When can a case be referred for Arbitration?	384
SEBI Mobile Application: Recent Development	384
Case Laws	385
Ombudsman	386
Powers and Functions of Ombudsman	387
Procedure for filing a complaint	388
Evidence Act not to apply in the Proceedings before Ombudsman	390
SEBI (Informal Guidance) Scheme, 2003	391
Lesson Round Up	393
Glossary	393
Test Yourself	394

LESSON 15
STRUCTURE OF CAPITAL MARKET

Financial Markets in India	396
Money Market	397
Capital Market	397
Securities Market	397
Need for Regulators in Capital Market	399
Capital Market Investment Institutions	402
National Level Institutions	403
State Level Institutions	404
Participants of Capital Market	405
Foreign Portfolio Investor	406
Alternative Investment Funds	406
Venture Capital	408
Areas of Investment	408
Private Equity	408
Types of Private Equity	409
Angel Fund	409
Anchor Investors	409
High net worth Individuals	410
Pension Fund	410
Legislations	411
Atal Pension Yojana (APY)	411
Government pension	411
Capital market Instruments	411
Equity Shares	411
Shares with Differential Voting Rights	413
Preference Shares	413
Debentures	414
Categories of Debentures	415
Optionally Fully Convertible Debenture (OFCD)	415
Bonds	415
Characteristics of a Bond	415
Types of Bond	416
Foreign Currency Convertible Bonds (FCCBS)	416

Foreign Currency Exchangeable Bonds (FCEBS)	417
Indian Depository Receipts	417
Derivatives	418
Future	419
Options	420
Warrant	421
Real Estate Investment Trust ('REIT')	421
Infrastructure investment trusts ('INVITS')	422
Securitized Debt Instruments	422
Municipal Bonds	422
Exchange Traded Funds (ETF)	423
Mechanism for Issuance of Securities in Primary Market	423
Book Building	423
Application Supported by Block Amount (ASBA)	425
Self-Certified Syndicate Bank	425
ASBA Process	425
Use of Unified Payments Interface (UPI) with ASBA in Public Issue Process	426
Green Shoe Option	428
Stock Exchange	432
Trading Mechanism	433
Types of Securities	434
Market Participants	434
Margins	437
Book Closure and Record Date	437
Block Deal	437
Bulk Deal	438
Stock Market Index	438
Basis of Sensex	438
Nifty	439
Basics of Investing – A Guidance to Budding Investors	439
Market Surveillance	441
Grievance Redressal in Securities Market	442
Risk Management in Secondary Market	443
Impact of various Policies on Stock Markets	443
Lesson Round Up	448
Glossary	449
Test Yourself	450

LESSON 16
SECURITIES MARKET INTERMEDIARIES

Introduction	454
Securities and Exchange Board of India (Intermediaries) Regulations, 2008	455
Registration of Intermediaries	456
General Obligations of Intermediaries	458
Regulatory Framework of Intermediaries	459
Merchant Banker	459
Registrars and Share Transfer Agents	460
Bankers to an issue	462
Debenture Trustees	462
Stockbrokers	465
Portfolio managers	465
Custodians	467
Investment Advisers	468
Research Analysts	469
Credit Rating Agencies	470
Depository Participant (DP)	471
Foreign Portfolio Investor	472
Case Laws	474
Internal Audit of Intermediaries by Company Secretary in Practice	476
Role of Company Secretary	476
LESSON ROUND UP	477
GLOSSARY	477
TEST YOURSELF	478
TEST PAPER	479

Lesson 1

Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, 1956

Key Concepts One Should Know

- Securities
- Derivatives
- Recognised Stock Exchange
- Listing
- Delisting
- Securities Appellate Tribunal
- Clearing Corporation
- Recovery
- Penalties
- Minimum Shareholding

Learning Objectives

To understand:

- The genesis of introducing the law in India
- The Powers of Central Government, Stock Exchange and SEBI under the Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, 1956
- The contracts in Securities and how does the listing of securities take place?
- The penal provisions, procedures or offences under the Securities Contracts (Regulations) Act, 195
- The procedure for appeal to Securities Appellate Tribunal
- Right of Investors, and
- The provisions of Securities Contracts (Regulations) Rules, 1957

Lesson Outline

I. Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, 1956

- Introduction
- Key Definitions
- Non-applicability of Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, 1956
- Recognition of Stock Exchanges
- Grant of Recognition to Stock Exchange
- Withdrawal of Recognition
- Powers of Central Government
- Powers of Recognised Stock Exchange
- Clearing Corporation
- Powers of SEBI
- Listing & Delisting of Securities
- Right Appeal
- Penalties and Procedures

II. Securities Contracts (Regulations) Rules, 1957

- Miscellaneous Provisions
- Requirements of Listing of Securities with recognised Stock Exchanges
- Conditions precedent to submission of application for listing by Stock Exchange
- Application for listing of new securities
- Suspension or withdrawal of admission to dealings in securities on stock exchange
- Minimum Shareholding
- Delisting of securities
- Role of Company Secretary
- LESSON ROUND-UP
- GLOSSARY
- TEST YOURSELF
- LIST OF FURTHER READINGS
- OTHER REFERENCES

Regulatory Framework

- Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, 1956
- Securities Contracts (Regulation) Rules, 1957

SECURITIES CONTRACTS (REGULATION) ACT, 1956

INTRODUCTION

Stock Market plays a significant role in development of a country's Economy. The stock market helps in the mobilization of the funds from the small savings of the investors and channelizes such resources into different development needs of various sectors of the economy. In order to prevent undesirable transactions in securities by regulating the business of dealing therein, and by providing for certain other matters connected therewith, the Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, 1956 was enacted by Parliament.

The stock market is the platform of securities trading. The stock exchanges also suffer from certain limitations and require strict control over their activities in order to ensure safety in dealings thereon. Hence, in 1956, the Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act ('SCRA') was passed which provided for recognition of stock exchanges by the Central Government. The provisions of this Act came into force with effect from February 20, 1957.

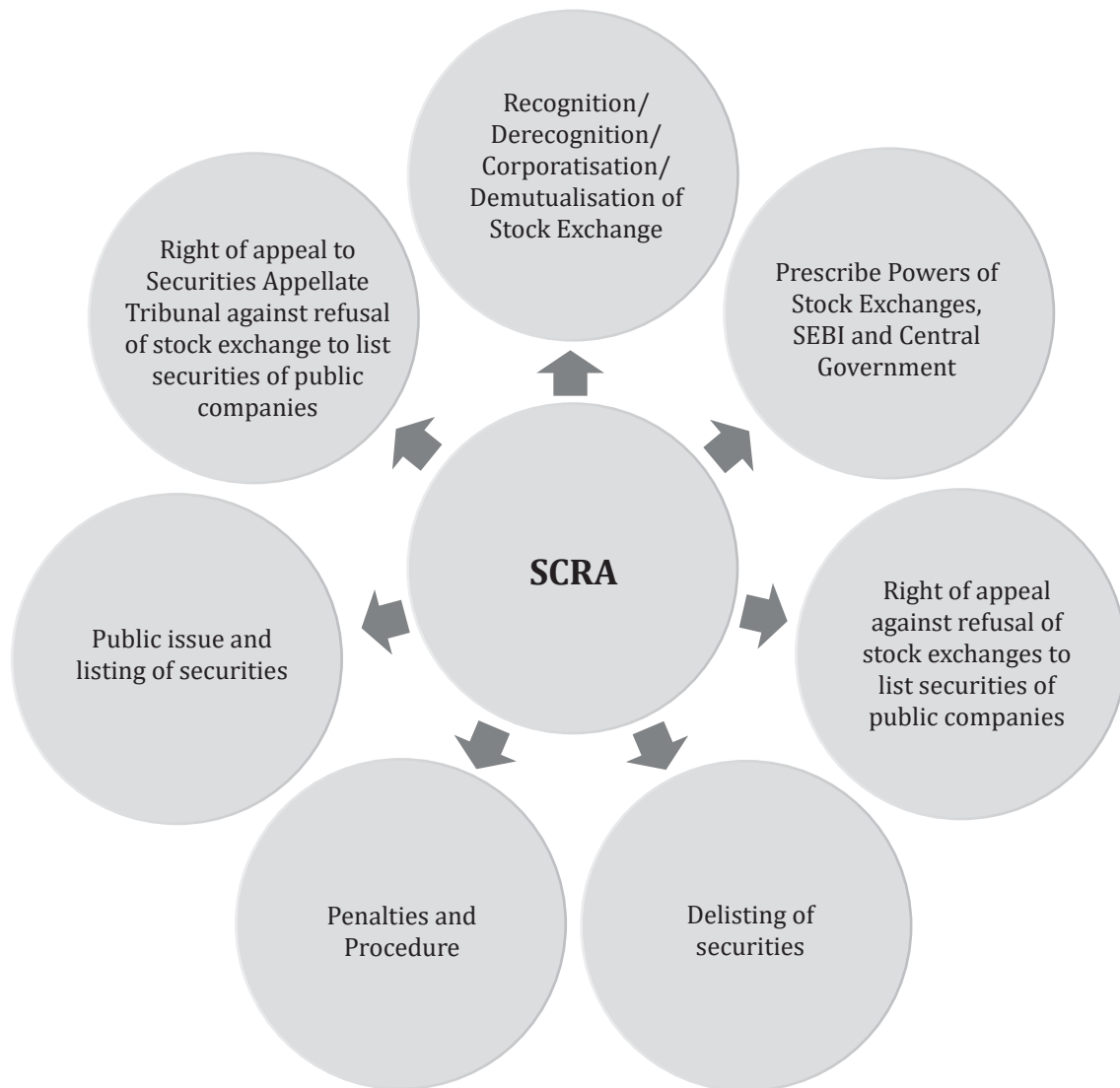
The Government promulgated the Securities Contracts (Regulations) Rules, 1957 for carrying into effect the objects of the Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act.

The Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, 1956, extends to the whole of India and came into force on February 20, 1957. The Act defines various terms in relation to securities and provides the detailed procedure for the stock exchanges to get recognition from Government/SEBI, procedure for listing of securities of companies and operations of the brokers in relation to purchase and sale of securities on behalf of investors.

The Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, 1956, provides for direct and indirect control of all aspects of the securities trading including the running of stock exchanges which aims to prevent undesirable transaction in securities by regulating the business of dealing therein. It gives the Central Government regulatory jurisdiction over:

- (a) Stock exchanges through a process of recognition and continued supervision,
- (b) contracts in securities, and
- (c) listing of securities on stock exchanges.

As a condition of recognition, a stock exchange complies with the requirements prescribed by the Central Government. The stock exchanges frame, their own listing regulations in consonance with the minimum listing criteria set out in Securities Contracts (Regulations) Rules, 1957.

Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, 1956 (SCRA) – A Birds Eye View (Regulation) Act, 1956**KEY DEFINITIONS**

Section 2 of this Act contains definitions of various terms used in the Act. Some of the important definitions are given below:

Securities

Securities include

- (i) shares, scrips, stocks, bonds, debentures, debenture stock or other marketable securities of a like nature in or of any incorporated company or a pooled investment vehicle or other body corporate;
- (ii) derivative;
- (iii) units or any other instrument issued by any Collective Investment Scheme to the Investors in such schemes;
- (iv) security receipt as defined in clause (zg) of Section 2 of the Securitisation and Reconstruction of Financial Assets and Enforcement of Security Interest Act, 2002;
- (v) units or any other such instrument issued to the investors under any mutual fund scheme;

- (vi) units or any other instrument issued by any pooled investment vehicle;
- (vii) any certificate or instrument (by whatever name called) issued to an investor by any issuer being a special purpose distinct entity which possess any debt or receivable, including mortgage debt, assigned to such entity, and acknowledging beneficial interest of such investor in such debt or receivable, including mortgage debt, as the case may be;
- (viii) government securities;
- (ix) such other instruments as may be declared by the Central Government to be securities; and
- (x) rights or interests in securities.

Contract

“Contract” means a contract for or relating to the purchase or sale of securities.

Spot Delivery Contract

Spot delivery contract means a contract which provides for –

- (a) actual delivery of securities and the payment of a price therefore either on the same day as the date of the contract or on the next day, the actual period taken for the dispatch of the securities or the remittance of money therefor through the post being excluded from the computation of the period aforesaid if the parties to the contract do not reside in the same town or locality;
- (b) transfer of the securities by the depository from the account of a beneficial owner to the account of another beneficial owner when such securities are dealt with by a depository.

Stock Exchange

Stock Exchange means –

- (a) any body of individuals, whether incorporated or not, constituted before corporatisation and demutualisation under Sections 4A and 4B, or
- (b) a body corporate incorporated under the Companies Act, 2013 (erstwhile Companies Act, 1956) whether under a scheme of corporatisation and demutualisation or otherwise,

for the purpose of assisting, regulating or controlling the business of buying, selling or dealing in securities.

Recognised Stock Exchange

Recognised Stock Exchange means a stock exchange which is for the time being recognised by the Central Government.

Government security

Government security means a security created and issued whether before or after the commencement of this Act, by the Central Government or a State Government for the purpose of raising a public loan and having one of the forms specified in clause (2) of section 2 of the Public Debt Act, 1944.

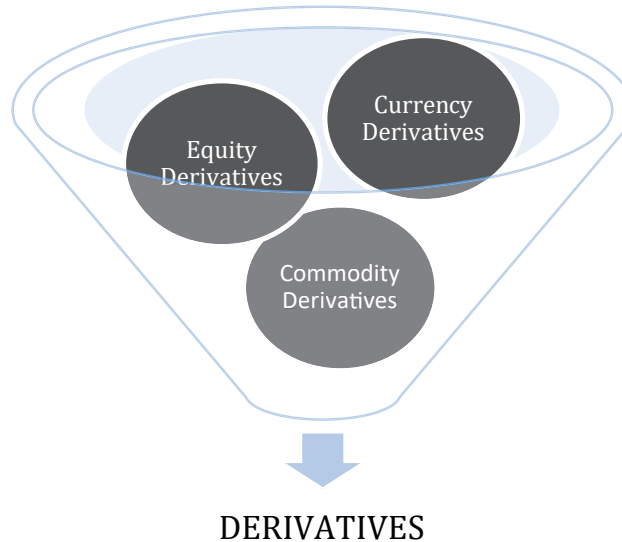
Derivative

Derivative includes –

- (a) a security derived from a debt instrument, share, loan, whether secured or unsecured, risk instrument or contract for differences or any other form of security;
- (b) a contract which derives its value from the prices or index of prices, of underlying securities;
- (c) commodity derivatives; and
- (d) such other instruments as may be declared by the Central Government to be derivatives.

“commodity derivative” means a contract –

- (i) for the delivery of such goods, as may be notified by the Central Government in the Official Gazette, and which is not a ready delivery contract; or
- (ii) for differences, which derives its value from prices or indices of prices of such underlying goods or activities, services, rights, interests and events, as may be notified by the Central Government, in consultation with the SEBI, but does not include securities as referred to in sub-clauses (A) and (B) above.



Securities Appellate Tribunal

Securities Appellate Tribunal means a Securities Appellate Tribunal established under sub-section (1) of section 15K of the Securities and Exchange Board of India Act, 1992.

Member

Member means a member of a recognised stock exchange;

NON-APPLICABILITY

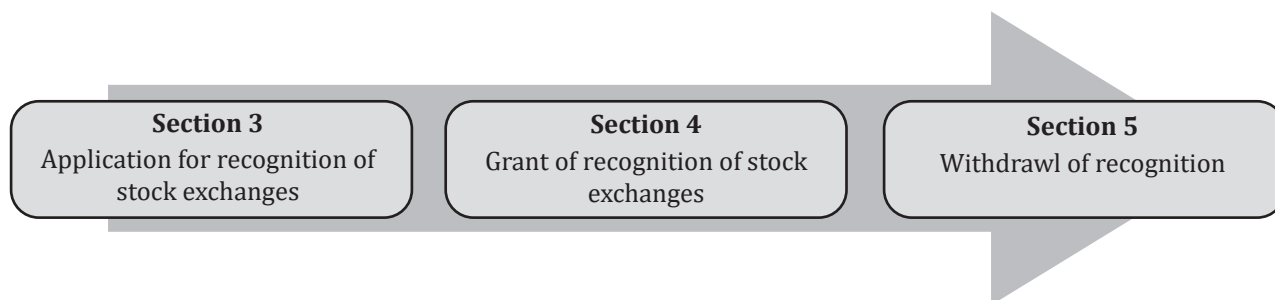
Section 28 provides that the provisions of SCRA shall not apply to -

the Government, the Reserve Bank of India, any local authority or any corporation set up by a special law.

any convertible bond or share warrant or any option or right, in so far as it entitles the person in whose favour any of the foregoing has been issued, whether by conversion of the bond or warrant or otherwise, on the basis of the price agreed upon when the same was issued.

the Central Government, in the interest of trade and commerce or the economic development of the country, may specify any class of contracts as contracts to which this Act or any provision contained therein shall not apply.

RECOGNITION OF STOCK EXCHANGES



Application for recognition of stock exchange

Section 3 lays down that any stock exchange, desirous of being recognized for the purposes of this Act may make an application in the prescribed manner to the Central Government. Every application shall contain such particulars as may be prescribed, and shall be accompanied by a copy of the bye-laws of the stock exchange for the regulation and control of contracts and also a copy of the rules relating in general to the constitution of the stock exchange and in particular to –

- (a) the governing body of such stock exchange, its constitution and powers of management and the manner in which its business is to be transacted;
- (b) the powers and duties of the office bearers of the stock exchange;
- (c) the admission into the stock exchange of various classes of members, the qualifications, for membership, and the exclusion, suspension, expulsion and re-admission of members therefrom or thereinto;
- (d) the procedure for the registration of partnerships as members of the stock exchange in cases where the rules provide for such membership; and the nomination and appointment of authorized representatives and clerks.

Grant of recognition to stock exchange

Section 4 lays down that if the Central Government is satisfied (powers are exercisable by SEBI also) after making such inquiry as may be necessary in this behalf and after obtaining such further information, if any, as it may require;

- (a) that the rules and bye-laws of a stock exchange applying for registration are in conformity with such conditions as may be prescribed with a view to ensure fair dealing and to protect investors;
- (b) that the stock exchange is willing to comply with any other conditions (including conditions as to the number of members) which the Central Government, after consultation with the governing body of the stock exchange and having regard to the area served by the stock exchange and its standing and the nature of the securities dealt with by it, may impose for the purpose of carrying out the objects of this Act; and
- (c) that it would be in the interest of the trade and also in the public interest to grant recognition to the stock exchange;

It may grant recognition to the stock exchange subject to the conditions imposed upon it as aforesaid and in such form as may be prescribed.

The conditions which the Central Government (powers are exercisable by SEBI also) may prescribe for the grant of recognition to the stock exchanges may include, among other matters, conditions relating to-

- (i) the qualifications for membership of stock exchanges;
- (ii) the manner in which contracts shall be entered into and enforced as between members;
- (iii) the representation of the Central Government on each of the stock exchange by such number of persons not exceeding three as the Central Government may nominate in this behalf; and
- (iv) the maintenance of accounts of members and their audit by chartered accountants whenever such audit is required by the Central Government.

Every grant of recognition to a stock exchange under this section shall be published in the Gazette of India and also in the Official Gazette of the State in which the principal office of the stock exchange is situated, and such recognition shall have effect as from the date of its publication in the Gazette of India.

No application for the grant of recognition shall be refused except after giving an opportunity to the stock exchange concerned to be heard in the matter; and the reasons for such refusal shall be communicated to the stock exchange in writing.

Withdrawal of recognition

Section 5 lays down that if the Central Government is of opinion that the recognition granted to a stock exchange should in the interest of the trade or in the public interest, be withdrawn, the Central Government may serve on the governing body of the stock exchange a written notice that the Central Government is considering the withdrawal of the recognition for the reasons stated in the notice and after giving an opportunity to the governing body to be heard in the matter, the Central Government may withdraw, by notification in the Official Gazette, the recognition granted to the stock exchange.

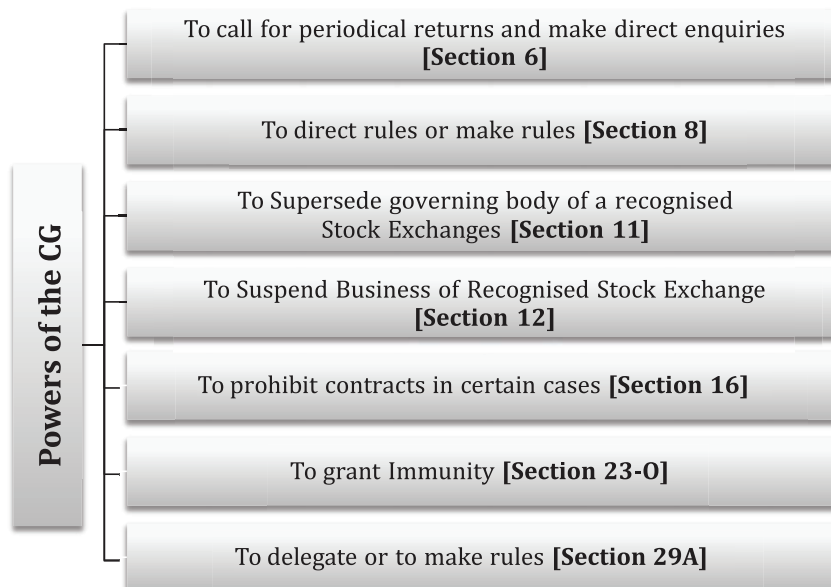
However, the withdrawal shall not affect the validity of any contract entered into or made before the date of the notification, and the Central Government may, after consultation with the stock exchange, make such provision as it deems fit in the notification of withdrawal or in any subsequent notification similarly published for the due performance of any contracts outstanding on that date.

Where the recognized stock exchange has not been corporatized or demutualised or it fails to submit the scheme within the specified time therefore or the scheme has been rejected by the SEBI, the recognition granted to such stock exchange, shall, stand withdrawn and the Central Government shall publish, by notification in the Official Gazette, such withdrawal of recognition.

However, such withdrawal shall not affect the validity of any contract entered into or made before the date of the notification, and SEBI may, after consultation with the stock exchange, make such provisions as it deems fit in the order rejecting the scheme published in the Official Gazette.

It is to be noted that the powers under Section 4 and Section 5 have been delegated concurrently to SEBI also. Hence, SEBI may exercise these powers.

POWERS OF CENTRAL GOVERNMENT



To call for periodical returns and make direct enquiries

Every recognised stock exchange shall furnish to the SEBI, such periodical returns relating to its affairs as may be prescribed.

Every recognised stock exchange and every member thereof shall maintain and preserve for not exceeding five years such books of accounts, and other documents as the Central Government, after consultation with the stock exchange concerned, may prescribe in the interest of the trade or in the public interest, and such books of account, and other documents shall be subject to inspection to all reasonable times by SEBI.

The Securities and Exchange Board of India, if it is satisfied that it is in the interest of the trade or in the public interest so to do, may, by order in writing,–

- (a) call upon a recognised stock exchange or any member thereof to furnish in writing such information or explanation relating to the affairs of the stock exchange or of the member in relation to the stock exchange as the SEBI may require; or
- (b) appoint one or more persons to make an inquiry in the prescribed manner in relation to the affairs of the governing body of a stock exchange or the affairs of any of the members of the stock exchange in relation to the stock exchange and submit a report of the result of such inquiry to the SEBI within such time as may be specified in the order or, in the case of an inquiry in relation to the affairs of any of the members of a stock exchange, direct the governing body to make the inquiry and submit its report to the SEBI;

Where an inquiry in relation to the affairs of a recognised stock exchange or the affairs of any of its members in relation to the stock exchange has been undertaken:

- (a) every director, manager, secretary or other officer of such stock exchange;
- (b) every member of such stock exchange;
- (c) if the member of the stock exchange is a firm, every partner, manager, secretary or other officer of the firm; and
- (d) every other person or body of persons who has had dealings in the course of business with any of the persons mentioned in clauses (a), (b) and (c), whether directly or indirectly;

shall be bound to produce before the authority making the inquiry all such books of account, and other documents in his custody or power relating to or having a bearing on the subject-matter of such inquiry and also to furnish the authorities within such time as may be specified with any such statement or information relating thereto as may be required of him.

To Direct Rules or make Rules

Section 8 deals with the power of Central Government to make rules or direct rules to be made in respect of recognised stock exchange. Where, after consultation with the governing bodies of stock exchanges generally or with the governing body of any stock exchange in particular, the Central Government is of opinion that it is necessary or expedient so to do, it may, by order in writing together with a statement of the reasons therefor, direct the recognised stock exchanges generally or any recognised stock exchange in particular, as the case may be, to make any rules or to amend any rules already made in respect of all or any of the matters or to amend any rules already made in respect of all or any of the matters as specified, within a period of two months from the date of the order.

If any recognised stock exchange fails or neglects to comply with any order, within the period specified therein, the Central Government may make the rules for, or amend the rules made by, the recognised stock exchange, either in the form proposed in the order or with such modifications thereof as may be agreed to between the stock exchange and the Central Government.

Where in pursuance of this section any rules have been made or amended, the rules so made or amended shall be published in the Gazette of India and also in the Official Gazette or Gazettes of the State or States in which the principal office or offices of the recognised stock exchange or exchanges is or are situate, and, on the publication thereof in the Gazette of India, the rules so made or amended shall, notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained in the Companies Act, 2013 or in any other law for the time being in force, have effect as if they had been made or amended by the recognised stock exchange or stock exchanges, as the case may be.

To Supersede governing bodies of a recognised stock exchange

Without prejudice to any other powers vested in the Central Government under this Act, where the Central Government is of opinion that the governing body of any recognised stock exchange should be superseded, then, the Central Government may serve on the governing body a written notice that the Central Government is considering the supersession of the governing body for the reasons specified in the notice and after giving an opportunity to the governing body to be heard in the matter, it may, by notification in the Official Gazette, declare the governing body of such stock exchange to be superseded, and may appoint any person or persons to exercise and perform all the powers and duties of the governing body, and, where more persons than one are appointed, may appoint one of such persons to be the chairman and another to be the vice-chairman thereof.

On the publication of a notification in the Official Gazette, the following consequences shall ensure, namely –

- (a) the members of the governing body which has been superseded shall, as from the date of the notification of supersession, cease to hold office as such members;
- (b) the person or persons appointed may exercise and perform all the powers and duties of the governing body which has been superseded;
- (c) all such property of the recognised stock exchange as the person or persons appointed may, by order in writing, specify in this behalf as being necessary for the purpose of enabling him or them to carry on the business of the stock exchange, shall vest in such person or persons.

The governing body of which is superseded, the person or persons appointed shall hold office for such period as may be specified in the notification published and, the Central Government may from time to time, by notification, vary such period.

The Central Government, may at any time before the determination of the period of office of any person or persons appointed call upon the recognised stock exchange to reconstitute the governing body in accordance with its rules and on such re-constitution all the property of the recognised stock exchange which has vested in, or was in the possession of, the person or persons appointed, shall vest or re-vest, as the case may be, in the governing body so re-constituted;

However, until a governing body is so re-constituted, the person or persons appointed, shall continue to exercise and perform their powers and duties.

To Suspend business of Recognised Stock Exchange

If in the opinion of the Central Government, an emergency has arisen and for the purpose of meeting the emergency, the Central Government considers it expedient so to do, it may, by notification in the Official Gazette, for reasons to be set out therein, direct a recognised stock exchange to suspend such of its business for such period not exceeding seven days and subject to such conditions as may be specified in the notification, and if, in the opinion of the Central Government, the interest of the trade or the public interest requires that the period should be extended, may, by like notification extend the said period from time to time.

However, where the period of suspension is to be extended beyond the first period, no notification extending the period of suspension shall be issued unless the governing body of the recognised stock exchange has been given an opportunity of being heard in the matter.

To Prohibit Contracts in Certain Cases

Section 16 stipulates that if the Central Government is of opinion that it is necessary to prevent undesirable speculation in specified securities in any State or area, it may, by notification in the Official Gazette, declare that no person in the State or area specified in the notification shall, save with the permission of the Central Government, enter into any contract for the sale or purchase of any security specified in the notification except to the extent and in the manner, if any, specified therein.

All contracts in contravention of the above provisions entered into after the date of the notification issued thereunder shall be illegal.

To Grant Immunity

Section 23-O deals with the power to grant immunity. The Central Government may, on recommendation by the SEBI, if the Central Government is satisfied, that any person, who is alleged to have violated any of the provisions of this Act or the rules or the regulations made thereunder, has made a full and true disclosure in respect of alleged violation, grant to such person, subject to such conditions as it may think fit to impose, immunity from prosecution for any offence under this Act, or the rules or the regulations made thereunder or also from the imposition of any penalty under this Act with respect to the alleged violation.

However, no such immunity shall be granted by the Central Government in cases where the proceedings for the prosecution for any such offence have been instituted before the date of receipt of application for grant of such immunity. Provided further that the recommendation of the SEBI are not binding upon the Central Government.

An immunity granted to a person as mentioned above may, at any time, be withdrawn by the Central Government, if it is satisfied that such person had, in the course of the proceedings, not complied with the condition on which the immunity was granted or had given false evidence, and thereupon such person may be tried for the offence with respect to which the immunity was granted or for any other offence of which he appears to have been guilty in connection with the contravention and shall also become liable to the imposition of any penalty under this Act to which such person would have been liable, had not such immunity been granted.

To Delegate or to Make Rules

Power to Delegate

Section 29A stipulates that the Central Government may, by order published in the Official Gazette, direct that the powers (except the power under section 30) exercisable by it under any provision of this Act shall, in relation to such matters and subject to such conditions, if any, as may be specified in the order, be exercisable also by the Securities and Exchange Board of India or the Reserve Bank of India constituted under section 3 of the Reserve Bank of India Act, 1934.

Power to Make Rules

Section 30 empowers the Central Government to make rules for the purpose of carrying into effect the objects of this Act by notification in the Official Gazette.

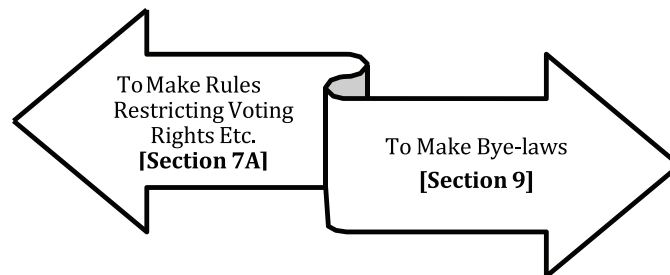
In particular, such rules may provide for,—

- (a) the manner in which applications may be made, the particulars which they should contain and the levy of a fee in respect of such applications;
- (b) the manner in which any inquiry for the purpose of recognising any stock exchange may be made, the conditions which may be imposed for the grant of such recognition, including conditions as to the admission of members if the stock exchange concerned is to be the only recognised stock exchange in the area; and the form in which such recognition shall be granted;
- (c) the particulars which should be contained in the periodical returns and annual reports to be furnished to the Central Government;
- (d) the documents which should be maintained and preserved under section 6 and the periods for which they should be preserved;
- (e) the manner in which any inquiry by the governing body of a stock exchange shall be made under section 6;
- (f) the manner in which the bye-laws to be made or amended under this Act shall before being so made or amended be published for criticism;
- (g) the manner in which applications may be made by dealers in securities for licences under section 17, the fee payable in respect thereof and the period of such licences, the conditions subject to which licences may be granted, including conditions relating to the forms which may be used in making contracts, the documents to be maintained by licensed dealers and the furnishing of periodical information to such authority as may be specified and the revocation of licences for breach of conditions;
- (h) the requirements which shall be complied with—

- (A) by public companies for the purpose of getting their securities listed on any stock exchange;
- (B) by collective investment scheme for the purpose of getting their units listed on any stock exchange;
- (ha) the grounds on which the securities of a company may be delisted from any recognised stock exchange under sub-section (1) of section 21A;
- (hb) the form in which an appeal may be filed before the Securities Appellate Tribunal under sub-section (2) of section 21A and the fees payable in respect of such appeal;
- (hc) the form in which an appeal may be filed before the Securities Appellate Tribunal under section 22A and the fees payable in respect of such appeal;
- (hd) the manner of inquiry under sub-section (1) of section 23-I;
- (he) the form in which an appeal may be filed before the Securities Appellate Tribunal under section 23L and the fees payable in respect of such appeal;
- (i) any other matter which is to be or may be prescribed.

Every rule made under this Act shall be laid, as soon as may be after it is made, before each House of Parliament, while it is in session, for a total period of thirty days which may be comprised in one session or in two or more successive sessions, and if, before the expiry of the session immediately following the session or the successive sessions aforesaid, both Houses agree in making any modification in the rule or both Houses agree that the rule should not be made, the rule shall thereafter have effect only in such modified form or be of no effect, as the case may be; so, however, that any such modification or annulment shall be without prejudice to the validity of anything previously done under that rule.

POWERS OF RECOGNISED STOCK EXCHANGE



To make Rules restricting voting rights etc.

Section 7A of the Act stipulates that a recognised stock exchange may make rules or amend any rules made by it to provide for all or any of the following matters, namely: –

- (a) the restriction of voting rights to members only in respect of any matter placed before the stock exchange at any meeting;
- (b) the regulation of voting rights in respect of any matter placed before the stock exchange at any meeting so that each member may be entitled to have one vote only, irrespective of his share of the paid-up equity capital of the stock exchange;
- (c) the restriction on the right of a member to appoint another person as his proxy to attend and vote at a meeting of the stock exchange; and
- (d) such incidental, consequential and supplementary matters as may be necessary to give effect to any of the matters specified in clauses (a) (b) and (c).

Powers have been delegated concurrently to SEBI also.

No rules of a recognised stock exchange made or amended in relation to any matter referred to in clauses (a) to (d) shall have effect until they have been approved by the Central Government (Powers are exercisable by SEBI also) and published by that Government in the Official Gazette.

To make Bye-laws

Section 9 of the Act provides that any recognised stock exchange may, subject to the previous approval of the SEBI, make bye-laws for the regulation and control of contracts.

In particular, such bye-laws may provide for :

- (a) the opening and closing of markets and the regulation of the hours of trade;
- (b) a clearing house for the periodical settlement of contracts and differences thereunder, the delivery of and payment for securities, the passing on of delivery orders and the regulation and maintenance of such clearing house;
- (c) the submission to the Securities and Exchange Board of India by the clearing house as soon as may be after each periodical settlement of all or any of the following particulars as the Securities and Exchange Board of India may, from time to time, require, namely:—
 - (i) the total number of each category of security carried over from one settlement period to another;
 - (ii) the total number of each category of security, contracts in respect of which have been squared up during the course of each settlement period;
 - (iii) the total number of each category of security actually delivered at each clearing;
- (d) the publication by the clearing house of all or any of the particulars submitted to the Securities and Exchange Board of India under clause (c) subject to the directions, if any, issued by the Securities and Exchange Board of India in this behalf;
- (e) the regulation or prohibition of blank transfers;
- (f) the number and classes of contracts in respect of which settlements shall be made or differences paid through the clearing house;
- (g) the regulation, or prohibition of budlas or carry-over facilities;
- (h) the fixing, altering or postponing of days for settlements;
- (i) the determination and declaration of market rates, including the opening, closing highest and lowest rates for securities;
- (j) the terms, conditions and incidents of contracts, including the prescription of margin requirements, if any, and conditions relating thereto, and the forms of contracts in writing;
- (k) the regulation of the entering into, making, performance, rescission and termination, of contracts, including contracts between members or between a member and his constituent or between a member and a person who is not a member, and the consequences of default or insolvency on the part of a seller or buyer or intermediary, the consequences of a breach or omission by a seller or buyer, and the responsibility of members who are not parties to such contracts;
- (l) the regulation of taravani business including the placing of limitations thereon;
- (m) the listing of securities on the stock exchange, the inclusion of any security for the purpose of dealings and the suspension or withdrawal of any such securities, and the suspension or prohibition of trading in any specified securities;
- (n) the method and procedure for the settlement of claims or disputes, including settlement by arbitration;
- (o) the levy and recovery of fees, fines and penalties;
- (p) the regulation of the course of business between parties to contracts in any capacity;
- (q) the fixing of a scale of brokerage and other charges;
- (r) the making, comparing, settling and closing of bargains;
- (s) the emergencies in trade which may arise, whether as a result of pool or syndicated operations or cornering or otherwise, and the exercise of powers in such emergencies, including the power to fix maximum and minimum prices for securities;

- (t) the regulation of dealings by members for their own account;
- (u) the separation of the functions of jobbers and brokers;
- (v) the limitations on the volume of trade done by any individual member in exceptional circumstances;
- (w) the obligation of members to supply such information or explanation and to produce such documents relating to the business as the governing body may require.

PUNISHMENTS FOR CONTRAVENTIONS

Section 9(3) of the Act provides that the bye-laws made may :

- (a) specify the bye-laws, the contravention of which shall make a contract entered into otherwise than in accordance with the bye- laws void.
- (b) provide that the contravention of any of the bye-laws shall render the member concerned liable to one or more of the following punishments, namely;
 - (i) fine,
 - (ii) expulsion from membership,
 - (iii) suspension from membership for a specified period,
 - (iv) any other penalty of a like nature not involving the payment of money.

Any bye-laws shall be subject to such conditions in regard to previous publication as may be prescribed, and, when approved by the SEBI, shall be published in the Gazette of India and also in the Official Gazette of the State in which the principal office of the recognised stock exchange is situated, and shall have effect as from the date of its publication in the Gazette of India.

However, if the SEBI is satisfied in any case that in the interest of the trade or in the public interest any bye-laws should be made immediately, it may, by order in writing specify the reasons therefor, dispense with the condition of previous publication.

CASE LAWS

1.	21.02.2020	<i>Pacific Finstock Ltd. (Appellant) vs. BSE Ltd. (Respondent)</i>	<i>Securities Appellate Tribunal</i>
----	------------	--	--------------------------------------

For listing of a security, the listing norms as on date of Application filed alone is required to be consider but status of the directors/ promoters of the company are required to be considered on the date of the passing of the order on the listing application.

Facts of the case

The appellant has filed the present appeal being aggrieved by the BSE Limited (BSE) order dated August 02, 2019 ("BSE") rejecting the listing application. The facts leading to the filing of the present appeal are:

- The appellant was a listed company on the Vadodara Stock Exchange and Ahmedabad Stock Exchange but subsequently it came on the Dissemination Board* of the BSE and remained on the Dissemination Board for the last several years.

Dissemination Board -

BSE has launched a Dissemination Board mechanism on BSE India website (www.bseindia.com) enabling dissemination of bids/Offer placed by buyers and sellers of securities of companies that are listed exclusively on exiting or de-recognised Regional Stock Exchanges using the services of the Trading Members of BSE.

- **SEBI Circular for Exclusively listed companies of De-recognized/Non-operational/exited Stock Exchanges placed in the Dissemination Board (DB)**

SEBI issued a Circular dated October 10, 2016 by which the companies which were on the Dissemination Board were required to get their company listed on nationwide stock exchange or provide an exit opportunity to existing shareholders.

- In terms of this Circular, the appellant submitted a plan of action to BSE for direct listing.
- In the meanwhile, the promoters/ directors of the appellant company were debarred from accessing the securities market vide SEBI's order dated September 28, 2019 passed in the matter of Kavay Industries Ltd. This fact was brought to the notice of the appellant and sought clarification as to how the company is required to comply with the requirements for direct listing of its securities. It transpires that the company vide letter dated May 18, 2019 intimated that two of its directors have resigned with effect from April 15, 2019.
- BSE after considering the aforesaid response, found that one of its promoters continued to remain as the promoter of the company inspite of being debarred by SEBI and therefore, the direct listing requirements norms had not been complied with. Accordingly, the listing application was rejected.

SAT ORDER

The appeal fails and is dismissed.

In the instant case, the debarment was in direct conflict when the norms stipulated for considering the listing agreement. Such order of SEBI of debarment of one of the promoters was brought to the knowledge of the company. The said listing requirements norms were not rectified and consequently the BSE had no option but to reject the listing application. The said order does not suffer from any manifest error of law and requires no interference.

There is no dispute on this proposition namely that the listing norms that was in force on the date when the application was filed was alone required to be considered. Subsequent norms or amended norms or regulations are not required to be considered. However, the status of the directors/ promoters of the company are required to be considered on the date of the passing of the order on the listing application. If on the date when the listing application was being considered the promoters/ directors of the company committed default and thereby incurred a debarment from accessing the securities market then it was imperative upon the authority to consider such debarment while considering the listing application.

2.	03.12.2019	<i>Karvy Stock Broking Limited (Appellant) vs. National Stock Exchange of India (Respondent)</i>	<i>Securities Appellate Tribunal</i>
----	------------	--	--------------------------------------

Facts of the case

- The present appeal was filed by the appellant seeking quashment of the NSE order/circular dated December 2, 2019. Vide the said circular respondent NSE had suspended the present appellant from its membership due to the alleged non compliance of the regulatory provisions of the Exchange.
- Learned counsel for the respondent raised objection on the maintainability of the present appeal on the ground that the equally efficacious remedy is available to the appellant under National Stock Exchange of India Ltd. Rules. He therefore submitted that the appeal be not entertained.

SAT ORDER

The Rules are framed by respondent NSE in exercise of the powers of the Section 9 of the SCRA. The appellant has equally efficacious remedy to challenge the impugned order before the relevant authority of the respondent NSE. SAT did not find any reason to entertain the appeal.

Learned Senior counsel for the respondent submitted that the appeal, if any, filed by the appellant with the respondent, they would be heard expeditiously by convening meeting of the relevant authority. There is no need to bypass the statutory Rules. At this stage, learned counsel for the appellant submitted that the appellant may be provided with liberty to seek documents from the respondent. SAT did not find any hitch in acceding to the said request. The respondent shall supply the documents or grant inspection of the same relevant to the dispute.

For the reasons stated above, the appeal is disposed of. Appellant would be at liberty to file an appeal as provided by Rule 13A(d) of the NSE Rules.

CLEARING CORPORATION

Role of Clearing Corporation

Clearing Corporation is responsible:-

- for clearing and settlement of all trades executed on Stock Exchange and deposit and collateral management and risk management functions;
- to bring and sustain confidence in clearing and settlement of securities;
- to promote and maintain, short and consistent settlement cycles;
- to provide counter-party risk guarantee, and
- to operate a tight risk containment system.

Section 8A(1) provides that a recognised stock exchange may, with the prior approval of the SEBI, transfer the duties and functions of a clearing house to a clearing corporation, being a company incorporated under the Companies Act, 2013, for the purpose of –

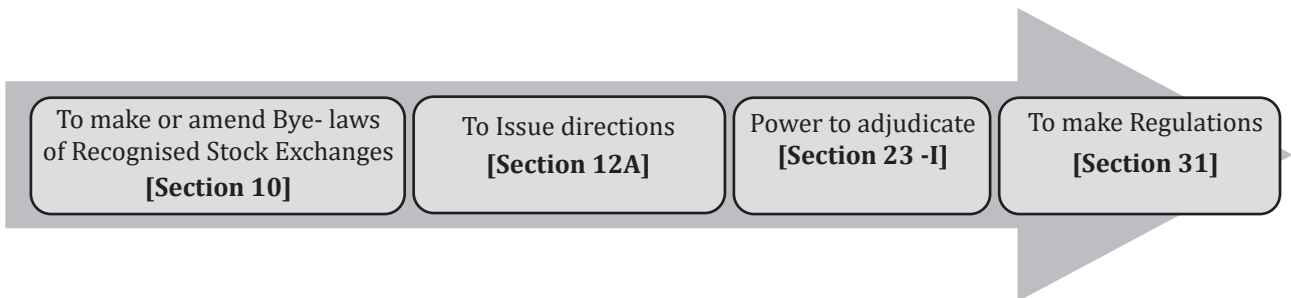
- the periodical settlement of contracts and differences thereunder;
- the delivery of, and payment for, securities;
- any other matter incidental to, or connected with, such transfer.

Every clearing corporation shall, for the purpose of transfer of the duties and functions of a clearing house to a clearing corporation, make bye-laws and submit the same to the SEBI for its approval.

SEBI may, on being satisfied that it is in the interest of the trade and also in the public interest to transfer the duties and functions of a clearing house to a clearing corporation, grant approval to the bye-laws submitted to it and approve transfer of the duties and functions of a clearing house to a clearing corporation.



POWERS OF THE SEBI



To make or amend Bye-laws of Recognised Stock Exchanges

The SEBI may, either on a request in writing received by it in this behalf from the governing body of a recognised stock exchange or on its own motion, if it is satisfied after consultation with the governing body of the stock exchange that it is necessary or expedient so to do and after recording its reasons for so doing, make bye-laws, for all or any of the matters specified in section 9 or amend any bye-laws made by such stock exchange under that section.

Where in pursuance of this section any bye-laws have been made or amended, the bye-laws so made or amended shall be published in the Gazette of India and also in the Official Gazette of the State in which the principal office of the recognised stock exchange is situated, and on the publication thereof in the Gazette of India, the bye-laws so made or amended shall have effect as if they had been made or amended by the recognised stock exchange concerned.

Where the governing body of a recognised stock exchange objects to any bye-laws made or amended by SEBI on its own motion, it may, within two months of the publication thereof in the Gazette of India apply to SEBI for revision thereof and SEBI may, after giving an opportunity to the governing body of the stock exchange to be heard in the matter, revise the bye-laws so made or amended, and where any bye-laws so made or amended are revised as a result of any action taken under this sub-section, the bye-laws so revised shall be published and shall become effective.

The making or the amendment or revision of any bye-laws shall in all cases be subject to the condition of previous publication.

However, if the SEBI is satisfied in any case that in the interest of the trade or in the public interest any bye-laws should be made, amended or revised immediately, it may, by order in writing specifying the reasons therefor, dispense with the condition of previous publication.

To Issue Directions

Section 12A provides that if, after making or causing to be made an inquiry, the SEBI is satisfied that it is necessary—

- (a) in the interest of investors, or orderly development of securities market; or
- (b) to prevent the affairs of any recognised stock exchange, or, clearing corporation, or such other agency or person, providing trading or clearing or settlement facility in respect of securities, being conducted in a manner detrimental to the interests of investors or securities market; or
- (c) to secure the proper management of any such stock exchange or clearing corporation or agency or person, referred to in clause(b).

it may issue such directions –

- (i) to any stock exchange or clearing corporation or agency or person referred to in clause (b) or any person or class of persons associated with the securities market; or
- (ii) to any company whose securities are listed or proposed to be listed in a recognised stock exchange, as may be appropriate in the interests of investors in securities and the securities market.

Explanation : The power to issue directions under this section shall include and always be deemed to have been included the power to direct any person, who made profit or averted loss by indulging in any transaction or activity in contravention of the provisions of this Act or regulations made there under, to disgorge an amount equivalent to the wrongful gain made or loss averted by such contraventions.

Without prejudice to the provisions of section 12 A(1) and section 23-I, the SEBI may, by an order, for reasons to be recorded in writing, levy penalty under sections 23A, 23B, 23C, 23D, 23E, 23F, 23G, 23GA and 23H after holding an inquiry in the prescribed manner.

To make Regulations

The SEBI may, by notification in the Official Gazette, make regulations consistent with the provisions of this Act and the rules made thereunder to carry out the purposes of this Act.

In particular, and without prejudice to the generality of the foregoing power, such regulations may provide for all or any of the following matter namely :

- (a) the manner, in which at least fifty-one percent of equity share capital of a recognised stock exchange is held, within twelve months from the date of publication of the order under sub-section (7), of Section 4B by the public other than shareholders having trading rights under sub-section (8) of that section;
- (b) the eligibility criteria and other requirements under Section 17A;
- (c) the terms determined by the SEBI Board for settlement of proceeding under sub-section (2) of section 23JA and
- (d) any other matter which is required to be, or may be, specified by regulations or in respect of which provision is to be made by regulation.

Every regulation made under this Act shall be laid, as soon as may be after it is made, before each House of Parliament, while it is in session for a total period of thirty days which may be comprised in one session or in two or more successive sessions, and if, before the expiry of the session immediately following the session or the successive sessions aforesaid, both Houses agree in making any modification in the regulation or both Houses agree that the regulation should not be made, the regulation shall thereafter have effect only in such modified form or be of no effect, as the case may be; so, however, that any such modification or annulment shall be without prejudice to the validity of anything previously done under that regulation.



To adjudicate

Section 23-I deals with power to adjudicate by the SEBI.

The SEBI may appoint any officer not below the rank of a Division Chief of SEBI to be an adjudicating officer for holding an inquiry in the prescribed manner after giving any person concerned a reasonable opportunity of being heard for the purpose of imposing any penalty.

While holding an inquiry, the adjudicating officer shall have power to summon and enforce the attendance of any person acquainted with the facts and circumstances of the case to give evidence or to produce any document, which in the opinion of the adjudicating officer, may be useful for or relevant to the subject-matter of the inquiry and if, on such inquiry, he is satisfied that the person has failed to comply with the provisions, he may impose such penalty as he thinks fit in accordance with the provisions of this Act.

The SEBI may call for and examine the record of any proceedings under this section and if it considers that the order passed by the adjudicating officer is erroneous to the extent it is not in the interests of the securities market, it may, after making or causing to be made such inquiry as it deems necessary, pass an order enhancing the quantum of penalty, if the circumstances of the case so justify. However, no such order shall be passed unless the person concerned has been given an opportunity of being heard in the matter.

Further, nothing contained in this sub-section shall be applicable after an expiry of a period of three months from the date of the order passed by the adjudicating officer or disposal of the appeal, whichever is earlier.

Extracts from SEBI Order dated 20th August 2020 in the matter of The Orissa Minerals Development Co. Ltd. [ADJUDICATION ORDER NO. Order/GR/KG/2020-21/8680-8682]

SEBI Adjudication Order:

SEBI, in exercise of the powers conferred under Section 15-I of the SEBI Act read with Rule 5 of the Adjudication Rules, 1995 and **Section 23-I of the SC(R) Act, 1956** read with Rule 5 of the Adjudication Rules, 2005, imposed a total penalty of Rs. 2,00,000/- (Rupees Two Lacs only) under Section 15HB of the SEBI Act, 1992 and Section 23A(a) of the Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, 1956, on the Noticees i.e. The Orissa Minerals Development Co. Ltd., Dr. Satish Chandra and Ms. Sucharita Das for violation of Clause 2.1 of Code of Corporate Disclosure Practice for Prevention of Insider Trading contained in Schedule II to Regulation 12(2) of the PIT Regulations, 1992 and also against The Orissa Minerals Development Co. Ltd for violation of Clause 36 of Listing Agreement read with Section 21 of SCRA.

Powers of SEBI not to apply to International Financial Services Centre.

The powers exercisable by the SEBI under this Act,—

(a) shall not extend to an International Financial Services Centre set up under subsection (1) of section 18 of the Special Economic Zones Act, 2005;

(b) shall be exercisable by the International Financial Services Centres Authority established under sub-section (1) of section 4 of the International Financial Services Centres Authority Act, 2019,

in so far as regulation of financial products, financial services and financial institutions that are permitted in the International Financial Services Centres are concerned.

ADDITIONAL TRADING FLOOR

Section 13A stipulates that a stock exchange may establish additional trading floor with the prior approval of the Securities and Exchange Board of India in accordance with the terms and conditions stipulated by the SEBI.

“Additional Trading Floor” means a trading ring or trading facility offered by a recognised stock exchange outside its area of operation to enable the investors to buy and sell securities through such trading floor under the regulatory framework of that stock exchange.

LICENSING OF DEALERS IN CERTAIN AREAS

Section 17 provides that no person shall carry on or purport to carry on, whether on his own or on behalf of any other person, the business of dealing in securities, except under the authority of a license granted by the SEBI in this behalf.

PUBLIC ISSUE AND LISTING OF SECURITIES

Section 17A provides for public issue and listing of securities referred to in sub-clause (ie) of clause (h) of section 2.

Section 2(h)(ie) provides that any certificate or instrument (by whatever name called), issued to an investor by any issuer being a special purpose distinct entity which possesses any debt or receivable, including mortgage debt, assigned to such entity, and acknowledging beneficial interest of such investor in such debt or receivable, including mortgage debt, as the case may be.

- No securities of the nature referred to in sub-clause (ie) of clause (h) of section 2 shall be offered to the public or listed on any recognized stock exchange unless the issuer fulfil such eligibility criteria and complies with such other requirements as may be specified by regulations made by the SEBI.
- Every issuer intending to offer the certificates or instruments referred therein to the public shall make an application, before issuing the offer document to the public, to one or more recognized stock exchanges for permission for such certificates or instruments to be listed on the stock exchange or each such stock exchange.
- Where the permission applied for listing has not been granted or refused by the recognized stock exchanges or any of them, the issuer shall forthwith repay all moneys, if any, received from applicants in pursuance of the offer document, and if any such money is not repaid within 8 days after the issuer becomes liable to repay it, the issuer and every director or trustee thereof, as the case may be, who is in default shall, on and from the expiry of the eighth day, be jointly and severally liable to repay that money with interest at the rate of fifteen percent per annum.

In reckoning the eighth day after another day, any intervening day which is a public holiday under the Negotiable Instruments Act, 1881, shall be disregarded, and if the eighth day (as so reckoned) is itself such a public holiday, there shall for the said purposes be substituted the first day thereafter which is not a holiday.

- All the provisions of this Act relating to listing of securities of a public company on a recognized stock exchange shall, *mutatis mutandis*, apply to the listing of the securities of the nature referred to in sub-clause (ie) of clause of section 2 by the issuer, being a special purpose distinct entity.

CONTRACTS IN DERIVATIVES

Section 18A stipulates that notwithstanding anything contained in any other law for the time being in force, contracts in derivative shall be legal and valid if such contracts are –

- traded on a recognised stock exchange;
- settled on the clearing house of the recognised stock exchange, or in accordance with the rules and bye-laws of such stock-exchange;
- between such parties and on such terms as the Central Government may, by notification in the official Gazette, specify.

STOCK EXCHANGES OTHER THAN RECOGNISED STOCK EXCHANGES PROHIBITED

Section 19 of the Act stipulates that no person shall, except with the permission of the Central Government, organise or assist in organising or be a member of any stock exchange (other than a recognised stock exchange) for the purpose of assisting in, entering into or performing any contracts in securities.

This section shall come into force in any State or area on such date as the Central Government may, by notification in the Official Gazette, appoint.

LISTING OF SECURITIES

Conditions for Listing

Section 21 of the Act provides that where securities are listed on the application of any person in any recognised stock exchange, such person shall comply with the conditions of the SEBI (Listing Obligations and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations.

Extracts from SEBI Order dated 20th August 2020 in the matter of The Orissa Minerals Development Co. Ltd.

[ADJUDICATION ORDER NO. Order/GR/KG/2020-21/8680-8682]

SEBI conducted investigation into the alleged delayed disclosure of the price sensitive information by The Orissa Minerals Development Company Ltd., (“OMDC/Company”), in the scrip of OMDC, to the Stock Exchanges (“BSE” and “NSE”) for alleged violation of provisions of the SEBI Act, 1992 and SEBI (Prohibition of Insider Trading) Regulations, 1992 during the investigation period July 02, 2012 to August 10, 2012.

The OMDC, Dr. Satish Chandra (Managing Director) and Ms. Sucharita Das (Company Secretary) has made belated disclosure to the stock exchanges of the important price sensitive information. Therefore, SEBI hold that they have violated the provisions of Clause 2.1 of the Code of Corporate Disclosure Practice for Prevention of Insider Trading contained in Schedule II read with Regulation 12(2) of the PIT Regulations, 1992. Further, OMDC, also violated Clause 36 of the Listing Agreement **read with Section 21 of Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, 1956**

DELISTING OF SECURITIES

Section 21A provides that a recognised stock exchange may delist the securities, after recording the reasons therefor, from any recognised stock exchange on any of the ground or grounds as may be prescribed under this Act.

The securities of a company shall not be delisted unless the company concerned has been given a reasonable opportunity of being heard.

A listed company or an aggrieved investor may file an appeal before the Securities Appellate Tribunal (SAT) against the decision of the recognised stock exchange delisting the securities within fifteen days from the date of the decision of the recognized stock exchange delisting the securities and the provisions of Sections 22B to 22E of this Act, shall apply, as far as may be, to such appeals.

The Securities Appellate Tribunal may, if it is satisfied that the company was prevented by sufficient cause from filing the appeal within the said period, allow it to be filed within a further period not exceeding one month.

A listed company or an aggrieved investor may file an appeal before the Securities Appellate Tribunal (SAT) against the decision of the recognised stock exchange as per the procedure laid down under the Securities Contracts (Regulation) (Appeal to Securities Appellate Tribunal) Rules, 2000.

RIGHT TO APPEAL

Right of appeal to Central Government against refusal of stock exchanges to list securities of public companies

Where a recognised stock exchange refuses to list the securities of any public company or collective investment scheme, the company or scheme shall be entitled to be furnished with reasons for such refusal, and may, –

- (a) within fifteen days from the date on which the reasons for such refusal are furnished to it, or
- (b) where the stock exchange has omitted or failed to dispose of, within the time specified in section 40 of the Companies Act, 2013 (hereafter in this section referred to as the “specified time”), the application for permission for the shares or debentures to be dealt with on the stock exchange, within fifteen days from the date of expiry of the specified time or within such further period, not exceeding one month, as the Central Government may, on sufficient cause being shown, allow,

appeal to the Central Government against such refusal, omission or failure, as the case may be, and thereupon the Central Government may, after giving the stock exchange an opportunity of being heard, –

- (i) vary or set aside the decision of the stock exchange, or
- (ii) where the stock exchange has omitted or failed to dispose of the application within the specified time, grant or refuse the permission,

and where the Central Government sets aside the decision of the recognised stock exchange or grants the permission, the stock exchange shall act in conformity with the orders of the Central Government.

Right of appeal to Securities Appellate Tribunal (SAT) against refusal to list securities of public companies by Stock exchanges

Where a recognised stock exchange, acting in pursuance of any power given to it by its bye-laws, refuses to list the securities of any company, the company shall be entitled to be furnished with reasons for such refusal, and may, –

- (a) within fifteen days from the date on which the reasons for such refusal are furnished to it, or
- (b) where the stock exchange has omitted or failed to dispose of, within the time specified in section 40 of the Companies Act, 2013, the application for permission for the shares or debentures to be dealt with on the stock exchange, within fifteen days from the date of expiry of the specified time or within such further period, not exceeding one month, as the Securities Appellate Tribunal may, on sufficient cause being shown, allow appeal to the Securities Appellate Tribunal having jurisdiction in the matter against such refusal, omission or failure, as the case may be, and thereupon the Securities Appellate Tribunal may, after giving the stock exchange, an opportunity of being heard, –
 - (i) vary or set aside the decision of the stock exchange; or
 - (ii) where the stock exchange has omitted or failed to dispose of the application within the specified time, grant or refuse the permission,

and where the Securities Appellate Tribunal sets aside the decision of the recognised stock exchange or grants the permission, the stock exchange shall act in conformity with the orders of the Securities Appellate Tribunal.

Every appeal shall be in such form and be accompanied by such fee as may be prescribed. The Securities Appellate Tribunal shall send a copy of every order made by it to SEBI and parties to the appeal. The appeal filed before the Securities Appellate Tribunal shall be dealt with by it as expeditiously as possible and endeavour shall be made by it to dispose off the appeal finally within six months from the date of receipt of the appeal.

The appeal filed before the Securities Appellate Tribunal is as per the procedure laid down under the Securities Contracts (Regulation) (Appeal to Securities Appellate Tribunal) Rules, 2000.

Procedure and Powers of Securities Appellate Tribunal

Section 22B stipulates that the Securities Appellate Tribunal shall not be bound by the procedure laid down by the Code of Civil Procedure, 1908, but shall be guided by the principles of natural justice and, subject to the other provisions of this Act and of any rules, the Securities Appellate Tribunal shall have powers to regulate their own procedure including the places at which they shall have their sittings.

The Securities Appellate Tribunal shall have, for the purpose of discharging their functions under this Act, the same powers as are vested in a civil court under the Code of Civil Procedure, 1908 while trying a suit, in respect of the following matters, namely :–

- (a) summoning and enforcing the attendance of any person and examining him on oath;
- (b) requiring the discovery and production of documents;
- (c) receiving evidence on affidavits;
- (d) issuing commissions for the examination of witnesses or documents;
- (e) reviewing its decisions;
- (f) dismissing an application for default or deciding it ex parte;
- (g) setting aside any order of dismissal of any application for default or any order passed by it ex parte; and
- (h) any other matter which may be prescribed.

Right to Legal Representation

The appellant may either appear in person or authorise one or more chartered accountants or company secretaries or cost accountants or legal practitioners or any of its officers to present his or its case before the Securities Appellate Tribunal.

“Company Secretary” means a company secretary as defined in clause (c) of sub-section (1) of section 2 of the Company Secretaries Act, 1980 and who has obtained a certificate of practice under sub-section (1) of section 6 of that Act.

Limitation

The provisions of the Limitation Act, 1963 shall, as far as may be, apply to an appeal made to a Securities Appellate Tribunal.

Civil Court not to have jurisdiction

No civil court shall have jurisdiction to entertain any suit or proceeding in respect of any matter which a Securities Appellate Tribunal is empowered by or under this Act to determine and no injunction shall be granted by any court or other authority in respect of any action taken or to be taken in pursuance of any power conferred by or under this Act.

Appeal to Supreme Court

Any person aggrieved by any decision or order of the Securities Appellate Tribunal may file an appeal to the Supreme Court within 60 days from the date of communication of the decision or order of the Securities Appellate Tribunal to him on any question of law arising out of such order.

However the Supreme Court may, if it is satisfied that the appellant was prevented by sufficient cause from filing the appeal within the said period, allow it to be filed within a further period not exceeding sixty days.

PENALTIES AND PROCEDURES

Any person who –

- (a) without reasonable excuse (the burden of proving which shall be on him) fails to comply with any requisition made under sub-section (4) of section 6; or
- (b) enters into any contract in contravention of any of the provisions contained in section 13 or section 16; or
- (c) contravenes the provisions contained in section 17 or section 17A or section 19; or
- (d) enters into any contract in derivative in contravention of section 18A or the rules made under section 30; or
- (e) owns or keeps a place other than that of a recognised stock exchange which is used for the purpose of entering into or performing any contracts in contravention of any of the provisions of this Act and knowingly permits such place to be used for such purposes; or
- (f) manages, controls, or assists in keeping any place other than that of a recognised stock exchange which is used for the purpose of entering into or performing any contracts in contravention of any of the provisions of this Act or at which contracts are recorded or adjusted or rights or liabilities arising out of contracts are adjusted, regulated or enforced in any manner whatsoever; or
- (g) not being a member of a recognised stock exchange or his agent authorised as such under the rules or bye-laws of such stock exchange or not being a dealer in securities licensed under section 17 willfully represents to or induces any person to believe that contracts can be entered into or performed under this Act through him; or
- (h) not being a member of a recognised stock exchange or his agent authorised as such under the rules or bye-laws of such stock exchange or not being a dealer in securities licensed under section 17, canvasses, advertises or touts in any manner either for himself or on behalf of any other person for any business connected with contracts in contravention of any of the provisions of this Act; or

- (i) joins, gathers or assists in gathering at any place other than the place of business specified in the byelaws of a recognised stock exchange any person or persons for making bids or offers or for entering into or performing any contracts in contravention of any of the provisions of this Act.

shall, without prejudice to any award of penalty by the Adjudicating Officer or the SEBI under this Act, on conviction, be punishable with imprisonment for a term which may extend to ten years or with fine, which may extend to twenty five crore rupees or with both.

Any person who enters into any contract in contravention of the provisions contained in section 15 or who fails to comply with the provisions of section 21 or section 21A or with the orders of or the Central Government under section 22 or with the orders of the Securities Appellate Tribunal shall, without prejudice to any award of penalty by the Adjudicating Officer under this Act, on conviction, be punishable with imprisonment for a term which may extend to ten years or with fine which may extend to twenty five crore rupees, or with both.

The Act prescribes various penalties against persons who might be found guilty of offences under section 23 the Act.

Section	Contravention	Penalty
23A(a)	Any person who fails to furnish any information, document, books, returns or report to the recognised stock exchange or to the SEBI, fails to furnish the same within the time specified therefor in the listing agreement or conditions or bye-laws of the recognised stock exchange or the Act or rules made thereunder, or who furnishes false, incorrect or incomplete information, document, books return or report.	Fine of at least 1 lakh rupees but may extend to 1 lakh rupees per day during which such failure continues, subject to a maximum of 1 crore rupees
23A(b)	Any person who fails to maintain books of account or records, as per the listing agreement or conditions, or bye-laws of a recognised stock exchange	Fine of at least 1 lakh rupees but may extend to 1 lakh rupees per day during which such failure continues, subject to a maximum of 1 crore rupees
23B	Any person who fails to enter into an agreement with clients	Fine of at least 1 lakh rupees but may extend to 1 lakh rupees per day during which such failure continues, subject to a maximum of 1 crore rupees
23C	Failure by a stock broker or sub-broker or a listed company or proposed listed company to redress investors' grievances within the time stipulated by SEBI or recognised stock exchange	Fine of at least 1 lakh rupees but may extend to 1 lakh rupees per day during which such failure continues, subject to a maximum of 1 crore rupees
23D	Failure to segregate securities or money of client or clients or using the securities or money of client for self-use or for any other client	At least 1 lakh rupees but may extend to rupees 1 crore
23E	Failure to comply with the provisions of listing conditions or delisting conditions or grounds or breach thereof is committed, by a company or a person managing collective investment scheme or mutual fund or real estate investment trust or infrastructure investment trust or alternative investment fund.	Liable for at least 5 lakh rupees which may extend to rupees 25 crores
23F	If any issuer make an excess dematerialisation or delivery of unlisted securities	At least 5 lakh rupees which may extend to 25 crores rupees
23G	Failure by recognised stock exchange to furnish periodical return or furnish false, incorrect or incomplete periodical returns to SEBI or fails or neglects to make or amend its rules or bye-laws as directed by SEBI or fails to comply with the directions of SEBI	At least 5 lakh rupees which may extend to 25 crores rupees

23GA	Where a stock exchange / a clearing corporation fails to conduct its business with its members /any issuer/ its agent/ any person associated with the securities markets in a manner not in accordance with the rules/ regulations made by the SEBI and the directions issued by it under this Act	Penalty at least 5 crore rupees which may extend to 25 crore rupees or three times the amount of gains made out of such failure, whichever is higher.
23H	Whoever fails to comply with any provision of this Act, the rules of articles or bye-laws or the regulations of recognised stock exchange or directions issued by SEBI for which no separate penalty has been provided	At least 1 lakh rupees which may extend to rupees 1 crore

CASE LAWS

1	20.08.2020	<i>Dr. Satish Chandra, Ms. Sucharita Das and The Orissa Minerals Development Co. Ltd. (collectively known as "Noticees") vs. SEBI</i>	<i>Adjudicating Officer, Securities and Exchange Board of India</i>
---	------------	---	---

The disclosures were made by The Orissa Minerals Development Co. Ltd. to stock exchanges belatedly each after a period of more than 24 hours since the time of their receipt by OMDC.

Facts of the case:

SEBI conducted investigation into the alleged delayed disclosure of the price sensitive information (hereinafter referred to as "PSI") by The Orissa Minerals Development Company Ltd., (hereinafter referred to as "OMDC/ Company"), in the scrip of OMDC, to the Stock Exchanges ("BSE" and "NSE") for alleged violation of provisions of the SEBI Act, 1992 and SEBI (Prohibition of Insider Trading) Regulations, 1992 during the investigation period July 02, 2012 to August 10, 2012.

The OMDC, Dr. Satish Chandra (Managing Director) and Ms. Sucharita Das (Company Secretary) has made belated disclosure to the stock exchanges of the important price sensitive information. Therefore, SEBI hold that the Noticees have violated the provisions of Clause 2.1 of the Code of Corporate Disclosure Practice for Prevention of Insider Trading contained in Schedule II read with Regulation 12(2) of the PIT Regulations, 1992. Further, OMDC, also violated Clause 36 of the Listing Agreement read with Section 21 of Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, 1956 ("SCRA").

By not making the disclosures on time, the Noticee has failed to comply with the mandatory statutory obligation.

Order:

In view of the foregoing, considering the facts and circumstances of the case, the material on record, SEBI imposed a total penalty of Rs. 2,00,000/- (Rupees Two Lacs only) under Section 15HB of the SEBI Act, 1992 and **Section 23A(a)* of the Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, 1956**, on the Noticees i.e. The Orissa Minerals Development Co. Ltd., Dr. Satish Chandra and Ms. Sucharita Das for violation of Clause 2.1 of Code of Corporate Disclosure Practice for Prevention of Insider Trading contained in Schedule II to Regulation 12(2) of the PIT Regulations, 1992 and also against The Orissa Minerals Development Co. Ltd for violation of Clause 36 of Listing Agreement read with Section 21 of SCRA.

* **Section 23A(a) deals with Penalty for failure to furnish information, return, etc**

Factors to be taken into account while adjudging the quantum of penalty by the Adjudicating Officer

Section 23J provides for the factors to be taken into account by the adjudicating officer. While adjudging the quantum of penalty under section 12A and section 23-I, the SEBI or adjudicating officer shall have due regard to the following factors, namely –

- (a) the amount of disproportionate gain or unfair advantage, wherever quantifiable, made as a result of the default;
- (b) the amount of loss caused to an investor or group of investors as a result of the default;
- (c) the repetitive nature of the default.

Settlement of administrative and civil proceedings

Section 23JA states that any person, against whom any proceedings have been initiated or may be initiated under section 12A or section 23-I, may file an application in writing to SEBI proposing for settlement of the proceedings initiated or to be initiated for the alleged defaults.

The SEBI may, after taking into consideration the nature, gravity and impact of defaults, agree to the proposal for settlement, on payment of such sum by the defaulter or on such other terms as may be determined by the SEBI in accordance with the regulations made under the SEBI Act, 1992.

For the purpose of settlement under this section, the procedure as specified by the SEBI under the SEBI Act, 1992 shall apply. No appeal shall lie under section 23L against any order passed by the SEBI or adjudicating officer, as the case may be, under this section. All settlement amounts, excluding the disgorgement amount and legal costs, realised under this Act shall be credited to the Consolidated Fund of India.

Recovery of amounts

Section 23JB deals with recovery of amounts. If a person fails to pay the penalty imposed under this act or fails to comply with any direction of SEBI for refund of monies or fails to comply with a direction of disgorgement order issued under Section 12A or fails to pay any fees due to SEBI, the Recovery Officer may draw up under his signature a statement in the specified form specifying the amount due from the person (such statement being hereafter in this Chapter referred to as certificate) and shall proceed to recover from such person the amount specified in the certificate by one or more of the following modes, namely:-

Modes of recovery				
Attachment & sale of person's movable property	Attachment of the person's bank accounts;	Attachment and sale of the person's immovable property	Arrest of the person & his detention in prison	Appointing a receiver for the management of the person's movable and immovable properties

and for this purpose, the provisions of sections 220 to 227, 228A, 229, 232 the second and third schedule to the Income Tax Act, 1961 and the Income-tax (Certificate Proceedings) Rules, 1962, as in force from time to time in so far as may be, apply with necessary modifications as of the said provisions and the rules thereunder were the provisions of this Act and referred to the amount due under this Act instead of to income-tax under the Income-Tax Act, 1961.

Explanation 1. – For the purposes of this sub-section, the person's movable or immovable property or monies held in bank accounts shall include any property or monies held in bank accounts which has been transferred, directly or indirectly on or after the date when the amount specified in certificate had become due, by the person to his spouse or minor child or son's wife or son's minor child, otherwise than for adequate consideration, and which is held by, or stands in the name of, any of the persons aforesaid; and so far as the movable or immovable property or monies held in bank accounts so transferred to his minor child or his son's minor child is concerned, it shall, even after the date of attainment of majority by such minor child or son's minor child, as the case may be, continue to be included in the person's movable or immovable property or monies held in bank accounts for recovering any amount due from the person under this Act.

Explanation 2. – Any reference under the provisions of the Second and Third Schedules to the Income-tax Act, 1961 and the Income-tax (Certificate Proceedings) Rules, 1962 to the assessee shall be construed as a reference to the person specified in the certificate.

Explanation 3. – Any reference to appeal in Chapter XVIII and the Second Schedule to the Income-tax Act, 1961, shall be construed as a reference to appeal before the Securities Appellate Tribunal under section 23L of this Act.

The Recovery Officer shall be empowered to seek the assistance of the local district administration while exercising the powers under sub-section (1).

Notwithstanding anything contained in any other law for the time being in force, the recovery of amounts by a Recovery Officer, pursuant to non-compliance with any direction issued by the SEBI under section 12A, shall have precedence over any other claim against such person.

The expression “Recovery Officer” means any officer of the Board who may be authorised, by general or special order in writing to exercise the powers of a Recovery Officer.

Continuance of Proceedings

Section 23 JC provides that where a person dies, his legal representative shall be liable to pay any sum which the deceased would have been liable to pay, if he had not died, in the like manner and to the same extent as the deceased:

However, in case of any penalty payable under this Act, a legal representative shall be liable only in case the penalty has been imposed before the death of the deceased person.

Any proceeding for disgorgement, refund or an action for recovery before the Recovery Officer under this Act, except a proceeding for levy of penalty, initiated against the deceased before his death shall be deemed to have been initiated against the legal representative, and may be continued against the legal representative from the stage at which it stood on the date of the death of the deceased and all the provisions of this Act shall apply accordingly;

Any proceeding for disgorgement, refund or an action for recovery before the Recovery Officer under this Act, except a proceeding for levy of penalty, which could have been initiated against the deceased if he had survived, may be initiated against the legal representative and all the provisions of this Act shall apply accordingly.

Every legal representative shall be personally liable for any sum payable by him in his capacity as legal representative if, while his liability for such sum remains undischarged, he creates a charge on or disposes of or parts with any assets of the estate of the deceased, which are in, or may come into, his possession, but such liability shall be limited to the value of the asset so charged, disposed of or parted with.

The liability of a legal representative under this section shall, be limited to the extent to which the estate of the deceased is capable of meeting the liability.

Explanation.—For the purposes of this section “Legal representative” means a person who in law represents the estate of a deceased person, and includes any person who intermeddles with the estate of the deceased and where a party sues or is sued in a representative character, the person on whom the estate devolves on the death of the party so suing or sued.

Crediting sum realised by way of penalties to Consolidated Fund of India

As per Section 23K all sums realised by way of penalties under this Act shall be credited to the Consolidated Fund of India.

Appeal to Securities Appellate Tribunal

Section 23L stipulates that any person aggrieved, by the order or decision of the recognized stock exchange or the adjudicating officer or any order made by the Securities and Exchange Board of India under or sub-section of section 23-I, may prefer an appeal before the Securities Appellate Tribunal.

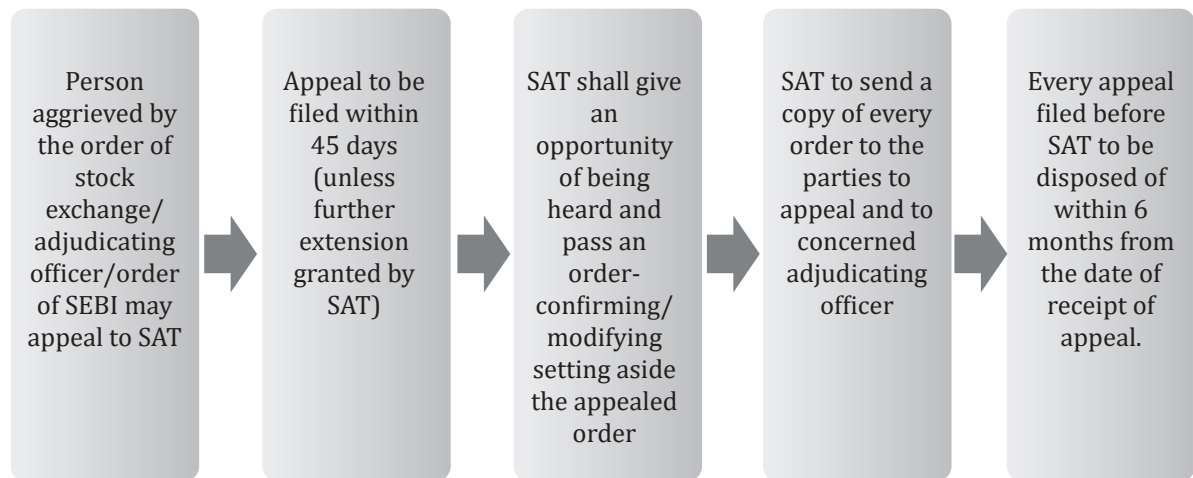
Every appeal shall be filed within a period of forty-five days from the date on which a copy of the order or decision is received by the appellant and it shall be in such form and be accompanied by such fee as may be prescribed.

However the Securities Appellate Tribunal may entertain an appeal after the expiry of the said period of forty- five days if it is satisfied that there was sufficient cause for not filing it within that period.

On receipt of an appeal the Securities Appellate Tribunal may, after giving the parties to the appeal, an opportunity of being heard, pass such orders thereon as it thinks fit, confirming, modifying or setting aside the order appealed against.

The Securities Appellate Tribunal shall send a copy of every order made by it to the parties to the appeal and to the concerned adjudicating officer. The appeal filed before the Securities Appellate Tribunal shall be dealt with by it as expeditiously as possible and endeavour shall be made by it to dispose of the appeal finally within six months from the date of receipt of the appeal.

The appeal may be preferred before the Securities Appellate Tribunal as per the procedure laid down under the Securities Contracts (Regulation) (Appeal to Securities Appellate Tribunal) Rules, 2000.



Extracts from SAT Order dated 25th February 2019 in the matter of Synergy Cosmetics (Exim) Limited vs. BSE Limited [Appeal No. 469 of 2018]

Synergy Cosmetics (Exim) Limited (Company) is a listed company and its securities got delisted on the platform of the BSE Limited. The BSE Limited vide its notice dated 18.10.2016 suspended the trading in securities of the company for non-compliance of listing requirements. Since no steps were taken by the company for revocation of the suspension, a show cause notice dated 26.04.2018 was issued calling upon the company to show cause as to why the securities of the company should not be compulsorily delisted from the platform of the BSE Limited. The BSE Limited by the impugned order dated 26.06.2018 issued an order compulsorily delisting the securities of the company. The appellant being aggrieved by the computation of the fair value of the shares has filed the appeal under **Section 23L of the Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, 1956.**

Offences

Section 23M provides that if any person contravenes or attempts to contravene or abets the contravention of the provisions of this Act or of any rules or regulations or byelaws made thereunder, for which no punishment is provided elsewhere in this Act, he shall be punishable with imprisonment for a term which may extend to ten years, or with fine, which may extend to twenty-five crore rupees or with both.

If any person fails to pay the penalty imposed by the adjudicating officer or the SEBI or fails to comply with the direction or order, he shall be punishable with imprisonment for a term which shall not be less than one month but which may extend to ten years, or with fine, which may extend to twenty-five crore rupees, or with both.

Composition of certain offences

As per Section 23N, notwithstanding anything contained in the Code of Criminal Procedure, 1973, any offence punishable under this Act, not being an offence punishable with imprisonment only, or with imprisonment and also with fine, may either before or after the institution of any proceeding, be compounded by a Securities Appellate Tribunal or a court before which such proceedings are pending.

Contravention by companies

Section 24 provides that, where a contravention of any of the provisions of this Act or any rule, regulation, direction or order made thereunder has been committed by a company, every person who, at the time when the contravention was committed, was in charge of, and was responsible to, the company for the conduct of the business of the company, as well as the company, shall be deemed to be guilty of the contravention, and shall be liable to be proceeded against and punished accordingly.

However, any such person shall not be liable to any punishment provided in this Act, if he proves that the contravention was committed without his knowledge or that he exercised all due diligence to prevent the commission of such contravention .

Where a contravention of any of the provisions of this Act or any rule, regulation, direction or order made thereunder has been committed by a company and is proved that the contravention has been committed with the consent or connivance of, or is attributable to any gross negligence on the part of any director, manager, secretary or other officer of the company, such director, manager, secretary or other officer of the company shall also be deemed to be guilty of that contravention and shall be liable to be proceeded against and punished accordingly.

The provisions of this section shall be in addition to and not in derogation of, the provisions of section 22A of the Act.

Certain offences to be cognizable

As per Section 25, notwithstanding anything contained in the Code of Criminal Procedure, 1898, any offence punishable under section 23 shall be deemed to be cognizable offence within the meaning of that Code.

Cognizance of offences by courts

Section 26 provides that no court shall take cognizance of any offence punishable under this Act or any rules or regulations or bye-laws made thereunder, save on a complaint made by the Central Government or State Government or the SEBI or a recognised stock exchange or by any person.

Establishment of Special Courts

Section 26A lays down the provisions for establishment of Special Courts by Central Government for the purpose of speedy trial.

- (a) The Central Government may, for the purpose of providing speedy trial of offences under this Act, by notification, establish or designate as many Special Courts as may be necessary.
- (b) A Special Court shall consist of a single judge who shall be appointed by the Central Government with the concurrence of the Chief Justice of the High Court within whose jurisdiction the judge to be appointed is working.
- (c) A person shall not be qualified for appointment as a judge of a Special Court unless he is, immediately before such appointment, holding the office of a Sessions Judge or an Additional Sessions Judge, as the case may be.

Offences triable by Special Courts

Section 26B provides that all offences committed under this Act, shall be taken cognizance of and tried by the Special Court established for the area in which the offence is committed or where there are more Special Courts than one for such area, by such one of them as may be specified in this behalf by the High Court concerned.

Appeal and Revision

As per Section 26C, the High Court may exercise, so far as may be applicable, all the powers conferred by Chapters XXIX and XXX of the Code of Criminal Procedure, 1973 on a High Court, as if a Special Court within the local limits of the jurisdiction of the High Court were a Court of Session trying cases within the local limits of the jurisdiction of the High Court.

Application of code to proceeding before Special Court

Section 26D provides that the Code of Criminal Procedure, 1973 shall apply to the proceeding before a special court and for the purposes of the said provisions, the special court shall be deemed to be Court of Session and the person conducting prosecution before a special court shall be deemed to be a public prosecutor within the meaning of the Code of Criminal Procedure, 1973. The persons conducting prosecution should have been in practice as an Advocate for not less than seven years or shall have held a post, for a period of not less than seven years, under the Union or a State, requiring special knowledge of law.

Transitional provisions

Section 26E stipulates that, any offence committed under this Act, which is triable by a Special Court shall, until a Special Court is established, be taken cognizance of and tried by a Court of Session exercising jurisdiction over the area, notwithstanding anything contained in the Code of Criminal Procedure, 1973.

However, nothing contained in this section shall affect the powers of the High Court under section 407 of the Code to transfer any case or class of cases taken cognizance by a Court of Session under this section.

MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

Entitlement of the Investors to Dividend declared by the Company

It shall be lawful for the holder of any security whose name appears on the books of the company issuing the said security to receive and retain any dividend declared by the company in respect thereof for any year, notwithstanding that the said security has already been transferred by him for consideration, unless the transferee who claims the dividend from the transferor has lodged the security and all other documents relating to the transfer which may be required by the company with the company for being registered in his name within fifteen days of the date on which the dividend became due.

Explanation. – The period specified in this section shall be extended –

- (i) in case of death of the transferee, by the actual period taken by his legal representative to establish his claim to the dividend;
- (ii) in case of loss of the transfer deed by theft or any other cause beyond the control of the transferee, by the actual period taken for the replacement thereof; and
- (iii) in case of delay in the lodging of any security and other documents relating to the transfer due to causes connected with the post, by the actual period of the delay.

Nothing contained in above paragraph shall affect –

- (a) the right of a company to pay any dividend which has become due to any person whose name is for the time being registered in the books of the company as the holder of the security in respect of which the dividend has become due; or
- (b) the right of the transferee of any security to enforce against the transferor or any other person his rights, if any, in relation to the transfer in any case where the company has refused to register the transfer of the security in the name of the transferee.

Right to Receive Income from Collective Investment Scheme

It shall be lawful for the holder of any securities, being units or other instruments issued by collective investment scheme, whose name appears on the books of the collective investment scheme issuing the said security to receive

and retain any income in respect of units or other instruments issued and declared by the collective investment scheme in respect thereof for any year, though the said security, being units or other instruments issued by collective investment scheme, has already been transferred by him for consideration, unless the transferee who claims the income in respect of units or other instruments issued by collective investment scheme from the transfer or has lodged the security and all other documents relating to the transfer which may be required by the collective investment scheme with the collective investment scheme for being registered in his name within fifteen days of the date on which the income in respect of units or other instruments issued by the collective investments scheme became due.

Explanation – The period specified in this section shall be extended –

- (i) in case of death of the transferee, by the actual period taken by his legal representative to establish his claim to the income in respect of units or other instruments issued by collective investment scheme;
- (ii) in case of loss of the transfer deed by theft or any other cause beyond the control of the transferee, by the actual period taken for the replacement thereof; and
- (ii) in case of delay in the lodging of any security, being units or other instruments issued by the collective investment scheme, and other documents relating to the transfer due to causes connected with the post, by the actual period of the delay.

This shall not affect –

- (a) the right of a collective investment scheme to pay any income from units or other instruments issued by collective investment scheme which has become due to any person whose name is for the time being registered in the books of the collective investment scheme as the registered holder in the books of the collective investment scheme being units or other instruments issued by collective investment scheme in respect of which the income in respect of units or other instruments issued by Collective Investment Scheme has become due; or
- (b) the right of transferee of any security, being units or other instruments issued by collective investment scheme, to enforce against the transferor or any other person his rights, if any, in relation to the transfer in any case where the company has refused to register the transfer of the security being units or other instruments issued by the collective investment scheme in the name of the transferee.

Right to receive Income from Mutual Fund

Section 27B provides that it shall be lawful for the holder of any securities, being units or other instruments issued by any mutual fund, whose name appears on the books of the mutual fund issuing the said security to receive and retain any income in respect of units or other instruments issued by the mutual fund declared by the mutual fund in respect thereof for any year, notwithstanding that the said security, being units or other instruments issued by the mutual fund, has already been transferred by him for consideration, unless the transferee who claims the income in respect of units or other instruments issued by the mutual fund from the transferor has lodged the security and all other documents relating to the transfer which may be required by the mutual fund with the mutual fund for being registered in his name within fifteen days of the date on which the income in respect of units or other instruments issued by the mutual fund became due.

The period specified in this Section may be extended –

- (i) in case of death of the transferee, by the actual period taken by his legal representative to establish his claim to the income in respect of units or other instrument issued by the mutual fund;
- (ii) in case of loss of the transfer deed by theft or any other cause beyond the control of transferee, by the actual period taken for the replacement thereof;
- (iii) in case of delay in the lodging of any security, being units or other instruments issued by the mutual fund, and other documents relating to the transfer due to cause connected with the post, by the actual period of the delay.

This shall not affect –

- (a) the right of a mutual fund to pay any income from units or other instruments issued by the mutual fund which has become due to any person whose name is for the time being registered in the books of the mutual fund as the holder of the security being units or other instruments issued by the mutual fund in respect of which the income in respect of units or other instruments issued by mutual fund has become due; or
- (b) the right of transferee of any security, being units or other instruments issued by the mutual fund, to enforce against the transferor or any other person his rights, if any, in relation to the transfer in any case where the mutual fund has refused to register the transfer of the security being units or other instruments issued by the mutual fund in the name of the transferee.

Protection of action taken in good faith

No suit, prosecution or other legal proceeding whatsoever shall lie in any court against the governing body or any member, office bearer or servant of any recognised stock exchange or against any person or persons appointed under sub-section (1) of section 11 for anything which is in good faith done or intended to be done in pursuance of this Act or of any rules or bye-laws made thereunder.

Special Provisions related to Commodity Derivatives

Section 30A deals with following special provisions relating to commodity derivatives:-

1. This Act shall not apply to non-transferable specific delivery contracts. However, no person shall organise or assist in organising or be a member of any association in any area to which the provisions of section 13 have been made applicable (other than a stock exchange) which provides facilities for the performance of any non-transferable specific delivery contract by any party thereto without having to make or receive actual delivery to or from the other party to the contract or to or from any other party named in the contract.
2. Where in respect of any area, the provisions of section 13 have been made applicable in relation to commodity derivatives for the sale or purchase of any goods or class of goods, the Central Government may, by notification, declare that in the said area or any part thereof as may be specified in the notification all or any of the provisions of this Act shall not apply to transferable specific delivery contracts for the sale or purchase of the said goods or class of goods either generally, or to any class of such contracts in particular.
3. If the Central Government is of the opinion that in the interest of the trade or in the public interest it is expedient to regulate and control non-transferable specific delivery contracts in any area, it may, by notification in the Official Gazette, declare that all or any of the provisions of this Act shall apply to such class or classes of non-transferable specific delivery contracts in such area in respect of such goods or class of goods as may be specified in the notification, and may also specify the manner in which and the extent to which all or any of the said provisions shall so apply.

Validation of certain Acts

Section 32 provides that any act or thing done or purporting to have been done under the principal Act, in respect of settlement of administrative and civil proceedings, shall, for all purposes, be deemed to be valid and effective as if the amendments made to the principal Act had been in force at all material times.

II. SECURITIES CONTRACTS (REGULATION) RULES, 1957

These rules were made by the Central Government in exercise of the powers conferred by Section 30 of the Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, 1956 and notified on February 21, 1957. The Government promulgated the Securities Contracts (Regulation) Rules, 1957 ('SCRR') for carrying into effect the objects of the Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act. These rules provide among other things, for the-

procedure to be followed for recognition of Stock Exchanges

Submission of periodical returns and annual reports by recognised stock exchanges

inquiry into the affairs of stock exchanges and their members

requirements for listing of securities on a recognised stock exchange

The rules are statutory and they constitute a code of standardized regulations uniformly applicable to all the recognised stock exchanges. Under the SCRR, the Government and the Securities and Exchange Board of India (SEBI) issue notifications, guidelines, and circulars which need to be complied with by market participants. Most of the powers under the SCRA are exercisable by Department of Economic Affairs (DEA) while a few others by SEBI. The powers of the DEA under the SCRA are also concurrently exercised by SEBI. The powers in respect of the contracts for sale and purchase of securities, gold related securities, money market securities and securities derived from these securities and carry forward contracts in debt securities are exercised concurrently by Reserve Bank of India (RBI).

REQUIREMENTS OF LISTING OF SECURITIES WITH RECOGNISED STOCK EXCHANGES

Rule 19(1)

This is one of the most important provisions of the Securities Contracts (Regulation) Rules, 1957. Rule 19 provides for the complete procedure in this regard. A public company as defined under the Companies Act, 2013, desirous of getting its securities listed on a recognised stock exchange, shall apply for the purpose to the stock exchange and forward along with its application the following documents and particulars:

- (a) Memorandum and articles of association and, in the case of a debenture issue, a copy of the trust deed.
- (b) Copies of all prospectuses or statements in lieu of prospectuses issued by the company at any time.
- (c) Copies of offers for sale and circulars or advertisements offering any securities for subscription or sale during the last five years.
- (d) Copies of balance sheets and audited accounts for the last five years, or in the case of new companies, for such shorter period for which accounts have been made up.
- (e) A statement showing –
 - i. dividends and cash bonuses, if any, paid during the last ten years (or such shorter period as the company has been in existence, whether as a private or public company),
 - ii. dividends or interest in arrears, if any.
- (f) Certified copies of agreements or other documents relating to arrangements with or between –
 - i. vendors and/or promoters,
 - ii. underwriters and sub-underwriters,
 - iii. brokers and sub-brokers.
- (g) Certified copies of agreements with –
 - i. managing agents and secretaries and treasurers,
 - ii. selling agents,
 - iii. managing directors and technical directors,
 - iv. general manager, sales manager, managers or secretary.
- (h) Certified copy of every letter, report, balance sheet, valuation contract, court order or other document, part of which is reproduced or referred to in any prospectus, offer for sale, circular or advertisement offering securities for subscription or sale, during the last five years.
- (i) A statement containing particulars of the dates of, and parties to all material contracts, agreements (including agreements for technical advice and collaboration), concessions and similar other documents (except those entered into in the ordinary course of business carried on or intended to be carried on by the company) together with a brief description of the terms, subject-matter and general nature of the documents.
- (j) A brief history of the company since its incorporation giving details of its activities including any reorganization, reconstruction or amalgamation, changes in its capital structure (authorised, issued and subscribed) and debenture borrowings, if any.

- (k) Particulars of shares and debentures issued (i) for consideration other than cash, whether in whole or part, (ii) at a premium or discount, or (iii) in pursuance of an option.
- (l) A statement containing particulars of any commission, brokerage, discount or other special terms including an option for the issue of any kind of the securities granted to any person.
- (m) Certified copies of –
 - i. acknowledgment card or the receipt of filing offer document with the SEBI;
 - ii. agreements, if any, with the Industrial Finance Corporation, Industrial Credit and Investment Corporation and similar bodies.
- (n) Particulars of shares forfeited.
- (o) A list of highest ten holders of each class or kind of securities of the company as on the date of application along with particulars as to the number of shares or debentures held by and the address of each such holder.
- (p) Particulars of shares or debentures for which permission to deal is applied for;

However, a recognised stock exchange may either generally by its bye-laws or in any particular case call for such further particulars or documents as it deems proper.

Rule 19(2)

Sub-rule 2 of Rule 19 provides that apart from complying with such other terms and conditions as may be laid down by a recognised stock exchange, an applicant company shall satisfy the stock exchange that;

- (a) Its articles of association provide for the following among others –
 - (i) that the company shall use a common form of transfer;
 - (ii) that the fully paid shares will be free from all lien, while in the case of partly paid shares, the company's lien, if any, will be restricted to moneys called or payable at a fixed time in respect of such shares;
 - (iii) that any amount paid-up in advance of calls on any share may carry interest but shall not entitle the holder of the share to participate in respect thereof, in a dividend subsequently declared;
 - (iv) there will be no forfeiture of unclaimed dividends before the claim becomes barred by law;
 - (v) that option or right to call of shares shall not be given to any person except with the sanction of the company in general meeting;

However, a recognised stock exchange may provisionally admit to dealings the securities of a company which undertakes to amend its articles of association at its next general meeting so as to fulfill the foregoing requirements and agrees to act in the meantime strictly in accordance with the provisions of this clause.

Rule 19(2)(b)

The minimum offer and allotment to public in terms of an offer document shall be-

- (i) at least twenty five per cent of each class or kind of equity shares or debenture convertible into equity shares issued by the company, if the post issue capital of the company calculated at offer price is less than or equal to one thousand six hundred crore rupees;
- (ii) at least such percentage of each class or kind of equity shares or debentures convertible into equity shares issued by the company equivalent to the value of four hundred crore rupees, if the post issue capital of the company calculated at offer price is more than one thousand six hundred crore rupees but less than or equal to four thousand crore rupees;
- (iii) at least ten percent of each class or kind of equity shares or debentures convertible into equity shares issued by the company, if the post issue capital of the company calculated at offer price is above four thousand crore rupees but less than or equal to one lakh crore rupees;
- (iv) at least such percentage of each class or kind of equity shares or debentures convertible into equity shares issued by the company equivalent to the value of five thousand crore rupees and at least five per cent of each

such class or kind of equity shares or debenture convertible into equity shares issued by the company, if the post issue capital of the company calculated at offer price is above one lakh crore rupees.

However, the company referred to in sub-clause (ii) or sub-clause (iii), shall increase its public shareholding to at least twenty five per cent within a period of three years from the date of listing of the securities.

The company referred to in this sub-clause (iv) shall increase its public shareholding to at least ten per cent within a period of two years and at least twenty-five per cent. within a period of five years, from the date of listing of the securities.

The applicant company, who has issued equity shares having superior voting rights to its promoters or founders and is seeking listing of its ordinary shares for offering to the public under this rule and the regulations made by the SEBI in this regard, shall mandatorily list its equity shares having superior voting rights at the same recognized stock exchange along with the ordinary shares being offered to the public.

Conditions precedent to submission of application for listing by Stock Exchange

Sub-rule (3) of Rule 19 provides that company while applying for listing shall, as conditions precedent, undertake *inter alia* –

- (a)
 - (i) that letters of allotment will be issued simultaneously and that, in the event of its being impossible to issue letters of regret at the same time, a notice to that effect will be inserted in the press so that it will appear on the morning after the letters of allotment have been posted.
 - (ii) that letters of right will be issued simultaneously,
 - (iii) that letters of allotment, acceptance or rights will be serially numbered, printed on good quality paper and, examined and signed by a responsible officer of the company and that whenever possible, they will contain the distinctive numbers of the securities to which they relate.
 - (iv) that letters of allotment and renounceable letters of right will contain a proviso for splitting and that, when so required by the exchange, the form of renunciation will be printed on the back of or attached to the letters of allotment and letters of right;
 - (v) that letters of allotment and letters of right will state how the next payment of interest or dividend on the securities will be calculated;
- (b) to issue, when so required, receipts for all securities deposited with it whether for registration, subdivision, exchange or for other purposes; and not to charge any fees for registration of transfers, for sub-division and consolidation of certificate and for sub-division of letters of allotment, renounceable letters of right, and split consolidation, renewal and transfer receipts into denominations of the market unit of trading;
- (bb) to issue, when so required, consolidation and renewal certificates in denominations of the market unit of trading, to split certificates, letters of allotment, letters of right, and transfer, renewal, consolidation and split receipts into smaller units, to split call notices, issue duplicates thereof and not require any discharge on call receipts and to accept the discharge of members of stock exchange on split, consolidation and renewal receipts as good and sufficient without insisting on the discharge of the registered holders;
- (c) when documents are lodged for sub-division or consolidation (or renewal) through the clearing house of the exchange;
 - (i) to accept the discharge of an official of the stock exchange clearing house on the company's split receipts and (consolidation receipts and renewal receipts) as good and sufficient discharge without insisting on the discharge of the registered holders; and
 - (ii) to verify when the company is unable to issue certificates or split receipt or (consolidation receipts or renewal receipts) immediately on lodgement whether the discharge of the registered holders, on the documents lodged for sub-division or consolidation (or renewal) and their signatures on the relative transfers are in order;

- (d) on production of the necessary documents by shareholders or by members of the exchange, to make on transfers an endorsement to the effect that the power of attorney or probate or letters of administration or death certificate or certificate of the Controller of Estate Duty or similar other document has been duly exhibited to and registered by the company;
- (e) to issue certificates in respect of shares or debentures lodged for transfer within a period of one month of the date of lodgement of transfer and to issue balance certificates within the same period where the transfer is accompanied by a larger certificate;
- (f) to advise the stock exchange of the date of the board meeting at which the declaration or recommendation of a dividend (or the issue or right or bonus share) will be considered;
- (g) to recommend or declare all dividends and/or cash bonuses at least five days before the commencement of the closure of its transfer books or the record date fixed for the purpose and so advise the stock exchange in writing of all dividends and/or cash bonuses recommended or declared immediately after a meeting of the board of the company has been held to finalise the same;
- (h) to notify the stock exchange of any material change in the general character or nature of the company's business;
- (i) to notify the stock exchange of any change –
 - (i) in the company's directorate by death, resignation, removal or otherwise,
 - (ii) of managing director, managing agent or secretaries and treasurers,
 - (iii) of auditors appointed to audit the books and accounts of the company;
- (j) to forward to the stock exchange copies of statutory and annual reports and audited accounts as soon as issued, including directors' reports;
- (k) to forward to the stock exchange as soon as they are issued, copies of all other notices and circulars sent to the shareholders including proceedings of ordinary and extraordinary general meetings of the company and to file with the stock exchange certified copies of resolutions of the company as soon as such resolutions become effective;
- (l) to notify the stock exchange prior to intimating the shareholders, of any new issue of securities whether by way of right, privilege, bonus or otherwise and the manner in which it is proposed to offer or allot the same;
- (m) to notify the stock exchange in the event of re-issue of any forfeited securities or the issue of securities held in reserve for future issue;
- (n) to notify the stock exchange of any other alteration of capital including calls;
- (o) to close the transfer books only for the purpose of declaration of dividend or issue of right or bonus shares or for such other purposes as the stock exchange may agree and to give notice to the stock exchange as many days in advance as the exchange may from time to time reasonably prescribe, stating the dates of closure of its transfer books (or, when the transfer books are not to be closed, the date fixed for taking a record of its shareholders or debenture holders) and specifying the purpose or purposes for which the transfer books are to be closed (or the record is to be taken) and in the case of a right or bonus issue to so close the transfer books or fix a record date only after the sanctions of the competent authority subject to which the issue is proposed to be made have been duly obtained, unless the exchange agrees otherwise;
- (p) to forward to the stock exchange an annual return immediately after each annual general meeting of at least ten principal holders of each class of security of the company along with particulars as to the number of shares or debentures held by, and address of, each such holder;
- (q) to grant to shareholders the right of renunciation in all cases of issue of rights, privileges and benefits and to allow them reasonable time not being less than four weeks within which to record, exercise, or renounce such rights, privileges and benefits, and to issue, where necessary, coupons or fractional certificates or provide for the payment of the equivalent of the value of the fractional right in cash unless the company in general meeting or the stock exchange agrees otherwise;
- (r) to promptly notify the stock exchange–

- (i) of any action which will result in the redemption, cancellation or retirement in whole or in part of any securities listed on the exchange,
- (ii) of the intention to make a drawing of such securities, intimating at the same time the date of the drawing and the period of the closing of the transfer books (or the date of the striking of the balance) for the drawing,
- (iii) of the amount of securities outstanding after any drawing has been made;
- (s) to intimate the stock exchange any other information necessary to enable the shareholders to appraise the position of the company and to avoid the establishment of a false market in the shares of the company;
- (t) that in the event of the application for listing being granted, such listing shall be subject to the rules and bye-laws of the exchange in force from time to time and that the company will comply within a reasonable time, with such further listing requirements as may be promulgated by the exchange as a general condition for new listings.

Application for listing of new securities

Rule 19(4) stipulates that an application for listing shall be necessary in respect of the following:

- (a) all new issues of any class or kind of securities of a company to be offered to the public;
- (b) all further issues of any class or kind of securities of a company if such class or kind of securities of the company are already listed on a recognised stock exchange.

Suspension or withdrawal of admission to dealings in securities on stock exchange

Rule 19(5) stipulates that a recognised stock exchange may suspend or withdraw admission to dealings in the securities of a company or body corporate either for a breach of or non-compliance with, any of the conditions of admission to dealings or for any other reason, to be recorded in writing, which in the opinion of the stock exchange justifies such action;

However, no such action shall be taken by a stock exchange without affording to the company or body corporate concerned a reasonable opportunity by a notice in writing, stating the reasons, to show cause against the proposed action.

Further, where a recognised stock exchange has withdrawn admission to dealings in any security, or where suspension of admission to dealings has continued for a period exceeding three months, the company or body corporate concerned may prefer an appeal to the Securities Appellate Tribunal constituted under section 15K of the SEBI Act, 1992 and the procedure laid down under the Securities Contracts (Regulation) (Appeal to Securities Appellate Tribunal) Rules, 2000 shall apply to such appeal. The Securities Appellate Tribunal may, after giving the stock exchange an opportunity of being heard, vary or set aside the decision of the stock exchange and its orders shall be carried out by the stock exchange. [Rule 19(5)]

A recognised stock exchange may, either at its own discretion or shall in accordance with the orders of the Securities Appellate Tribunal restore or re-admit to dealings any securities suspended or withdrawn from the list. [Rule 19(6)]

All requirements with respect to listing prescribed by these rules shall, so far as they may be, also apply to a public sector company. [Rule 19(6A)]

The SEBI may, at its own discretion or on the recommendation of a recognised stock exchange, waive or relax the strict enforcement of any or all of the requirements with respect to listing prescribed by these rules. [Rule 19(7)]

The minimum offer and allotment requirements as prescribed under clause (b) of sub-rule (2) shall not be applicable to the listing of such equity shares having superior voting rights issued to the promoters or founders as the case may be, in cases where the applicant company is seeking listing of its ordinary shares for offering to the public in accordance with the provisions of this rule and the regulations made by the Securities and Exchange Board of India in this regard. [Rule 19(8)]

Minimum Shareholding

Rule 19A (1) stipulates that every listed public sector company other than public sector company shall maintain public shareholding of at least 25%. However, any listed company which has public shareholding below 25% on the commencement of the Securities Contracts (Regulation) (Second Amendment) Rules, 2018, shall increase its public shareholding to at least 25% , within a period of three years from the date of such commencement, in the manner specified by the SEBI.

Explanation : For the purposes of this sub-rule, a company whose securities has been listed pursuant to an offer and allotment made to public in terms of clause (b) of sub-rule (2) of rule 19, shall maintain minimum 25% public shareholding from the date on which the public shareholding in the company reaches the level of 25% in terms of said sub-clause.

Sub-rule (2) provides that where the public shareholding in a listed company falls below 25 % at any time, such company shall bring the public shareholding to 25% within a maximum period of twelve months from the date of such fall in the manner specified by the SEBI.

However every listed public sector company whose public shareholding falls below twenty five per-cent. at any time after the commencement of the Securities Contracts (Regulation) (Second Amendment) Rules, 2018, shall increase its public shareholding to at least twenty five per-cent, within a period of two years from such fall, in the manner specified by the SEBI.

Where the public shareholding in a listed company falls below 25% in consequence to SCRR (Amendment) Rules, 2015, such company shall increase its shareholding to atleast 25%, in the manner specified by the SEBI within a period of three years, as the case may be, from the date of notification of:

- (a) the Depository Receipts Scheme, 2014, in cases where the public shareholding falls below 25% as a result of such scheme;
- (b) the SEBI (Share Based Employee Benefits) Regulations, 2014, in cases where the public shareholding falls below 25%, as a result of such regulations.

Sub rule (5) provides that where the public shareholding in a listed company falls below twenty-five per cent, as a result of implementation of the resolution plan approved under section 31 of the Insolvency and Bankruptcy Code, 2016, such company shall bring the public shareholding to twenty-five per cent within a maximum period of three years from the date of such fall, in the manner specified by the Securities and Exchange Board of India.

However, if the public shareholding falls below ten per cent, the same shall be increased to at least ten per cent, within a maximum period of 12 months from the date of such fall, in the manner specified by the Securities and Exchange Board of India. It is further provided that every listed company shall maintain public shareholding of at least five per cent as a result of implementation of the resolution plan approved under section 31 of the Insolvency and Bankruptcy Code, 2016.

The Central Government may, in the public interest, exempt any listed public sector company from any or all of the provisions of minimum shareholding.

DELISTING OF SECURITIES

1. Rule 21 deals with delisting of securities. A recognized stock exchange may, without prejudice to any other action that may be taken under the Act or under any other law for the time being in force, delist any securities listed thereon on any of the following grounds in accordance with the regulations made by the SEBI, namely:–
 - (a) the company has incurred losses during the preceding three consecutive years and it has negative network;
 - (b) trading in the securities of the company has remained suspended for a period of more than six months;
 - (c) the securities of the company have remained infrequently traded during the preceding three years;

- (d) the company or any of its promoters or any of its director has been convicted for failure to comply with any of the provisions of the Act or the SEBI Act, 1992 or the Depositories Act, 1996 or rules, regulations, agreements made thereunder, as the case may be and awarded a penalty of not less than rupees one crore or imprisonment of not less than three years;
- (e) the addresses of the company or any of its promoter or any of its directors, are not known or false addresses have been furnished or the company has changed its registered office in contravention of the provisions of the Companies Act, 2013; or
- (f) shareholding of the company held by the public has come below the minimum level applicable to the company as per the SEBI (Listing Obligations and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2015 and the company has failed to raise public holding to the required level within the time specified by the recognized stock exchange.

However, no securities shall be delisted unless the company concerned has been given a reasonable opportunity of being heard.

2. If the securities is delisted under clause (1),
 - (a) the company, promoter and director of the company shall be jointly and severally liable to purchase the outstanding securities from those holders who wish to sell them at a fair price determined in accordance with regulations made by the SEBI, under the Act; and
 - (b) the said securities shall be delisted from all recognized stock exchanges.
3. A recognized stock exchange may, on the request of the company, delist any securities listed thereon in accordance with the regulations made under the Act by the SEBI, subject to the following conditions, namely:
 - (a) the securities of the company have been listed for a minimum period of three years on the recognized stock exchange;
 - (b) the delisting of such securities has been approved by the two-third of public shareholders; and
 - (c) the company, promoter and/or the director of the company purchase the outstanding securities from those holders who wish to sell them at a price determined in accordance with regulations made by SEBI under the Act.

However, the condition at (c) may be dispensed with by Securities and Exchange Board of India if the securities remain listed at least on the National Stock Exchange of India Limited or the Bombay Stock Exchange Limited.

Question: Whether a stock exchange on its own can delist any security thereon?

Answer: Rule 21 of the Securities Contracts (Regulations) Rules, 1957 deals with the delisting of securities. A recognized stock exchange may, without prejudice to any other action that may be taken under the Act or under any other law for the time being in force, delist any securities listed thereon on the grounds in accordance with the regulations made by the Securities and Exchange Board of India.

ROLE OF COMPANY SECRETARY

Company Secretary has the Right to Legal Representation before Securities Appellate Tribunal (SAT). The appellant may either appear before SAT in person or authorise one or more chartered accountants or **company secretaries** or cost accountants or legal practitioners or any of its officers to present his or its case.

LESSON ROUND-UP

- The Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, 1956 ('SCRA') was enacted by Parliament to prevent undesirable transactions in securities by regulating the business of dealing therein, and by providing for certain other matters connected therewith.
- Section 2 of this Act contains definitions of various terms used in the Act.
- Section 3 lays down that any stock exchange, desirous of being recognized for the purposes of this Act may make an application in the prescribed manner to the Central Government.
- Powers of the Central Government as covered under Section 6, 8, 11, 12, 16, 23-O, 29A.
- Powers of Recognised Stock Exchange as covered under Section 7A and 9.
- Powers of the SEBI as covered under section 10, 12A, 23-I and 31.
- The Act prescribes various penalties against persons who might be found guilty of offences under the Act.
- Section 21 of the Act provides that where securities are listed on the application of any person in any recognised stock exchange, such person shall comply with the conditions of the SEBI (LODR), Regulations, 2015.
- Section 31 provides that, SEBI may, by notification in the Official Gazette, make regulations consistent with the provisions of this Act and the rules made thereunder to carry out the purposes of this Act.
- The Government promulgated the Securities Contracts (Regulation) Rules, 1957 for carrying into effect the object of the Securities Contracts (Regulation) Rules, 1956.
- Rule 19 dealt with the requirement with respect to the listing of securities on a recognised stock exchange.
- Rule 21 dealt with the Delisting of securities.

GLOSSARY

Stock Exchange	Anybody of individuals, whether incorporated or not, constituted for the purpose of assisting, regulating controlling the business of buying, selling or dealing in securities.
Admission to Dealing	The process of granting permission to the securities of a company to be listed on a Stock Exchange and to provide trading facilities for the securities in the market.
Listed Company	A company which has any of its securities offered through an offer document listed on a recognised stock exchange and also includes Public Sector Undertakings whose securities are listed on a recognised stock exchange.
Appointed date	It means the date which the SEBI may, by notification in the Official Gazette, appoint and different appointed dates may be appointed for different recognized stock exchanges.
Commodity Derivative	It means a contract - (i) for the delivery of such goods, as may be notified by the Central Government in the Official Gazette, and which is not a ready delivery contract; or (ii) for differences, which derives its value from prices or indices of prices of such underlying goods or activities, services, rights, interests and events, as may be notified by the Central Government, in consultation with the SEBI, but does not include securities as referred to in sub-clauses (A) and (B) of clause (ac) of Section 2 under Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, 1956.
Clearing	Clearing Settlement or clearance of accounts, for a fixed period in a Stock Exchange

TEST YOURSELF

(These are meant for recapitulation only. Answer to these questions are not to be submitted for evaluation.)

1. Briefly discuss the powers of stock exchange under the Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, 1956.
2. The Central Government has directed a recognised stock exchange to suspend its business in the interest of the trade or public? Describe the powers of Central Government in accordance with SEBI (Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, 1956
3. ABC Ltd. is listed on National Stock Exchange of India Limited (NSE) and further planning to list its shares on BSE under Direct Listing. Can company list its shares on both stock exchanges? If yes, what are the requirements to be made for such listing on BSE in accordance with the SEBI (Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, 1956) and rules made thereunder?
4. XYZ Ltd. has filed listing application to stock exchange. Stock exchange rejected the listing application on the ground that the listing norms had not been complied with. You as a Company Secretary prepare a note to your Managing Director in the light of rights available with the company.
5. ABC Ltd. applied for listing of instruments in a recognized stock exchange. However, permission was refused by the stock exchange. Can the company appeal to SAT against such refusal? Explain.
6. 'A stock exchange on its own can delist any security thereon'. Explain how Recognized Stock Exchange delists any securities listed thereon under Securities Contracts (Regulations) Rules, 1957.
7. What are the provisions for continuous listing requirement under Securities Contracts (Regulation) Rules, 1957? List any six methods for achieving minimum public shareholding by a listed company

LIST OF FURTHER READINGS

- SEBI Notifications
- SEBI Circulars
- SAT Orders

OTHER REFERENCES (Including Websites/Video Links)

- <https://www.sebi.gov.in/>
- <http://sat.gov.in/>
- <https://www.nseindia.com/>
- <https://www.bseindia.com/>

Securities and Exchange Board of India Act, 1992

Lesson 2

Key Concepts One Should Know

- Securities and Exchange Board of India
- Securities Appellate Tribunal (SAT)
- Adjudications
- Settlement
- Recovery
- Offences
- Penalty
- Securities
- Investigations

Learning Objectives

To understand the

- Objectives of establishment of SEBI
- Regulatory prescriptions on establishment and incorporation of SEBI
- Functions and powers of SEBI
- Regulatory prescriptions on Registration of Intermediaries
- Penalties and its adjudications
- Regulatory prescriptions on establishment and appeal to Securities Appellate Tribunal (SAT)
- Powers of the Central Government

The Company Secretary is recognised to appear as legal representative before SAT under the SEBI Act, 1992, therefore a student who is pursuing CS course needs to update himself with the various provisions and compliances of the SEBI Act 1992.

Lesson Outline

- Introduction
- Objective of SEBI
- Regulatory Framework of SEBI Act, 1992
- Establishment of the SEBI
- Management of SEBI
- Functions and Powers of the SEBI
- Registration of Intermediaries
- Prohibition of Manipulative and deceptive devices, insider trading etc.
- Penalties for failure
- Adjudications
- Settlement of Administrative and Civil Proceedings
- Establishment of Securities Appellate Tribunal
- Appeal to Securities Appellate Tribunal and its procedure
- Powers of Securities Appellate Tribunal
- Appeal to Supreme Court
- Powers of Central Government
- Returns and Reports
- Delegation of Powers
- Appeal to the Central Government
- Bar of Jurisdiction
- Public Servants
- Offences & Punishments
- Cognizance of Offences by Courts
- Recovery of Amounts
- Central Government power to make Rules SEBI power to make Regulations
- Role of Company Secretary
- LESSON ROUND-UP
- GLOSSARY
- TEST YOURSELF
- LIST OF FURTHER READINGS
- OTHER REFERENCES

Regulatory Framework

- Securities and Exchange Board of India Act, 1992

INTRODUCTION

The Securities and Exchange Board of India was established on April 12, 1992 in accordance with the provisions of the Securities and Exchange Board of India Act, 1992. The first statutory regulatory body that the Government of India set up post the reforms of 1991 was the Securities and Exchange Board of India (SEBI).

The SEBI –

- can specify the matters to be disclosed and the standards of disclosure required for the protection of investors in respect of issues;
- can issue directions to all intermediaries and other persons associated with the securities market in the interest of investors or of orderly development for securities market; and
- can conduct enquiries, audits and inspection of all concerned and adjudicate offences under the Act.

Since its establishment in 1992, a lot of initiatives have been taken to protect the interests of the investors. SEBI under the SEBI Act, 1992 has been empowered to frame subordinate legislation and to investigate wrong doing, impose relevant penalties and to conduct search and seizure operations.

In short, it has been given necessary autonomy and authority to regulate and develop an orderly securities market. As per Section 1 of the Act, this Act may be called the Securities and Exchange Board of India Act, 1992. It extends to the whole of India. It shall be deemed to have come into force on the 30th day of January, 1992.

OBJECTIVES OF SEBI



SEBI ACT, 1992

Regulatory Framework

The SEBI Act, 1992 is divided into ten chapters which are discussed below:

SEBI Act, 1992	Chapter I	Definitions of various terms
	Chapter II	Establishment of SEBI
	Chapter III	Transfer of assets, liabilities, etc., of the existing SEBI
	Chapter IV	Powers and Functions of SEBI
	Chapter V	Registration Certificate
	Chapter VA	Prohibition of Manipulative and Deceptive Devices, Insider Trading and Substantial Acquisition of Securities or Control
	Chapter VI	Finance, Accounts and Audit
	Chapter VIA	Penalties and Adjudication
	Chapter VI B	Establishment, Jurisdiction, Authority and Procedure of Securities Appellate Tribunal
	Chapter VII	Miscellaneous

ESTABLISHMENT OF THE SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE BOARD OF INDIA (SEBI)

Establishment and Incorporation of Board

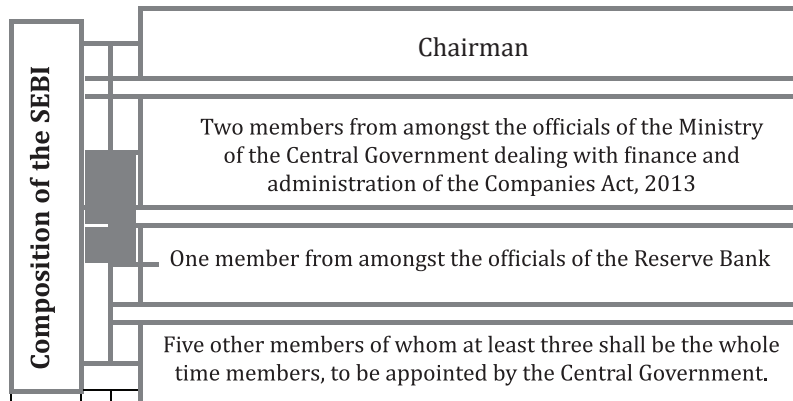
Section 3 of the SEBI Act provides that there shall be a Board by the name of the Securities and Exchange Board of India (SEBI) established as -

- a body corporate;
- having perpetual succession and a common seal;
- with power to acquire, hold and dispose of property, both movable and immovable; and
- to contract, and shall, by the said name, sue or be sued;
- the head office of the Board shall be at Mumbai.

Further, the Board may establish offices at other places in India.

MANAGEMENT OF THE SEBI

Section 4(1) of the SEBI Act provides that the SEBI shall consist of the following members (appointed by the Central Government), namely:



- The general superintendence, direction and management of the affairs of the Board shall vest in a Board of members, which may exercise all powers and do all acts and things which may be exercised or done by the Board.
- The Chairman shall also have powers of general superintendence and direction of the affairs of the Board and may also exercise all powers and do all acts and things which may be exercised or done by that Board.
- The Chairman and the other members shall be persons of ability, integrity and standing who have shown capacity in dealing with problems relating to securities market or have special knowledge or experience of law, finance, economics, accountancy, administration or in any other discipline which, in the opinion of the Central Government, shall be useful to the Board.

FUNCTIONS AND POWERS OF THE SEBI

Chapter IV of the SEBI Act, 1992 deals with the powers and functions of SEBI.

Section 11 Functions of the SEBI

Section 11A To Regulate or Prohibit Issue of Prospectus, Offer Document or Advertisement Soliciting Money for Issue of Securities

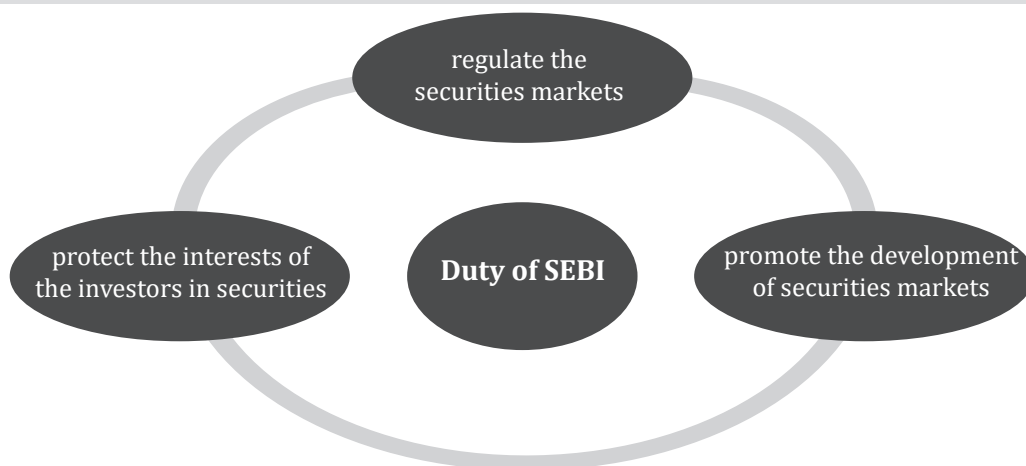
Section 11AA To Regulate Collective Investment Schemes

Section 11B Power to Issue Directions and Levy Penalty

Section 11C Investigation

Section 11D Cease and Desist Proceedings

Functions of the SEBI



Section 11 of the Act lays down that it shall be the duty of SEBI to protect the interests of the investors in securities and to promote the development of, and to regulate the securities markets by such measures as it thinks fit.

Section 11(2) provides that the measures may provide for –

Measures

- Regulating the business in stock exchanges and any other securities markets;
- Registering and regulating the working of stock brokers, sub-broker, share transfer agents, bankers to an issue, trustees of trust deeds, registrars to an issue, merchant bankers, underwriters, portfolio managers, investment advisers and such other intermediaries who may be associated with securities markets in any manner;
- Registering and regulating the working of the depositories, participants, custodians of securities, foreign institutional investors, credit rating agencies and such other intermediaries as the SEBI, may by notification specify in this behalf;
- Registering and regulating the working of venture capital funds and collective investment schemes, including mutual funds;

- Promoting and regulating self-regulatory organisations;
- Prohibiting fraudulent and unfair trade practices relating to securities markets;
- Promoting investors' education and training of intermediaries of securities markets;
- Prohibiting insider trading in securities;
- Regulating substantial acquisition of shares and takeover of companies;
- Calling for information, undertaking inspection, conducting inquiries and audits of the stock exchanges, mutual funds, other persons associated with the securities markets, intermediaries and self regulatory organisations in the securities market;
- Calling for information and records:
 - » from any person including any bank or any authority or board or corporation established or constituted by or under any central or state Act, which in the opinion of the SEBI, shall be relevant to any investigation or inquiry by the SEBI in respect of any transaction in securities;
 - » from any such agencies, as may be specified by the SEBI, such information as may be considered necessary by it for the efficient discharge of its functions;
 - » from other authorities, whether in India, or outside India having functions similar to those of the SEBI, in the matters relating to the prevention or detection of violation in respect of securities laws, subject to the provisions of other laws for the time being in force in this regard.
- Performing such functions and exercising such powers under the provisions of the Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, 1956, as may be delegated to it by the Central Government;
- Levying fees or other charges for carrying out the purposes of this section;
- Conducting research for the above purposes;
- Calling from or furnishing to any such agencies, as may be specified by the SEBI such information as may be considered necessary by it for the efficient discharge of its functions;
- Performing such other functions as may be prescribed.

Powers with respect to inspection of Books and Documents

Section 11(2A) prescribes that SEBI may take measures to undertake inspection of any book, or register, or other document or record of any listed public company or a public company which intends to get its securities listed on any recognised stock exchange where SEBI has reasonable grounds to believe that such company has been indulging in insider trading or fraudulent and unfair trade practices relating to securities market.

Board is vested with the same power as that of Civil Court

Section 11(3) of the SEBI Act provides that the SEBI has been vested with the same powers as are available to a Civil Court under the Code of Civil Procedure, 1908 for trying a suit in respect of the following matters:

- (i) the discovery and production of books of account and other documents at such place and such time indicated by SEBI.
- (ii) summoning and enforcing the attendance of persons and examining them on oath.
- (iii) inspection of any books, registers and other documents of any person listed referred in section 12 of the Act at any place.
- (iv) inspection of any book or register or other document or record of any listed company or a public company which intends to get its securities listed on any recognized stock exchange.
- (v) issuing commissions for the examination of witnesses or documents.

Passing of an order by an Board

As per Section 11(4), the SEBI, may, by an order or for reasons to be recorded in writing, in the interest of investors or securities market take any of the following measures either pending investigation or inquiry or on completion of such investigation or enquiry namely:

- (a) suspend the trading of any security in a recognised stock exchange.
- (b) restrain persons from accessing the securities market and prohibit any person associated with securities market to buy, sell or deal in securities.
- (c) suspend any office-bearer of any stock exchange or self regulatory organisation from holding such position.
- (d) impound and retain the proceeds or securities in respect of any transaction which is under investigation.
- (e) attach, for a period not exceeding ninety days, bank accounts or other property of any intermediary or any person associated with the securities market in any manner involved in violation of any of the provisions of this Act, or the rules or the regulations made thereunder.

However, the SEBI shall, within ninety days of the said attachment, obtain confirmation of the said attachment from the Special Court, established under section 26A, having jurisdiction and on such confirmation, such attachment shall continue during the pendency of the aforesaid proceedings and on conclusion of the said proceedings, the provisions of section 28A shall apply.

Further, only property, bank account or accounts or any transaction entered therein, so far as it relates to the proceeds actually involved in violation of any of the provisions of this Act, or the rules or the regulations made thereunder shall be allowed to be attached.

- (f) direct any intermediary or any person associated with the securities market in any manner not to dispose of or alienate an asset forming part of any transaction which is under investigation.

The SEBI shall give an opportunity of hearing to such intermediaries or persons concerned either before or after passing such orders.

Levy of Penalty

The SEBI may, by an order, for reasons to be recorded in writing, levy penalty under sections 15A, 15B, 15C, 15D, 15E, 15EA, 15EB, 15F, 15G, 15H, 15HA, 15HAA and 15HB after holding an inquiry in the prescribed manner.

The amount disgorged, pursuant to direction issued under section 11B or section 12A of the Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, 1956 or section 19 of the Depositories Act, 1996, or under a settlement made under section 15JB or section 23JA of the Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, 1956 or section 19-IA of the Depositories Act, 1996, as the case may be –

- shall be credited to the Investor Protection and Education Fund established by the SEBI
- such amount shall be utilized by the SEBI in accordance with the regulations made under this Act.

Power of the sebi to regulate or prohibit issue of prospectus, offer document or advertisement soliciting money for issue of securities

(1) As per the section 11A, the SEBI may, for the protection of investors, –

specify, by regulations –

the matters relating to issue of capital, transfer of securities and other matters incidental thereto

the manner in which such matters shall be disclosed by the companies

by general or special orders

prohibit any company from issuing prospectus, any offer document, or advertisement soliciting money from the public for the issue of securities

specify the conditions subject to which the prospectus, such offer document or advertisement, if not prohibited, may be issued

Power to Regulate Collective Investment Schemes

Section 11AA (1) of the SEBI Act, provides that any scheme or arrangement which satisfies the conditions referred to in sub-section (2) or sub-section (2A) shall be a collective investment scheme.

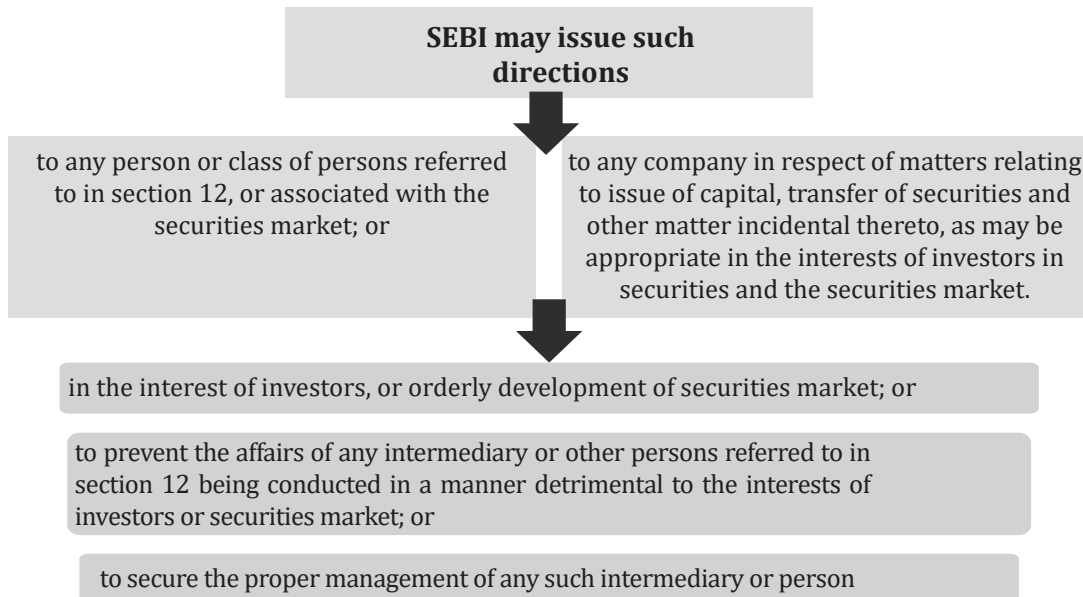
However, any pooling of funds under any scheme or arrangement, which is not registered with the SEBI or is not covered under sub-section (3), involving a corpus amount of Rs. 100 crore or more shall be deemed to be a collective investment scheme.

[This section has been discussed in Lesson No. 13]

Power to issue directions and levy penalty

Issue of Directions

Section 11B of the Act provides that if the SEBI is satisfied, after making or causing to be made an enquiry that it is necessary:



The power to issue directions under this section shall include and always be deemed to have been included the power to direct any person, who made profit or averted loss by indulging in any transaction or activity in contravention of the provisions of this Act or regulations made thereunder, to disgorge an amount equivalent to the wrongful gain made or loss averted by such contravention.

Levy of Penalty

The SEBI may, by an order, for reasons to be recorded in writing, levy penalty under sections 15A, 15B, 15C, 15D, 15E, 15EA, 15EB, 15F, 15G, 15H, 15HA and 15HB after holding an inquiry in the prescribed manner.

Investigations

(1) Grounds for Investigation

Section 11C of the Act provides that where the SEBI has reasonable ground to believe that:

- the transactions in securities are being dealt within a manner detrimental to the investors or the securities market; or
- any intermediary or any person associated with the securities market has violated any of the provisions of this Act or the rules or the regulations made or directions issued by SEBI thereunder;

it may, at any time by order in writing, direct any person specified in the order to investigate the affairs of such intermediary or persons associated with the securities market and to report thereon to the SEBI.

(2) Duty of officers to produce Accounts and Records

It is the duty of -

- every manager, managing director, officer and other employee of the company;
- every intermediary; or
- every person associated with the securities market;

to preserve and to produce to the Investigating Authority or any person authorised by it in this behalf, all the books, registers, other documents and record of, or relating to, the company or, as the case may be, of or relating to, the intermediary or such person, which are in their custody or power.

(3) Powers of Investigating Authority

The Investigating Authority may require any intermediary or any person associated with securities market in any manner to furnish such information to, or produce such books, or registers, or other documents, or record before him or any person authorised by it in this behalf as it may consider necessary if the furnishing of such information or the production of such books, or registers, or other documents, or record is relevant or necessary for the purposes of its investigation.

(4) Period of Custody

The Investigating Authority may keep in its custody any books, registers, other documents and record produced for six months and thereafter shall return the same to any intermediary or any person associated with securities market by whom or on whose behalf the books, registers, other documents and record are produced.

However, the investigating officer may call for any book, register, other document and record if they are needed again. Further, if the person on whose behalf the books, registers, other documents and record are produced requires certified copies of the books, registers, other documents and record produced before the Investigating Authority, it shall give certified copies of such books, registers, other documents and record to such person or on whose behalf the books, registers, other documents and record were produced.

(5) Examination on oath

Any person, directed to make an investigation may, examine on oath, any manager, managing director, officer and other employee of any intermediary or any person associated with securities market in any manner, in relation to the affairs of his business and may administer an oath accordingly and for that purpose may require any of those persons to appear before it personally.

(6) Failure in compliance

If any person fails without reasonable cause or refuses	Person shall be punishable with
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • to produce to the Investigating Authority or any person authorised by it in this behalf any book, register, other document and record which is his duty to produce; or • to furnish any information which it is his duty to furnish; or • to appear before the Investigating Authority personally when required to do so or to answer any question which is put to him by the Investigating Authority; or • to sign the notes of any examination. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • imprisonment for a term which may extend to 1 year, or • with fine, which may extend to 1 crore rupees, or • with both, and • also with a further fine which may extend to five lakh rupees for every day after the first during which the failure or refusal continues.

(7) Notes of examination

Notes of any examination shall be taken down in writing and shall be read over to, or by, and signed by, the person examined, and may thereafter be used in evidence against him.

(8) Seizure of Records**Application to the Magistrate or Judge of such designated Court for an order for the Seizure of records**

Where in the course of an investigation, the Investigating Authority has reasonable ground to believe that the books, registers, other documents and record of, or relating to any, any intermediary or any person associated with securities market in any manner may be destroyed, mutilated, altered, falsified or secreted, the Investigating Authority may make an application to the Magistrate or Judge of such designated Court in Mumbai, as may be notified by the Central Government for an order for the seizure of such books, registers, other documents and records.

The authorised officer may requisition the services of any police officer or any office of the Central Government, or of both, to assist him for all or any of the purposes specified above and it shall be the duty of every such officer to comply with such requisition.

(9) Order of the Magistrate or Judge of such designated Court authorising the Investigating Authority

After considering the application and hearing the Investigating Authority, if necessary, the Magistrate or Judge of the Designated Court may, by order, authorize the investigating authority –

- (a) to enter, with such assistance, as may be required, the place or places where such books, registers, other documents and records are kept,
- (b) to search that place or those places in the manner specified in the order and,
- (c) to seize books, registers and other documents and records, it consider necessary for the purpose of the investigation.

Exemptions

However, the Magistrate or Judge of the Designated Court shall not authorize seizure of books, registers, other documents and record of any listed public company or a public company (not being the intermediary specified under section 12) which intends to get its securities listed on any recognized stock exchange unless such company indulges in insider trading or market manipulation.

(10) Returning of records

The Investigating Authority shall keep in its custody the books, registers, other documents and record seized under this section for such period not later than the conclusion of the investigation as it considers necessary and thereafter shall return the same to the company or the other body corporate, or, as the case may be, to the managing director or the manager or any other person, from whose custody or power they were seized and inform the Magistrate or Judge of the Designated Court of such return.

The Investigating Authority may, before returning such books, registers, other documents and record as aforesaid, place identification marks on them or any part thereof.

(11) Every search or seizure made under this section shall be carried out in accordance with the provisions of the Code of Criminal Procedure, 1973 relating to searches or seizures made under that Code.

CASE LAWS

18.03.2021	<i>Mr. Neeleshkumar Radheshyam Lahoti (Noticee) (In the matter of Supreme Tex Mart Limited) vs. Securities and Exchange Board of India (SEBI)</i>	Adjudicating Officer, SEBI
------------	---	----------------------------

Every person from whom information is sought should fully co-operate with the investigating officer and promptly produce all documents, records, information as may be necessary for the investigations.

Facts of the Case:

SEBI conducted an investigation into the affairs of Supreme Tex Mart Limited (STML/ Company) for the period June 01, 2016 to October 31, 2016. During the course of investigation, the Investigating Authority (IA) of SEBI issued summons under Section 11C(2) read with Section 11C(3) of the SEBI Act, 1992 to Mr. Neeleshkumar Radheshyam Lahoti (Noticee) seeking certain documents/ information. The Noticee replied to the summons and submitted certain information. However, it was alleged that the Noticee submitted incorrect information. In view of the same, SEBI initiated adjudication proceedings under Section 15HB of the SEBI Act against the Noticee.

SEBI Order:

SEBI imposed a penalty of 8 lakh on the Noticee under the provisions of Section 15HB of the SEBI Act. It was established that the Noticee provided incorrect information to the Investigating Authority (IA) of SEBI and hampered the process of investigation thus violating the provisions of Section 11C(2) read with Section 11C(3) of the SEBI Act, 1992. It was a deliberate attempt of Noticee to misguide investigation. Section 11C(3) of the SEBI Act empowers the IA to obtain records, documents, information etc., as considered relevant or necessary for the purpose of investigation. Section 11C(2) of SEBI Act casts an obligation on every person associated with the securities market to preserve and to produce to the Investigating Authority or any person authorised by it in this behalf, such records, documents, information which are in their custody or power.

Cease and Desist Proceedings

Section 11D deals with the cease and desist powers of the SEBI. If the SEBI finds, after causing an inquiry to be made, that any person has violated, or is likely to violate any provisions of this Act, or any rules or regulations made thereunder, it may pass an order requiring such person to cease and desist from committing or causing such violation.

However, the SEBI shall not pass such order in respect of any listed public company or a public company which intends to get its securities listed on any recognized stock exchange unless SEBI has reasonable grounds to believe that such company has indulged in insider trading or market manipulation.

Power to Make Regulations

As per Section 30 of SEBI Act, 1992, the SEBI may, by notification, make regulations consistent with this Act and the rules made thereunder to carry out the purposes of this Act. In particular, and without prejudice to the generality of the foregoing power, such regulations may provide for all or any of the following matters, namely :–

- the times and places of meetings of the Board and the procedure to be followed at such meetings under sub-section (1) of section 7 including quorum necessary for the transaction of business;
- the terms and other conditions of service of officers and employees of the SEBI under sub-section (2) of section 9;
- the matters relating to issue of capital, transfer of securities and other matters incidental thereto and the manner in which such matters shall be disclosed by the companies under section 11A;
- the utilisation of the amount credited under sub-section (5) of section 11;

- the fulfilment of other conditions relating to collective investment scheme under subsection (2A) of section 11AA;
- the conditions subject to which certificate of registration is to be issued, the amount of fee to be paid for certificate of registration and the manner of suspension or cancellation of certificate of registration under section 12;
- the terms determined by the SEBI for settlement of proceedings under sub-section (2) and the procedure for conducting of settlement proceedings under sub-section (3) of section 15JB;
- any other matter which is required to be, or may be, specified by regulations or in respect of which provision is to be made by regulations.

POWERS OF SEBI NOT TO APPLY TO INTERNATIONAL FINANCIAL SERVICES CENTRE

Section 28C provides that the powers exercisable by the SEBI under this Act,—

- (a) shall not extend to an International Financial Services Centre set up under sub-section (1) of section 18 of the Special Economic Zones Act, 2005;
 - (b) shall be exercisable by the International Financial Services Centres Authority established under sub-section (1) of section 4 of the International Financial Services Centres Authority Act, 2019,
in so far as regulation of financial products, financial services and financial institutions that are permitted in the International Financial Services Centres are concerned.
-

REGISTRATION OF INTERMEDIARIES

Chapter V of the Act provides for registration of various intermediaries such as stock broker, sub-broker, share transfer agents etc.

Section 12(1) of the Act provides that the following intermediaries are required to obtain a registration certificate from the SEBI to buy, sell or deal in securities :

- Stock-Broker
- Sub-Broker
- Share Transfer Agent
- Banker to an issue
- Trustee of Trust Deed
- Registrar to an Issue
- Merchant Banker
- Underwriter
- Portfolio Manager
- Investment Adviser
- Depository
- Depository Participant
- Custodian of Securities
- Foreign Institutional Investor
- Credit Rating Agency
- Such other intermediary

(Above intermediaries are discussed in Chapter 16 of the study)

A person shall not sponsor or cause to be sponsored or carry on or cause to be carried on any venture capital funds or collective investment schemes including mutual funds, unless he obtains a certificate of registration from the SEBI in accordance with the regulations.

It is clarified by the SEBI that a collective investment scheme or mutual fund shall not include any unit linked insurance policy or scrips or any such instrument or unit, by whatever name called, which provides a component of investment besides the component of insurance issued by an insurer.

A person shall not sponsor or cause to be sponsored or carry on or cause to be carried on the activity of an alternative investment fund or a business trust as defined in clause (13A) of section 2 of the Income-tax Act, 1961, unless a certificate of registration is granted by the SEBI in accordance with the regulations made under this Act.

Manner of application for registration

Every application for registration would in such manner and on payment of such fees as may be determined by the SEBI Regulations.

Suspension/cancellation of a certificate of registration

The SEBI may, by order, suspend or cancel a certificate of registration in such manner as may be determined by the SEBI Regulations. However, no such order shall be made unless the person concerned has been given a reasonable opportunity of being heard.

PROHIBITION OF MANIPULATIVE AND DECEPTIVE DEVICES, INSIDER TRADING ETC.

Chapter VA of the Act deals with prohibition of manipulative and deceptive devices, insider trading and substantial acquisition of securities or control.

Section 12A of the Act provides that a person shall not directly or indirectly:

- (a) use or employ, in connection with the issue, purchase or sale of any securities listed or proposed to be listed on a recognized stock exchange, any manipulative or deceptive device or contrivance in contravention of the provisions of this Act or the rules or the regulations made thereunder;
- (b) employ any device, scheme or artifice to defraud in connection with issue or dealing in securities which are listed or proposed to be listed on a recognized stock exchange;
- (c) engage in any act, practice, course of business which operates or would operate as fraud or deceit upon any person, in connection with the issue, dealing in securities which are listed or proposed to be listed on a recognized stock exchange, in contravention of the provisions of this Act or the rules or the regulations made thereunder;
- (d) engage in insider trading;
- (e) deal in securities while in possession of material or non-public information or communicate such material or non-public information to any other person, in a manner which is in contravention of the provisions of this Act or the rules or the regulations made thereunder;
- (f) acquire control of any company or securities more than the percentage of equity share capital of a company whose securities are listed or proposed to be listed on a recognized stock exchange in contravention of the regulations made under this Act.

PENALTIES AND ADJUDICATION

Chapter VIA of the SEBI Act deals with penalties which can be imposed under the Act for various failures, defaults, non-disclosure and other offences.

It may be recalled that Section 11(2)(i) empowers SEBI to call for information and conduct enquiries and audits of the stock exchanges, mutual funds, other persons associated with securities markets, intermediaries and self-regulatory organisations in the security market.

Also Section 11(2)(ia) of the Act requires calling for information and record from any bank or any other authority or SEBI or corporation established or constituted by or under any central, state or provincial Act in respect of any transaction in securities which is under investigation or inquiry by the SEBI.

Sl. No.	Section	Particulars
1.	Section 15A	Failure to furnish information, return, etc.
2.	Section 15B	Failure by any person to enter into agreement with clients.
3.	Section 15C	Failure to redress investors' grievances.
4.	Section 15D	Certain Default in case of Mutual Funds.
5.	Section 15E	Failure to observe rules and regulations by an asset management company.
6.	Section 15EA	Default in case of alternative investment funds, infrastructure investment trusts and real estate investment trusts.
7.	Section 15EB	Default in case of investment adviser and research analyst.
8.	Section 15F	Default in case of stock brokers.
9.	Section 15G	Insider Trading.
10.	Section 15H	Non-Disclosure of Acquisition of Shares and Takeovers.
11.	Section 15HA	Fraudulent and unfair trade practices.
12.	Section 15HAA	Penalty for alteration, destruction, etc., of records and failure to protect the electronic database of SEBI.
13.	Section 15HB	Contravention where no separate penalty has been provided.
14.	Section 15I	Adjudications.
15.	Section 15J	Factors to be taken into account by the adjudicating officer.
16.	Section 15JA	Crediting sums realised by way of penalties to Consolidated Fund of India
17.	Section 15JB	Settlement of administrative and civil proceedings.

Penalties for Failures

Section	Contravention	Penalty
15A	Failure to furnish information, return, etc.	Penalty of at least 1 lakh rupees but may extend to 1 lakh rupees per day during which such failure continues, subject to a maximum of 1 crore rupees.
15B	Failure by any person to enter into agreement with clients.	Penalty of at least 1 lakh rupees but may extend to 1 lakh rupees per day during which such failure continues, subject to a maximum of 1 crore rupees.
15C	Failure to redress investors' grievances.	Penalty of at least 1 lakh rupees but may extend to 1 lakh rupees per day during which such failure continues, subject to a maximum of 1 crore rupees.
15D	Certain defaults in case of mutual funds.	Penalty of at least 1 lakh rupees but may extend to 1 lakh rupees per day during which such failure continues, subject to a maximum of 1 crore rupees
15E	Failure to observe rules and regulations by an asset management company.	Penalty of at least 1 lakh rupees but may extend to 1 lakh rupees per day during which such failure continues, subject to a maximum of 1 crore rupees.

15EA	In case of alternative investment funds, infrastructure investment trusts and real estate investment trusts fails to comply with the regulations made by the SEBI or directions issued by the SEBI.	Penalty of at least 1 lakh rupees but may extend to 1 lakh rupees per day during which such failure continues, subject to a maximum of 1 crore rupees or 3 times the amount of gains made out of such failure, whichever is higher.
15EB	In case investment adviser and research analyst fails to comply with the regulations made by the SEBI or directions issued by the SEBI.	Penalty of at least 1 lakh rupees but may extend to 1 lakh rupees per day during which such failure continues, subject to a maximum of 1 crore rupees.
15F	Default in case of stock brokers.If any stock broker- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • fails to issue contract notes in the form and manner specified by the stock exchange of which such broker is a member • fails to deliver any security or fails to make payment of the amount due to the investor in the manner within the period specified in the regulations • charges an amount of brokerage which is in excess of the brokerage specified in the regulations 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Penalty of at least 1 lakh rupees but which may extend to 1 crore rupees for which the contract note was required to be issued by that broker. • Penalty of at least 1 lakh rupees but may extend to 1 lakh rupees per day during which such failure continues, subject to a maximum of 1 crore rupees. • penalty of at least 1 lakh rupees but which may extend to five times the amount of brokerage charged in excess of the specified brokerage, whichever is higher.
15G	Insider Trading. If any insider who,— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • either on his own behalf or on behalf of any other person, deals in securities of a body corporate listed on any stockexchange on the basis of any unpublished price-sensitive information; or • communicates any unpublished price-sensitive information to any person, with or without his request for such information except as required in the ordinary course of business or under any law; or • counsels, or procures for any other person to deal in any securities of any body corporate on the basis of unpublished price-sensitive information. 	Penalty of at least 10 lakh rupees but which may extend to 25 crore rupees or 3 times the amount of profits made out of insider trading, whichever is higher.
15H	Non-disclosure of acquisition of shares and takeovers.	Penalty of at least 10 lakh rupees but which may extend to 25 crore rupees or 3 times the amount of profits made out of such failure, whichever is higher.
15HA	Fraudulent and unfair trade practices	Penalty of at least 5 lakh rupees but which may extend to 25 crore rupees or 3 times the amount of profits made out of such failure, whichever is higher
15HAA	Alteration, destruction, etc., of records and failure to protect the electronic database of Board.	Penalty of at least 1 lakh rupees but which may extend to 10 crore rupees or 3 times the amount of Profits made out of such act, whichever is higher
15HB	Contravention where no separate penalty has been provided.	Penalty of at least 1 lakh rupees but which may extend to 1 crore rupees

ADJUDICATIONS

Section 15-I deal with the SEBI's power to adjudicate.

The SEBI may appoint any of its officers not below the rank of Division Chief to be an adjudicating officer for holding an inquiry in the prescribed manner after giving any person concerned a reasonable opportunity of being heard for the purpose of imposing any penalty.

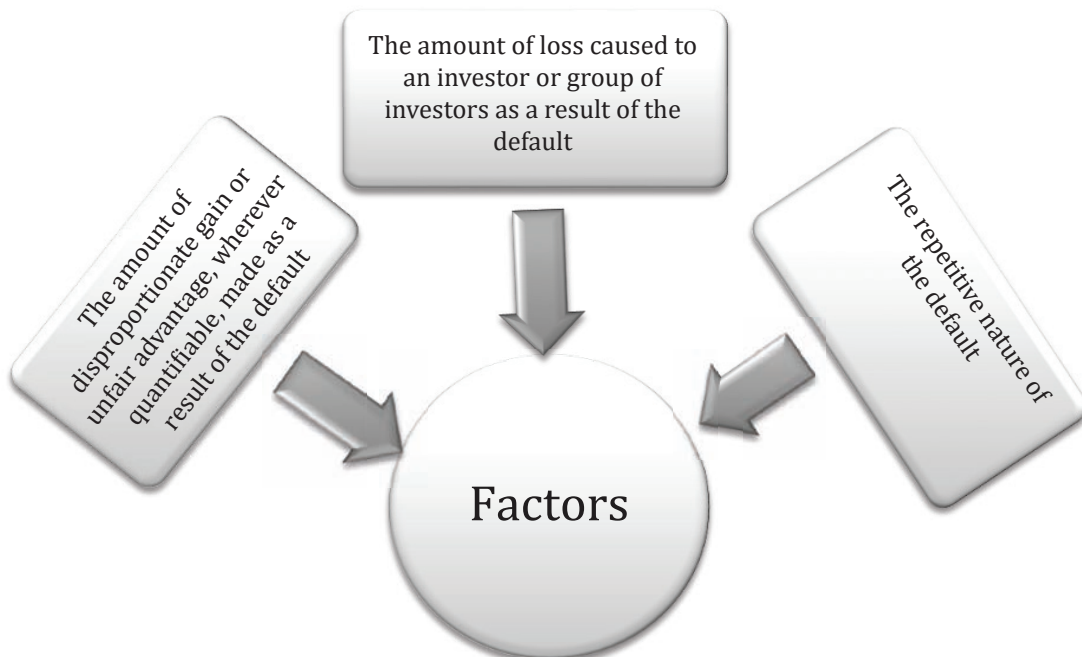
The adjudicating officer has powers to summon and enforce the attendance of any person acquainted with the facts and circumstances of the case to give evidence or to produce any document which in the opinion of the adjudicating officer, may be useful for or relevant to the subject matter of the inquiry and if, on such inquiry, he is satisfied that the person has failed to comply with the provisions, he may impose such penalty as he thinks fit in accordance with the provisions of any of those sections.

The SEBI may call for and examine the record of any proceedings under this section and if it considers that the order passed by the adjudicating officer is erroneous to the extent it is not in the interests of the securities market, it may, after making or causing to be made such inquiry as it deems necessary, pass an order enhancing the quantum of penalty, if the circumstances of the case so justify.

However, no such order shall be passed unless the person concerned has been given an opportunity of being heard in the matter. Further, nothing contained in this section shall be applicable after an expiry of a period of three months from the date of the order passed by the adjudicating officer or disposal of the appeal under section 15-T, whichever is earlier.

Factors to be Taken into Account while Adjudging quantum of penalty

Section 15J lays down that while adjudging the quantum of penalty, the SEBI or the adjudicating officer shall have due regard to the following factors, viz. –



Section 15JA provides that all sums realised by way of penalties under this Act shall be credited to the Consolidated Fund of India.

CASE LAWS

1.	28.02.2019	<i>Adjudicating Officer, SEBI (Appellant) vs. Bhavesh Pabari (Respondent)</i>	Supreme Court of India
----	------------	---	------------------------

The Supreme Court of India ruled in Adjudicating Officer, SEBI v. Bhavesh Pabari granting back the discretionary power to Adjudicating Officer (AO) under supervision and scrutiny of the court.

Facts of the Case

The SEBI Act, as the object of its enactment would indicate, was enacted “to provide for the establishment of SEBI to protect the interests of investors in securities and to promote the development of, and to regulate, the securities market and for matters connected therewith or incidental thereto.”

Sections 15 A to 15 HA of the SEBI Act, 1992 are the penalty provisions whereas Section 15 I deals with the power of adjudication and Section 15 J enumerates the “factors to be taken into account by the Adjudicating Officer” while adjudging the quantum of penalty.

Section 15J has been a part of SEBI since 1992. Section 15J lays down that while adjudging the amount of penalty, the adjudicating officer shall have due regard to the factors which are as follows:

- (a) the amount of disproportionate gain or unfair advantage, wherever quantifiable, made as a result of the default;
- (b) the amount of loss caused to an investor or group of investors as a result of the default;
- (c) the repetitive nature of the default.

Explanation- For the removal of doubts, it is clarified that the power to adjudge the quantum of penalty under sections 15A to 15E, clauses (b) and (c) of section 15-F, 15G, 15H and 15HA shall be and shall always be deemed to have been exercised under the provisions of this section.”

The questions referred in the given case can be enumerated and summarized as follows:

- (i) Whether the conditions stipulated in clauses (a), (b) and (c) of Section 15J of the Securities and Exchange Board of India Act, 1992 are exhaustive to govern the discretion in the Adjudicating Officer to decide on the quantum of penalty or the said conditions are merely illustrative?
- (ii) Whether the power and discretion vested by Section 15J of the SEBI Act to decide on the quantum of penalty, regardless of the manner in which the first question is answered, stands eclipsed by the penalty provisions contained in Section 15A to Section 15HA of the SEBI Act?

The Court held and in the view that-

- The provisions of clauses (a), (b) and (c) of Section 15J are illustrative in nature and have to be taken into account whenever such circumstances exist. But this is not to say that there can be no other circumstance(s) beyond those enumerated in clauses (a), (b) and (c) of Section 15J that the Adjudicating Officer is precluded in law from considering while deciding on the quantum of penalty to be imposed.

Conditions stipulated in clauses (a), (b) and (c) of Section 15J are not exhaustive and in the given facts of a case, there can be circumstances beyond those enumerated by clauses (a), (b) and (c) of Section 15J which can be taken note of by the Adjudicating Officer while determining the quantum of penalty.

- Insofar as the second question is concerned, if the penalty provisions are to be understood as not admitting of any exception or discretion and the penalty as prescribed in Section 15 A to Section 15-HA of the SEBI Act is to be mandatorily imposed in case of default/failure, Section 15J of the SEBI Act would stand obliterated and eclipsed. Hence, the question referred. Sections 15-A (a) to 15 HA have to be read along with Section 15J in a manner to avoid any inconsistency or repugnancy.

2.	01.07.2020	<i>India Ratings and Research Private Ltd. (Appellant) vs. SEBI (Respondent)</i>	Securities Appellate Tribunal
----	------------	--	-------------------------------

SEBI can call for and examine records of any proceedings if it considers the orders passed by the adjudicating officer erroneous and not in the interests of securities markets. After making inquiry, SEBI may enhance the quantum of penalty imposed, if the circumstances of the case so justify.

Facts of the case:

The Adjudicating Officer by the impugned order dated 26th December, 2019 had imposed a penalty of Rs.25 lakhs upon the Appellant for violating the Code of Conduct to the Securities and Exchange Board of India (Credit Rating Agencies) Regulations, 1999 while granting credit rating to IL&FS for the financial year 2018-19.

SEBI issued a second show cause notice dated 28th January, 2020 by exercising powers under Section 15I(3) of the SEBI Act directing the Appellant to show cause as to why penalty should not be enhanced as in their opinion the order of the Adjudicating Officer was not in the interest of the securities market.

“Under Section 15I(3), the SEBI can call for and examine records of proceedings if it considers the orders passed by the adjudicating officer erroneous and not in the interests of securities markets. After examining the matter, the SEBI can enhance the quantum of penalty imposed.”

Misc. Application no.159 of 2020 has been filed in Appeal no.103 of 2020 praying that proceedings initiated by SEBI pursuant to the second show cause notice dated 28th January, 2020 issued under Section 15I(3) of the SEBI Act, should be stayed.

Order:

SEBI has the power to initiate proceedings under Section 15I(3) of the SEBI Act. SAT directed the Appellant to deposit a sum of Rs.25 lakhs pursuant to the impugned order dated 26th December, 2019 before the *Respondent within four weeks which would be subject to the result of the appeal*. SAT further directed that the proceedings in pursuance to the second show cause notice dated 28th January, 2020 will continue and the Respondent will pass appropriate orders after giving an opportunity of hearing to the Appellant either through physical hearing or through video conferencing but any order that is passed by the Respondent shall not be given effect to during the pendency of this appeal. Misc. Application is accordingly disposed of.

Settlement of Administrative and Civil Proceedings

Section 15JB deals with settlement of administrative and civil proceeding by SEBI.

Filing of an application

Any person against where any proceedings have been initiated or may be initiated under section 11, Section 11B, section 11D, section 12(3) or section 15I, may file an application in writing to the SEBI proposing for settlement of proceeding initiated or to be initiated for the alleged defaults.



SEBI may consider for settlements of defaults.

The SEBI, may, after taking into consideration the nature, gravity and impact of defaults, agree to the proposal for settlement, on payment of such by the defaulter or on such other terms as may be determined by the SEBI in accordance with the regulations made under this Act.



Procedure of settlement proceedings

The settlement proceedings shall be conducted in accordance with the procedure specified in the regulations made under this Act.



No appeal shall be made

No appeal shall lie under section 15T against any order passed by the SEBI or adjudicating officer as the case may be.



Settlement amounts shall be credited to the Consolidated Fund of India.

All the settlement amounts excluding the disgorgement amount and legal costs, realised under this Act shall be credited to the Consolidated Fund of India.

Case Snippets

1. JM Financial Ltd's (JMFL) former vice president on July 16, 2020 had settled an alleged insider trading case with SEBI by paying an amount of Rs 15 lakh towards settlement charges. During the span of investigation, SEBI observed that he had entered into two off-market trades in shares of JMFL and had not obtained pre-clearance from JMFL for the two off-market trades. Besides, he had entered the off-market transaction when the trading window was closed.
2. Shareholders of the Kapashi Commercials Ltd. on 10th July, 2020, a BSE Listed company, have settled with SEBI a case of alleged violation of takeover norms by paying over Rs 34 lakh amount towards settlement terms. They had filed an application with the SEBI proposing to settle the case for alleged violation of SAST (Substantial Acquisition of Shares and Takeovers) Regulations in respect of change in their shareholding in Kapashi Commercials. It was alleged that the four individuals made delayed disclosures to the company and BSE, about the change in their shareholding in Kapashi Commercials.
3. Northward Financial Planners (NFP) and its partners on July, 09, 2020 have settled with SEBI a case related to alleged violation of Investment Advisers regulations upon payment of Rs. 21.67 lakh towards settlement charge. NFP and partners were carrying on investment advisory activities since F.Y. 2013-14 and filed application for SEBI registration after a delay of over 4 years and continued to carry on investment advisory activity without seeking registration.

SECURITIES APPELLATE TRIBUNAL (SAT)

In order to afford proper appellate remedies, Chapter VIB of the SEBI Act provides for the establishment of the Securities Appellate Tribunals (SAT) to consider appeals against the SEBI's orders, or penalties.

Sl. No.	Section	Particulars
1.	Section 15K	Establishment of Securities Appellate Tribunals
2.	Section 15L	Composition of Securities Appellate Tribunal
3.	Section 15M	Qualification for appointment as Presiding Officer or Member of Securities Appellate Tribunal
4.	Section 15MA, 15MB	Appointment of Presiding Officer or Member of Securities Appellate Tribunal

5.	Section 15MC	Validity of Appointment
6.	Section 15N	Tenure of office of Presiding Officer and other Members of Securities Appellate Tribunal
7.	Section 15O	Salary and allowances and other terms and conditions of service of Presiding Officers
8.	Section 15P, 15 PA	Filling up of vacancies
9.	Section 15Q	Resignation and removal
10.	Section 15R	Orders constituting Appellate Tribunal to be final and not to invalidate its proceedings
11.	Section 15S	Staff of the Securities Appellate Tribunal
12.	Section 15T	Appeal to the Securities Appellate Tribunal
13.	Section 15U	Procedure and powers of the Securities Appellate Tribunal
14.	Section 15V	Right to legal representation
15.	Section 15W	Limitation
16.	Section 15X	Presiding Officer, Members and staff of Securities Appellate Tribunals to be public servants
17.	Section 15Y	Civil Court not to have jurisdiction
18.	Section 15Z	Appeal to Supreme Court

Establishment of Securities Appellate Tribunals.

- As per Section 15K, the Central Government is empowered to establish a Tribunal by notification, to be known as the Securities Appellate Tribunal to exercise the jurisdiction, power and authorities conferred on it or under the Act or any other law for the time being in force.
- The Central Government shall also specify in the notification the matters and places in relation to which the Securities Appellate Tribunal may exercise jurisdiction.

Composition of Securities Appellate Tribunal

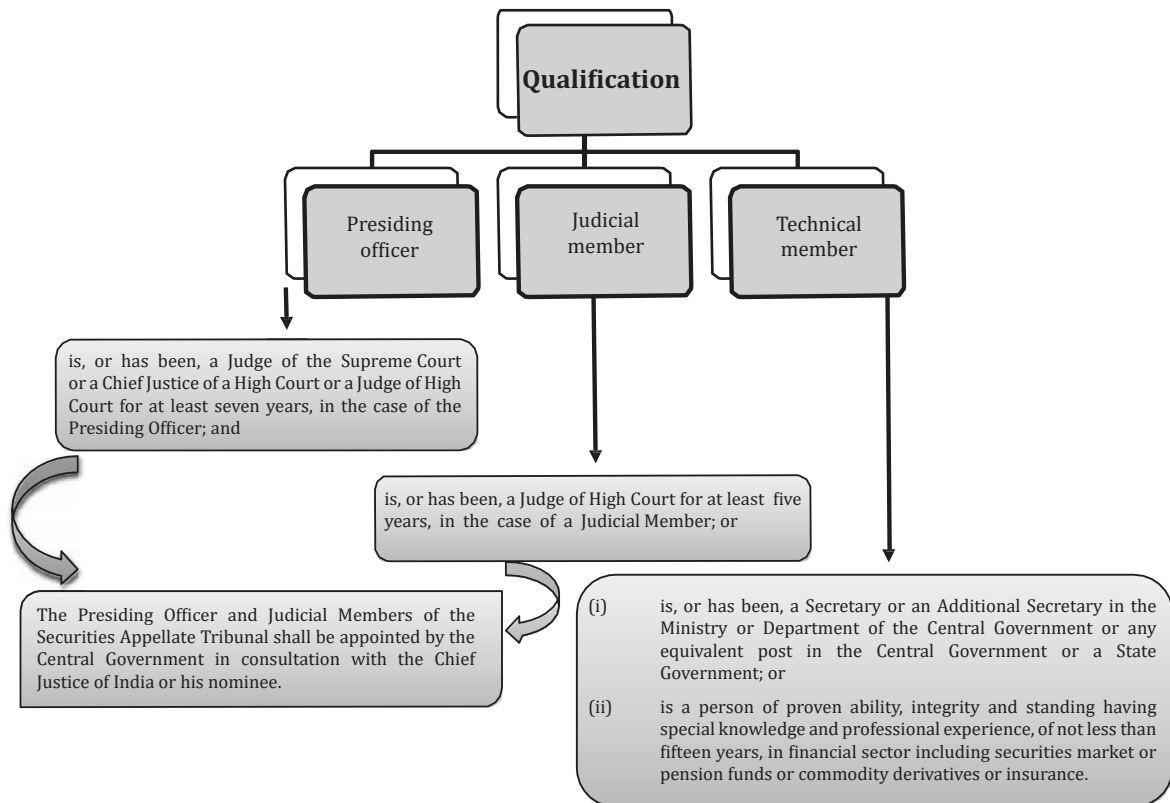
According to Section 15 L, the Securities Appellate Tribunal shall consist of a Presiding Officer and such number of Judicial Members and Technical Members as the Central Government may determine, by notification, to exercise the powers and discharge the functions conferred on the Securities Appellate Tribunal under this Act or any other law for the time being in force.

Subject to the provisions of this Act,—

- the jurisdiction of the Securities Appellate Tribunal may be exercised by Benches thereof;
- a Bench may be constituted by the Presiding Officer of the Securities Appellate Tribunal with two or more Judicial or Technical Members as he may deem fit;
However, every Bench constituted shall include at least one Judicial Member and one Technical Member;
- the Benches of the Securities Appellate Tribunal shall ordinarily sit at Mumbai and may also sit at such other places as the Central Government may, in consultation with the Presiding Officer, notify.

The Presiding Officer may transfer a Judicial Member or a Technical Member of the Securities Appellate Tribunal from one Bench to another Bench.

Qualification for appointment as Presiding Officer or Member of Securities Appellate Tribunal (Section 15M)



Appointment of Technical Member

The Technical Members of the Securities Appellate Tribunal shall be appointed by the Central Government on the recommendation of a Search-cum-Selection Committee consisting of the following, namely:

- Presiding Officer, Securities Appellate Tribunal – Chairperson;
- Secretary, Department of Economic Affairs – Member;
- Secretary, Department of Financial Services – Member; and
- Secretary, Legislative Department or Secretary, Department of Legal Affairs – Member.

The Secretary, Department of Economic Affairs shall be the Convener of the Search-cum-Selection Committee. The Search-cum-Selection Committee shall determine its procedure for recommending the names of persons to be appointed.

Validity of appointment

As per Section 15MC, no appointment of the Presiding Officer, a Judicial Member or a Technical Member of the Securities Appellate Tribunal shall be invalid merely by reason of any vacancy or any defect in the constitution of the Search cum- Selection Committee.

A member or part time member of the SEBI or the Insurance Regulatory and Development Authority or the Pension Fund Regulatory and Development Authority, or any person at senior management level equivalent to the Executive Director in the SEBI or in such Authorities, shall not be appointed as Presiding Officer or Member of the Securities Appellate Tribunal, during his service or tenure as such with the SEBI or with such Authorities, as the case may be, or within two years from the date on which he ceases to hold office as such in the SEBI or in such Authorities.

The Presiding Officer or such other member of the Securities Appellate Tribunal, holding office on the date of commencement of Part VIII of Chapter VI of the Finance Act, 2017 shall continue to hold office for such term as he was appointed and the other provisions of this Act shall apply to such Presiding Officer or such other member, as if Part VIII of Chapter VI of the Finance Act, 2017 had not been enacted.

Tenure of office of Presiding Officer and other Members of Securities Appellate Tribunal

Section 15N lays down that the Presiding Officer or every Judicial or Technical Member of the Securities Appellate Tribunal shall hold office for a term of five years from the date on which he enters upon his office, and shall be eligible for reappointment for another term of maximum five years.

However, no Presiding Officer or the Judicial or Technical Member shall hold office after he has attained the age of 70 years.

Salary and allowances and other terms and conditions of service of Presiding Officers

Section 15O lays down that the salary and allowances payable to and the other terms and conditions of service including pension, gratuity and other retirement benefits of the Presiding Officer and other Members of a Securities Appellate Tribunal shall be such as may be prescribed.

However neither the salary and allowances nor the other terms and conditions of service of the Presiding Officer and other Members of a Securities Appellate Tribunal shall be varied to their disadvantage after appointment.

Filling up of vacancies

As per Section 15P, if for reason other than temporary absence, any vacancy occurs in the office of the Presiding Officer or any other Member of a Securities Appellate Tribunal -

- then the Central Government shall appoint another person in accordance with the provisions of this Act to fill the vacancy and
- the proceedings may be continued before the Securities Appellate Tribunal from the stage at which the vacancy is filled.

In the event of occurrence of any vacancy in the office of the Presiding Officer of the Securities Appellate Tribunal by reason of his death, resignation or otherwise, the senior-most Judicial Member of the Securities Appellate Tribunal shall act as the Presiding Officer until the date on which a new Presiding Officer is appointed in accordance with the provisions of this Act.

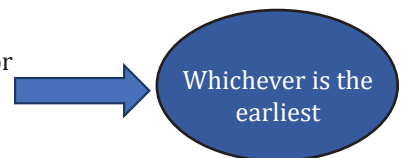
Resignation and removal

Resignation by notice in writing

15Q lays down that the Presiding Officer or any other Member of a Securities Appellate Tribunal may, by notice in writing under his hand addressed to the Central Government, resign his office.

However the Presiding Officer or any other Member shall, unless he is permitted by the Central Government to relinquish his office sooner, continue to hold office -

- until the expiry of three months from the date of receipt of such notice, or
- until a person duly appointed as his successor enters upon his office, or
- until the expiry of his term of office.



Removal of Presiding Officer or Judicial Member or Technical Member

The Central Government may, after an inquiry made by the Judge of the Supreme Court, remove the Presiding Officer or Judicial Member or Technical Member of the Securities Appellate Tribunal, on such conditions as may be specified.

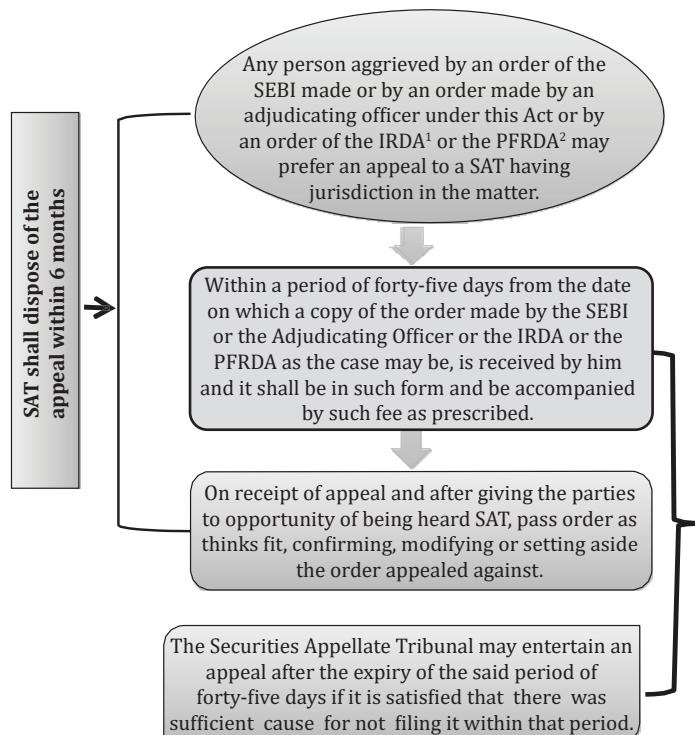
Provided that he shall not be removed from office unless he has been given a reasonable opportunity of being heard in the matter. The Central Government may, by rules, regulate the procedure for the investigation of misbehavior or incapacity of the Presiding Officer or any other Member.

Orders Constituting Appellate Tribunal to be Final and not to invalidate its Proceedings

Section 15R makes it clear that no order of the Central Government appointing any person as the Presiding Officer or a member of a Securities Appellate Tribunal shall be called in question in any manner, and no Act or proceeding before a Securities Appellate Tribunal shall be called in question in any manner on the ground merely of any defect in the constitution of a Securities Appellate Tribunal.

Appeal to the Securities Appellate Tribunal

Section 15T and 15U deal with the appeal procedure and powers of Securities Appellate Tribunal.



1. IRDA- Insurance Regulatory and Development Authority

2. PFRDA- Pension Fund Regulatory and Development Authority

The Securities Appellate Tribunal shall send a copy of every order made by it to the SEBI or the Insurance Regulatory and Development Authority (IRDA) or the Pension Fund Regulatory and Development Authority (PFRDA), as the case may be, the parties to the appeal and to the concerned Adjudicating Officer.

Procedure of SAT

Section 15U lays down that the Securities Appellate Tribunal shall not be bound by the procedure laid down by the Code of Civil Procedure, 1908, but shall be guided by the principles of natural justice and subject to the other provisions of this Act and of any rules, the Securities Appellate Tribunal shall have powers to regulate their own procedure including the places at which they shall have their sittings.

Powers of SAT

The Securities Appellate Tribunals shall have, for the purposes of discharging their functions under this Act, the same powers as are vested in a Civil Court under the Code of Civil Procedure, 1908, while trying a suit, in respect of the following matters, namely:

- (a) summoning and enforcing the attendance of any person and examining him on oath;
- (b) requiring the discovery and production of documents;

- (c) receiving evidence on affidavits;
- (d) issuing commissions for the examination of witnesses or documents;
- (e) reviewing its decisions;
- (f) dismissing an application for default or deciding it ex parte;
- (g) setting aside any order of dismissal of any application for default or any order passed by it ex parte;
- (h) any other matter which may be prescribed.

Every proceeding before the Securities Appellate Tribunal shall be deemed to be a judicial proceeding within the meaning of sections 193 and 228, and for the purposes of section 196 of the Indian Penal Code and the Securities Appellate Tribunal shall be deemed to be a civil court for all the purposes of section 195 and Chapter XXVI of the Code of Criminal Procedure, 1973.

Where benches are constituted, the Presiding Officer of the Securities Appellate Tribunal may, from time to time make provisions as to the distribution of the business of the Securities Appellate Tribunal amongst the benches and also provide for the matters which may be dealt with, by each bench.

On the application of any of the parties and after notice to the parties, and after hearing such of them as he may desire to be heard, or on his own motion without such notice, the Presiding Officer of the Securities Appellate Tribunal may transfer any case pending before one Bench, for disposal, to any other Bench.

If a Bench of the Securities Appellate Tribunal consisting of two members differ in opinion on any point, they shall state the point or points on which they differ, and make a reference to the Presiding Officer of the Securities Appellate Tribunal who shall either hear the point or points himself or refer the case for hearing only on such point or points by one or more of the other members of the Securities Appellate Tribunal and such point or points shall be decided according to the opinion of the majority of the members of the Securities Appellate Tribunal who have heard the case, including those who first heard it.

Right to Legal Representation

As per Section 15V, the appellant may either appear in person or authorise one or more chartered accountants or company secretaries or cost accountants or legal practitioners or any of its officers to present his or its case before the Securities Appellate Tribunal.

Limitation

As per the Section 15W, the provisions of the Limitations Act, 1963 shall apply to an appeal made to Securities Appellate Tribunal.

Public Servants

As per section 15X, the Presiding Officer and other officers and employees of Securities Appellate Tribunal shall be deemed to be public servants within the meaning of Section 21 of the Indian Penal Code.

Jurisdiction of Civil Court

Section 15Y lays down that no civil court has jurisdiction to entertain any suit or proceeding in respect of any matter which an Adjudicating Officer appointed under this Act or a Securities Appellate Tribunal under this Act is empowered by or under this Act to determine and no injunction shall be granted by any Court or other authority in respect of any action taken or to be taken in pursuance of any power conferred by or under this Act.

Appeal to Supreme Court

Section 15Z lays down that any person aggrieved by any decision or order of the Securities Appellate Tribunal may file an appeal to the Supreme Court within 60 days from the date of communication of the decision or order of the Securities Appellate Tribunal to him on any question of law arising out of such order.

It has been provided that the Supreme Court may, if it is satisfied that the applicant was prevented by sufficient cause from filing the appeal within the said period, allow it to be filed within a further period not exceeding 60 days.

Question: What is the time period for filing an appeal with SAT and Supreme Court?

Answer:

- In case of filing appeal with SAT: Within 45 days from the date of order of the copy made by the SEBI or the adjudicating officer or the IRDA or the PFRDA, as the case may be.
- In case of filing appeal with Supreme Court: Within 60 days from the date of communication of the **decision or order of SAT**.

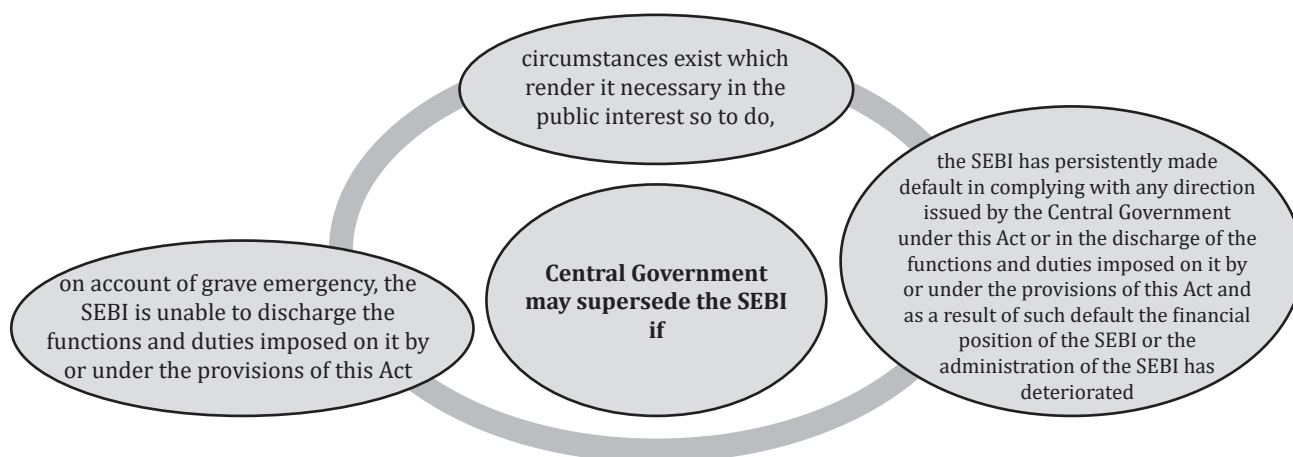
POWERS OF CENTRAL GOVERNMENT

To issue directions

Section 16 empowers Central Government to issue directions in writing to the SEBI on questions of policy as it may deem fit from time to time. However, the Central Government shall as far as practicable, give an opportunity to the SEBI to express its views before any such directions is given by the Central Government. The decision of the Central Government whether a question is one of policy or not shall be final.

To Supersede the SEBI

Section 17 lays down that if at any time the Central Government is of opinion that the SEBI is unable to discharge its functions it may, by notification, supersede the SEBI for such period, not exceeding six months, as may be specified in the notification.



Effect of publication of notification of superseding the SEBI

Upon the publication of the notification, it will have the following effects:

- all the members shall, as from the date of supersession, vacate their offices as such;
- all the powers, functions and duties which may, by or under the provisions of this Act, be exercised or discharged by or on behalf of the SEBI, shall until the SEBI is reconstituted, be exercised and discharged by such person or persons as the Central Government may direct; and
- all property owned or controlled by the SEBI shall, until the SEBI is reconstituted, vest in the Central Government.

Reconstitution of Board on the expiration of the period of supersession

On the expiration of the period of supersession specified in the notification, the Central Government may reconstitute the SEBI by a fresh appointment and in such case any person or persons who vacated their offices because of supersession shall not be deemed disqualified for appointment.

However, the Central Government may, at any time, before the expiration of the period of supersession, take action.

Action taken to be laid before each House of Parliament

The Central Government shall cause a notification issued and a full report of any action taken under this section and the circumstances to such action to be laid before each House of Parliament at the earliest.

Power to grant Immunity

As per Section 24B of the Act, the Central Government may on the recommendations by the SEBI, if satisfied that any person who is alleged to have violated any of the provisions of this Act or the rules or regulations made thereunder has made a full and true disclosures in respect of alleged violations, grant to such persons, subject to conditions as it may think fit to impose, immunity from prosecution for any offences under this Act or the rules or the regulations made thereunder or also from the imposition of any penalty under this Act with respect to the alleged violation.

Exemption

However, no such immunity shall be granted by the Central Government in cases where the proceedings for the prosecution for any such offence have been instituted before the date of receipt of application for grant of such immunity. It has also been provided that recommendations of the SEBI shall not be binding upon the Central Government.

Withdrawal of granted immunity by the Central Government

An immunity granted to a person can be withdrawn by the Central Government, if it is satisfied such person had, in the course of the proceedings not complied with the condition on which the immunity was granted or had given false evidence and thereupon such person may be tried for the offence with respect to which the immunity was granted or for any other offence of which he appears to have been guilty in connection with the contravention. He shall also become liable to the imposition of any penalty under this Act to which such person would have been liable had not such immunity been granted.

Power to make Rules

As per Section 29 of SEBI Act, 1992, the Central Government may, by notification, make rules for carrying out the purposes of this Act. In particular, and without prejudice to the generality of the foregoing power, such rules may provide for all or any of the following matters, namely :-

- the term of office and other conditions of service of the Chairman and the members under sub-section (1) of section 5;
- the additional functions that may be performed by the Board under section 11;
- the manner in which the accounts of the Board shall be maintained under section 15;
- the manner of inquiry under sub-section (1) of section 15-I;
- the salaries and allowances and other terms and conditions of service of the 178[Presiding Officers, Members] and other officers and employees of the Securities Appellate Tribunal under section 15-O and sub-section (3) of section 15S;
- the procedure for the investigation of misbehaviour or incapacity of the 179[Presiding Officers, or other Members] of the Securities Appellate Tribunal under sub-section (3) of section 15Q;
- the form in which an appeal may be filed before the Securities Appellate Tribunal under section 15T and the fees payable in respect of such appeal;
- the form and the manner in which returns and report to be made to the Central Government under section 18;
- any other matter which is to be, or may be, prescribed, or in respect of which provision is to be, or may be, made by rules.

RETURNS AND REPORTS

Furnishing of returns and reports by the SEBI to the Central Government

In accordance with section 18 of the SEBI Act, the SEBI shall furnish to the Central Government at such time and in such form and manner as may be prescribed or as the Central Government may direct, such returns and statements and such particulars in regard to any proposed or existing programme for the promotion and development of the securities market, as the Central Government may, from time to time, require.

Report of previous financial year by SEBI

SEBI shall, within ninety days after the end of each financial year, submit to the Central Government a report in such form, as may be prescribed, giving a true and full account of its activities, policy and programmes during the previous financial year.

Report to be presented before Parliament.

A copy of the report be laid, as soon as may be after it is received, before each House of Parliament.

DELEGATION OF POWERS

In accordance with Section 19 of the SEBI Act, the SEBI may, by general or special order in writing delegate to any member, officer of the SEBI or any other person subject to such conditions, if any as may be specified in the order, such of its powers and functions under the Act as it may deem necessary.

APPEAL TO THE CENTRAL GOVERNMENT

Appeal to Central Government

Section 20 of the Act provides that any person aggrieved by an order of the SEBI made, before the commencement of the Securities Laws (Second Amendment) Act, 1999, under this Act or the rules or regulations made thereunder, may prefer an appeal to the Central Government within such time as may be prescribed.

No appeal after expiry of limitation

The appeal shall not be admitted if it is preferred after the expiry of the period prescribed therefore.

However, an appeal may be admitted after the expiry of the period prescribed therefore if the appellant satisfies the Central Government that he had sufficient cause for not preferring the appeal within the prescribed period.

Appeal shall be made in prescribed form with a copy of an order

Every appeal made under this section shall be made in prescribed form and shall be accompanied by a copy of the order appealed against by such fees as may be prescribed.

The procedure for disposing of an appeal shall be such as may be prescribed and the appellant shall be given a reasonable opportunity of being heard.

BAR OF JURISDICTION

Section 20A lays down that -

no order passed by the SEBI or the Adjudicating Officer under this Act shall be appealable except as provided in section 15T or section 20 and

no civil court shall have jurisdiction in respect of any matter which the SEBI (or the adjudicating officer) is empowered by, or under, this Act to pass any order and

no injunction shall be granted by any court or other authority in respect of any action taken or to be taken in pursuance of any order passed by the SEBI or the adjudicating officer by, or under, the SEBI Act

PUBLIC SERVANTS

Section 22 of the Act provides that all members, officers and other employees of the SEBI while acting or purporting to act in pursuance of any of the provisions of the Act shall be deemed to be public servants within the meaning of Section 21 of the Indian Penal Code.

OFFENCES (SECTION 24)

Without prejudice to any award of penalty by the Adjudicating Officer or the SEBI under the SEBI Act, if any person contravenes or attempts to contravene or abets the contravention of the provisions of this Act or of any rules or regulations made thereunder, he shall be punishable with imprisonment for a term which may extend to ten years or with fine which may extend to twenty five crore rupees or with both.

If any person fails to pay the penalty imposed by the Adjudicating Officer or the SEBI or fails to comply with directions or orders, he shall be punishable with imprisonment, for a term which shall not be less than one month but which may extend to ten years or with fine which may extend to twenty - five crore rupees or with both.

Section 24A provides that any offence punishable under this Act, not being an offence punishable with imprisonment only or with imprisonment and also with fine, may before or after the institutions of any proceeding, be compounded by a Securities Appellate Tribunal or a Court before which such proceedings are pending.

COGNIZANCE OF OFFENCES BY COURTS

Sl No.	Section	Particulars
1.	Section 26	Cognizance of Offences by Courts
2.	Section 26A	Establishment of Special Courts
3.	Section 26B	Offences triable by Special Courts
4.	Section 26C	Appeal and revision
5.	Section 26D	Application of Code to proceedings before Special Court

Section 26(1) lays down that no court shall take cognizance of any offence punishable under this Act or any rules or regulations made thereunder, save on a complaint made by SEBI.

Section 26A(1) empowered the Central Government for providing speedy trial of offences under this Act, by notification, establish or designate as many Special Courts as may be necessary.

Section 26A(2) provides that Special Court shall consist of a single judge who shall be appointed by the Central Government with the concurrence of the Chief Justice of the High Court within whose jurisdiction the Judge to be appointed is working.

Sub-section (3) of Section 26A stipulates that a person shall not be qualified for appointment as a Judge of a Special Court unless he is, immediately before such appointment, holding the office of a Sessions Judge or an Additional Sessions Judge, as the case may be.

Offences triable by Special Courts

- Section 26B stipulates that notwithstanding anything contained in the Code of Criminal Procedure, 1973, all offences under this Act, shall be taken cognizance of and tried by the Special Court established for the area in which the offence is committed or where there are more Special Courts than one for such area, by such one of them as may be specified in this behalf by the High Court concerned.

Appeal and revision

- Section 26 C provides for appeal and revision. The High Court may exercise, so far as may be applicable, all the powers conferred by Chapters XXIX and XXX of the Code of Criminal Procedure, 1973 on a High Court, as if a Special Court within the local limits of the jurisdiction of the High Court were a Court of Session trying cases within the local limits of the jurisdiction of the High Court.

Application of Code to proceedings before Special Court

- Section 26D (1) provides that the provisions of the Code of Criminal Procedure, 1973 shall apply to the proceedings before a Special Court and for the purposes of the said provisions, the Special Court shall be deemed to be a Court of Session and the person conducting prosecution before a Special Court shall be deemed to be a Public Prosecutor within the meaning of clause (u) of section 2 of the Code of Criminal Procedure, 1973.

The person conducting prosecution referred to in Section 26D(1) should have been in practice as an advocate for not less than seven years or should have held a post, for a period of not less than seven years, under the Union or a state, requiring special knowledge of law.

Transitional provisions

- Section 26E provides that any offence committed under this Act, which is triable by a Special Court shall, until a Special Court is established, be taken cognizance of and tried by a Court of Session exercising jurisdiction over the area, notwithstanding anything contained in the Code of Criminal Procedure, 1973.
- However, this section shall not affect the powers of the High Court, under section 407 of the Code of Criminal Procedure, 1973 to transfer any case or class of cases taken cognizance by a Court of Session under this section.

CONTRAVENTION BY COMPANIES

Section 27 lays down that:

- (1) Where a contravention of any of the provisions of this Act or any rule, regulation, direction or order made thereunder has been committed by a company, every person who at the time the contravention was committed was in charge of, and was responsible to, the company for the conduct of the business of the company, as well as the company, shall be deemed to be guilty of the contravention and shall be liable to be proceeded against and punished accordingly.

Exemption:

However, this provision shall not render any such person liable to any punishment provided in this Act, if he proves that the contravention was committed without his knowledge or that he had exercised all due diligence to prevent the commission of such contravention.

- (2) Where a contravention under this Act has been committed by a company and it is proved that the contravention has been committed with the consent or connivance of, or is attributable to any neglect on the part of, any director, manager, secretary or other officer of the company, such director, manager, secretary or other officer shall also be deemed to be guilty of the contravention and shall be liable to be proceeded against and punished accordingly.

RECOVERY OF AMOUNTS

Section 28A(1) provides that if a person

Fails to pay the penalty imposed under this Act

Fails to comply with any direction of the SEBI for refund of monies or

Fails to comply with a direction of disgorgement order issued under section 11B or

Fails to pay any fees due to the SEBI

The Recovery Officer may draw up under his signature a statement in the specified form specifying the amount due from the person (such statement being hereafter in this Chapter referred to as certificate).

The Recovery Officer shall proceed to recover amount specified in the certificate by one or more of the following modes, namely:-

- (a) attachment and sale of the person's movable property;
- (b) attachment of the person's bank accounts;
- (c) attachment and sale of the person's immovable property;
- (d) arrest of the person and his detention in prison;
- (e) appointing a receiver for the management of the person's movable and immovable properties, and for this purpose, the provisions of section 220 to 227, 228A, 229, 232, the Second and Third Schedules to the Income-tax Act, 1961 and the Income-tax (Certificate Proceedings) Rules, 1962, as in force from time to time, in so far as may be, apply with necessary modifications as if the said provisions and the rules made thereunder were the provisions of this Act and referred to the amount due under this Act instead of to income-tax under the Income-tax Act, 1961.

"Recovery Officer" means any officer of the SEBI who may be authorized, by general or special order in writing, to exercise the powers of a Recovery Officer.

Sub-section (2) empowered the Recovery Officer to seek the assistance of the local district administration while exercising the powers.

The recovery of amounts by a Recovery Officer, pursuant to non-compliance with any direction issued by the SEBI under section 11B, shall have precedence over any other claim against such person.

Explanation 1 - For the purpose of this sub-section, the person's movable or immovable property or monies held in bank accounts shall include any property or monies held in bank accounts which has been transferred directly or indirectly on or after the date when the amount specified in certificate had become due, by the person to his spouse or minor child or son's wife or son's minor child, otherwise than for adequate consideration, and which is held by, or stands in the name of, any of the persons aforesaid; and so far as the movable or immovable property or monies held in bank accounts so transferred to his minor child or his son's minor child is concerned, it shall, even after the date of attainment of majority by such minor child or son's minor child, as the case may be, continue to be included in the person's movable or immovable property or monies held in bank accounts for recovering any amount due from the person.

Explanation 2 - Any reference under the provisions of the Second and Third Schedules to the Income-tax Act, 1961 and the Income-tax (Certificate Proceedings) Rules, 1962 to the assessee shall be construed as a reference to the person specified in the certificate.

Explanation 3 - Any reference to appeal in Chapter XVIIID and the Second Schedule to the Income-tax Act, 1961, shall be construed as a reference to appeal before the Securities Appellate Tribunal under Section 15T of this Act.

Explanation 4 - The interest referred to in Section 220 of the Income-tax Act, 1961 shall commence from the date the amount became payable by the person.

Continuance of proceedings

Section 28B (1) lays down that where a person dies, his legal representative shall be liable to pay any sum which the deceased would have been liable to pay, if he had not died, in the like manner and to the same extent as the deceased.

However, in case of any penalty payable under this Act, a legal representative shall be liable only in case the penalty has been imposed before the death of the deceased person.

For the purposes of sub-section (1), –

- (a) any proceeding for disgorgement, refund or an action for recovery before the Recovery Officer under this Act, except a proceeding for levy of penalty, initiated against the deceased before his death, shall be deemed to have been initiated against the legal representative, and may be continued against the legal representative from the stage at which it stood on the date of the death of the deceased and all the provisions of this Act shall apply accordingly;
- (b) any proceeding for disgorgement, refund or an action for recovery before the Recovery Officer under this Act, except a proceeding for levy of penalty, which could have been initiated against the deceased if he had survived, may be initiated against the legal representative and all the provisions of this Act shall apply accordingly.

Every legal representative shall be personally liable for any sum payable by him in his capacity as legal representative if, while his liability for such sum remains undischarged, he creates a charge on or disposes of or parts with any assets of the estate of the deceased, which are in, or may come into, his possession, but such liability shall be limited to the value of the asset so charged, disposed of or parted with.

The liability of a legal representative under this section shall be limited to the extent to which the estate of the deceased is capable of meeting the liability.

Explanation.– For the purposes of this section “legal representative” means a person who in law represents the estate of a deceased person, and includes any person who inter-meddles with the estate of the deceased and where a party sues or is sued in a representative character, the person on whom the estate devolves on the death of the party so suing or sued.

ROLE OF COMPANY SECRETARY

Right to Legal Representation (Section 15V of the SEBI Act)

Any person aggrieved (the appellant) may either appear in person or authorise one or more chartered accountants or company secretaries (PCS) or cost accountants or legal practitioners or any of its officers to present his or its case before the Securities Appellate Tribunal (SAT).

LESSON ROUND-UP

- The SEBI Act, 1992, was notified to protect the interests of the investors and to promote the development of, and to regulate the securities markets by such measures as it thinks fit.
- The SEBI regulates the securities market and the SAT acts as a watchdog to ensure justice.
- The SEBI Act, 1992 empowers an aggrieved person for remedies against the SEBI's order or penalties by establishing Securities Appellate Tribunal.
- Any person aggrieved by any decision or order of the SAT can file an appeal to the Supreme Court.
- Section 15 Y of the SEBI Act provides that no civil court shall have jurisdiction to entertain a suit or proceeding in respect of any matter in which an Adjudicating Officer (AO') is appointed under the Act or SAT is empowered by or under the Act to determine and no injunction shall be granted by any Court or other authority in respect of any action taken or to be taken in pursuance of any power conferred by or under the Act.
- The SEBI is empowered to issue directions under section 11B of the Act.
- The SEBI is further empowered to conduct inspections of registered intermediaries.
- Besides inspection, the SEBI is empowered to conduct investigations in case of breach of any regulation or in case of action detrimental to the interest of investors.
- The SEBI is empowered to make rules and regulations.

GLOSSARY

Injunction	A court order by which an individual is required to perform, or is restrained from performing, a particular Act.
Ordinance	An ordinance is an executive order issued by the President of India that holds the same force and effect on an Act passed by the Parliament.
Securities Appellate Tribunal (SAT)	Government by notification to exercise the jurisdiction, powers and authority conferred on such Tribunal by or under the SEBI Act or any other law for the time being in force.
Tribunal	Article 227 of the Constitution of India defines 'tribunal' as a person or a body other than a Court set up by the State for deciding rights of contending parties in accordance with rules framed for regulation having force of law.

TEST YOURSELF

(These are meant for recapitulation only. Answer to these questions are not to be submitted for evaluation.)

1. Discuss the various functions and powers of the SEBI.
2. Explain the role of the SEBI in strengthening regulatory framework and fostering investor confidence.
3. Enumerate the various penalties which can be imposed under the SEBI Act, 1992 for various failures, defaults, non-disclosure and other offences.
4. Explain the procedure for Appeal to the Securities Appellate Tribunal.
5. Discuss the various powers of the Central Government under the SEBI Act, 1992.
6. Explain the factors to be considered by SEBI to arrive at the settlement terms.
7. ABC Ltd. is a registered stock broker of the Bombay Stock Exchange. SEBI levied a penalty of 2 crore on the company for violation of the provisions of SEBI (Prohibition of Fraudulent and Unfair Trade Practices relating to the Securities Market) Regulations, 2003. ABC Ltd. is contemplating to challenge the SEBI's order before the Securities Appellate Tribunal (SAT) in an appeal. Explain the procedure for making an appeal before the SAT.

LIST OF FURTHER READINGS

- SEBI Notifications
- SEBI Circulars
- SEBI Orders
- SAT Orders

OTHER REFERENCES (Including Websites/Video Links)

- <https://www.sebi.gov.in/index.html>
- <http://sat.gov.in/>

Lesson 3

Depositories Act, 1996

Key Concepts One Should Know

- Depository
- Depository Participant (DP)
- Issuer
- Beneficial Owner (BO)
- Registered Owner
- Security

Learning Objectives

To understand:

- Basic concept of depository and how it works
- Depository participants, its functions, rights and obligations of depositories, benefits of depositories, dematerialisation process, and the regulatory framework for depository in India.
- Rights and Obligations of Depositories, Participants, Issuers and Beneficial Owners
- Powers of SEBI, Depositories and Central Government

Further, a Company Secretary in Practice is authorised by SEBI to conduct internal/ concurrent audit of depositories participants and also to conduct the reconciliation of share capital.

Lesson Outline

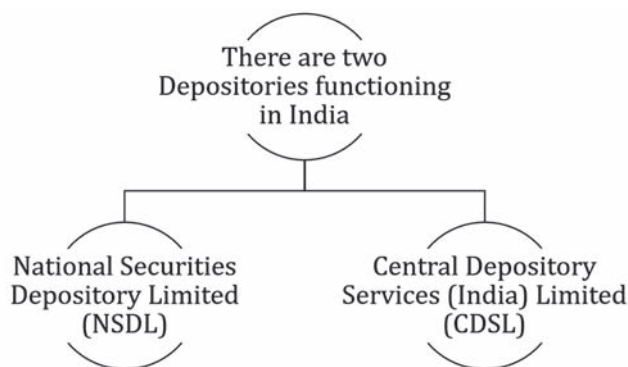
- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| • Introduction | • Membership Rights in respect of securities held by a Depository |
| • Depository System – An Overview | • Power of Central Government to Make Rules |
| • Depository Functions | • Power of Depositories to Make Bye-Laws |
| • Benefits of Depository System | • SEBI (Depositories and Participants) |
| • Models of Depository | • Regulations, 2018 |
| • Legal Linkage | • Reconciliation & Audit under SEBI (Depositories and Participants) Regulations, 2018 |
| • Depository Participant | • Internal Audit of operations of Depository Participants |
| • Issuer | • Concurrent Audit |
| • Dematerialisation | • Role of Company Secretary |
| • Rematerialisation | • LESSON ROUND-UP |
| • Electronic Credit in New Issues | • GLOSSARY |
| • Trading System | • TEST YOURSELF |
| • Corporate Actions | • LIST OF FURTHER READINGS |
| • Legal Framework | • OTHER REFERENCES |
| • Depositories Act, 1996 | |
| • Power of SEBI | |
| • Penalties and Adjudication | |
| • Offences and Cognizance | |

Regulatory Framework

- The Depositories Act, 1996
- The SEBI (Depositories and Participants) Regulations, 2018
- Bye-laws of Depository
- Business Rules of Depository.
- The Companies Act, 2013
- The Indian Stamp Act, 1899
- Securities and Exchange Board of India Act, 1992
- Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, 1956
- Benami Transaction (Prohibition) Act, 1988
- Income Tax Act, 1961
- Bankers' Books Evidence Act, 1891
- Prevention of Money Laundering Act (PMLA), 2002

INTRODUCTION

Depositories are institutions that hold securities of investors in dematerialized / electronic form and provide demat services to the investors through their Depository Participants (DP). There are two depositories in our country namely, National Securities Depository Limited (NSDL) and Central Depository Services (India) Limited (CDSL). Under each Depository, there are registered Depository Participants (DPs), which provide various services to the investors like opening and maintaining of a Demat account, dematerialization of shares, etc.



The inception of depository system in the Indian Capital market has been started during the 90's. Theft, forgery, mutilation of certificates and other irregularities provided the issuer right to refuse the transfer of a security. Added costs and delays in settlement, restricted liquidity and made investor grievance redressal time consuming. To obviate these problems, the Depositories Act, 1996 was passed and subsequently the regulations were notified.

LEGAL FRAMEWORK

The legal framework for a depository system has been laid down by the Depositories Act, 1996 and is regulated by SEBI. The depository business in India is regulated by –

- The Depositories Act, 1996
- The SEBI (Depositories and Participants) Regulations, 2018

- Bye-laws of Depository
- Business Rules of Depository.

Apart from the above, Depositories are also governed by certain provisions of:

- The Companies Act, 2013
- The Indian Stamp Act, 1899
- Securities and Exchange Board of India Act, 1992
- Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, 1956
- Benami Transaction (Prohibition) Act, 1988
- Income Tax Act, 1961
- Bankers' Books Evidence Act, 1891

The legal framework for depository system in the Depositories Act, 1996 provides for the establishment of multiple depositories. Anybody to be eligible for providing depository services must be formed and registered as a company under the Companies Act, 2013 and seek registration with SEBI and obtain a Certificate of Commencement of Business from the SEBI on fulfillment of the prescribed conditions.

The investors opting to join depository mode are required to enter into an agreement with depository through a participant who acts as an agent of the depository. The agencies such as custodians, banks, financial institutions, large corporate brokerage firms, non-banking financial companies etc. act as participants of depositories. The companies issuing securities are also required to enter into an agreement with the Depository.

DEPOSITORY SYSTEM – AN OVERVIEW

- A depository is an organization which holds securities (like shares, debentures, bonds, government securities, mutual fund units etc.) of investors in electronic form at the request of the investors through a registered depository participant. It also provides services related to transactions in securities.
- A Depository is an organization like a Central Bank where the securities of a shareholder are held in the electronic form at the request of the shareholder through the medium of a Depository Participant. To utilize the services offered by a Depository, the investor has to open an account with the Depository through a Depository Participant.
- In the depository system, share certificates belonging to the investors are to be dematerialized and their names are required to be entered in the records of depository as beneficial owners. Consequent to these changes, the investors' names in the companies' register are replaced by the name of depository as the registered owner of the securities.
- The depository, however, does not have any voting rights or other economic rights in respect of the shares as a registered owner. The beneficial owner continues to enjoy all the rights and benefits and is subject to all the liabilities in respect of the securities held by a depository.
- In the Depository mode, corporate actions such as IPOs, rights, conversions, bonus, mergers/amalgamations, subdivisions & consolidations are carried out without the movement of paper, saving both cost & time. Information of beneficiary owners is readily available. The issuer gets information on changes in shareholding pattern on a regular basis, which enables the issuer to efficiently monitor the changes in shareholdings.
- The Depository system links the issuing corporates, Depository Participants (DPs), the Depositories and clearing corporations of stock exchanges. This network facilitates holding of securities in the soft form and effects transfers by means of account transfers.

According to Section 2(e) of the Depositories Act, 1996, Depository means a company formed and registered under the Companies Act, 2013 and which has been granted a certificate of registration under Section 12(1A) of the SEBI Act, 1992.

- Under the provisions of the Depositories Act, these Depositories provide various services to investors and other Participants in the capital market, such as, clearing members, stock exchanges, investment institutions, banks and issuing corporates. These include basic facilities like account opening, dematerialization, settlement of trades and advanced facilities like pledging, distribution of non-cash corporate actions, distribution of securities to allottees in case of public issues, etc.
- A depository cannot act as a depository unless it obtains a certificate of commencement of business from the SEBI.
- To utilize the services of a depository, the investor has to open an account with the depository through a participant, similar to the opening of an account with any of the bank branches to utilize services of that bank. Registration of the depository is required under the SEBI (Depositories and Participants) Regulations, 2018 and is a pre-condition to the functioning of the depository. Depository and depository participant both are regulated by the SEBI.

BANK-DEPOSITORY - AN ANALOGY

BANK	DEPOSITORY
Holds funds in an account	Holds securities in an account
Transfers funds between accounts on the instruction of the account holder	Transfers securities between accounts on the instruction of the Beneficial owner account holder
Facilitates transfer without having to handle money	Facilitates transfer of ownership without having to handle securities
Accountable for the safe keeping of funds	Accountable for the safe keeping of securities

DEPOSITORY FUNCTIONS

- Account opening
- Dematerialisation
- Rematerialisation
- Settlement
- Initial Public Offers (IPO's), corporate benefits
- Creation of encumbrance

Difference between Depository and Custodian

Both depository and custodian services are responsible for safe keeping of securities but they are different in the sense that the Depository can legally transfer beneficial ownership, while a custodian cannot. The main objective of a Depository is to minimize the paper work involved with the ownership, trading and transfer of securities.

BENEFITS OF DEPOSITORY SYSTEM

In the depository system, the ownership and transfer of securities takes place by means of electronic book entries. At the outset, this system rids the capital market of the dangers related to handling of paper. The system provides numerous direct and indirect benefits, like:

- **Elimination of bad deliveries** - In the depository environment, once the holdings of an investor are dematerialised, the question of bad delivery does not arise i.e. they cannot be held "under objection". In the physical environment, buyer of shares was required to take the risk of transfer and face uncertainty of the quality of assets purchased, while in a depository environment good money certainly begets good quality of assets.
- **Elimination of all risks associated with physical certificates** - Dealing in physical securities have associated security risks of theft, mutilation of certificates, loss of certificates during movements through and from the registrars, thus exposing the investors to the cost of obtaining duplicate certificates, loss of certificates and advertisements, etc. This problem does not arise in the depository environment.

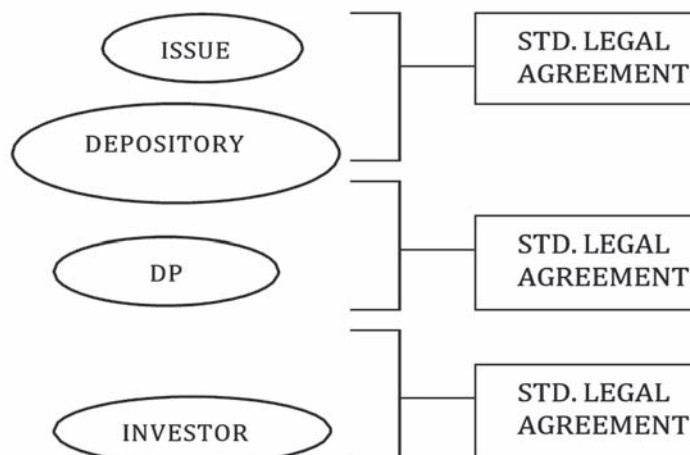
- **Immediate transfer and registration of securities** - In the depository environment, once the securities are credited to the investor's account on pay out, he becomes the legal owner of the securities. There is no further need to send it to the company's registrar for registration. If securities are purchased in the physical environment, the investor has to send it to the company's Share Transfer Agent so that the change of ownership can be registered. This process usually takes around three to four months and is rarely completed within the statutory framework of two months thus exposing the investor to opportunity cost of delay in transfer and to risk of loss in transit. To overcome this, the normally accepted practice is to hold the securities in street names i.e. not to register the change of ownership. However, if the investors miss a book closure the securities are not good for delivery and the investor would also stand to lose their corporate entitlements.
- **Faster disbursement of non-cash corporate benefits like rights, bonus, etc.** – Depository system provides for direct credit of non-cash corporate entitlements to an investor's account, thereby ensuring faster disbursement and avoiding risk of loss of certificates in transit.
- **Reduction in brokerage by many brokers for trading in dematerialized securities** – Brokers provide this benefit to investors as dealing in dematerialized securities reduces their back office cost of handling paper and also eliminates the risk of being the introducing broker.
- Reduction in handling of huge volumes of paper and periodic status reports to investors on their holdings and transactions, leading to better controls.
- **Elimination of problems related to change of address of investor, transmission, etc.** – In case of change of address or transmission of demat shares, investors are saved from undergoing the entire change procedure with each company or registrar. Investors have to only inform their DP with all relevant documents and the required changes are effected in the database of all the companies, where the investor is a registered holder of securities.
- **Elimination of problems related to selling securities on behalf of a minor** – A natural guardian is not required to take court approval for selling demat securities on behalf of a minor.

MODELS OF DEPOSITORY

Immobilisation – Where physical share certificate are kept in vaults with the depository for safe custody and all subsequent transactions in these securities take place in book entry form. The actual owner has the right to withdraw his physical securities as and when desired. The immobilization of fresh issue may be achieved by issuing a jumbo certificate representing the entire issue in the name of depository, as nominee of the beneficial owners.

Dematerialisation – No Physical scrip in existence, only electronic records maintained by depository. This type of system is cost effective and simple and has been adopted in India.

LEGAL LINKAGE



DEPOSITORY PARTICIPANT (DP)

Just as a brokers act an agent of the investor at the Stock Exchange, a Depository Participant (DP) is the representative (agent) of the investor in the depository system providing the link between the Company and investor through the Depository. The Depository Participant maintains securities' account balances and intimates the status of holding to the account holder from time to time.

Characteristics of a DP

- Transmission requests/nomination
- Acts as an Agent of Depository
- Customer interface of Depository
- Functions like Securities Bank
- Characteristics of a DP
- Account opening
- Facilitates dematerialisation/rematerialisation
- Instant transfer on pay-out
- Enables off market transfers
- Settles trades in electronic segment
- Pledge/enforcement of pledge etc.

A DP is one with whom an investor needs to open an account to deal in shares in electronic form. While the Depository can be compared to a Bank, DP is like a branch of that bank with which an account can be opened.

Question: Who can be a DP?

Answer: Public financial institutions, scheduled commercial banks, foreign banks operating in India with the approval of the Reserve Bank of India, state financial corporations, custodians, stock-brokers, clearing corporations / clearing houses, NBFCs and registrar to an issue or share transfer agent complying with the requirements prescribed by SEBI can be registered as DP.

ISSUER

“Issuer” means person making an issue of securities. Any entity such as a corporate / state or central government organizations issuing securities which can be held by depository in electronic form.

Functions of Issuer

Dematerialisation
Confirmation of Beneficiary Holdings
Corporate Actions – Rights, Bonus, etc.
Reconciliation of Depository Holdings
Rematerialisation

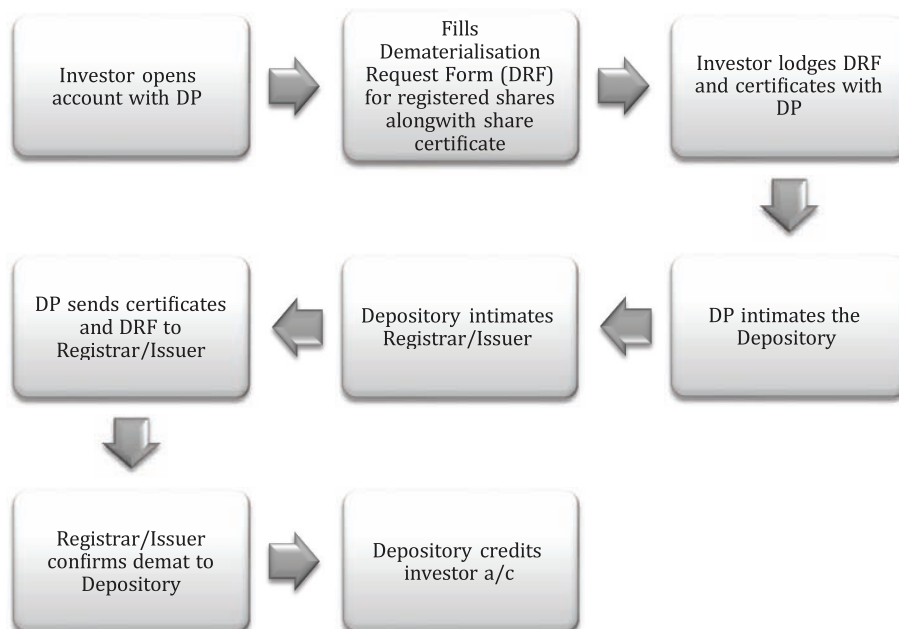
DEMATERIALISATION

Dematerialization is a process by which the physical share certificates of an investor are taken back by the Company and an equivalent number of securities are credited his account in electronic form at the request of the investor. An investor will have to first open an account with a Depository Participant and then request for the dematerialization of his share certificates through the Depository Participant so that the dematerialized holdings can be credited into that account. This is very similar to opening a Bank Account.

Dematerialization of shares is optional and an investor can still hold shares in physical form. However, he/she has to demat the shares if he/she wishes to sell the same through the Stock Exchanges, as physical shares are to be sold through a separate session and are sold at a big discount to the market prices. Similarly, if an investor purchases

shares from the Stock Exchange, he/she will get delivery of the shares in demat form. Odd lot share certificates can also be dematerialized. Similarly, in Public Issues/Right Issues, shares are issued only in demat form.

PROCEDURE FOR DEMATERIALISATION



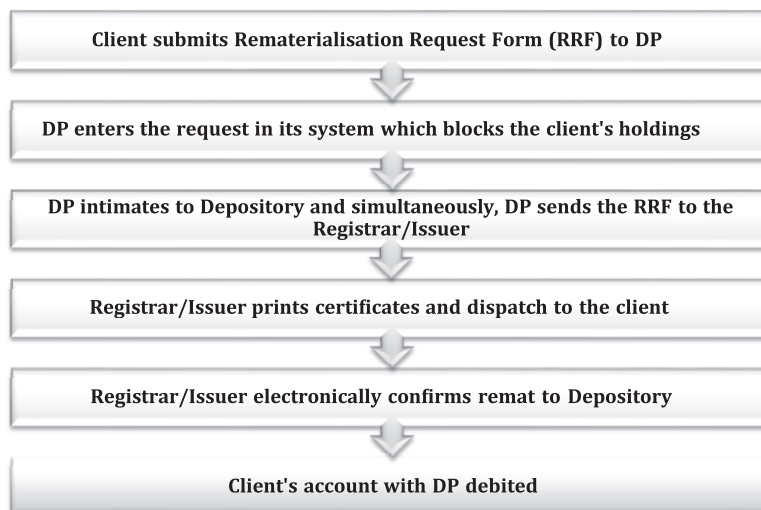
Question: Can an investor, already having a demat account; open another account with any other Depository Participant (DP)?

Answer: Yes, the investor has a choice to open another demat account with any DP.

REMATERIALISATION

Rematerialisation is the process of converting securities held in electronic form in a demat account back in physical certificate form. For the purpose of rematerialisation, the client has to submit the rematerialisation request to the DP with whom he has an account. A client can rematerialise his dematerialised holdings at any point of time. The securities sent for rematerialisation cannot be traded.

PROCEDURE FOR REMATERIALISATION



ELECTRONIC CREDIT IN NEW ISSUES

- Investor opens account with DP
- Submits application with option to hold securities in depository giving DP-Id and Client-Id
- Registrar uploads list of allottees to Depository
- Depository credits allottee's account with DP
- Refunds sent by Registrar as usual.

TRADING SYSTEM

- Separate quotes in Book Entry
- Trading Member to have Clearing Account with DP
- Settlement as per Settlement Calendar of Stock Exchange
- Trading can be introduced in any Stock exchange if settlement is guaranteed.

CORPORATE ACTIONS

- Dividends/cash benefits, these benefits are directly forwarded to the investors by the company or its registrar and transfer agent.
- Non-cash benefits, viz. Bonus, Rights Issue, etc. these benefits are electronically credited to the beneficial owner's account through Depository.

Question: How would Mr. X get Bonus Shares if he holds shares in Demat Form?

Answer: The concerned company obtains the details of beneficiary holders and their holdings from Depository (NSDL or CDSL) as on the record date. The number of shares he is entitled for, are credited to his demat account by the company / its RTA.

DEPOSITORIES ACT, 1996

Regulatory Framework

The Depositories Act, 1996 is divided into five chapters which are discussed below as under:

Depositories Act, 1996	Chapter I	Definitions of various terms
	Chapter II	Certificate of Commencement of Business
	Chapter III	Rights and Obligations of Depositories, Participants, Issuers and Beneficial Owners
	Chapter IV	Enquiry and Inspection
	Chapter V	Miscellaneous

Objectives

The depositories' legislation as per the Statement of Objects and Reasons appended to the Depositories Act, 1996 aims at providing :

- A legal basis for establishment of depositories to conduct the task of maintenance of ownership records and effecting changes in ownership records through book entry;
- Dematerialisation of securities in the depositories mode as well as giving option to an investor to choose between holding securities in physical mode and holding securities in a dematerialized form in a depository;

- Making the securities fungible;
- Making the shares, debentures and any interest thereon of a public limited company freely transferable; and
- Exempting all transfers of shares within a depository from stamp duty.

Certificate of Commencement of Business by Depositories

Section 3 of the Depository Act, stipulates that no depository shall act as a depository unless it obtains a certificate of commencement of business from the SEBI in such form as may be specified by the SEBI (Depositories and Participants) Regulations, 2018.

The SEBI shall not grant a certificate unless it is satisfied that the depository has adequate systems and safeguards to prevent manipulation of records and transactions.

However no certificate shall be refused unless the depository concerned has been given a reasonable opportunity of being heard.

Eligibility Condition for Depository Services

Any company or other institution to be eligible to provide depository services must:

- has a net worth of not less than rupees one hundred crores.
- be formed and registered as a company under the Companies Act, 2013.
- be registered with SEBI as a depository under SEBI Act, 1992.
- has framed bye-laws with the previous approval of SEBI.
- has one or more participants to render depository services on its behalf.
- has adequate systems and safeguards to prevent manipulation of records and transactions to the satisfaction of SEBI.
- complies with Depositories Act, 1996 and SEBI (Depositories and Participants) Regulations, 2018.
- meets eligibility criteria in terms of constitution, network, etc.

Any person, through a participant, may enter into an agreement, in such form as may be specified by the bye-laws, with any depository for availing its services.

Rights and Obligations of Depositories, Participants, Issuers and Beneficial Owners

Agreement between depository and participant

A depository shall enter into an agreement with one or more participants as its agent in such form as may be specified by the bye-laws.

Services of depository

Any person, through a participant, may enter into an agreement, in such form as may be specified by the bye-laws, with any depository for availing its services.

Surrender of certificate of security

Any person who has entered into an agreement through a participant shall surrender the certificate of security, for which he seeks to avail the services of a depository, to the issuer in such manner as may be specified by the regulations.

The issuer, on receipt of certificate of security, shall cancel the certificate of security and substitute in its records the name of the depository as a registered owner in respect of that security and inform the depository accordingly.

A depository shall, on receipt of the information from issuer, enter the name of the person in its records, as the beneficial owner.³

Registration of transfer of securities with depository

Every depository shall, on receipt of intimation from a participant, register the transfer of security in the name of the transferee. If a beneficial owner or a transferee of any security seeks to have custody of such security the depository shall inform the issuer accordingly.

Options to receive security certificate or hold securities with depository

Section 8 states that –

- (1) Every person subscribing to securities offered by an issuer shall have the option either to receive the security certificates or hold securities with a depository.
- (2) Where a person opts to hold a security with a depository, the issuer shall intimate such depository the details of allotment of the security, and on receipt of such information the depository shall enter in its records the name of the allottee as the beneficial owner of that security.

However, Section 29 of the Companies Act, 2013 read with the Companies (Prospectus and Allotment of Securities) Rules, 2014, provides that –

- every company making public offer and such other class or classes of companies as may be prescribed, shall issue the securities only in dematerialised form by complying with the provisions of the Depositories Act, 1996 and the regulations made thereunder.
- Further, in case of such class or classes of unlisted companies as may be prescribed, the securities shall be held or transferred only in dematerialised form in the manner laid down in the Depositories Act, 1996 and the regulations made thereunder.
- Any company, other than a company mentioned above, may convert its securities into dematerialised form or issue its securities in physical form in accordance with the provisions of this Act or in dematerialised form in accordance with the provisions of the Depositories Act, 1996 and the regulations made thereunder.

It is not necessary that all eligible securities must be in the depository mode. In the scheme of the Depositories legislation, the investor has been given supremacy. The investor has the choice of holding physical securities or opts for a depository based ownership record.

However, in case of fresh issue of securities all securities issued have to be in dematerialized form. However, after that investor will also have the freedom to switch from depository mode to physical mode and *vice versa*. The decision as to whether or not to hold securities within the depository mode and if in depository mode, which depository or participant, would be entirely with the investor.

Question: What type of instruments are available for demat at Depository?

Answer: All types of equity/ debt instruments viz. equity shares, preference Shares, partly paid shares, bonds, debentures, commercial papers, certificates of deposit, government securities (G-SEC) etc. irrespective of whether these instruments are listed / unlisted / privately placed can be dematerialized with depository, if they have been admitted with the depository.

Restriction on Transfer of Securities

SEBI has amended relevant provisions of SEBI (Listing Obligations and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2015 to disallow listed companies from accepting request for transfer of securities which are held in physical form.

The shareholders who continue to hold shares and other types of securities of listed companies in physical form even after this date, will not be able to lodge the shares with company / its RTA for further transfer. They will need to convert them to demat form compulsorily if they wish to effect any transfer. Only the requests for transmission and transposition of securities in physical form, will be accepted by the listed companies / their RTAs.

This amendment will help in curbing fraud and manipulation risk in physical transfer of securities by unscrupulous persons. Further, with shares held in demat form will improve ease, convenience and safety of transactions for investors.

Requirements with the promoters and promoter group shareholding

As per SEBI (Listing Obligations and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2015, the listed entity shall ensure that **hundred percent** of shareholding of promoter and promoter group is in dematerialized form and the same is maintained on a continuous basis in the manner as specified by the SEBI.

Fungibility

Section 9 states that securities in depositories shall be in fungible form.

The Act envisages that all securities held in depository shall be fungible i.e. all certificates of the same security shall become interchangeable in the sense that investor loses the right to obtain the exact certificate he surrenders at the time of entry into depository. It is like withdrawing money from the bank without bothering about the distinctive numbers of the currencies.

Rights of Depositories and Beneficial Owner

Section 10 lays down that a depository should be deemed to be the registered owner for the purposes of effecting transfer of ownership of security on behalf of a beneficial owner. The depository as a registered owner should not have any voting rights or any other rights in respect of securities held by it. The beneficial owner is entitled to all the rights and benefits and is subject to all the liabilities in respect of his securities held by a depository.

Register of Beneficial Owner

Section 11 provides that every depository is required to maintain a register and an index of beneficial owners in the manner provided in the Companies Act, 2013.

Pledge or Hypothecation of Securities held in a Depository

Section 12 lays down that a beneficial owner may with the previous approval of the depository create a pledge or hypothecation in respect of a security owned by him through a depository. Every beneficial owner should give intimation of such pledge or hypothecation to the depository and such depository is required to make entries in its records accordingly. Any entry in the records of a depository should be evidence of a pledge or hypothecation.

Furnishing of Information and Records by Depository and Issuer

Section 13 stipulates that depository shall furnish to the issuer information about the transfer of securities in the name of beneficial owners at such intervals and in such manner as may be specified by the bye-laws. Every issuer shall make available to the depository copies of the relevant records in respect of securities held by such depository.

Option to opt out in respect of any Security

Section 14 of the Act provides that if a beneficial owner seeks to opt out of a depository in respect of any security he shall inform the depository accordingly. After the receipt of intimation the depository should make appropriate entries in its records and also inform the issuer. Every issuer shall, within thirty days of the receipt of intimation from the depository and on fulfillment of such conditions and on payment of such fees as may be specified by the regulations, issue the certificate of securities to the beneficial owner or the transferee, as the case may be.

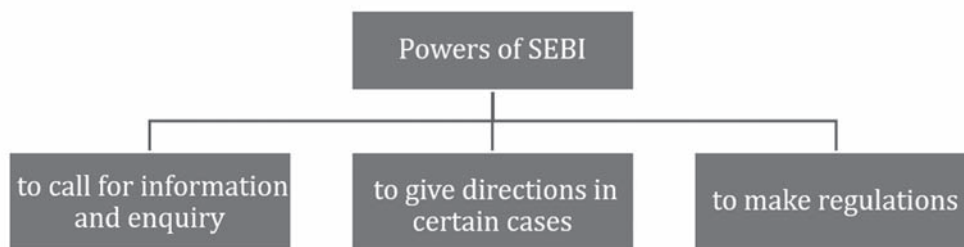
Act 18 of 1891 to apply to depositories

Section 15 lays down that the Bankers' Books Evidence Act, 1891 shall apply in relation to a depository as if it were a bank as defined in section 2 of that Act.

Depositories to Indemnify Loss in certain cases

As per section 16, any loss caused to the beneficial owner due to the negligence of the depository or the participant, would be indemnified by the depository to such beneficial owner. Where the loss due to the negligence of the participant is indemnified by the depository, the depository has the right to recover the same from such participant.

POWERS OF THE SEBI



1. To Call for Information and Enquiry

Section 18 of the Act provides that the SEBI in the public interest or in the interest of investors may by order in writing,-

- call upon any issuer, depository, participant or beneficial owner to furnish in writing such information relating to the securities held in a depository as it may require; or
- authorise any person to make an enquiry or inspection in relation to the affairs of the issuer, beneficial owner, depository or participant, who shall submit a report of such enquiry or inspection to it within such period as may be specified in the order.

Sub-section (2) to Section 18 provides that every director, manager, partner, secretary, officer or employee of the depository or issuer or the participant or beneficial owner shall on demand produce before the person making the enquiry or inspection all information or such records and other documents in his custody having a bearing on the subject matter of such enquiry or inspection.

2. To Give Directions

Section 19 provides that the SEBI, if after making or causing to be made an enquiry or inspection, the SEBI is satisfied that it is necessary in the interest of investors or the securities market or to prevent the affairs of any depository or participant being conducted in the manner detrimental to the interests of investors or the securities market, it may issue such directions, –

- (a) to any depository or participant or any person associated with the securities market; or
- (b) to any issuer,

as may be appropriate in the interest of investors or the securities market.

The Board may, by order, for reasons to be recorded in writing, levy penalty under sections 19A, 19B, 19C, 19D, 19E, 19F, 19FA and 19G after holding an inquiry in the prescribed manner.

The power to issue directions under this section shall include and always be deemed to have been included the power to direct any person, who made profit or averted loss by indulging in any transaction or activity in contravention of the provisions of this Act or regulations made thereunder, to disgorge an amount equivalent to the wrongful gain made or loss averted by such contravention.

3. To Make Regulations

Section 25 of the Act provides that the SEBI may, by notification in the Official Gazette, make regulations consistent with the provisions of this Act and the rules made thereunder to carry out the purposes of this Act. In particular, and without prejudice to the generality of the foregoing power, such regulations may provide for—

- the form in which record is to be maintained;
- the form in which the certificate of commencement of business shall be issued;

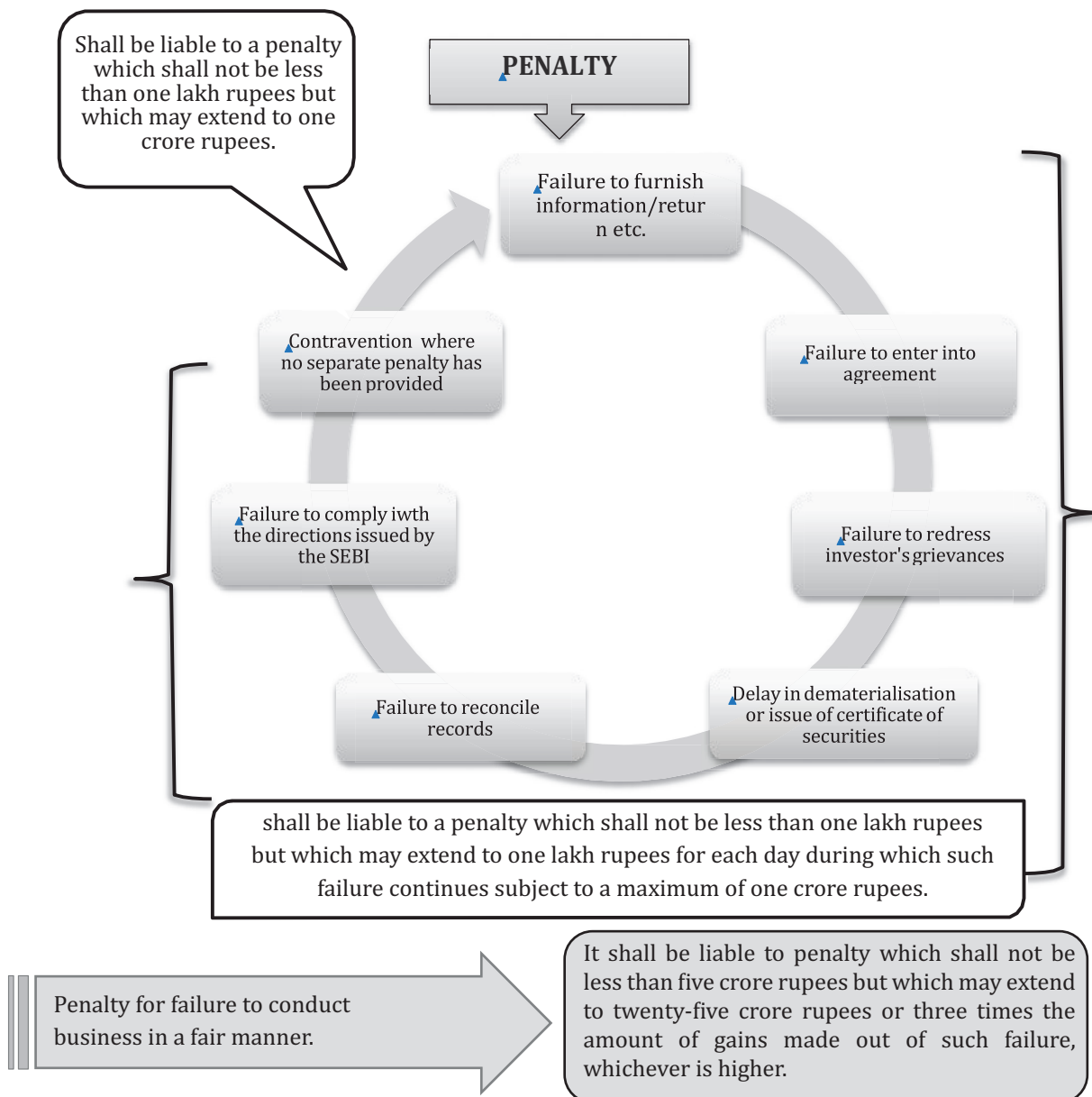
- the manner in which the certificate of security shall be surrendered ;
- the manner of creating a pledge or hypothecation in respect of security owned by a beneficial owner;
- the conditions and the fees payable with respect to the issue of certificate of securities ;
- the rights and obligations of the depositories, participants and the issuers ;
- the eligibility criteria for admission of securities into the depository .
- the terms determined by the Board for settlement of proceedings ;
- any other matter which is required to be, or may be, specified by regulations or in respect of which provision to be made by regulations.

PENALTIES AND ADJUDICATION

The SEBI may, by order, for reasons to be recorded in writing, levy, penalty after holding an inquiry in the prescribed manner.

Sl No.	Section	Particulars
1.	Section 19A	Penalty for failure to furnish information, return, etc.
2.	Section 19B	Penalty for failure to enter into an agreement.
3.	Section 19C	Penalty for failure to redress investors' grievances.
4.	Section 19D	Penalty for delay in dematerialisation or issue of certificate of securities.
5.	Section 19E	Penalty for failure to reconcile records.
6.	Section 19F	Penalty for failure to comply with directions issued by the SEBI under section 19 of the Act.
7.	Section 19FA	Penalty for failure to conduct business in a fair manner.
8.	Section 19G	Penalty for contravention where no separate penalty has been provided.
9.	Section 19H	Penalty for power to adjudicate.
10.	Section 19I	Factors to be taken into account by adjudicating officer while adjudging quantum of penalty.
11.	Section 19-IA	Settlement of Administrative Civil Proceedings.
12.	Section 19-IB	Recovery of amounts.
13.	Section 19-IC	Continuance of proceedings
14.	Section 19J	Crediting sums realised by way of penalties to Consolidated Fund of India.

Penalties



Adjudication

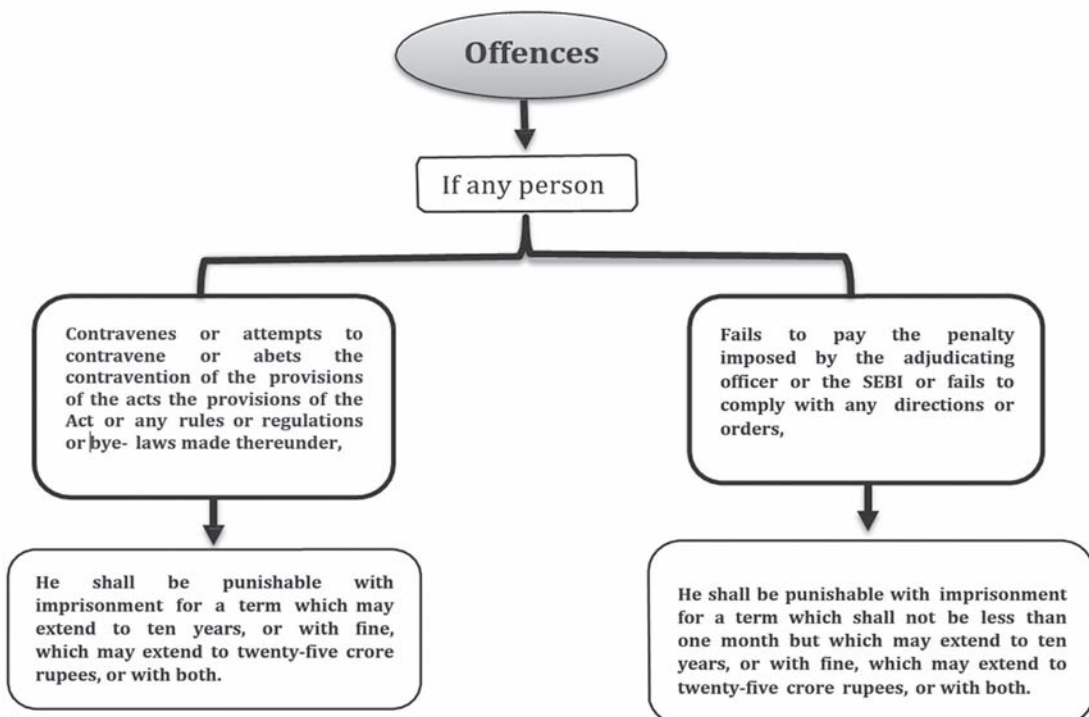
The adjudication procedure, Settlement of Administrative Civil Proceedings, Recovery of amounts, Continuance of Proceedings, Crediting sums by way of Penalties to Consolidated fund of India, as mentioned under Section 19H to 19J of the Depositories Act, 1996 are same as the adjudication procedure prescribed under the SEBI Act, 1992. (Lesson-2)

OFFENCES AND COGNIZANCE

Sl No.	Section	Particulars
1.	Section 20	Offences
2.	Section 21	Contravention by Companies

3.	Section 22	Cognizance of Offences by Courts
4.	Section 22A	Composition of certain Offences
5.	Section 22B	Power to grant immunity
6.	Section 22C	Establishment of Special Courts
7.	Section 22D	Offences triable by Special Courts
8.	Section 22E	Appeal and revision
9.	Section 22F	Application of Code to proceedings before Special Court
10.	Section 22G	Transitional Provisions
11.	Section 23	Appeals
12.	Section 23A	Appeal to SAT
13.	Section 23B	Procedure and powers of Securities Appellate Tribunal
14.	Section 23C	Right to legal representation
15.	Section 23 D	Limitation
16.	Section 23E	Civil court not to have jurisdiction
17.	Section 23F	Appeal to Supreme Court
18.	Section 23G	Powers of Board not to apply to International Financial Services Centre

Offences



Contravention by companies

Where a contravention of any of the provisions of this Act or any rule, regulation, direction or order made thereunder has been committed by a company, every person who at the time the contravention was committed was in charge of, and was responsible to, the company for the conduct of the business of the company, as well as the company, shall be deemed to be guilty of the contravention and shall be liable to be proceeded against and punished accordingly.	Provided that nothing contained in this sub-section shall render any such person liable to any punishment provided in this Act, if he proves that the contravention was committed without his knowledge or that he had exercised all due diligence to prevent the commission of such contravention.	Where a contravention of any of the provisions of this Act or any rule, regulation, direction or order made thereunder has been committed by a company and it is proved that the contravention has been committed with the consent or connivance of, or is attributable to any neglect on the part of, any director, manager, secretary or other officer of the company, such director, manager, secretary or other officer shall also be deemed to be guilty of the contravention and shall be liable to be proceeded against and punished accordingly.
--	---	--

Cognizance of offences by courts

Section 22 provides that no court shall take cognizance of any offence punishable under this Act or any rules or regulations or bye-laws made there under, save on a complaint made by the Central Government or State Government or the SEBI or by any person.

Composition of certain offences

Section 22A provides that notwithstanding anything contained in the Code of Criminal Procedure, 1973, any offence punishable under this Act, not being an offence punishable with imprisonment only, or with imprisonment and also with fine, may either before or after the institution of any proceeding, be compounded by a Securities Appellate Tribunal or a court before which such proceedings are pending.

Miscellaneous provisions

The miscellaneous provisions from Section 22B to 23G as mentioned above in the table are same as the provisions as prescribed under the SEBI Act, 1992.

POWER OF CENTRAL GOVERNMENT TO MAKE RULES

Section 24 of the Act provides that the Central Government may, by notification in the Official Gazette, make rules for carrying out the provisions of this Act. In particular, and without prejudice to the generality of the foregoing power, such rules may provide for all or any of the following matters, namely :—

- the manner of inquiry under sub-section (1) of section 19H;
- the time within which an appeal may be preferred under sub-section (1) of section 23;
- the form in which an appeal may be preferred under sub-section (3) of section 23 and the fees payable in respect of such appeal;
- the procedure for disposing of an appeal under sub-section (4) of section 23;
- the form in which an appeal may be filed before the Securities Appellate Tribunal under section 23A and the fees payable in respect of such appeal.

In exercise of the powers conferred, the Central Government makes the Depositories (Procedure for Holding enquiry and imposing penalties by adjudicating officer) Rules, 2005 for holding inquiry for the purpose of imposing penalty under sections 19A to 19G of the Depositories Act.

POWER OF DEPOSITORIES TO MAKE BYE-LAWS

A depository shall, with the previous approval of the Board, make bye-laws consistent with the provisions of this Act and the regulations. In particular, and without prejudice to the generality of the foregoing power, such bye-laws shall provide for -

- the eligibility criteria for admission and removal of securities in the depository;
- the conditions subject to which the securities shall be dealt with;
- the eligibility criteria for admission of any person as a participant;
- the manner and procedure for dematerialisation of securities;
- the procedure for transactions within the depository;
- the manner in which securities shall be dealt with or withdrawn from a depository;
- the procedure for ensuring safeguards to protect the interests of participants and beneficial owners;
- the conditions of admission into and withdrawal from a participant by a beneficial owner;
- the procedure for conveying information to the participants and beneficial owners on dividend declaration, shareholder meetings and other matters of interest to the beneficial owners;
- the manner of distribution of dividends, interest and monetary benefits received from the company among beneficial owners;
- the manner of creating pledge or hypothecation in respect of securities held with a depository;
- inter se rights and obligations among the depository, issuer, participants, and beneficial owners;
- the manner and the periodicity of furnishing information to the Board, issuer and other persons;
- the procedure for resolving disputes involving depository, issuer, company or a beneficial owner;
- the procedure for proceeding against the participant committing breach of the regulations and provisions for suspension and expulsion of participants from the depository and cancellation of agreements entered with the depository;
- the internal control standards including procedure for auditing, reviewing and monitoring.

Where the SEBI considers it expedient so to do, it may, by order in writing, direct a depository to make any bye-laws or to amend or revoke any bye-laws already made within such period as it may specify in this behalf.

If the depository fails or neglects to comply with such order within the specified period, the SEBI may make the bye-laws or amend or revoke the bye-laws made either in the form specified in the order or with such modifications thereof as the SEBI thinks fit.

SEBI (DEPOSITORIES AND PARTICIPANTS) REGULATIONS, 2018

The Depositories Act, 1996 requires that the registration of the depository, depository participant and the custodian, is mandatory with the SEBI. These market intermediaries can function or commence business only after registration from SEBI has been obtained and requisite fee paid to SEBI. The requirement of registration is a continuing one and the moment the registration is cancelled or revoked or surrendered, the person shall cease to act as such.

The SEBI, on October 3, 2018, notified the SEBI (Depositories and Participants) Regulations, 2018 ('New DP Regulations'), repealing the SEBI (Depositories and Participants) Regulations, 1996 ('Old DP Regulations') introducing amendments largely related to structuring, shareholding and governance of depositories.

These regulations also contain provisions for operations and functioning of depositories, form for application and certificates used and schedule of fees for participants, etc. It also contains provisions for registration of depository and depository participants, rights and obligations of various users and constituents, inspection and procedure for action in case of default.

RECONCILIATION

Regulation 75 of SEBI (Depositories and Participants) Regulations, 2018 provides that the issuer or its agent shall reconcile the records of dematerialised securities with all the securities issued by the issuer, on a daily basis, where the State or the Central Government is the issuer of Government securities, the depository shall, on a daily basis, reconcile the records of the dematerialised securities.

AUDIT UNDER SEBI (DEPOSITORIES AND PARTICIPANTS) REGULATIONS, 2018

Regulation 76 of SEBI (Depositories and Participants) Regulations, 2018 provides that every issuer shall submit audit report on a quarterly basis to the concerned stock exchanges audited by a practising Company Secretary or a qualified Chartered Accountant, for the purposes of reconciliation of the total issued capital, listed capital and capital held by depositories in dematerialized form, the details of changes in share capital during the quarter and the in-principle approval obtained by the issuer from all the stock exchanges where it is listed in respect of such further issued capital.

The audit report is required to give the updated status of the register of members of the issuer and confirm that securities have been dematerialized as per requests within 21 days from the date of receipt of requests by the issuer and where the dematerialization has not been effected within the said stipulated period, the report would disclose the reasons for such delay.

The issuer is under an obligation to immediately bring to the notice of the depositories and the stock exchanges, any difference observed in its issued, listed, and the capital held by depositories in dematerialized form.

INTERNAL AUDIT OF OPERATIONS OF DEPOSITORY PARTICIPANTS

The two Depository service providers in India, viz., National Securities Depository Ltd. (NSDL) and Central Depository Services (India) Limited (CDSL) have allowed Company Secretaries in whole-time practice to undertake internal audit of the operations of Depository Participants (DPs).

NSDL amended its Bye Law 10.3.1 of Chapter 10 w.e.f. March 16, 2009 which reads as follow:

10.3.1 “Every Participant shall ensure that an internal audit in respect of its depository operations is conducted at intervals of not more than six months by a qualified Chartered Accountant or a **Company Secretary** or a Cost and Management Accountant, holding a Certificate of Practice and a copy of the internal audit report shall be furnished to the Depository.”

CDSL has vide its letter dated September 28, 1999 notified amendment of its Bye Laws 16.3.1 as follows:

16.3.1 Every participant shall ensure that an internal audit shall be conducted in respect of the participant’s operations relating to CDSL by a qualified Chartered Accountant in accordance with the provisions of the Chartered Accountants Act, 1949, or by a **Company Secretary** in accordance with the provisions of the Company Secretaries Act, 1980 or by a Cost Accountant in accordance with the provisions of the Cost and Works Accountants Act, 1959; in practice, at such intervals as may be specified by CDSL from time to time. A copy of Internal Audit report shall be furnished to CDSL.

Checklist of Internal Audit of Operations of Depository Participants

- Account opening
- Reporting to BOs
- Dematerialisation of Securities
- Rematerialisation of Securities
- Market Trades
- Off Market Trades
- Transmission
- Returns to Depository
- Grievance Redressal Mechanism

- Collateral Security
- Assignment of Business
- Freezing of Account
- Closure of Account
- Pledge and Hypothecation
- Invocation of Pledge/Hypothecation by Pledgee
- Lending and Borrowing of Securities
- Records to be Maintained by DPs
- Disclosure and Publication of Information
- Supervision by DP
- Code of Ethics for DPs
- Branch of Depository Participants

CONCURRENT AUDIT

National Securities Depository Limited vide its Circular No. NSDL/POLICY/ 2006/0021 dated June 24, 2006 provides for concurrent audit of the Depository Participants. The Circular provides that w.e.f. August 1, 2006, the process of demat account opening, control and verification of Delivery Instruction Slips (DIS) is subject to Concurrent Audit.

Depository Participants have been advised to appoint a firm of qualified Chartered Accountant(s) or **Company Secretary(ies)** holding a certificate of practice for conducting the concurrent audit. However, the participants in case they so desire, may entrust the concurrent audit to their Internal Auditors. In respect of account opening, the auditor should verify all the documents including KYC documents furnished by the Clients and verified by the officials of the Participants. The scope of concurrent audit with respect to control and verification of DIS cover the areas given below:

(I) Issuance of DIS

The procedure followed by the participants with respect to:

- (a) Issuance of DIS booklets including loose slips.
- (b) Existence of controls on DIS issued to Clients including pre-stamping of Client ID and unique pre- printed serial numbers.
- (c) Record maintenance for issuance of DIS booklets (including loose slips) in the back office.

(II) Verification of DIS

The procedure followed by the Participants with respect to:

- (a) Date and time stamping (including late stamping) on instruction slips.
- (b) Blocking of used/reported lost/stolen instruction slips in back office system/ manual record.
- (c) Blocking of slips in the back office system/manual record which are executed in DPM directly.
- (d) Two step verification for a transaction for more than Rs. 5 lakh, especially in case of off transactions.
- (e) Instructions received from dormant accounts.

The Concurrent Auditor should conduct the audit in respect of all accounts opened, DIS issued and controls on DIS as mentioned above, during the day, by the next working day. In case the audit could not be completed within the next working day due to large volume, the auditor should ensure that the audit is completed within a week's time.

Any deviation and/or non-compliance observed in the aforesaid areas should be mentioned in the audit report of the Concurrent Auditor. The Management of the Participant should comment on the observations made by the Concurrent Auditor. The Concurrent Audit Report should be submitted to NSDL, on a quarterly basis, in a hard copy form. If the Auditor for Internal and Concurrent Audit is the same, consolidated report may be submitted.

ROLE OF COMPANY SECRETARY

- **Right to Legal Representation (Section 23C):** In case of any decision of the SEBI, the aggrieved entity/company (the appellant) may either appear in person or authorise one or more chartered accountants or company secretaries (PCS) or cost accountants or legal practitioners or any of its officers to present his or its case before the Securities Appellate Tribunal (SAT).
- **Internal Audit of Depository Participants:** The 2 (two) Depository services providers in India, viz., National Securities Depository Ltd. (NSDL) and Central Depository Services (India) Limited (CDSL) have allowed Company Secretaries in whole-time practice to undertake internal audit of the operations of Depository Participants (DPs).
- **Reconciliation of Share Capital Audit:** Company Secretary is authorised to issue quarterly certificate with regard to reconciliation of the total issued capital, listed capital and capital held by depositories in dematerialized form, details of changes in share capital during the quarter, and in-principle approval obtained by the issuer from all the stock exchanges where it is listed in respect of such further issued capital under SEBI (Depositories and Participants) Regulations, 2018. [Regulation 76 of SEBI (Depositories and Participants) Regulations, 2018]
- **Concurrent Audit of Depository Participants:** Practising Company Secretary is authorized to carry out concurrent audit of Depository Participants which covers audit of the process of demit account opening, control and verification of Delivery Instruction Slips (DIS).

CASE LAW

31.03.2020	<i>Jaypee Capital Services Ltd (Noticee) vs. SEBI</i>	Whole Time Member, Securities and Exchange Board of India
------------	---	---

Facts of the Case

Securities and Exchange Board of India (hereinafter referred to as 'SEBI') granted a Certificate of Registration as a Depository Participant to Jaypee Capital Services Limited (JCSL/Noticee) in accordance with provisions of SEBI (Depositories and Participants) Regulations, 1996 (DP Regulations) initially for a period of five years which was valid from August 11, 2006 to August 10, 2011. The certificate of registration was, thereafter, renewed in 2011 for a further period of five years and the renewed certificate was valid till August 10, 2016.

SEBI received a letter dated April 05, 2016 from Central Depository Services (India) Limited (hereinafter referred to as 'CDSL') informing that it has terminated the agreement with the Noticee w.e.f April 04, 2016 due to non-compliance on the part of JCSL with the bye-laws of CDSL. CDSL vide the said letter also requested SEBI to cancel the certificate of registration granted to the Noticee at act as a Depository Participant with immediate effect. Thereafter, National Securities Depositories Limited (hereinafter referred to as "NSDL") vide its letter dated April 22, 2016 informed SEBI that it has also terminated the agreement with JCSL w.e.f May 23, 2016 due to the non-compliance on part of JCSL with the various bye-laws of NSDL.

Based on the information provided by the Depositories viz. CDSL and NSDL, as above, it was alleged that the Noticee was no longer eligible to be admitted as a participant of depository and had failed to inform SEBI about the termination of its agreements with CDSL and NSDL.

Order

The failure on the part of the Noticee to inform SEBI of the termination of the agreement by the depositories would have to be considered as a violation of Clause 14 of the Code of Conduct for the DPs.

SEBI, in exercise of powers conferred under Section 19 of the Securities and Exchange Board of India Act, 1992 read with Regulation 28(2) of the SEBI (Intermediaries) Regulations, 2008, cancelled the certificate of registration granted to the Noticee / Jaypee Capital Services Limited (SEBI Registration No. IN-DP-NSDL-291-2008/IN-DP-CDSL-368- 2006) with immediate effect.

LESSON ROUND-UP

- The legal framework for depository system in the Depositories Act, 1996 provides for the establishment of single or multiple depositories.
- There are two Depositories functioning in India, namely the National Securities Depository Limited (NSDL) and the Central Depository Services (India) Limited (CDSL).
- All the securities held by a depository are dematerialized and are in a fungible form.
- In the depository system, the ownership and transfer of securities takes place by means of electronic book entries.
- A Depository Participant (DP) is the representative (agent) of the investor in the depository system providing the link between the Company and investor through the Depository.
- The Depository Act, 1996 and SEBI (Depositories and Participants) Regulations, 2018 regulates the function of Depositories and participants.
- Regulation 76 of SEBI (Depositories and Participants) Regulations, 2018 provides that every issuer shall submit audit report on a quarterly basis to the concerned stock exchanges audited by a practising Company Secretary or a qualified Chartered Accountant, for the purposes of reconciliation of the total issued capital, listed capital and capital held by depositories in dematerialized form, the details of changes in share capital during the quarter and the in-principle approval obtained by the issuer from all the stock exchanges where it is listed in respect of such further issued capital.
- Both the Depositories in India have allowed Practising Company Secretaries to undertake internal audit of the operations of Depository Participants (DPs).
- Depository Participants are subject to concurrent audit by a Practising Company Secretary or qualified Chartered Accountant. Concurrent Audit includes audit of process of demat account opening, control and verification of delivery instruction slips.

GLOSSARY

Beneficial owner (BO)	The true owner of a security or property, which may be registered in another name means a person whose name appears as such on the records of the depository.
ISIN	International Securities Identification Number (ISIN) is a code that uniquely identifies a specific security, which is allocated at the time of admitting the same in the depository system.
Joint Account	It means a bank or a demat account in the names of more than one person (maximum three in case of a demat account). All the account holders must give their signature to operate a demat account held jointly.
Pledge	Any person having a demat account can pledge securities against loan / credit facilities extended by a pledgee, who too has a demat account with a DP.
RRN	A system generated unique number when a remat request is set up.
Transmission	Transmission of securities denotes a process by which ownership of securities is transferred to a legal heir or to some other person by operation of law. In case of transmission transfer deed and stamp duty are not required.

TEST YOURSELF

(These are meant for recapitulation only. Answer to these questions are not to be submitted for evaluation.)

1. Briefly outline the concept of Depository system in India.
2. “The holding of securities in dematerialise form is not mandatory”. Explain the relevant provisions with reference to the Depositories Act.
3. Enumerate the enquiry, inspection and penalties under the Depositories Act, 1996.
4. Elucidate the procedure for dematerialisation of shares.
5. “Depository is to indemnify loss caused to the beneficial owner due to the negligence of the depository or the depository participant”. Examine
6. Depository participant provides link between the company and investors. Comment
7. Briefly explain the role of a Practising Company Secretary in concurrent audit of depository participants.
8. Write short note on:
 - (a) Fungibility
 - (b) Models of Depository
 - (c) Internal Audit of Depository Participants
 - (d) Concurrent Audit
 - (e) Rematerialisation
 - (f) Reconciliation of share capital under Regulation 75 of the SEBI (Depositories and Participants) Regulations, 2018.

LIST OF FURTHER READINGS

- SEBI Circulars
- SEBI Notifications
- SEBI FAQs
- Depositories Bye-Laws
- SEBI Annual Reports
- SEBI Monthly Bulletin

OTHER REFERENCES (Including Websites/Video Links)

- <https://www.sebi.gov.in/>
- <https://nsdl.co.in/>
- <https://www.cdslindia.com/>

An Overview of SEBI (Issue of Capital and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2018

Lesson 4

Key Concepts One Should Know

- Primary & Secondary Markets
- Initial Public Offer
- Further Public Offer
- Private Placement
- Preferential Allotment
- Warrants
- Intermediaries
- Lead Manager
- Underwriting
- Offer Document
- Qualified Institutional Buyer
- Retail Individual Investor
- Application Supported by Blocked Amount (ASBA)
- Book Building
- Innovators Growth Platform
- Selling shareholders

Learning Objectives

To understand:

- Evolution of SEBI (Issue of Capital and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2015
- Conceptual understanding of important terminologies
- Various types of issues in capital market
- Modes of raising funds and compliance requirements
- Key Provisions like Draft offer letter, prospectus etc.
- Eligibility requirements for issuing various instruments
- Lock-in-period and its requirements
- Fast-track issue
- Regulatory requirements for IPO of Indian Depository Receipts
- Regulatory framework for IPO by Small and Medium Enterprises
- Provisions for listing on Innovators Growth Platform

Lesson Outline

- | | |
|--|--|
| • Introduction | • Rights Issue |
| • Genesis | • Preferential Issue |
| • Types of Issues | • Qualified Institutions Placement |
| • Applicability of the SEBI (Issue of Capital and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2018 | • Initial Public Offer of Indian Depository Receipts |
| • Meaning of Draft Offer Document, Letter Of Offer and Red Herring Prospectus | • Rights Issue of Indian Depository Receipts |
| • Initial Public Offer/Further Public Offering | • Initial Public Offer by Small and Medium Enterprises |
| • Eligibility requirements to be complied with for IPO | • Innovators Growth Platform |
| • Eligibility criteria for Further Public Offer (FPO) | • Bonus Issue |
| • Promoters' Contribution | • Power to Relax Strict Enforcement of the Regulations |
| • Lock-in Requirements | • Procedure for issue of securities |
| • Other requirements for IPO & FPO | • Role of Company Secretary |
| • Fast Track FPO | • LESSON ROUND-UP |
| • Exit Opportunity to Dissenting Shareholders | • GLOSSARY |
| | • TEST YOURSELF |
| | • LIST OF FURTHER READINGS |
| | • OTHER REFERENCES |

Regulatory Framework

- SEBI (Issue of Capital and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2018
- Securities Contracts (Regulation) Rules, 1957

INTRODUCTION

Management of a public issue involves co-ordination of activities and co-operation of a number of agencies such as managers to the issue, underwriters, brokers, registrar to the issue, solicitors/legal advisors, printers, publicity and advertising agents, financial institutions, auditors and other Government/Statutory agencies such as Registrar of Companies, Reserve Bank of India, SEBI etc. The whole process of issue of shares can be divided into two parts (i) pre-issue activities and (ii) post issue activities. All activities beginning with the planning of capital issue till the opening of the subscription list are pre-issue activities while, all activities subsequent to the opening of the subscription list may be called post issue activities. As the demat shares are being admitted for dealings on the stock exchanges, the securities can be issued only with the purpose of allotting the shares in Dematerialised form.

GENESIS

India ushered from a merit based regime (Controller of Capital Act) to disclosure based regime under SEBI. Under Controller of Capital Issues (CCI) issue size and price were approved by CCI after examining the various parameters/ratios. With the repeal of Capital Issues (Control) Act, 1947 all the guidelines, notifications, circulars etc. issued by the office of the Controller of Capital Issues became defunct. The SEBI was given the mandate to regulate issuance of securities, namely the guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 1992. Later, the SEBI issued a compendium containing consolidated Guidelines, circulars, instructions relating to issue of capital effective from January 27, 2000. The compendium titled the SEBI (Disclosure and Investor Protection) Guidelines, 2000 replaced the original Guidelines issued in June 1992 and clarifications thereof. On August 26, 2009 the SEBI rescinded the SEBI (DIP) Guidelines, 2000 and notified the SEBI (Issue of Capital and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2009.

To align the provisions under ICDR Regulations with Companies Act, 2013 and allied regulations, SEBI issued a consultation paper detailing the suggestive changes under various fund-raising options by listed issuers. Between 2009-till date, numerous amendments have been made to the ICDR Regulations. Different types of offerings to raise funds in the primary market have been introduced. Further, there have been changes in market practices and regulatory environment over a period of time. A need was thus felt to review and realign the ICDR Regulations with these developments and to ensure that they reflect the best practices adopted globally. In view of the same, the SEBI constituted the Issue of Capital & Disclosure Requirements Committee ("ICDR Committee") under the Chairmanship of Shri Prithvi Haldea in June, 2017, to review the ICDR Regulations with the following objectives:

- a) To simplify the language and complexities in the regulations;
- b) To incorporate changes/new requirements which have occurred due to change in market practices and regulatory environment; and
- c) To make the regulations more readable and easier to understand.

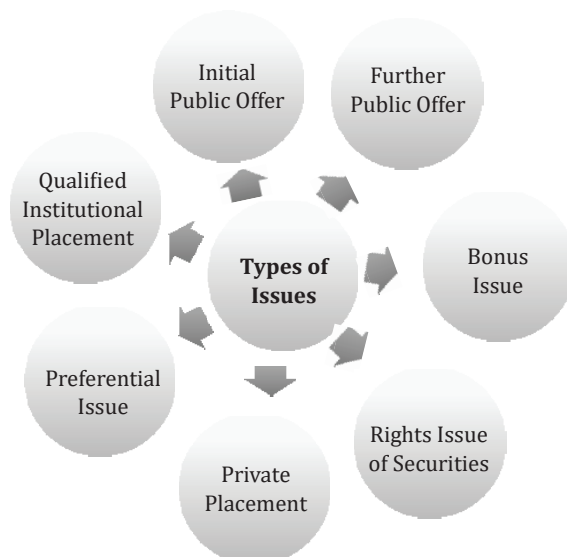
ICDR Committee Suggestions

The ICDR Committee suggested certain policy changes. These suggestions were also taken to the Primary Market Advisory Committee (PMAC) of the SEBI which comprises of eminent representatives from the Ministry of Finance, Industry, Market Participants, academicians, the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India and the Institute of Company Secretaries of India. The recommendations of the PMAC were incorporated in the draft of the proposed ICDR Regulations. In addition to the public consultation, the draft regulations along with the key policy changes were also forwarded to the Ministry of Finance (MoF), Ministry of Corporate Affairs (MCA) and the Reserve Bank of India (RBI) for their comments. The provisions of Companies Act, 1956 (wherever applicable), Companies Act, 2013, the SEBI (Substantial Acquisition & Substantial Takeover) Regulations, 2011, the SEBI (Share Based Employee Benefits) Regulations, 2014 have been suitably incorporated.

SEBI vide its notification dated 11th September, 2018 issued the SEBI (Issue of Capital and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2018 ('ICDR Regulations, 2018') which was effective from 60th day of its publication in Official Gazette.

Chapter as per ICDR Regulations, 2018	Particulars
I.	Preliminary
II.	Initial Public Offer (IPO) on Main Board
III.	Right Issue
IV.	Further Public Offer
V.	Preferential Issue
VI.	Qualified Institutions Placement
VII.	IPO of Indian Depository Receipts (IDR)
VIII.	Rights Issue of IDR
IX.	IPO by Small and Medium Enterprises (SME)
X.	Innovators Growth Platform (IGP)
XI.	Bonus Issue
XI-A.	Power to Relax Strict Enforcement of the Regulations
XII.	Miscellaneous

TYPES OF ISSUES



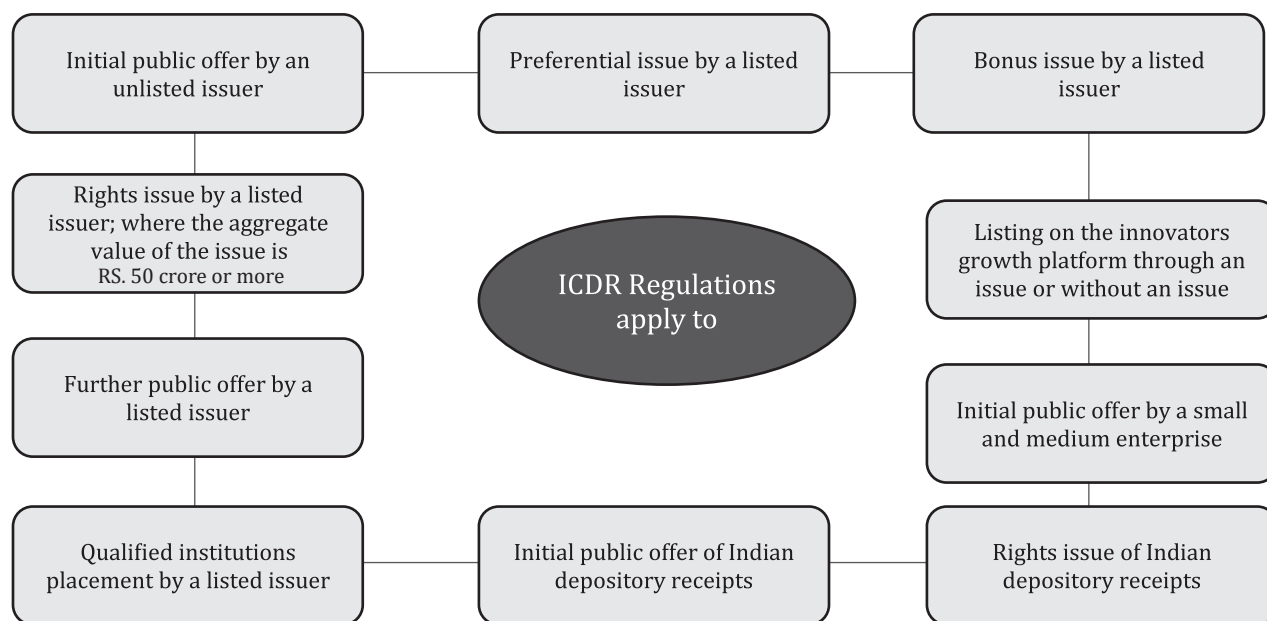
Primary Market deals with those securities which are issued to the public for the first time. Primary Market provides an opportunity to issuers of securities, Government as well as corporates, to raise financial resources to meet their requirements of investment and/or discharge their obligations.

The following are the various types of issues in the capital market -

- **Initial Public Offer:** It means an offer of specified securities by an unlisted issuer to the public for subscription and includes an offer for sale of specified securities to the public by any existing holder of such securities in an unlisted issuer. In order to qualify as an Initial public offer, the offer of securities must be by an unlisted issuer company and such an issue shall be made to the public and not to the existing shareholders of the unlisted issuer company.

- **Further Public Offer (FPO):** It is an offer of specified securities by a listed issuer company to the public for subscription. In other words, another issue to the public other than its existing shareholders or to a select group of persons by the listed persons is referred to as a Further Public offer.
- **Rights Issue:** Rights issue of securities is an issue of specified securities by a company to its existing shareholders as on a record date in a predetermined ratio.
- **Preferential Allotment:** It refers to an issue, where a listed issuer issues shares or convertible securities, to a select group of persons on a private placement basis it is called a preferential allotment. The issuer is required to comply with various provisions which inter alia include pricing, disclosures in the notice, lock in etc., in addition to the requirements specified in the Companies Act, 2013.
- **Qualified Institutional Placement (QIP):** It refers to an issue by a listed entity to only qualified institutional buyers in accordance of Chapter VI of the SEBI (ICDR) Regulations, 2018.
- **Bonus Issue:** Bonus issue of shares means additional shares issued by the Company to its existing shareholders to reward for their royalty and is an opportunity to enhance the shareholders wealth. The bonus shares are issued without any cost to the Company by capitalizing the available reserves.

APPLICABILITY OF THE SEBI (ISSUE OF CAPITAL AND DISCLOSURE REQUIREMENTS) REGULATIONS, 2018 [REGULATION 3]



MEANING OF DRAFT OFFER DOCUMENT, LETTER OF OFFER AND RED HERRING PROSPECTUS

Draft Offer Documents

“Draft Offer document” means the offer document in draft stage. The draft offer documents are filed with the SEBI, at least 30 days prior to the filing of the Offer Document with ROC/Stock Exchanges. The SEBI may specify changes, if any, in the Draft Offer Document and the Issuer or the Lead Merchant banker shall carry out such changes in the draft off document before filing the Offer document with ROC/SEs. The Draft Offer document is available on the SEBI website for public comments for a period of 21 days from the filing of the Draft Offer Document with the SEBI.

Offer Document

“Offer document” means Prospectus in case of a public issue or offer for sale and Letter of Offer in case of a right issue, which is filed with Registrar of Companies (ROC) and Stock Exchanges. An offer document covers all the relevant information to help an investor to make his/ her investment decision.

Red Herring Prospectus (RHP)

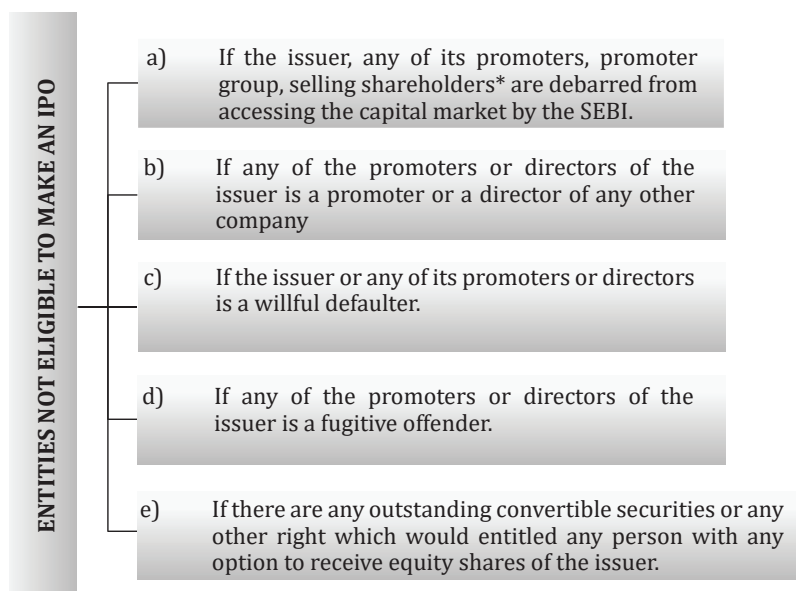
“Red Herring Prospectus” is a prospectus, which does not have details of either price or number of shares being offered, or the amount of issue. This means that in case price is not disclosed, the number of shares and the upper and lower price bands are disclosed. On the other hand, an issuer can state the issue size and the number of shares are determined later. An RHP for an FPO can be filed with the ROC without the price band and the issuer, in such a case will notify the floor price or a price band by way of an advertisement one day prior to the opening of the issue. In the case of book-built issues, it is a process of price discovery and the price cannot be determined until the bidding process is completed. Hence, such details are not shown in the RHP filed with ROC as per the Companies Act, 2013. Only on completion of the bidding process, the details of the final price are included in the offer document. The offer document filed thereafter with ROC is called a prospectus.

INITIAL PUBLIC OFFER / FURTHER PUBLIC OFFER

A public issue of specified securities by an issuer can be either an Initial Public Offer (IPO) or a Further Public Offer (FPO). An IPO is done by an unlisted issuer while a FPO is done by a listed issuer. As per the ICDR Regulations, the issuer shall comply with the following conditions before making an IPO of specified securities. The conditions need to be satisfied both at the time of filing the draft offer document (commonly referred to as the Draft Red Herring Prospectus) and the time of registering or filing the final offer document (commonly referred to as the Prospectus) with the Registrar of Companies.

ELIGIBILITY REQUIREMENTS TO BE COMPLIED WITH FOR IPO

Entities not eligible to make an initial public offer [Regulation 5(1) & (2)]



Note: The restrictions under (a) and (b) above shall not apply to the persons or entities mentioned therein, who were debarred in the past by the SEBI and the period of debarment is already over as on the date of filing of the draft offer document with the SEBI.

* “selling shareholder(s)” means any shareholder of the issuer who is offering for sale the specified securities in a public issue in accordance with these Regulations.

Non applicability of Regulation 5(1) & (2)



Eligibility requirements for an initial public offer [Regulation 6(1) & 6(2)]

An issuer shall be eligible to make an IPO only if:

- the issuer has net tangible assets of atleast Rs. 3 crores, calculated on a restated and consolidated basis, in each of the preceding three full years of (12 months each) of which not more than 50% is held in monetary assets.

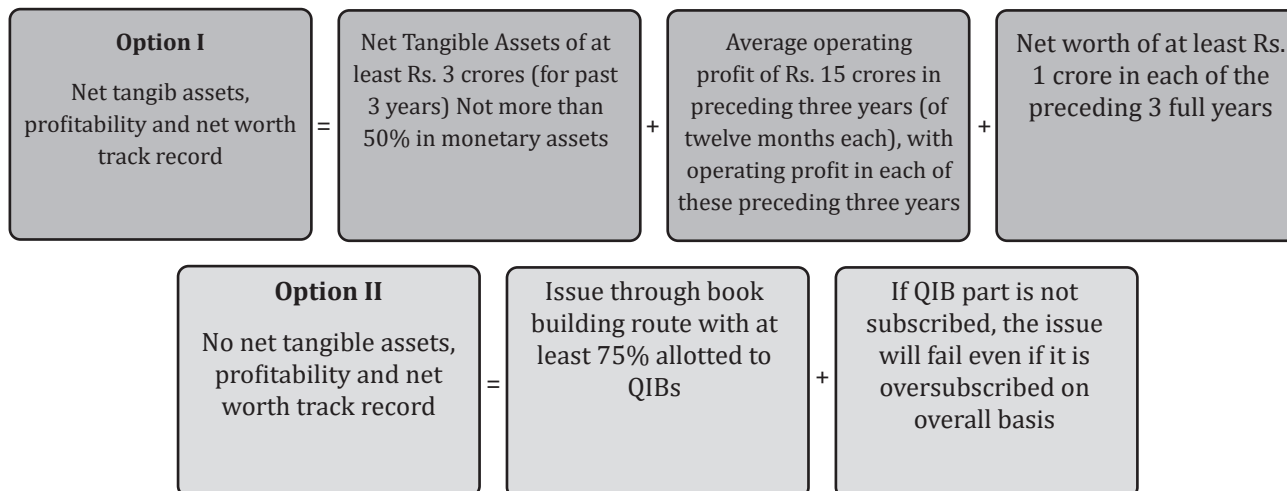
However, if more than 50% of the net tangible assets are held in monetary assets, the issuer has utilized or made firm commitments to utilize such excess monetary assets in its business or project. This limit of 50% shall not apply in case of IPO is made entirely through an offer for sale.

- the issuer has an average operating profit of at least Rs.15 crores, calculated on a restated and consolidated basis, during the three preceding 3 years, with operating profit in each of the three preceding years;
- the issuer has a networth of atleast Rs.1 crore in each of the preceding three full years, calculated on a restated and consolidated basis.

In case the issuer has changed its name within the last one year, atleast 50% of the revenue calculated on a restated and consolidated basis, for the preceding one full year has been earned by it from the activity indicated by the new name.

In case the Eligibility conditions are not met-

An issuer not satisfying the above-mentioned conditions shall be eligible to make an initial public offer only if the issue is made through the book-building process and the issuer undertakes to allot at least 75% of the net offer to qualified institutional buyers (QIBs) and to refund the full subscription money if it fails to do so.

Eligibility Criteria for Main Board Listing as per SEBI (ICDR), 2018

The above eligibility conditions are explained by the following Example:

Eligibility Condition No: 1

In case the issuer is proposing to file its draft offer document with the SEBI in August 2018, then the net tangible assets for the last 3 full years of 12 months each shall be atleast Rs.3 crores and not more than 50% of the same shall be held in monetary assets. In the following table, it is seen that the net tangible assets is more than Rs. 3 crores in the year ended March 31, 2014, March 31, 2015 and March 31, 2016. Further monetary assets constitute less than 50% of the net tangible assets in each of the three previous financial years:

(Rs. in lacs)

Year Ended March 31	2014	2015	2016	2017	2018
Net Tangible Assets	1448.56	2275.53	2532.60	3510.33	4657.50
Monetary Assets	292.76	61.97	108.25	302.33	288.17
Monetary Assets as a percentage of Net Tangible Assets	20.21	2.72	4.27	8.61	6.19

“Net Tangible Assets” mean the sum of all net assets of the issuer, excluding intangible assets as defined in Accounting Standard 26 (AS 26) or Indian Accounting Standard (Ind AS) 38, as applicable, issued by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India.

Eligibility Condition No: 2

In case the issuer proposes to file its draft offer document with the SEBI in August 2018, then the average operating profit for three preceding years shall be atleast Rs 15 crores. Further, the company shall have operating profit in each of the three years. The average of the profits for the 3 preceding years is Rs.15.75 crores which is more than the prescribed average of Rs.15 crores.

(Rs. in lacs)

Year Ended March 31	2016	2017	2018
Operating Profit	1630.31	1232.65	1864.63

Eligibility Condition No: 3

In case the issuer proposes to file its draft offer document with the SEBI in August 2018 then the networth shall be atleast Rs. 1 crore in each of the last 3 financial years. In the following table, it is seen that the company has a networth of Rs. 1 crore in each of the last three financial years prior to the date of the filing of the draft offer document with the SEBI.

(Rs. in lacs)

Year Ending March 31	2014	2015	2016	2017	2018
Equity Share Capital	1448.56	2000.00	2000.00	2000.00	2022.00
Share Application Money	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	165.00
Reserves & Surplus	0.00	304.52	590.02	1430.47	2742.71
Total	1448.56	2304.52	2590.02	3595.47	4764.71
Less : Misc. Expenses not written off	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
Less: Deferred Tax Assets	0.00	0.00	13.45	0.00	61.08
Net worth	1448.56	2304.52	2576.57	3595.47	4703.63

Since the all the above eligibility conditions are satisfied in the example and there is no change in the name of the company, this company is eligible to make an Initial Public Offering.

However, in case an issuer does not satisfy the eligibility conditions stipulated above, it may make an Initial Public Offer through the book building process and further undertake to allot atleast 75% of the net offer to the public to qualified institutional buyers and to refund full subscription money if it fails to do so. [Regulation 6(2)]

General Conditions [Regulation 7]

- An issuer making an initial public offer shall ensure that:
 - a) it has made an application to one or more stock exchanges to seek an in-principle approval for listing of its specified securities on such stock exchanges and has chosen one of them as the designated stock exchange;
 - b) it has entered into an agreement with a depository for dematerialisation of the specified securities already issued and proposed to be issued;
 - c) all its specified securities held by the promoters are in dematerialised form prior to filing of the offer document;
 - d) all its existing partly paid-up equity shares have either been fully paid-up or have been forfeited;
 - e) it has made firm arrangements of finance through verifiable means towards 75% of the stated means of finance for a specific project proposed to be funded from the issue proceeds, excluding the amount to be raised through the proposed public issue or through existing identifiable internal accruals.
- The amount for general corporate purposes, as mentioned in objects of the issue in the draft offer document and the offer document shall not exceed 25% of the amount being raised by the issuer.

Explanation:

(i) “Project” means the object for which monies are proposed to be raised to cover the objects of the issue.

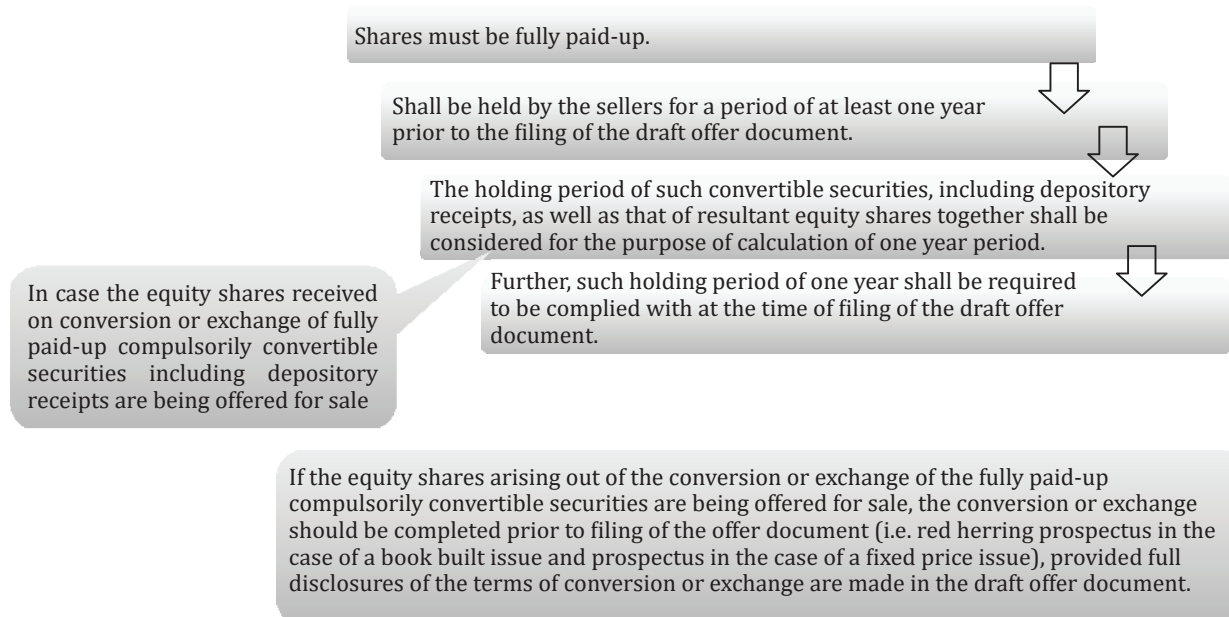
(ii) Partnership Firms

In case of an issuer which had been a partnership firm or a limited liability partnership, the track record of distributable profit of the partnership firm or the LLP shall be considered only if the financial statements of the partnership business for the period during which the issuer was a partnership firm conform to and are revised in the format prescribed for companies under the Companies Act, 2013 and also comply with the following:

- (a) adequate disclosures are made in the financial statements as required to be made in the format prescribed under the Companies Act, 2013;
- (b) the financial statements are duly certified by a Chartered Accountant stating that:
 - (i) the accounts and the disclosures made are in accordance with the provisions of Schedule III of the Companies Act, 2013
 - (ii) the accounting standards of the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India have been followed;
 - (iii) the financial statements present a true and fair view of the firm’s accounts.

(iii) Spinning off of a division

In case of an issuer formed out of a division of an existing company, the track record of distributable profits of the division spun-off shall be considered only if the requirements regarding financial statements as provided for partnership firms and LLPs are complied with.

Additional conditions for an offer for sale [Regulation 8]

The requirement of holding equity shares for a period of one year shall not apply:

Non-Applicability

The offer for sale of a government company or statutory authority or corporation or any special purpose vehicle set up and controlled by any one or more of them, which is engaged in the infrastructure sector;

Equity shares offered for sale were acquired pursuant to any scheme approved by a High Court under the sections 391 to 394 of Companies Act, 1956, or approved by a tribunal or the Central Government under the sections 230 to 234 of Companies Act, 2013, as applicable, in lieu of business and invested capital which had been in existence for a period of more than one year prior to approval of such scheme;

If the equity shares offered for sale were issued under a bonus issue on securities held for a period of at least one year prior to the filing of the draft offer document with the SEBI and further subject to the following:

Such specified securities being issued out of free reserves and share premium existing in the books of account as at the end of the financial year preceding the financial year in which the draft offer document is filed with SEBI;

AND

Such equity shares not being issued by utilisation of revaluation reserves or unrealized profits of the issuer.

Issue of Warrants [Regulation 13]

An issuer shall be eligible to issue warrants in an initial public offer subject to the following:

Tenure of such warrants shall not exceed eighteen months from the date of their allotment in the initial public offer

In case the warrant holder does not exercise the option to take equity shares against any of the warrants held by the warrant holder, within three months from the date of payment of consideration, such consideration made in respect of such warrants shall be forfeited by the issuer

Eligibility

Price or formula for determination of exercise price of the warrants shall be determined upfront and disclosed in the offer document and atleast 25 % of the consideration amount based on the exercise price shall also be received upfront

A specified security may have one or more warrants attached to it

In case the exercise price of warrants is based on a formula, 25 % consideration amount based on the cap price of the price band determined for the linked equity shares or convertible securities shall be received upfront.

ELIGIBILITY CRITERIA FOR FURTHER PUBLIC OFFER (FPO)

Entities not eligible to make a FPO [Regulation 102]

An issuer shall not be eligible to make a FPO of specified securities:

(a) If the issuer, any of its promoters, promoter group or directors, selling shareholders are debarred from accessing the capital market

(b) If any of the promoters or directors of the issuer is a promoter or a director of any other company which is debarred from accessing capital market by the SEBI

(C) If the issuer or any of its promoters or directors is a willful defaulter

(d) If any of the promoters or directors of the issuer is a fugitive offender

Note : The restrictions under (a) and (b) above shall not apply to the persons or entities mentioned therein, who were debarred in the past by the SEBI and the period of debarment is already over as on the date of filing of the draft offer document with the SEBI.

Eligibility requirements for FPO [Regulation 103]

- An issuer may make a FPO if it has changed its name within the last one year and atleast 50% of the revenue in the preceding one full year has been earned from the activity suggested by the new name.
- If an issuer does not satisfy the above-mentioned condition, it may make a FPO only, if, the issue is made through the book-building process and the issuer undertakes to allot at least 75% of the net offer, to qualified institutional buyers and to refund full subscription money if it fails to make the said minimum allotment to qualified institutional buyers.

General Conditions for FPO [Regulation 104]

An issuer making an FPO shall ensure that:

1. An application is made for listing of the specified securities to one or more of the recognized stock exchanges and choose one of the exchanges as the designated stock exchange.
2. An agreement is entered into with a depository for dematerialization of specified securities already issued and proposed to be issued.
3. All its existing partly paid up equity shares have either been fully paid up or have been forfeited. In other words, if a company has partly paid up equity shares, they shall not be permitted to make a public issue
4. The issuer should make firm arrangements of finance through verifiable means towards 75% of the stated means of finance for the specific project proposed to be funded from the issue proceeds, excluding the amount to be raised through the proposed public issue or through existing identifiable internal accruals.
5. Amount for General Corporate Purposes as mentioned in objects of the issue in the draft offer document and the offer document shall not exceed 25% of the amount being raised by the issuer.

Issue of Warrants [Regulation 111]

An issuer shall be eligible to issue warrants in a further public offer subject to the following conditions:

- the tenure of such warrants shall not exceed eighteen months from the date of their allotment in the public issue;
- a specified security may have one or more warrants attached to it;
- the price or formula for determination of exercise price of the warrants shall be determined upfront and at least 25% of the consideration amount based on the exercise price shall also be received upfront. However, in case the exercise price of warrants is based on a formula, 25% consideration amount based on the cap price of the price band determined for the linked equity shares or convertible securities shall be received upfront.
- in case the warrant holder does not exercise the option to take equity shares against any of the warrants held by the warrant holder, within three months from the date of payment of consideration, such consideration made in respect of such warrants shall be forfeited by the issuer.

PROMOTERS' CONTRIBUTION

In Case of IPO [Regulation 14]

The promoters of the issuer shall hold at least 20% of the post-issue capital.

However, in case the post-issue shareholding of the promoters is less than 20%, alternative investment funds or foreign venture capital investors or scheduled commercial banks or public financial institutions or insurance companies registered with IRDA may contribute to meet the shortfall in minimum contribution as specified for the promoters, subject to a maximum of ten percent of the post-issue capital without being identified as promoter(s).

Non applicability

The requirement of minimum promoters' contribution shall not apply in case an issuer does not have any identifiable promoter.

Minimum Promoters' Contribution

The minimum promoters' contribution shall be as follows:

Promoters shall contribute 20%, as the case may be, either by way of equity shares including SR equity shares held, if any, or by way of subscription to convertible securities.

If the price of the equity shares allotted pursuant to conversion is not pre-determined and not disclosed in the offer document, the promoters shall contribute only by way of subscription to the convertible securities being issued in the public issue and shall undertake in writing to subscribe to the equity shares pursuant to conversion of such securities.

For issue of convertible securities which are convertible or exchangeable on different dates and if the promoters' contribution is by way of equity shares (conversion price being pre-determined)

such contribution shall not be at a price lower than the weighted average price of the equity share capital arising out of conversion of such securities.

For initial public offer of convertible debt instruments without a prior public issue of equity shares

the promoters shall bring in a contribution of at least 20% of the project cost in the form of equity shares, subject to contributing at least 20% of the issue size from their own funds in the form of equity shares

However, if the project is to be implemented in stages, the promoters' contribution shall be with respect to total equity participation till the respective stage *vis-à-vis* the debt raised or proposed to be raised through the public issue.

Promoters' Contribution to be brought in before Public Issue Opens [Regulation 14(4)]

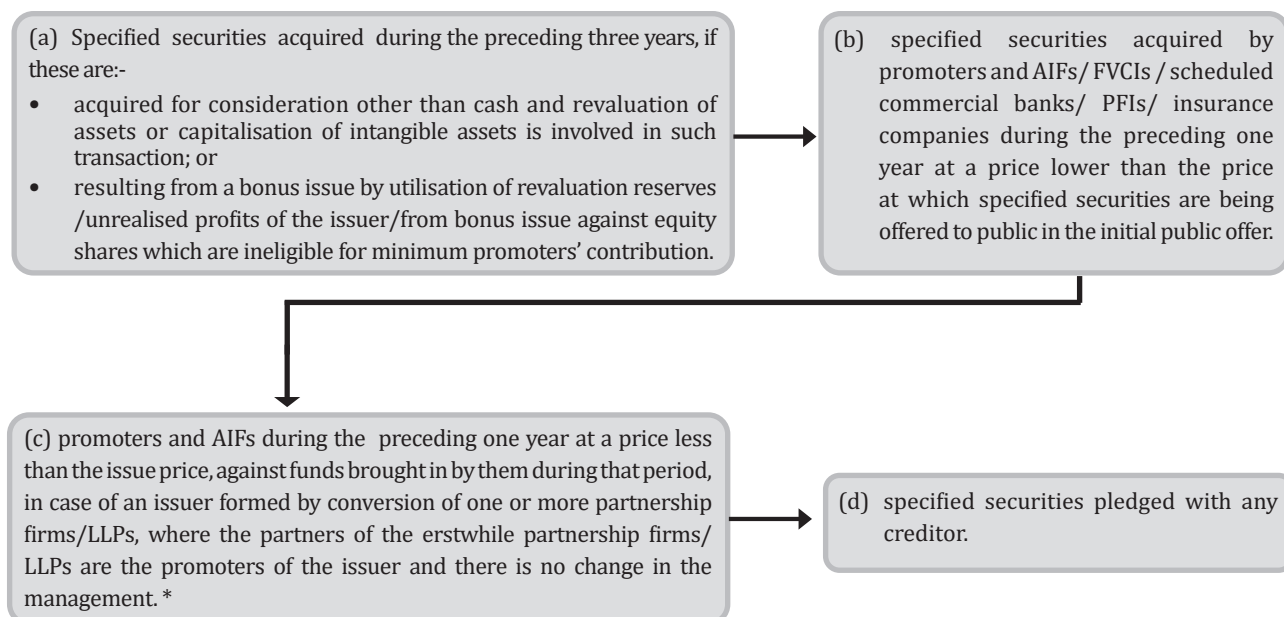
- **Timing:** The promoters shall bring full amount of the promoters' contribution including premium at least one day prior to the date of opening of the issue. In case the promoters have to subscribe to equity shares or convertible securities towards minimum promoters' contribution, the amount of promoters' shall be kept in an escrow account with a scheduled commercial bank, which shall be released to the issuer along with the release of the issue proceeds. However, where the promoters' contribution has already been brought in and utilised, the issuer shall give the Cash flow statement disclosing the use of such funds in the offer document.
- **Pro-rata basis:** Where the minimum promoters' contribution is more than Rs.100 crore and the initial public offer is for partly paid shares, the promoters shall bring in at least Rs.100 crore before the date of opening of the issue and the remaining amount may be brought on a pro-rata basis before the calls are made to the public.

Promoters' contribution shall be computed on the basis of the post-issue expanded capital:

- assuming full proposed conversion of convertible securities into equity shares;
- assuming exercise of all vested options, where any employee stock options are outstanding at the time of initial public offer.

Securities Ineligible for Minimum Promoters' Contribution [Regulation 15]

For the computation of minimum promoters' contribution, the following specified securities shall not be eligible:



- * In clause (c), specified securities, allotted to promoters against capital existing in such firms for a period of more than one year on a continuous basis, shall be eligible.

However, Clause (b) shall not apply:

- if the promoters and AIFs, as applicable pay to the issuer, the difference between the price at which specified securities are offered in the initial public offer and the price at which the specified securities had been acquired;
- if such specified securities are acquired in terms of the scheme under section 391 to 394 of the Companies Act, 1956 or sections 230-240 of the Companies Act, 2013, as approved by a High Court or a tribunal or the Central Government, as applicable, by promoters in lieu of business and invested capital that had been in existence for a period of more than one year prior to such approval;

- to an initial public offer by a government company, statutory authority or corporation or any special purpose vehicle set up by any of them, which is engaged in infrastructure sector;

Specified securities referred above shall be eligible for the computation of promoters' contribution, if such securities are acquired pursuant to a scheme which has been approved by a High Court under sections 391- 394 of the Companies Act, 1956 or approved by Tribunal or the Central Government under sections 230-240 of the Companies Act, 2013.

In Case of FPO

Exemption from Requirement of Promoters' Contribution [Regulation 112]

The requirements of minimum promoters' contribution shall not apply in case of:

(a) An issuer which does not have any identifiable promoter;

(b) where the equity shares of the issuer are frequently traded on a stock exchange for a period of at least three years immediately preceding the reference date, and:

- the issuer has redressed at least ninety five per cent of the complaints received from the investors till the end of the quarter immediately preceding the month of the reference date, and;
- the issuer has been in compliance with the SEBI (Listing Obligations and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2015 for a minimum period of three years immediately preceding the reference date

Minimum Promoters' Contribution [Regulation 113]

- The promoters shall contribute in the public issue as follows:
 - a) either to the extent of 20% of the proposed issue size or to the extent of 20% of the post-issue capital;
 - b) in case of a composite issue (i.e., further public offer cum rights issue), either to the extent of 20% of the proposed issue size or to the extent of 20% of the post-issue capital excluding the rights issue component.
- In case of a public issue or composite issue of convertible securities, the minimum promoters' contribution shall be as follows:
 - a) the promoters shall contribute 20%, as the case may be, either by way of equity shares or by way of subscription to the convertible securities. However, if the price of the equity shares allotted pursuant to conversion is not pre-determined and not disclosed in the offer document, the promoters shall contribute only by way of subscription to the convertible securities being issued in the public issue and shall undertake in writing to subscribe to the equity shares pursuant to conversion of such securities.
 - b) in case of any issue of convertible securities which are convertible or exchangeable on different dates and if the promoters' contribution is by way of equity shares (conversion price being pre- determined), such contribution shall not be at a price lower than the weighted average price of the equity share capital arising out of conversion of such securities.
- In case of a further public offer or composite issue where the promoters contribute more than the stipulated minimum promoters' contribution, the allotment with respect to excess contribution shall be made at a price determined in terms of the provisions relating to pricing of frequently trading shares or the issue price, whichever is higher.
- In case the promoters have to subscribe to equity shares or convertible securities towards promoters' contribution, the promoters shall satisfy the requirements of at least one day prior to the date of opening of the issue and the amount of promoters' contribution shall be kept in an escrow account with a scheduled

commercial bank and shall be released to the issuer along with the release of the issue proceeds.

Further, where the minimum promoters' contribution is more than one hundred crore rupees and the further public offer is for partly paid shares, the promoters shall bring in at least one hundred crore rupees before the date of opening of the issue and the remaining amount may be brought on a pro-rata basis before the calls are made to the public.

- The SR equity shares of promoters, if any, shall be eligible towards computation of minimum promoters' contribution.

"Weighted average price":

- "weight" means the number of equity shares arising out of conversion of such specified securities into equity shares at various stages;
- "price" means the price of equity shares on conversion arrived at after taking into account predetermined conversion price at various stages.

Securities ineligible for minimum promoters' contribution [Regulation 114]

For the computation of minimum promoters' contribution, the following specified securities shall not be eligible:

- specified securities acquired during the preceding three years, if these are:
 - acquired for consideration other than cash and revaluation of assets or capitalisation of intangible assets is involved in such transaction; or
 - resulting from a bonus issue by utilisation of revaluation reserves or unrealised profits of the issuer or from bonus issue against equity shares which are ineligible for minimum promoters' contribution;
- specified securities pledged with any creditor other than those for borrowings by the issuer or its subsidiaries.

Specified securities referred shall be eligible for the computation of promoters' contribution, if such securities are acquired pursuant to a scheme which has been approved by the High Court under section 391 to 394 of the Companies Act, 1956 or approved by a tribunal or the Central Government under section 230 to 234 of the Companies Act, 2013.

LOCK-IN REQUIREMENTS

For Securities Held by Promoters [Regulations 16 & 115]

In a public issue, the specified securities held by promoters shall be locked-in for the period stipulated hereunder:

Promoters
Contribution

The promoters contribution including contribution made by AIFs or FVCIs or scheduled commercial banks or PFIIs or insurance companies registered with IRDA, shall be locked-in for a period of 3 years from the date of commencement of commercial production or from the date of allotment in the IPO/FPO, whichever is later

Promoters' holding
in excess of
minimum promoters'
contribution

Promoters' holding in excess of minimum promoters' contribution shall be locked-in for a period of 1 year from the date of allotment in the initial public offer.

In case of SR Equity
Shares

SR equity shares shall be under lock-in until conversion into equity shares having voting rights same as that of ordinary shares or shall be locked-in for a period specified above, whichever is later. In case of FPO, the SR equity shares shall be under lock-in until their conversion to equity shares having voting rights same as that of ordinary shares, provided they are in compliance with the other provisions of these regulations.

“Date of commencement of commercial production” means the last date of the month in which commercial production of the project in respect of which the funds raised are proposed to be utilized as stated in the offer document, is expected to commence.

Securities held by persons other than Promoters [Regulation 17]

The entire pre-issue share capital, held by persons other than the promoters, shall be locked-in for a period of one year from the date of allotment in the initial public offer.

The provisions of this regulation shall not apply, in case of:

- (i) Equity shares allotted to employees under employee stock option or employee stock purchase scheme prior to initial public offer, if the issuer has made full disclosures with respect to such option; and
- (ii) Equity shares held by an employee stock option trust or transferred to the employees by an employee stock option trust pursuant to exercise of options by the employees, in accordance with the employee stock option plan or employee stock purchase scheme;
- (iii) Equity shares held by a venture capital fund or AIF of category I & II or a FVCI and such equity shares shall be locked-in for a period of at least one-year from the date of purchase by the venture capital or AIF or FVCI.

For Point No. (iii), in case such equity shares have resulted pursuant to conversion of fully paid- up compulsorily convertible securities, the holding period of such convertible securities as well as that of resultant equity shares together shall be considered for the purpose of calculation of one year period and convertible securities shall be deemed to be fully paid- up, if the entire consideration payable thereon has been paid and no further consideration is payable at the time of their conversion.

Lock-in of party-paid securities [Regulations 19 & 117]

If the specified securities which are subject to lock-in are partly paid-up and the amount called-up on such specified securities is less than the amount called-up on the specified securities issued to the public, the lock- in shall end only on the expiry of three years after such specified securities have become pari passu with the specified securities issued to the public.

Inscription or recording of non-transferability [Regulations 20 & 118]

The certificates of specified securities which are subject to lock-in shall contain the inscription “non-transferable” and specify the lock-in period and in case such specified securities are dematerialised, the issuer shall ensure that the lock-in is recorded by the depository.

Pledge of Locked In Shares [Regulations 21 & 119]

Specified securities, except SR equity shares, held by the promoters and locked in may be pledged as collateral security for a loan granted by a scheduled commercial bank or a public financial institution or a systemically important non-banking finance company or a housing finance company, subject to the following:



- a) if the specified securities are locked-in as per Regulation 16 (a)- Lock-in of specified securities held by the promoters, the loan has been granted to the issuer company or its subsidiary/subsidiaries for the purpose of financing one or more of the objects of the issue and pledge of specified securities is one of the terms of sanction of the loan.



- b) if the specified securities are locked-in as per Regulation 16 (b)- Lock-in of specified securities held by the promoters and the pledge of specified securities is one of the terms of sanction of the loan.

However, such lock-in shall continue pursuant to the invocation of the pledge and such transferee shall not be eligible to transfer the specified securities till the lock-in period stipulated in these regulations, has expired.

Transferability of locked-in specified securities [Regulations 22 & 120]

Subject to the provisions of the SEBI (Substantial Acquisition of shares and Takeovers) Regulations, 2011, the specified securities except SR equity shares held by the promoters and locked-in as per regulation 115 may be transferred to another promoter or any person of the promoter group or a new promoter or a person in control of the issuer.

However, lock-in on such specified securities shall continue for the remaining period with the transferee and such transferee shall not be eligible to transfer them till the lock-in period stipulated in these regulations has expired.

OTHER REQUIREMENTS FOR IPO & FPO**Appointment of Lead Managers, Other Intermediaries and Compliance Officer [Regulation 23 & 121]**

- The issuer shall appoint one or more merchant bankers, which are registered with the SEBI, as lead manager(s) to the issue.
- Where the issue is managed by more than one lead manager, the rights, obligations and responsibilities, relating inter alia to disclosures, allotment, refund and underwriting obligations, if any, of each lead manager shall be predetermined and be disclosed in the draft offer document and the offer document.
- At least one lead manager to the issue shall not be an associate, as defined under the SEBI (Merchant Bankers) Regulations, 1992 of the issuer.
- If any of the lead manager is an associate of the issuer, it shall disclose itself as an associate of the issuer and its role shall be limited to marketing of the issue.
- The issuer shall, in consultation with the lead manager(s), appoint other intermediaries which are registered with the SEBI after the lead manager(s) have independently assessed the capability of other intermediaries to carry out their obligations.
- The issuer shall enter into an agreement with the lead manager(s) and enter into agreements with other intermediaries as required under the respective regulations applicable to the intermediary concerned.
- Such agreements may include such other clauses as the issuer and the intermediaries may deem fit without diminishing or limiting in any way the liabilities and obligations of the lead manager(s), other intermediaries and the issuer under the Act, the Companies Act, 2013 or the Companies Act, 1956 (to the extent applicable), the Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, 1956, the Depositories Act, 1996 and the rules and regulations made thereunder or any statutory modification or statutory enactment thereof.
- In case of ASBA process, the issuer shall take cognizance of the deemed agreement of the issuer with the self-certified syndicate banks.
- The issuer shall, in case of an issue made through the book building process, appoint syndicate member(s) and in the case of any other issue, appoint bankers to issue, at centres.
- The issuer shall appoint a registrar to the issue, registered with the SEBI which has connectivity with all the depositories.
- If the issuer itself is a registrar, it shall not appoint itself as registrar to the issue.
- The lead manager shall not act as a registrar to the issue in which it is also handling the post-issue responsibilities.
- The issuer shall appoint a compliance officer who shall be responsible for monitoring the compliance of the securities laws and for redressal of investors' grievances.

Disclosures in draft offer document and offer document [Regulation 24 & 122]

- The draft offer document and the offer document shall contain all material disclosures which are true and adequate to enable the applicants to take an informed investment decision.

- The red-herring prospectus, shelf prospectus and prospectus shall contain:
 - (i) disclosures specified in the Companies Act, 2013; and
 - (i) disclosures specified in Part A of Schedule VI of ICDR Regulations 2018. In case of FPO the disclosures are subject to the provisions of Parts C and D thereof.
- The lead manager(s) shall exercise due diligence and satisfy themselves about all aspects of the issue including the veracity and adequacy of disclosures made in the draft offer document and the offer document.
- The lead manager(s) shall call upon the issuer, its promoters and its directors or in case of an offer for sale, the selling shareholders, to fulfil their obligations as disclosed by them in the draft offer document and the offer document and as required in terms of the ICDR Regulations 2018.
- The lead manager(s) shall ensure that the information contained in the offer document and the particulars as per audited financial statements in the offer document are not more than six months old from the issue opening date.

Filing of offer Document [Regulations 25 & 123]

- Prior to making an IPO/FPO, the issuer shall file three copies of the draft offer document with the concerned regional office of the SEBI under the jurisdiction of which the registered office of the issuer company is located, along with fees as specified, through the lead manager(s).
- The lead manager(s) shall submit the following to the SEBI along with the draft offer document:
 - » a certificate, confirming that an agreement has been entered into between the issuer and the lead manager(s);
 - » a due diligence certificate;
 - » in case of an issue of convertible debt instruments, a due diligence certificate from the debenture trustee.
- The issuer shall also file the draft offer document with the stock exchange(s) where the specified securities are proposed to be listed, and submit to the stock exchange(s), the Permanent Account Number, bank account number and passport number of its promoters where they are individuals, and Permanent Account Number, bank account number, company registration number or equivalent and the address of the Registrar of Companies (ROC) with which the promoter is registered, where the ROC promoter is a body corporate.
- The SEBI may specify changes or issue observations, on the draft offer document filed with it within a period of 30 days from the later of the following dates:
 - a) the date of receipt of the draft offer document filed with the SEBI; or
 - b) the date of receipt of satisfactory reply from the lead managers, where the SEBI has sought any clarification or additional information from them; or
 - c) the date of receipt of clarification or information from any regulator or agency, where the SEBI has sought any clarification or information from such regulator or agency; or
 - d) the date of receipt of a copy of in-principle approval letter issued by the recognised stock exchanges.
- If the SEBI specifies any changes or issues observations on the draft offer document, the issuer and lead manager(s) shall carry out such changes in the draft offer document and shall submit to the Board an updated draft offer document complying with the observations issued by the Board and highlighting all changes made in the draft offer document and before filing the offer documents with the Registrar of Companies or an appropriate authority, as applicable.
- If there are any changes in the draft offer document in relation to the matters specified in these regulations, an updated offer document or a fresh draft offer document, as the case may be, shall be filed with the SEBI.

- Copy of the offer documents shall also be filed with the SEBI and the stock exchanges through the lead manager(s) promptly after filing the offer document with the Registrar of Companies.
- The draft offer document and the offer document shall also be furnish to the SEBI in a soft copy.

Draft offer document and offer document to be available to the public [Regulations 26 & 124]

- The draft offer document filed with the SEBI shall be made public for comments, if any, for a period of at least 21 days from the date of filing, by hosting it on the websites of the SEBI, stock exchanges where specified securities are proposed to be listed and lead manager(s) associated with the issue.
- **Issuer:** The issuer shall, within two days of filing the draft offer document with the SEBI, make a public announcement in one English national daily newspaper with wide circulation, one Hindi national daily newspaper with wide circulation and one regional language newspaper with wide circulation at the place where the registered office of the issuer is situated, disclosing the fact of filing of the draft offer document with the SEBI and inviting the public to provide their comments to the SEBI, the issuer or the lead manager(s) in respect of the disclosures made in the draft offer document.
- **Lead Manager:** The lead manager(s) shall, after expiry of the period stipulated above, file with the SEBI, details of the comments received by them or the issuer from the public, on the draft offer document, during that period and the consequential changes, if any, that are required to be made in the draft offer document.
- **Issuer and Lead Manager:** The issuer and the lead manager(s) shall ensure that the offer documents are hosted on the websites as required under these regulations and its contents are the same as the versions as filed with the Registrar of Companies, the SEBI and the stock exchanges, as applicable.
- **Lead manager(s) and the stock exchanges:** The lead manager(s) and the stock exchanges shall provide copies of the offer document to the public as and when requested and may charge a reasonable sum for providing a copy of the same.

Face Value of Equity Shares [Regulations 27 & 125]

The disclosure about the face value of equity shares shall be made in the draft offer document, offer document, offer document, advertisements and application forms, along with price band or the issue price in identical font size.

Pricing [Regulations 28 & 126]

An issuer in an IPO and FPO may determine the price of specified securities in consultation with the lead manager or through the book building process.

Price and Price Band [Regulations 29 & 127]

- The issuer may mention a price or price band in the draft prospectus (in case of a fixed price issue) and floor price or price band in the red herring prospectus (in case of a book built issue) and determine the price at a later date before filing the prospectus with the Registrar of Companies.
- However, the prospectus filing with the RoC shall contain only one price or the coupon rate, as the case may be.
- The cap on the price band, and the coupon rate in case of convertible debt instruments, shall be less than or equal to one hundred and 20% of the floor price.
- The floor price or the final price shall not be less than the face value of the specified securities.
- Where the issuer opt not to make disclosure of the floor price or price band in the red herring prospectus, the issuer shall be announce the floor price or price band at least two working days before the opening of the bid (in case of an initial public offer) and at least one working day before the opening of the bid (in case of a further public offer), in all the newspapers in which the pre issue advertisement was released or together with the pre-issue advertisement.
- The announcement referred above shall also contain all the relevant financial ratios computed for both the upper and lower end of the price band and also a statement drawing attention of the investors to the section titled “basis of issue price” of the offer document.

- The announcement and the relevant financial ratios shall be disclosed on the websites of those stock exchanges where the securities are proposed to be listed and shall also be pre-filled in the application forms available on the websites of the stock exchanges.

Differential Pricing [Regulations 30 & 128]

An issuer may offer specified securities at different prices, subject to the following:

Retail individual investors or retail individual shareholders or employees entitled for reservation made under regulation 33 & 130 of the ICDR Regulations, may be offered specified securities at a price not lower than by more than 10% of the price at which net offer is made to other categories of applicants, other than anchor investors;

In other words, if the issue price to the other categories of applicants is Rs.100 the price at which the securities can be offered to the reserved categories shall not be less than Rs.90.

=

in case of a book built issue, the price of the specified securities offered to an anchor investor shall not be lower than the price offered to other applicants

In case the issuer opts for the alternate method of book building as specified under the ICDR Regulations, 2018, the issuer may offer specified securities to its employees at a price not lower by more than 10% of the floor price

In case of FPO, an additional condition is that in case of a composite issue, the price of the specified securities offered in the public issue may be different from the price offered in rights issue and justification for such price difference shall be given in the offer document; and discount, if any shall be expressed in rupee terms in the offer document.

Minimum Offer to Public [Regulation 31]

The minimum net offer to the public shall be subject to the provision of clause (b) of sub-rule (2) of rule 19 of Securities Contracts (Regulations) Rules, 1957.

Reservation on Competitive Basis [Regulations 33 & 130]

Reservation on competitive basis means reservation wherein specified securities are allotted in portion of the number of specified securities applied for in respect of a particular reserved category to the number of specified securities reserved for that category.

According to the SEBI (ICDR) Regulations, 2018, there are certain persons eligible for reservation on competitive basis.

- (1) The issuer may make reservation on a competitive basis out of the issue size excluding promoters' contribution in favour of the following categories of persons:
 - Employees;
 - shareholders (other than promoters and promoter group) of listed subsidiaries or listed promoter companies.

However, the issuer shall not make any reservation for the lead manager(s), registrar, syndicate member(s), their promoters, directors and employees and for the group or associate companies (as defined under the Companies Act, 2013) of the lead manager(s), registrar and syndicate member(s) and their promoters, directors and employees.
- (2) In case of an FPO, other than in a composite issue, the issuer may make a reservation on a competitive basis out of the issue size excluding promoters' contribution for the existing retail individual shareholders of the issuer.
- (3) The reservation on competitive basis shall be subject to following conditions:
 - the aggregate of reservations for employees shall not exceed 5% of the post issue capital of the issuer and the value of allotment to any employee shall not exceed Rs. 2 Lakh. However, in the event of

under-subscription in the employee reservation portion, the unsubscribed portion may be allotted on a proportionate basis, for a value in excess of Rs. 2 Lakh, subject to the total allotment to an employee not exceeding Rs. 5 Lakh.

- reservation for shareholders shall not exceed ten per cent of the issue size;
 - no further application for subscription in the net offer can be made by persons (except an employee and retail individual shareholder of the listed issuer and retail individual shareholders of listed subsidiaries of listed promoter companies) in favour of whom reservation on a competitive basis is made;
 - any unsubscribed portion in any reserved category may be added to any other reserved category and the unsubscribed portion, if any, after such inter-se adjustments among the reserved categories shall be added to the net offer category;
 - in case of under-subscription in the net offer category, spill-over to the extent of under-subscription shall be permitted from the reserved category to the net public offer category.
- (4) An applicant in any reserved category may make an application for any member of specified securities, but not exceeding the reserved portion for that category.

ASBA [Regulations 35 & 132]

The issuer shall accept bids using only the ASBA facility in the manner specified by SEBI.

Availability of issue material [Regulations 36 & 133]

The lead manager(s) shall ensure availability of the offer document and other issue material including application forms to stock exchanges, syndicate members, registrar to issue, registrar and share transfer agents, depository participants, stock brokers, underwriters, bankers to the issue, and self-certified syndicate banks before the opening of the issue.

Prohibition on payment of incentives [Regulations 37 & 134]

Any person connected with the issue shall not offer any incentive, whether direct or indirect, in any manner, whether in cash or kind or services or otherwise to any person for making an application in the initial public offer, except for fees or commission for services rendered in relation to the issue.

Security Deposit [Regulations 38 & 135]

The issuer shall, before the opening of the subscription list, deposit with the stock exchange or stock exchanges an amount calculated at the rate of 1% of the amount of the issue size available for subscription to the public in the manner as may be specified by the SEBI and the amount so deposited shall be refundable or forfeitable in the manner specified by the SEBI.

IPO Grading – Applicable to IPO only [Regulation 39]

The issuer may obtain grading for its initial public offer from one or more credit rating agencies registered with the SEBI.

Underwriting [Regulations 40 & 136]

- If an issuer makes a IPO/FPO other than through the book building process, desires to have the issue underwritten, it shall appoint the underwriters in accordance with the SEBI (Underwriters) Regulations, 1993.
- If the issuer makes a public issue through a book building process,
 - a) the issue shall be underwritten by lead managers and syndicate members. However, at least 75% of the net offer to the public is proposed to be compulsorily allotted to the QIBs, and such portion cannot be underwritten;

- b) the issuer shall, prior to filing the prospectus, enter into an underwriting agreement with the lead manager(s) and syndicate member(s) which shall indicate the number of specified securities which they shall subscribe to at the predetermined price in the event of under-subscription in the issue;
- c) if the syndicate member(s) fail to fulfill their underwriting obligations, the lead manager(s) shall fulfill the underwriting obligations;
- d) the lead manager(s) and syndicate member(s) shall not subscribe to the issue in any manner except for fulfilling their underwriting obligations;
- e) in case of every underwriting issue, the lead manager(s) shall undertake minimum underwriting obligation as specified in the SEBI (Merchant Bankers) Regulations, 1992;
- f) where the issue is required to be underwritten, the underwriting obligations should at least to the extent of minimum subscription.

Monitoring Agency [Regulations 41 & 137]

If the issue size excluding the size of offer for sale by selling shareholders, exceeds Rs.100 crores, the issuer shall ensure that the use of the proceeds of the issue is monitored by a public financial institution or by one of the scheduled commercial banks named in the offer document as a banker to the issuer

In case the issuer is a bank or a public financial institution or an insurance company, this provision is not applicable.

- The monitoring agency shall submit its report to the issuer in the format specified in the ICDR Regulations, 2018 on a quarterly basis, till at least 95% of the proceeds of the issue excluding the proceeds raised for general corporate purposes, have been utilized.
- The Board of Directors and the management of the issuer shall provide their comments on the findings of the monitoring agency.
- The issuer shall, within forty-five days from the end of each quarter, publicly disseminate the report of the monitoring agency by uploading the same on its website as well as submitting the same to the stock exchange(s) on which its equity shares are listed.

Public Communications, Publicity Materials, Advertisements and Research Reports [Regulations 42 & 138]

All public communication, publicity materials, advertisements and research reports shall comply with the provisions of Schedule IX of the SEBI ICDR Regulations, 2018.

Issue-related Advertisements [Regulations 43 & 139]

- Subject to the provisions of the Companies Act, 2013, the issuer shall, after filing the red herring prospectus (in case of a book built issue) or prospectus (in case of fixed price issue) with the Registrar of Companies, make a pre-issue advertisement in one English national daily newspaper with wide circulation, Hindi national daily newspaper with wide circulation and one regional language newspaper with wide circulation at the place where the registered office of the issuer is situated.
- The pre-issue advertisement shall contain the disclosures specified in Part A of Schedule X of the SEBI ICDR Regulations, 2018. However, the disclosures in relation to price band or floor price and financial ratios contained therein shall only be applicable where the issuer opts to announce the price band or floor price along with the pre-issue advertisement.
- The issuer may release advertisements for issue opening and issue closing, which shall be in the formats specified in Parts B and C of Schedule X of the SEBI ICDR Regulations, 2018.

- During the period the issue is open for subscription, no advertisement shall be released giving an impression that the issue has been fully subscribed or oversubscribed or indicating investors' response to the issue.

Opening of the Issue [Regulations 44 & 140]

A public issue (both IPO and FPO), subject to compliance with the provisions of the Companies Act, 2013, may be opened within 12 months from the date of issuance of the observations by the SEBI.

In case of a fast-track issue, the issue shall open within the period specifically stipulated under the Companies Act, 2013. In case the issuer has filed a shelf prospectus, the first issue may be opened within 3 months of the issuance of observations by the SEBI.

An IPO and an FPO shall be opened after at least 3 working days from the date of filing the red herring prospectus in case of a book built issue or the prospectus in case of a fixed price issue with the Registrar of Companies.

Minimum Subscription [Regulations 45 & 141]

The minimum subscription to be received in an issue shall be not less than 90% of the offer through offer document except in case of an offer for sale of specified securities. In case of an IPO, the minimum subscription to be received shall be subject to allotment of minimum number of specified securities, as prescribed under the Securities Contracts (Regulation) Rules, 1957.

In the event of non-receipt of minimum subscription, all application monies received shall be refunded to the applicants forthwith, but not later than fifteen days from the closure of the issue

Period of Subscription [Regulations 46 & 142]

- An IPO/FPO shall be kept open for at least 3 working days and not more than 10 working days.
- In case of a revision in the price band, the issuer shall extend the bidding (issue) period disclosed in the red herring prospectus, for a minimum period of 3 working days.
- In case of force majeure, banking strike or similar circumstances, the issuer may, for reasons to be recorded in writing, extend the bidding (issue) period disclosed in the red herring prospectus (in case of a book built issue) or the issue period disclosed in the prospectus (in case of a fixed price issue), for a minimum period of 3 working days.

Application and Minimum Application Value [Regulations 47 & 143]

- A person shall not make an application in the net offer category for a number of specified securities that exceeds the total number of specified securities offered to the public. However, the maximum application by non-institutional investors shall not exceed total number of specified securities offered in the issue less total number of specified securities offered in the issue to QIBs.
- The issuer shall stipulate in the offer document the minimum application size in terms of number of specified securities which shall fall within the range of minimum application value of Rs.10,000 to Rs.15,000.
- The issuer shall invite applications in multiples of the minimum application value, as per Part B of Schedule XIV of the SEBI ICDR Regulation 2018.
- The minimum sum payable on application per specified security shall be at least 25% of the issue price:

"Minimum application value" shall be with reference to the issue price of the specified securities and not with reference to the amount payable on application.

- However, in case of an offer for sale, the full issue price for each specified security shall be payable at the time of application.

Manner of Calls [Regulations 48 & 144]

If the issuer proposes to receive subscription monies in calls, it shall ensure that the outstanding subscription money is called within twelve months from the date of allotment in the issue and if any applicant fails to pay the call money within the said twelve months, the equity shares on which there are calls in arrear along with the subscription money already paid on such shares shall be forfeited. In case the issuer has appointed a monitoring agency, the issuer shall not be required to call the outstanding subscription money within twelve months.

Allotment Procedure and Basis of Allotment [Regulations 49 & 145]

- The issuer shall not make an allotment pursuant to a public issue if the number of prospective allottees is less than 1000.
- The issuer shall not make any allotment in excess of the specified securities offered through the offer document except in case of oversubscription for the purpose of rounding off to make allotment, in consultation with the designated stock exchange.
- The allotment of specified securities to applicants other than to the retail individual investors and anchor investors shall be on a proportionate basis within the respective investor categories and the number of securities allotted shall be rounded off to the nearest integer, subject to minimum allotment being equal to the minimum application size as determined and disclosed in the offer document. However, the value of specified securities allotted to any person, except in case of employees, in pursuance of reservation made under these regulations, shall not exceed Rs.2 Lakh for retail investors or up to Rs.5 Lakh for eligible employees.
- The allotment of specified securities to each retail individual investor shall not be less than the minimum bid lot, subject to the availability of shares in retail individual investor category, and the remaining available shares, if any, shall be allotted on a proportionate basis.
- The authorised employees of the designated stock exchange, along with the lead manager(s) and registrars to the issue, shall ensure that the basis of allotment is finalised in a fair and proper manner in accordance with the procedure as specified in Part A of Schedule XIV.

Oversubscription [Proviso to Regulations 49(2) & 145(2)]

However, in case of oversubscription, an allotment of not more than one percent of the net offer to the public for the purpose of making allotment in minimum lots.

Illustration explaining the procedure of allotment

Example A

- (1) Total number of specified securities on offer @ Rs. 600 per share: 1 crore specified securities.
- (2) Specified securities on offer for retail individual investors' category: 35 lakh specified securities.
- (3) The issue is over-all subscribed by 2.5 times, whereas the retail individual investors' category is oversubscribed 4 times.
- (4) The issuer has fixed the minimum application/bid size as 20 specified securities (falling within the range of ten thousand to fifteen thousand rupees) and in multiples thereof.
- (5) A total of one lakh retail individual investors have applied in the issue, in varying number of bid lots i.e. between 1 – 16 bid lots, based on the maximum application size of up to two lakh rupees.
- (6) Out of the one lakh investors, there are five retail individual investors A, B, C, D and E who have applied as follows: A has applied for 320 specified securities. B has applied for 220 specified securities. C has applied for 120 specified securities. D has applied for 60 specified securities and E has applied for 20 specified securities.

- (7) As the allotment to a retail individual investor cannot be less than the minimum bid lot, subject to availability of shares, the remaining available shares, if any, shall be allotted on a proportionate basis.

The actual entitlement shall be as follows:

Sl. No.	Name of Investor	Total Number of specified securities applied for	Total number of specified securities eligible to be allotted
1.	A	320	20 specified securities (i.e. the minimum bid lot) + 38 specified securities $\{[35,00,000 - (1,00,000 * 20)] / \{140,00,000 - (1,00,000 * 20)\} * 300$ (i.e. 320-20)
2.	B	220	20 specified securities (i.e. the minimum bid lot) + 25 specified securities $\{[35,00,000 - (1,00,000 * 20)] / \{140,00,000 - (1,00,000 * 20)\} * 200$ (i.e. 220-20)
3.	C	120	20 specified securities (i.e. the minimum bid lot) + 13 specified securities $\{[35,00,000 - (1,00,000 * 20)] / \{140,00,000 - (1,00,000 * 20)\} * 100$ (i.e. 120-20)
4.	D	60	20 specified securities (i.e. the minimum bid lot) + 5 specified securities $\{[35,00,000 - (1,00,000 * 20)] / \{140,00,000 - (1,00,000 * 20)\} * 40$ (i.e. 60-20)
5.	E	20	20 specified securities (i.e. the minimum bid lot)

Example B

- (1) Total number of specified securities on offer @ Rs. 600 per share: 1 crore specified securities.
- (2) Specified securities on offer for retail individual investors' category: 35 lakh specified securities.
- (3) The issue is overall subscribed by 7 times, whereas the retail individual investors' category is over-subscribed 9.37 times.
- (4) The issuer has decided the minimum application/bid size as 20 specified securities (falling within the range of ten thousand to fifteen thousand rupees) and in multiples thereof.
- (5) A total of two lakh retail individual investors have applied in the issue, in varying number of bid lots i.e. between 1-16 bid lots, based on the maximum application size of up to two lakh rupees.
- (6) As per the allotment procedure, the allotment to retail individual investors shall not be less than the minimum bid lot, subject to availability of shares.
- (7) Since the total number of shares on offer to the retail individual investors is 35,00,000 and the minimum bid lot is 20 shares, the maximum number of investors who can be allotted this minimum bid lot should be 1,75,000. In other words, 1,75,000 retail applicants shall get the minimum bid lot and the remaining 25,000 retail applicants will not get any allotment.

The details of the allotment shall be as follows:

No. of lots	No. of shares at each lot	No. of retail investors applying at each lot	Total no. of shares applied for at each lot	No. of investors who shall receive minimum bid-lot (to be selected by a lottery)
A	B	C	D = (B*C)	E
1.	20	10,000	2,00,000	$8,750 = (1,75,000 / 2,00,000) * 10,000$

2.	40	10,000	4,00,000	8,750
3.	60	10,000	6,00,000	8,750
4.	80	10,000	8,00,000	8,750
5.	100	20,000	20,00,000	17,500
6.	120	20,000	24,00,000	17,500
7.	140	15,000	21,00,000	13,125
8.	160	20,000	32,00,000	17,500
9.	180	10,000	18,00,000	8,750
10.	200	15,000	30,00,000	13,125
11.	220	10,000	22,00,000	8,750
12.	240	10,000	24,00,000	8,750
13.	260	10,000	26,00,000	8,750
14.	280	5,000	14,00,000	4,375
15.	300	15,000	45,00,000	13,125
16.	320	10,000	32,00,000	8,750
Total		2,00,000	328,00,000	1,75,000

Allotment, Refund and Payment of Interest [Regulations 50 & 146]

- The issuer and lead manager(s) shall ensure that specified securities are allotted and/or application monies are refunded or unblocked within such period as may be specified by the SEBI.
- The lead manager(s) shall ensure that the allotment, credit of dematerialised securities, refunding or unblocking of application monies, as may be applicable, are done electronically.
- Where specified securities are not allotted and/or application monies are not refunded or unblocked within the period stipulated above, the issuer shall undertake to pay interest at the rate of 15% per annum to the investors and within such time as disclosed in the offer document and the lead manager(s) shall ensure the same.

Post-issue Advertisements [Regulations 51 & 147]

- The lead manager(s) shall ensure that an advertisement giving details relating to:
 - subscription,
 - basis of allotment,
 - number, value and percentage of successful allottees for all applications including ASBA,
 - date of completion of despatch of refund orders, as applicable, or
 - instructions to self-certified syndicate banks by the registrar,
 - date of credit of specified securities and date of filing of listing application, etc.

is released within ten days from the date of completion of the various activities in at least one English national daily newspaper with wide circulation, one Hindi national daily newspaper with wide circulation and one regional language daily newspaper with wide circulation at the place where registered office of the issuer is situated.

- The above-mentioned details shall also be placed on the websites of the stock exchange(s).

Post-issue responsibilities of the lead manager(s) [Regulations 52 & 148]

- The responsibility of the lead manager(s) shall continue until completion of the issue process and for any issue related matter thereafter.
- The lead manager(s) shall:
 - regularly monitor redressal of investor grievances arising from any issue related activities.
 - be responsible for post-issue activities till the applicants have received the securities certificates, credit to their demat account or refund of application monies and the listing agreement is entered into by the issuer with the stock exchange and listing or trading permission is obtained.
 - co-ordinate with the registrars to the issue and with various intermediaries at regular intervals after the closure of the issue to monitor the flow of applications from syndicate member(s) or collecting bank branches and/ or self-certified syndicate banks, processing of the applications including application form for ASBA and other matters till the basis of allotment is finalised, credit of the specified securities to the demat accounts of the allottees and unblocking of ASBA accounts/ dispatch of refund orders are completed and securities are listed, as applicable.
- Any act of omission or commission on the part of any of the intermediaries noticed by the lead manager(s) shall be duly reported by them to SEBI.
- In case there is a devolvement on the underwriters, the lead manager(s) shall ensure that the notice for devolvement containing the obligation of the underwriters is issued within ten days from the date of closure of the issue.
- In the case of undersubscribed issues that are underwritten, the lead manager(s) shall furnish information in respect of underwriters who have failed to meet their underwriting devolvement to SEBI.

Release of subscription money [Regulations 53 & 149]

- The lead manager(s) shall confirm to the bankers to the issue by way of copies of listing and trading approvals that all formalities in connection with the issue have been completed and that the banker is free to release the money to the issuer or release the money for refund in case of failure of the issue.
- In case the issuer fails to obtain listing or trading permission from the stock exchanges where the specified securities were to be listed, it shall refund through verifiable means the entire monies received within seven days of receipt of intimation from stock exchanges rejecting the application for listing of specified securities, and if any such money is not repaid within eight days after the issuer becomes liable to repay it, the issuer and every director of the company who is an officer in default shall, on and from the expiry of the eighth day, be jointly and severally liable to repay that money with interest at the rate of fifteen percent per annum.
- The lead manager(s) shall ensure that the monies received in respect of the issue are released to the issuer in compliance with the provisions of Section 40 (3) of the Companies Act, 2013, as applicable.

Reporting of transactions of the promoters and promoter group [Regulations 54 & 150]

The issuer shall ensure that all transactions in securities by the promoter and promoter group between the date of filing of the draft offer document or offer document, as the case may be, and the date of closure of the issue shall be reported to the stock exchange(s), within twenty-four hours of such transactions.

Post-issue reports [Regulations 55 & 151]

The lead manager(s) shall submit a final post-issue report, along with a due diligence certificate as, within seven days of the date of finalization of basis of allotment or within seven days of refund of money in case of failure of issue.

Restriction on Further Capital Issues [Regulation 152]

The issuer shall not make any further issue of specified securities in any manner whether by way of a public issue, rights issue, bonus issue, preferential issue, qualified institutions placement or otherwise except pursuant to an employee stock option scheme:

- In case of a fast track issue, during the period between the date of filing the offer document (in case of a book built issue) or prospectus (in case of a fixed price issue) with the Registrar of Companies and the listing of the specified securities offered through the offer document or refund of application monies; or
- in case of other issues, during the period between the date of filing the draft offer document and the listing of the specified securities offered through the offer document or refund of application monies;

unless full disclosures regarding the total number of specified securities or amount proposed to be raised from such further issue are made in such draft offer document or offer document, as the case may be.

FAST TRACK FPO [Regulation 155]

Eligibility

An Issuer Company need not file the draft offer document with SEBI and obtain observations from SEBI, if it satisfies the following conditions for making a further public offer through fast track route:

(a)	Listing	Equity shares of the issuer have been listed on any stock exchange for a period of at least three years immediately preceding the reference date
(b)	Demat form	Entire shareholding of the promoter group of the issuer is held in dematerialised form on the reference date
(c)	Market Capitalisation	Average market capitalisation of public shareholding of the issuer is at least Rs.1000 crores in case of public
(d)	Trading Turnover	Annualised trading turnover of the equity shares of the issuer during six calendar months immediately preceding the month of the reference date has been at least 2% of the weighted average number of equity shares listed during such six months' period. However, if the public shareholding is less than fifteen per cent of its issued equity capital, the annualised trading turnover of its equity shares has been at least 2% of the weighted average number of equity shares available as free float during such six months' period
(e)	Delivery based trading	Annualized delivery-based trading turnover of the equity shares during six calendar months immediately preceding the month of the reference date has been at least 10% of the annualised trading turnover of the equity shares during such six months period
(f)	Compliance with SEBI (LODR) Regulations, 2015	<p>The issuer has been in compliance with the equity listing agreement or Securities and Exchange Board of India (Listing Obligations and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2015, as applicable, for a period of at least three years immediately preceding the reference date.</p> <p>However, if the issuer has not complied with the provisions of the listing agreement or SEBI (LODR) Regulations, 2015, as applicable, relating to composition of board of directors, for any quarter during the last three years immediately preceding the reference date, but is compliant with such provisions at the time of filing of letter of offer, and adequate disclosures are made in the letter of offer about such non-compliances during the three years immediately preceding the reference date, it shall be deemed as compliance with the condition.</p> <p>Further, imposition of monetary fines by stock exchange on the issuer shall not be a ground for ineligibility for undertaking issuances under these regulations</p>
(g)	Investor Complaints	Issuer has redressed at least 95% of the complaints received from the investors till the end of the quarter immediately preceding the month of the reference date

(h)	No Show-cause notices	No show-cause notices have been issued or prosecution proceedings have been initiated by the SEBI and pending against the issuer or its promoters or whole-time directors as on the reference date;
(i)	No alleged violations	Issuer or promoter or promoter group or director of the issuer has not settled any alleged violation of securities laws through the consent or settlement mechanism with the SEBI during three years immediately preceding the reference date
(j)	Disciplinary measures	Equity shares of the issuer have not been suspended from trading as a disciplinary measure during last three years immediately preceding the reference date
(k)	Conflict of interest	There shall be no conflict of interest between the lead merchant banker(s) and the issuer or its group or associate company in accordance with applicable regulations.
(l)	Audit Qualification	Impact of audit qualifications, if any and where quantifiable, on the audited accounts of the issuer in respect of those financial years for which such accounts are disclosed in the letter of offer does not exceed 5% of the net profit or loss after tax of the issuer for the respective years.

“Average Market Capitalisation of Public Shareholding” means the sum of daily market capitalisation of public shareholding for a period of one year up to the end of the quarter preceding the month in which the proposed issue was approved by the shareholders or the board of the issuer, as the case may be, divided by the number of trading days.

Post-listing exit opportunity for dissenting shareholders [Regulation 59 & 157]

- In case of further public offers, including under the fast track route, the promoters or shareholders in control of an issuer shall provide an exit offer to dissenting shareholders as provided for in the Companies Act, 2013, in case of change in objects or variation in the terms of contract related to objects referred to in the offer document as per conditions and manner is provided in Schedule XX of SEBI ICDR Regulations, 2018;
- The exit offer shall not apply where there are neither identifiable promoters nor shareholders in control of the listed issuer.

EXIT OPPORTUNITY TO DISSENTING SHAREHOLDERS [SCHEDULE XX]

The provisions of this Chapter shall apply to an exit offer made by the promoters or shareholders in control of an issuer to the dissenting shareholders in terms of section 13(8) and section 27(2) of the Companies Act, 2013, in case of change in objects or variation in the terms of contract referred to in the offer document.

However, the provisions of this Chapter shall not apply where there are neither identifiable promoters nor shareholders in control of the listed issuer.



"Dissenting Shareholders" mean those shareholders who have voted against the resolution for change in Objects or variation in terms of a contract, referred to in the offer document of the issuer.

Conditions for Exit Offer

The promoters or shareholders in control shall make the exit offer in accordance with the provisions of this Chapter, to the dissenting shareholders, in cases only if a public issue has opened after April 1, 2014; if :

- the proposal for change in objects or variation in terms of a contract, referred to in the offer document is dissented by at least 10 % of the shareholders who voted in the general meeting; and
- the amount to be utilized for the objects for which the offer document was issued is less than 75 % of the amount raised (including the amount earmarked for general corporate purposes as disclosed in the offer document).

Eligibility of shareholders for availing the exit offer

Only those dissenting shareholders of the issuer who are holding shares as on the relevant date shall be eligible to avail the exit offer.

Exit offer price

The 'exit price' payable to the dissenting shareholders shall be the highest of the following:

- the volume-weighted average price paid or payable for acquisitions, whether by the promoters or shareholders having control or by any person acting in concert with them, during the fifty-two weeks immediately preceding the relevant date;
- the highest price paid or payable for any acquisition, whether by the promoters or shareholders having control or by any person acting in concert with them, during the twenty-six weeks immediately preceding the relevant date;
- the volume-weighted average market price of such shares for a period of sixty trading days immediately preceding the relevant date as traded on the recognised stock exchange where the maximum volume of trading in the shares of the issuer are recorded during such period, provided such shares are frequently traded;
- where the shares are not frequently traded, the price determined by the promoters or shareholders having control and the merchant banker taking into account valuation parameters including book value, comparable trading multiples, and such other parameters as are customary for valuation of shares of such issuers.

Manner of providing exit to dissenting shareholders

- The notice proposing the passing of special resolution for changing the objects of the issue and varying the terms of contract, referred to in the prospectus shall also contain information about the exit offer to the dissenting shareholders.
- In addition to the disclosures required under the provisions of section 102 of the Companies Act, 2013 read with rule 32 of the Companies (Incorporation) Rules, 2014 and rule 7 of the Companies (Prospectus and Allotment of Securities) Rules, 2014 and any other applicable law, a statement to the effect that the promoters or the shareholders having control shall provide an exit opportunity to the dissenting shareholders shall also be included in the explanatory statement to the notice for passing special resolution.
- After passing of the special resolution, the issuer shall submit the voting results to the recognised stock exchange(s), in terms of the provisions of the SEBI (LODR) Regulations, 2015.
- The issuer shall also submit the list of dissenting shareholders, as certified by its compliance officer, to the recognised stock exchange(s).
- The promoters or shareholders in control, shall appoint a merchant banker registered with SEBI and finalize the exit offer price in accordance with these regulations.
- The issuer shall intimate the recognised stock exchange(s) about the exit offer to dissenting shareholders and the price at which such offer is being given.
- The stock exchange(s) shall immediately on receipt of such intimation disseminate the same to public within one working day.
- To ensure security for performance of their obligations, the promoters or shareholders having control, as applicable, shall create an escrow account which may be interest bearing and deposit the aggregate consideration in the account at least two working days prior to opening of the tendering period.
- The tendering period shall start not later than seven working days from the passing of the special resolution and shall remain open for ten working days.

- The dissenting shareholders who have tendered their shares in acceptance of the exit offer shall have the option to withdraw such acceptance till the date of closure of the tendering period.
- The promoters or shareholders having control shall facilitate tendering of shares by the shareholders and settlement of the same through the recognised stock exchange mechanism as specified by SEBI for the purpose of takeover, buy-back and delisting.
- The promoters or shareholders having control shall, within a period of ten working days from the last date of the tendering period, make payment of consideration to the dissenting shareholders who have accepted the exit offer.
- Within a period of two working days from the payment of consideration, the issuer shall furnish to the recognised stock exchange(s), disclosures giving details of aggregate number of shares tendered, accepted, payment of consideration and the post-offer shareholding pattern of the issuer and a report by the merchant banker that the payment has been duly made to all the dissenting shareholders whose shares have been accepted in the exit offer.

Maximum permissible non-public shareholding

In the event, the shares accepted in the exit offer were such that the shareholding of the promoters or shareholders in control, taken together with persons acting in concert with them pursuant to completion of the exit offer results in their shareholding exceeding the maximum permissible non-public shareholding, the promoters or shareholders in control, as applicable, shall be required to bring down the non-public shareholding to the level specified and within the time permitted under Securities Contract (Regulation) Rules, 1957.

RIGHTS ISSUE

Definition of Right Issue



“Rights issue” means an offer of specified securities by a listed issuer to the shareholders of the issuer as on the record date fixed for the said purpose.

In general, fresh shares offered to existing shareholders in proportion to their existing holding in the share capital of the company are termed as “Rights shares” popularly known as rights issue. In the rights issue the shareholders have a right to participate in the issue. It is pre-emptive rights given by the status to existing shareholders. In this rights issue, the offer is required to be made to the existing shareholders on pro-rata to their existing holdings. The shareholders who are offered may or may not subscribe to the same. They may subscribe partly or fully the offer. They have a power to renounce the shares offered to any other person who need not be an existing shareholder of the company.

An issuer offering specified securities of aggregate value of ten crore rupees or more, through a rights issue shall satisfy the conditions of Chapter III of SEBI (ICDR) Regulations, 2018 at the time of filing the draft letter of offer with the SEBI and also at the time of filing the final letter of offer with the stock exchanges, as the case may be.

Entities not eligible to make a rights issue [Regulation 61]

An issuer shall not be eligible to make a rights issue of specified securities:

(a) if the issuer, any of its promoters, promoter group or directors of the issuer are debarred from accessing the capital market by the SEBI

(b) if any of the promoters or directors of the issuer is a promoter or director of any other company which is debarred from accessing the capital market by the SEBI

(c) if any of its promoters or directors is a fugitive economic offender

Explanation: The restrictions under (a) and (b) above will not apply to the promoters or directors of the issuer who were debarred in the past by the SEBI and the period of debarment is already over as on the date of filing of the draft letter of offer with the SEBI.

General conditions [Regulation 62]

- (1) The issuer making a rights issue of specified securities shall ensure that:
 - it has made an application to one or more stock exchanges to seek an in-principle approval for listing of its specified securities on such stock exchanges and has chosen one of them as the designated stock exchange.
 - all its existing partly paid-up equity shares have either been fully paid-up or have been forfeited;
 - it has made firm arrangements of finance through verifiable means towards 75% of the stated means of finance for the specific project proposed to be funded from issue proceeds, excluding the amount to be raised through the proposed rights issue or through existing identifiable internal accruals.
- (2) The amount for general corporate purposes, as mentioned in objects of the issue in the draft letter of offer and the letter of offer, shall not exceed 25% of the amount raised by the issuer.
- (3) Where the issuer or any of its promoters or directors is a willful defaulter, the promoters or promoter group of the issuer shall not renounce their rights except to the extent of renunciation within the promoter group.
- (4) Where the issuer has issued SR equity shares to its promoters or founders, then such a SR shareholder shall not renounce their rights and the SR shares received in a rights issue shall remain under lock-in until conversion into equity shares having voting rights same as that of ordinary equity shares along with existing SR equity shares.

PREFERENTIAL ISSUE

Definition of Preferential Issue

“Preferential issue” means an issue of specified securities by a listed issuer to any select person or group of persons on a private placement basis in accordance with Chapter V of these regulations and does not include an offer of specified securities made through employee stock option scheme, employee stock purchase scheme or an issue of sweat equity shares or depository receipts issued in a country outside India or foreign securities.

An issuer offering specified securities through preferential issue shall satisfy the conditions of Chapter V of SEBI (ICDR) Regulations, 2018.

Issuers ineligible to Make a Preferential Issue [Regulation 159]

Preferential issue of specified securities shall not be made to any person who has sold or transferred any equity shares of the issuer during the six months preceding the relevant date. However, in respect of the preferential issue of equity shares and compulsorily convertible debt instruments, whether fully or partly, the SEBI may grant relaxation from the requirements of this sub-regulation, if the SEBI has granted relaxation in terms of regulation 11(2) of the SEBI (Substantial Acquisition of Shares and Takeovers) Regulations, 2011 to such a preferential allotment.

Explanation: Where any person belonging to promoter(s) or the promoter group has sold/ transferred their equity shares in the issuer during the six months preceding the relevant date, the promoter(s) and promoter group shall be ineligible for allotment of specified securities on preferential basis.

However the above restriction shall not apply to any sale of equity shares by any person belonging to promoter(s) of the promoter group which qualifies for inter-se transfer amongst qualifying persons under regulation 10(1) (a) of the SEBI (Substantial Acquisition of Shares and Takeover Regulations), 2011 or in case of transfer of shares held by the promoters or promoter group on account of invocation of pledge by a scheduled commercial bank or public financial institution or a systemically important non-banking finance company or mutual fund or insurance company registered with the Insurance Regulatory and Development Authority.

However, where any person belonging to promoter(s) or the promoter group has previously subscribed to warrants of an issuer but has failed to exercise the warrants, the promoter(s) and promoter group shall be ineligible for issue of specified securities of such issuer on preferential basis for a period of one year from:

- the date of expiry of the tenure of the warrants due to non-exercise of the option to convert; or
- the date of cancellation of the warrants, as the case may be.
- An issuer shall not be eligible to make a preferential issue if any of its promoters or directors is a fugitive economic offender.

Conditions for preferential issue [Regulation 160]

A listed issuer making a preferential issue of specified securities shall ensure that:

- **Fully Paid-up:** All equity shares allotted by way of preferential issue shall be made fully paid up at the time of the allotment.
- **Special Resolution:** A special resolution has been passed by its shareholders.
- **Demat form:** All equity shares held by the proposed allottees in the issuer are in dematerialised form.
- **Compliance:** The issuer is in compliance with the conditions for continuous listing of equity shares as specified in the listing agreement with the stock exchange where the equity shares of the issuer are listed and SEBI (LODR) Regulations, 2015 as amended, and any circular or notification issued by the SEBI thereunder.
- **PAN:** The issuer has obtained the Permanent Account Numbers (PAN) of the proposed allottees, except those allottees which may be exempt from specifying their PAN for transacting in the securities market by the SEBI.

QUALIFIED INSTITUTIONS PLACEMENT

Definition of Qualified Institutions Placement

“Qualified institutions placement” means issue of eligible securities by a listed issuer to qualified institutional buyers on a private placement basis and includes an offer for sale of specified securities by the promoters and/ or promoter group on a private placement basis, in terms of these regulations.

The provisions relating to eligibility, conditions and other provisions for Qualified Institutions Placement have been provided in Chapter VI of SEBI(ICDR) Regulations, 2018.

Conditions for Qualified Institutions Placement [Regulation 172]

- (1) A listed issuer may make a qualified institutions placement of eligible securities if it satisfies the following conditions:
 - (a) **Special resolution:**
 - a special resolution approving the qualified institutions placement has been passed by its shareholders, and the special resolution shall, among other relevant matters, specify that the allotment is proposed to be made through qualified institutions placement and the relevant date referred to in regulation 171(b)(ii);
 - No shareholders' resolution will be required in case the qualified institutions placement is through an offer for sale by promoters or promoter group for compliance with minimum public shareholding requirements specified in the Securities Contracts (Regulation) Rules, 1957;
 - The allotment pursuant to the special resolution referred to in regulation 172(a) shall be completed within a period of 365 days from the date of passing of the resolution.

(b) Proposed allotment:

- the equity shares of the same class, which are proposed to be allotted through qualified institutions placement or pursuant to conversion or exchange of eligible securities offered through qualified institutions placement, have been listed on a stock exchange for a period of at least one year prior to the date of issuance of notice to its shareholders for convening the meeting to pass the special resolution.
- Where an issuer, being a transferee company in a scheme of compromise, arrangement and amalgamation sanctioned by a High Court under sections 391-394 of the Companies Act, 1956 or approved by a tribunal or the Central Government under sections 230 to 234 of the Companies Act, 2013, whichever is applicable makes qualified institutions placement, the period for which the equity shares of the same class of the transferor company were listed on a stock exchange having nation-wide trading terminals shall also be considered for the purpose of computation of the period of one year.
- This clause shall not be applicable to an issuer proposing to undertake qualified institutional placement for complying with the minimum public shareholding requirements specified in the Securities Contracts (Regulation), Rules 1957.

Explanation: For the purpose of clause (b), “equity shares of the same class” shall mean equity shares which rank pari-passu in relation to rights as to dividend, voting or otherwise.

- (c)** An issuer shall be eligible to make a qualified institutions placement if any of its promoters or directors is not a fugitive economic offender.

- (2) All eligible securities issued through a qualified institutions placement shall be listed on the recognised stock exchange where the equity shares of the issuer are listed. Provided that the issuer shall seek approval under rule 19(7) of the Securities Contracts (Regulation) Rules, 1957, if applicable.
- (3) The issuer shall not make any subsequent qualified institutions placement until the expiry of two weeks from the date of the prior qualified institutions placement made pursuant to one or more special resolutions.

Conditions for offer for sale by promoters for compliance with minimum public shareholding requirements specified in the Securities Contracts (Regulation) Rules, 1957. [Regulation 173]

- The promoters and members of the promoter group may make an offer for sale of fully paid-up equity shares, through a qualified institutions placement, for the purpose of achieving minimum public shareholding in terms of the Securities Contracts (Regulation) Rules, 1957.
- The promoters or members of the promoter group shall not make such offer for sale if the promoter or member of the promoter group has purchased or sold any equity shares of the issuer during twelve weeks period prior to the date of the opening of the issue and they shall not purchase or sell any equity shares of the issuer during the twelve weeks period after the date of closure of the issue.
- Such promoters or members of the promoter group may, within the twelve-week periods provided above, sell equity shares of the issuer held by them through offer for sale through stock exchange mechanism specified by the SEBI or through an open market sale, in accordance with the conditions specified by the SEBI from time to time, subject to the condition that there shall be a gap of minimum two weeks between the two successive offer(s).

INITIAL PUBLIC OFFER OF INDIAN DEPOSITORY RECEIPTS

The provisions of this Chapter shall apply to an issue of Indian Depository Receipts (hereinafter referred to as “IDR”) made in terms of the Companies Act, 2013 and Companies (Registration of Foreign Companies) Rules, 2014.

An issuer making a public issue of IDRs shall satisfy the conditions of Chapter VII of SEBI (ICDR) Regulations, 2018 as on the date of filing draft offer document with the SEBI and also as on the date of filing the offer document with the Registrar of Companies.

Eligibility conditions [Regulation 183]**Eligibility****Conditions****Issuer shall ensure that:**

- Issuing company is listed in its home country for at least three immediately preceding years;
- Issuer is not prohibited to issue securities by any regulatory body;
- Issuer has a track record of compliance with the securities market regulations in its home country;
- Any of its promoters or directors is not a fugitive economic offender.
(‘home country’ means the country where the issuer is incorporated or listed)
- issue size shall not be less than Rs.50 crore;
- at any given time, there shall be only one denomination of IDRs of the issuer;
- issuer shall ensure that the underlying equity shares against which IDRs are issued have been or will be listed in its home country before listing of IDRs in stock exchange(s);
- issuer shall ensure that the underlying shares of IDRs shall rank pari passu with the existing shares of the same class.
- it has made an application to one or more stock exchanges to seek an in-principle approval for listing of the IDRs on such stock exchanges and has chosen one of them as the designated stock exchange;
- it has entered into an agreement with a depository for dematerialisation of the IDRs proposed to be issued;
- it has made firm arrangements of finance through verifiable means towards 75% of the stated means of finance for the project proposed to be funded from issue proceeds, excluding the amount to be raised through the proposed issue of IDRs or through existing identifiable internal accruals, have been made;
- The amount for general corporate purposes, as mentioned in objects of the issue in the draft offer document and the offer document shall not exceed 25% of the amount being raised by the issuer.

RIGHTS ISSUE OF INDIAN DEPOSITORY RECEIPTS

In addition to compliance with Chapter VII Initial Public Offer of Indian Depository Receipts, wherever applicable, a listed issuer offering IDRs through a rights issue shall satisfy the conditions specified in Chapter VIII of SEBI (ICDR) Regulations, 2018 at the time of filing the offer document.

The issuer shall ensure that it has made an application to all the stock exchanges in India, where its IDRs are already listed, for listing of the IDRs to be issued by way of rights and has chosen one of them as the designated stock exchange.

Entities not eligible to make a rights issue [Regulation 213]

An issuer shall not be eligible to make a rights issue of IDRs if –



INITIAL PUBLIC OFFER BY SMALL AND MEDIUM ENTERPRISES

An issuer making an initial public offer of specified securities shall satisfy the conditions of Chapter IX of SEBI (ICDR) Regulations, 2018 as on the date of filing of the draft offer document with the SME exchange and also as on the date of filing the offer document with the Registrar of Companies.

Entities not eligible to make an initial public offer [Regulation 228]

An issuer shall not be eligible to make an initial public offer:

(a) if the issuer, any of its promoters, promoter group or directors or selling shareholders are debarred from accessing the capital market by the SEBI

(b) if any of the promoters or directors of the issuer is a promoter or director of any other company which is debarred from accessing the capital market by the SEBI

(c) if the issuer or any of its promoters or directors is a willful defaulter

(d) if any of its promoters or directors is a fugitive economic offender

Explanation: The restrictions under clauses (a) and (b) shall not apply to the persons or entities mentioned therein, who were debarred in the past by the SEBI and the period of debarment is already over as on the date of filing of the draft offer document with the SME Exchange.

Eligibility requirements for an initial public offer [Regulation 229]

If post issue paid-up capital is ≤ Rs.10 Crores - **list only on SME Board**

If post issue paid-up capital is > Rs 10 crores but up to Rs.25 crores – **Option to list either on SME Board or on Main Board**

SEBI does not issue any observation on the offer document

The lead manager(s) shall submit a **due-diligence** certificate to SEBI

IPO shall be 100% **underwritten**. The lead manager(s) shall underwrite at least 15%

Compulsory **market making** for a minimum period of 3 years from the date of listing

Minimum application size in IPO & Trading lot shall be **one lakh rupees**

May **migrate** to Main Board if SR is passed through postal ballot with majority of minority

In case of an issuer formed out of merger or a division of an existing company, the track record of the resulting issuer shall be considered only if the requirements regarding financial statements as specified above are complied with.

General conditions [Regulation 230]

- (1) An issuer making an initial public offer shall ensure that:
 - it has made an application to one or more SME exchanges for listing of its specified securities on such SME exchange(s) and has chosen one of them as the designated stock exchange
 - it has entered into an agreement with a depository for dematerialisation of its specified securities already issued and proposed to be issued;
 - all its existing partly paid-up equity shares have either been fully paid-up or forfeited;
 - all specified securities held by the promoters are in the dematerialised form;
 - it has made firm arrangements of finance through verifiable means towards 75% of the stated means of finance for the project proposed to be funded from the issue proceeds, excluding the amount to be raised through the proposed public offer or through existing identifiable internal accruals.
- (2) The amount for general corporate purposes, as mentioned in objects of the issue in the draft offer document and the offer document shall not exceed 25% of the amount being raised by the issuer.

INNOVATORS GROWTH PLATFORM

Definition of Innovators growth platform



“Innovators growth platform” means the trading platform for listing and trading of specified securities of issuers that comply with the eligibility criteria specified in regulation 283 of SEBI (ICDR), 2018

Listing on Innovators Growth Platform (IGP)

Aimed to list start ups which are intensive in the use of technology, information technology, intellectual property, data analytics, bio-technology or nano-technology to provide products, services or business platform

At least 25% of pre-issue capital is held by QIBs, Innovators Growth Platform Investors, any other class of investors as specified by SEBI for atleast a 1 year

Listing is allowed with or without IPO. SEBI will issue its observations in both the cases

The minimum offer size shall be **ten crore rupees** in case of IPO

Minimum application size shall be **two lakh rupees** and in multiples thereof

Number of allottees in the initial public offer shall at least be **fifty**

Minimum trading lot shall be **two lakh rupees** and in multiples thereof

BONUS ISSUE



Bonus issue of shares means additional shares issued by the company to its existing shareholders to reward for their loyalty and is an opportunity to enhance the shareholders wealth. The bonus shares are issued without any cost to the Company by capitalizing the available reserves.

A listed company issuing bonus shares shall comply with the requirements of Companies Act, 2013 and also Chapter XI of SEBI (ICDR) Regulations, 2018.

Conditions for a bonus issue [Regulation 293]

Subject to the provisions of the Companies Act, 2013 or any other applicable law, a listed issuer shall be eligible to issue bonus shares to its members if:

- it is authorised by its articles of association for issue of bonus shares, capitalisation of reserves, etc
- If there is no such provision in the articles of association, the issuer shall pass a resolution at its general body meeting making provisions in the articles of associations for capitalisation of reserve
- it has not defaulted in payment of interest or principal in respect of fixed deposits or debt securities issued by it
- it has not defaulted in respect of the payment of statutory dues of the employees such as contribution to provident fund, gratuity and bonus
- any outstanding partly paid shares on the date of the allotment of the bonus shares, are made fully paid-up
- any of its promoters or directors is not a fugitive economic offender

Restrictions on a bonus issue [Regulation 294]

- An issuer shall make a bonus issue of equity shares only if it has made reservation of equity shares of the same class in favour of the holders of outstanding compulsorily convertible debt instruments if any, in proportion to the convertible part thereof.
- The equity shares so reserved for the holders of fully or partly compulsorily convertible debt instruments, shall be issued to the holder of such convertible debt instruments or warrants at the time of conversion of such convertible debt instruments, optionally convertible instruments, warrants, as the case may be, on the same terms or same proportion at which the bonus shares were issued.
- A bonus issue shall be made only out of free reserves, securities premium account or capital redemption reserve account and built out of the genuine profits or securities premium collected in cash and reserves created by revaluation of fixed assets shall not be capitalised for this purpose.
- Bonus shares shall not be issued in lieu of dividends.

- If an issuer has issued SR equity shares to its promoters or founders, any bonus issue on the SR equity shares shall carry the same ratio of voting rights compared to ordinary shares and the SR equity shares issued in a bonus issue shall also be converted to equity shares having voting rights same as that of ordinary equity shares along with existing SR equity shares.

Completion of a bonus issue [Regulation 295]

- An issuer, announcing a bonus issue after approval by its board of directors and not requiring shareholders' approval for capitalisation of profits or reserves for making the bonus issue, shall implement the bonus issue within fifteen days from the date of approval of the issue by its board of directors:
- Where the issuer is required to seek shareholders' approval for capitalisation of profits or reserves for making the bonus issue, the bonus issue shall be implemented within two months from the date of the meeting of its board of directors wherein the decision to announce the bonus issue was taken subject to shareholders' approval.

Explanation: For the purpose of a bonus issue to be considered as 'implemented' the date of commencement of trading shall be considered.

- A bonus issue, once announced, shall not be withdrawn.

POWER TO RELAX STRICT ENFORCEMENT OF THE REGULATIONS

Exemption from enforcement of the regulations in special cases [Regulation 295A]

- SEBI may exempt any person or class of persons from the operation of all or any of the provisions of these regulations for a period as may be specified but not exceeding twelve months, for furthering innovation relating to testing new products, processes, services, business models, etc. in live environment of regulatory sandbox in the securities markets.
- Any exemption granted by the SEBI shall be subject to the applicant satisfying such conditions as may be specified by the Board including conditions to be complied with on a continuous basis.

Explanation — For the purposes of these regulations, "regulatory sandbox" means a live testing environment where new products, processes, services, business models, etc. may be deployed on a limited set of eligible customers for a specified period of time, for furthering innovation in the securities market, subject to such conditions as may be specified by the SEBI.

PROCEDURE FOR ISSUE OF SECURITIES

In the light of the provisions of the Companies Act and the guidelines issued by Government/SEBI under the Securities Contracts (Regulation) Rules, 1957 and the SEBI Act, 1992, the procedure for issue of securities to be followed by companies is given below. This procedure should be read along with the relevant SEBI regulations and provisions of the other Acts.

Issue of Shares to the Public

A company proposing to raise resources by a public issue should first select the type of securities i.e., shares and/or debentures to be issued by it. In case the company has applied for financial assistance to any of the financial/investment institutions, the requirement of the funds to be raised from the public is to be decided in consultation with the said institution while appraising the project of the company. The decision regarding the issue of shares to be made at par or premium should be taken. The various steps involved in public issue of shares are enumerated below:

- (1) **Compliance with the SEBI Regulations:** Before making any issue of capital, it is to be ensured that the proposed issue complies with the eligibility norms and other provisions of SEBI (Issue of Capital and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2009.

- (2) **Holding of general meeting:** A general meeting of the shareholders (annual or extraordinary) is to be convened for obtaining their consent to the proposed issue of shares if the articles so require. In case the proposed issue requires any increase in authorised share capital (Section 61, 62, 64), alteration in capital clause of the Memorandum of Association (Section 13), alteration of the Articles of Association (Section 14) etc. the approvals for the same should also be obtained at the General Meeting.
- (3) **Appointment of managers to the issue:** The Company issuing shares is to appoint one or more Merchant Bankers to act as managers to the public issue.
- (4) **Appointment of various other agencies:** The company should in consultation with the Managers to the issue, decide upon the appointment of the following other agencies:
 - (a) Registrars to the Issue;
 - (b) Collecting bankers to the Issue;
 - (c) Advisors to the Issue;
 - (d) Underwriters to the Issue;
 - (e) Brokers to the Issue;
 - (f) Printers;
 - (g) Advertising Agents,
 - (h) Self Certified Syndicate Banks, etc.
- (5) **Drafting of prospectus:** Next step is to draft a prospectus in accordance with Section 26 of the Companies Act, 2013 and an abridged prospectus as required under Section 33(1) of the Companies Act, 2013. The prospectus should contain the disclosures as required by the SEBI Regulations under Schedule VIII.
- (6) **Intimation to Stock Exchange:** A copy of the Memorandum and Articles of Association of the company is to be sent to the Stock Exchanges where the shares are to be enlisted, for approval.
- (7) **Approval of prospectus:** The draft offer document along with the application form for issue of shares should be got approved by the solicitors/legal advisors of the company to ensure that it contains all disclosures and information as required by various statutes, rules, regulations, notifications, etc. The managers to the issue should also verify and approve the draft prospectus. The financial institutions providing loan facilities generally stipulate that the prospectus should be got approved by them. The company should in such a case, forward a copy of the draft prospectus for their verification and approval as well. The approval of underwriters should also be taken if they so require.

A copy of the draft offer document is also to be filed with the SEBI for scrutiny. Merchant Bankers, acting as the Lead Manager to ensure that an offer document contain the disclosure requirements as specified by the SEBI from time to time for the issue of securities. Also, to ensure that an offer document provides a true, correct and fair view of the state of affairs of the company which are adequate for the investors to arrive at a well-informed investment decision. The Merchant Bankers are required to submit the draft of the offer document along with Due Diligence Certified to the SEBI in the form specified within six weeks before the issue is scheduled to open for subscription. Further, they are held responsible for ensuring the compliance with the SEBI Rules, Regulations, Guidelines and requirements for other laws, for the time being in force.

- (8) **Approval of board of directors to prospectus and other documents:** After getting observations of the SEBI in the draft prospectus and the application form, the board of directors of the company should approve the final draft before filing with the Registrar of Companies. The company should, therefore, hold the meeting of the board of directors to transact the following business:
 - to approve and accept consent letters received from various parties agencies to act in their respective capacities;
 - to approve and accept appointment of underwriters, brokers, bankers to the issue registrar to the issue, solicitors and advocates to the issue, etc;

- to accept the Auditors' Report for inclusion in the prospectus;
 - to approve the date of opening of subscription list as also earliest and latest dates for closing of subscription list with the authority in favour of any director for earlier closing if necessary;
 - to approve draft prospectus/draft abridged prospectus and the draft share application form;
 - to authorise filing of the prospectus signed by all the directors or their constituted attorneys with the Registrar of Companies;
 - to authorise any officer of the company to deliver the prospectus for registration with the Registrar of Companies and to carry out the corrections, if any, at the office of the Registrar of Companies;
 - to approve the format of the statutory announcement;
- (9) **Making application to Stock Exchange(s) for permission to listing:** Before filing prospectus with the Registrar of Companies the company should submit an application(s) to the Stock Exchange(s) for enlistment of securities offered to the public by the said issue [Section 40(1) of the Companies Act, 2013]. The fact that an application(s) has/have been made to the Stock Exchange(s) must be stated in the prospectus.
- (10) **Printing and distribution of prospectus and application forms:** After receipt of the intimation from Registrar of Companies regarding registration of prospectus, the company should take steps to issue the prospectus within 90 days of its registration with ROC. For the purpose, the first step is to get adequate number of prospectuses and application forms printed. The provisions of Section 33 of the Companies Act, 2013 should be kept in view in this regard which provide that no one shall issue any form of application for shares in or debenture of a company unless the form is accompanied by a memorandum containing such salient features of a prospectus as may be prescribed.
- At least 2 weeks before the announcement is made in any newspaper, journal etc. requisite number of copies of the prospectus and application forms accompanied by the abridged prospectus should be distributed to the brokers, underwriters, merchant bankers, lead managers, bankers etc. to the issue.
- (11) **Pricing**
- (12) **Promoters contribution and lock-in-period**
- (13) **Underwriting**
- (14) **Mandatory Collection Centres**
- (15) **Certificate relating to promoters' contribution:** The SEBI Regulations require that atleast one day prior to the date of opening of the issue, a certificate from the Chartered Accountant to the effect that the promoters' contribution in its entirety has been brought in advance before the public issue opens should be forwarded to it. The certificate should be accompanied by a list of names and addresses of friends, relatives and associates who have contributed to the promoters' quota, along with the amount of subscription made by each of them. The same shall be applicable if the promoter do not hold shares equivalent to minimum 20% of Post issue paid up capital.
- (16) **Coordination with the bankers to the issue:** The date of opening and closing of the subscription list should be intimated to all the collecting and controlling branches of the bank with whom the company has entered into an agreement for the collection of application forms. Further, the company should ensure that a separate bank account is opened for the purpose of collecting the proceeds of the issues as required by Section 40(3) of the Companies Act, 2013 and furnish to the controlling branches the resolution passed by the Board of directors for opening bank account.
- (17) **Minimum subscription**
- (18) **Allotment of shares:** A return of allotment in Form PAS-3 of the Companies (Prospectus and Allotment of Securities) should be filed with the Registrar of Companies within 30 days of the date of allotment along with the fees as rules, 2014 specified in the Companies (Registration Offices and Fees) Rules, 2014.

- (19) **Refund orders:** The company shall disclose the mode in which it shall made refunds to applicants in the prospectus and abridged prospectus.

ROLE OF COMPANY SECRETARY

SEBI Circular

Certification by Practising Company Secretary in case of offer/allotment of securities by companies to more than 49 and up to 200 investors. To issue a certificate regarding issuance of securities to more than 49 and up to 200 investors that the refund procedure as prescribed by the SEBI has been duly complied with [SEBI Circular No. CFD/DIL3/CIR/P/2016/53 dated May 03, 2016]

In addition to the above, the Company Secretaries also have a major role to play in ensuring compliance with SEBI (ICDR) Regulations, 2018 and other Capital market regulations including:

- The Company Secretaries have to guide the management in various regulatory and compliance activities in public issue and listing
- The Company Secretary also has a key role to play in drafting of prospectus, securities documents and approval listing or delisting of the securities.
- Co-coordinating and working closely with the Bankers, Registrars, Underwriters and relevant intermediaries.
- Operating as required under various laws including Companies Act, Regulations and Guidelines issued by SEBI and Stock Exchange needs.
- Ensuring compliance with the regulations relating to Issue of Capital and Disclosure Requirements.
- The Company Secretary shall also ensure compliance with the rules and provisions related to the internal audit, certifications and other applicable rules.

LESSON ROUND-UP

- Public Issue of shares means the selling or marketing of shares for subscription by the public by issue of prospectus.
- All listed companies whose equity shares are listed on a stock exchange and unlisted companies eligible to make a public issue and desirous of getting its securities listed on a recognised stock exchange pursuant to a public issue, may freely price its equity shares or any securities convertible at a later date into equity shares.
- Issue of Securities are regulated by the SEBI (ICDR) Regulations, 2018.
- The SEBI (ICDR) Regulations, 2018 lays down the provisions and procedure for various types of issue, including public and rights issue.
- In case of an IPO, the promoters of the issue shall hold at least 20% of the post issue capital.
- The SR shares shall be issued only to the promoters/ founders who hold an executive position in the issuer company;
- The promoters' holding in excess of minimum promoters' contribution shall be locked in for a period of one year from the date of allotment in the IPO.

- A merchant banker holding a valid certificate of registration is required to be appointed to manage the issue.
- Every company making a public issue is required to appoint a compliance officer and intimate the name of the compliance officer to SEBI.
- Public issue must be kept open for atleast 3 working days but not more than 10 working days including the days for which the issue is kept open in case of revision in price band.
- Rights issue means an offer of specified securities by a listed issuer to the shareholders of the issuer as on the record date fixed for the said purpose.
- Qualified institutions placement means issue of eligible securities by a listed issuer to qualified institutional buyers on a private placement basis and includes an offer for sale of specified securities by the promoters and/or promoter group on a private placement basis, in terms of these regulations.
- Innovators growth platform means the trading platform for listing and trading of specified securities of issuers that comply with the eligibility criteria specified in regulation 283 of SEBI (ICDR), 2018.
- Bonus issue of shares means additional shares issued by the Company to its existing shareholders to reward for their royalty and is an opportunity to enhance the shareholders wealth. The bonus shares are issued without any cost to the Company by capitalizing the available reserves.

GLOSSARY

Average market

It means the sum of daily market capitalization of “public shareholding” for a period of capitalisation of one year up to the end of the quarter preceding the month in which the proposed public shareholding issue was approved by the Board of Directors/ shareholders, as the case may be, divided by the number of trading days.

Basis of allotment

An allotment pattern of an issue among different categories of applicant.

General Corporate Purpose

It includes such identified purposes for which no specific amount is allocated or any amount so specified towards General Corporate Purpose or any such purpose by whatever name called, in the draft offer document filed with SEBI.

Offer for sale

An offer of securities by existing shareholder(s) of a company to the public of subscription through an offer document.

Price Band

The range within which the price of a security or the index of a currency is permitted to move within a given period.

TEST YOURSELF

1. Discuss briefly provisions relating to reservation on competitive basis under the SEBI (ICDR) Regulations, 2018.
2. What is the eligibility requirement for making an initial public offer by an issuer?
3. A company cannot offer its shares at different sets of people in a particular public issue. Comment
4. Briefly enumerate the various conditions required to be fulfilled by an issuer to issue warrant in an initial public offer.
5. What do you mean by SR equity shares?
6. P Ltd. is planning to issue an IPO in 2019 for which a draft offer document is proposed to be filed in September, 2019. The following data is available regarding the company :

(in crore)

	2015-16	2016-17	2017-18
Net Tangible Assets	5.00	8.00	7.00
Monetary Assets	1.00	3.00	3.00
Net Worth	3.00	4.00	5.00

- (i) Advice the company whether they can proceed with the IPO.
 - (ii) Will your answer be different if value of monetary assets is Rs. 4 crore in 2016-17 ?
 - (iii) How will you deal with the situation, if company has monetary assets of Rs. 5 crore in the year 2017-18 ?
7. Write short notes on –
 - (a) Minimum subscription
 - (b) Minimum promoters' contribution and lock-in-period
 - (c) Offer Document
 - (d) Red-herring Prospectus
 - (e) Regulatory sandbox

LIST OF FURTHER READINGS

- SEBI Manual
- Premier on Companies Act, 2013
- Regulations/Rules/Guidelines/Circulars issued by SEBI, RBI, MCA etc. from time to time
- SEBI Annual Reports
- SEBI Monthly Bulletin

OTHER REFERENCES (Including Websites/Video Links)

www.mca.gov.in
www.sebi.gov.in
www.icsi.edu
www.nseindia.com
www.bseindia.com
www.nsdl.co.in
www.cdslindia.com

This image shows a single page from a notebook or ledger. It features a series of evenly spaced, thin grey horizontal lines running across the width of the page. The background is plain white, and there are no margins, text, or other markings present.

An Overview of SEBI (Listing Obligations and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2015

Lesson 5

Key Concepts One Should Know

- Disclosures
- Designated securities
- Specified securities
- Listing agreement
- Key Managerial Personnel
- Listed Entity
- Net Worth
- Related Party
- Small and Medium Enterprises
- Subsidiary Company

Learning Objectives

To understand:

- Key provisions of the SEBI (LODR) Regulations, 2015
- Various time and event based compliances
- Various disclosure requirements prescribed therein
- Regulatory prescriptions on Corporate Governance provisions
- Conceptual Understanding on various committees of the Board
- Conceptual Understanding on various policies of a listed company

Regulatory Framework

- SEBI (Listing Obligations and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2015

Lesson Outline

- Introduction
- Regulatory Framework of SEBI (Listing Obligations and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2015
- Key Definitions
- Applicability
- Obligations of Listed Entities
- Compliances under SEBI (LODR) Regulations, 2015
- Corporate Governance under SEBI (LODR) Regulations, 2015
- Prior Intimations
- Disclosure of Events or Information
- Meeting of shareholders and voting
- Compliances under SEBI (LODR) Regulations, 2015 for the Listed Entity which has listed its Non-Convertible Debt Securities or Non-Convertible Redeemable Preference Shares or Both
- Policies covered under SEBI (LODR) Regulations, 2015
- Liability of a Listed Entity for Contravention
- Role of Company Secretary
- LESSON ROUND-UP
- GLOSSARY
- TEST YOURSELF
- LIST OF FURTHER READINGS
- OTHER REFERENCES

INTRODUCTION

Section 21 of the Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, 1956 (“SCRA”) provides that where the securities are listed on the application of any person in any recognised stock exchange, such person shall comply with the conditions of the listing agreement with that stock exchange. Pursuant to insertion of these provisions in the SCRA in 1956, the Listing Agreement, although a contract, was made a statutory requirement, thereby making it mandatory for every listed entity in India to comply with the Listing Agreement.

In India, the Securities and Exchange Board of India (SEBI) regulates listed companies through the medium of listing agreement entered into between each listed company with the concerned stock exchange. Compliance with the listing conditions is mandatory by virtue of the governing law. SEBI has modified the provisions relating to Listing Agreement that the companies need to enter into with the stock exchanges while listing securities and replaced the Listing agreement with the new the SEBI (Listing Obligations and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2015 (‘Listing Regulations’).

Listing of securities with stock exchange is a matter of great importance for companies and investors, because this provides the liquidity to the securities in the market. Any company intending to offer its shares to the public for subscription is required to be listed on the stock exchange and has to comply with SEBI (Listing Obligation and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2015 (SEBI (LODR) Regulations). A company seeking listing of securities on the Stock Exchange is required to enter into a formal listing agreement with the Stock Exchange.

Accordingly, the listed entity, before issuing securities, shall obtain an ‘in-principle’ approval from recognised stock exchange(s) in the following manner:

- (a) where the securities are listed only on recognised stock exchange(s) having nationwide trading terminals, from all such stock exchange(s);
- (b) where the securities are not listed on any recognised stock exchange having nationwide trading terminals, from all the stock exchange(s) in which the securities of the issuer are proposed to be listed;
- (c) where the securities are listed on recognised stock exchange(s) having nationwide trading terminals as well as on the recognised stock exchange(s) not having nationwide trading terminals, from all recognised stock exchange(s) having nationwide trading terminals.

The requirement of obtaining in-principle approval from recognised stock exchange(s), shall not be applicable for securities issued pursuant to the scheme of arrangement for which the listed entity has already obtained No-Objection Letter from recognised stock exchange(s) in accordance with regulation 37 of these SEBI (LODR) Regulations.

SEBI has prescribed and also specified all the quantitative and qualitative requirements to be continuously complied with by the issuer for continued listing. The Stock Exchanges monitor the compliances by listed companies and can order suspension of the trading of such company’s shares in case of any non-compliance.

SEBI (LISTING OBLIGATIONS AND DISCLOSURE REQUIREMENTS) REGULATIONS, 2015

SEBI notified SEBI (Listing Obligations and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2015 (‘Listing Regulations’/ SEBI (LODR)”) on September 2, 2015, which were effective from December 1, 2015 with two objectives, firstly, to align clauses of the listing agreement with Companies Act, 2013 and secondly, to consolidate the conditions under different securities listing agreements in one single regulation.

REGULATORY FRAMEWORK

S. No.	Chapter and Schedule No. under LODR Regulations, 2015	Particulars
1.	Chapter I	Preliminary (Definitions)
2.	Chapter II	Principles Governing Disclosures and Obligations of Listed Entity

3.	Chapter III	Common Obligations of Listed Entities
4.	Chapter IV	Obligations of Listed Entity which has Listed its Specified Securities
5.	Chapter V	Obligations of Listed Entity which has Listed its Non-Convertible Debt Securities or Non-Convertible Redeemable Preference Shares or Both
6.	Chapter VI	Obligations of Listed Entity which has Listed Its Specified Securities and either Non-Convertible Debt Securities or Non-Convertible Redeemable Preference Shares or Both
7.	Chapter VII	Obligations of Listed Entity which has Listed its Indian Depository Receipts
8.	Chapter VIII	Obligations of Listed Entity which has Listed its Securitised Debt Instruments
9.	Chapter VIII A	Obligations of Listed Entity which has Listed its Security Receipts
10.	Chapter IX	Obligations of Listed Entity which has Listed its Mutual Fund Units
11.	Chapter X	Duties and Obligations of the Recognised Stock Exchange(s)
12.	Chapter XI	Procedure for Action in Case of Default
13.	Chapter XIA	Power to relax strict enforcement of the regulations
14.	Chapter XII	Miscellaneous
15.	Schedule I	Terms of Securities
16.	Schedule II	Corporate Governance Part A - Minimum Information to be Placed Before Board of Directors Part B – Compliance Certificate Part C - Role of the Audit Committee and Review of Information by Audit Committee Part D - Role of Committees (other than Audit Committee) Part E – Discretionary Requirements
17.	Schedule III	Part A - Disclosures of Events or Information: Specified Securities Part B - Disclosure of Information having Bearing on Performance/Operation of Listed Entity and/or Price Sensitive Information: Non-Convertible Debt Securities & Non-Convertible Redeemable Preference Shares Part C - Disclosures of Material Events or Information: Indian Depository Receipts Part D - Disclosure of Information having Bearing on Performance/ Operation of Listed Entity and/or Price Sensitive Information: Securitised Debt Instrument Part E - Disclosure of Events or Information to Stock Exchanges: Security Receipts
18.	Schedule IV	Part A: Disclosures in Financial Results Part B: Preparation and Disclosures in Financial Results of Listed Entity which has Listed its Indian Depository Receipts
19.	Schedule V	Annual Report
20.	Schedule VI	Manner of Dealing With Unclaimed Shares
21.	Schedule VII	Transfer of Securities
22.	Schedule IX	Amendments to other Regulations
23.	Schedule X	List of SEBI Circulars which stand Rescinded
24.	Schedule XI	Fee in respect of draft Scheme of Arrangement

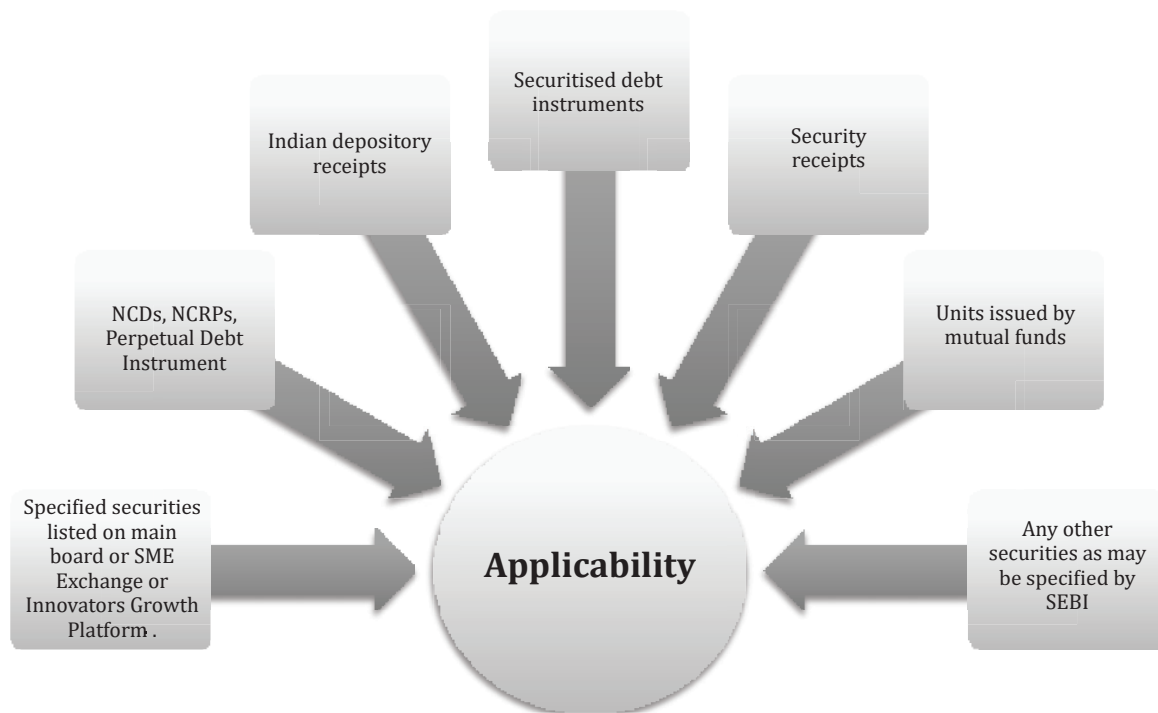
KEY DEFINITIONS

- **“Listed entity”** means an entity which has listed, on a recognised stock exchange(s), the designated securities issued by it or designated securities issued under schemes managed by it, in accordance with the listing agreement entered into between the entity and the recognised stock exchange(s).
- **“Designated securities”** means specified securities, non-convertible debt securities, non-convertible redeemable preference shares, perpetual debt instrument, perpetual non-cumulative preference shares, Indian depository receipts, securitised debt instruments, security receipts, units issued by mutual funds and any other securities as may be specified by the SEBI.
- **“Specified securities”** means ‘equity shares’ and ‘convertible securities’ as defined under clause (eee) of sub- regulation (1) of regulation 2 of the Securities and Exchange Board of India (Issue of Capital and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2018.
- **“Listing agreement”** means an agreement that is entered into between a recognised stock exchange and an entity, on the application of that entity to the recognised stock exchange, undertaking to comply with conditions for listing of designated securities.
- **“Independent Director”** means a non-executive director, other than a nominee director of the listed entity:
 - (i) who, in the opinion of the board of directors, is a person of integrity and possesses relevant expertise and experience;
 - (ii) who is or was not a promoter of the listed entity or its holding, subsidiary or associate company or member of the promoter group of the listed entity;
 - (iii) who is not related to promoters or directors in the listed entity, its holding, subsidiary or associate company;
 - (iv) who, apart from receiving director’s remuneration, has or had no material pecuniary relationship with the listed entity, its holding, subsidiary or associate company, or their promoters, or directors, during the two immediately preceding financial years or during the current financial year;
 - (v) none of whose relatives has or had pecuniary relationship or transaction with the listed entity, its holding, subsidiary or associate company, or their promoters, or directors, amounting to two per cent. or more of its gross turnover or total income or fifty lakh rupees or such higher amount as may be prescribed from time to time, whichever is lower, during the two immediately preceding financial years or during the current financial year;
 - (vi) who, neither himself, nor whose relative(s) —
 - (A) holds or has held the position of a key managerial personnel or is or has been an employee of the listed entity or its holding, subsidiary or associate company in any of the three financial years immediately preceding the financial year in which he is proposed to be appointed;
 - (B) is or has been an employee or proprietor or a partner, in any of the three financial years immediately preceding the financial year in which he is proposed to be appointed, of —
 - 1. a firm of auditors or company secretaries in practice or cost auditors of the listed entity or its holding, subsidiary or associate company; or
 - 2. any legal or a consulting firm that has or had any transaction with the listed entity, its holding, subsidiary or associate company amounting to ten per cent or more of the gross turnover of such firm;
 - (C) holds together with his relatives two per cent or more of the total voting power of the listed entity; or
 - (D) is a chief executive or director, by whatever name called, of any non-profit organisation that receives twenty-five per cent or more of its receipts or corpus from the listed entity, any of its promoters, directors or its holding, subsidiary or associate company or that holds two per cent or more of the total voting power of the listed entity;

- (E) is a material supplier, service provider or customer or a lessor or lessee of the listed entity;
- (vii) who is not less than 21 years of age
- (viii) who is not a non-independent director of another company on the board of which any non-independent director of the listed entity is an independent director

APPLICABILITY

These regulations shall apply to a listed entity which has listed any of the following designated securities on recognised stock exchange(s):



The provisions of these regulations which become applicable to listed entities on the basis of market capitalisation criteria shall continue to apply to such entities even if they fall below such thresholds.

OBLIGATIONS OF LISTED ENTITIES

The obligations of listed entities have been classified under following categories -

Common obligations (Applicable for all listed entities)

Obligations of Listed entity which has listed its Specified Securities

Obligations of Listed entity which has listed its Non- Convertible Debt Securities or Non-Convertible Redeemable Preference Shares or both

Obligations of Listed entity which has listed its Specified Securities and either Non-Convertible Debt Securities or Non-Convertible Redeemable Preference Shares or both

Obligations of Listed entity which has listed its Indian depository receipts.

Obligations of Listed entity which has listed its securitised debt instruments,

Obligations of Listed entity which has listed its Security Receipts.

Obligations of Listed entity which has listed its units issued by mutual funds.

COMMON OBLIGATIONS OF LISTED ENTITIES

The listed entity shall ensure that key managerial personnel, directors, promoters or any other person dealing with the listed entity, complies with responsibilities or obligations, if any, assigned to them under these regulations.

General obligations applicable to all listed companies

Following are the key obligations applicable to all listed companies:

- **Compliance officer and his/her obligations:** A listed company shall appoint a qualified Company Secretary as the Compliance officer who shall be responsible for:
 - » ensuring conformity with the regulatory provisions applicable to the listed entity in letter and spirit
 - » Co-ordination and reporting to Board, recognised stock exchange(s) and depositories
 - » Ensuring correct procedures are followed and reports are filed
 - » Monitoring email address of grievance redressal division
- **Share-transfer agent:** The listed entity shall appoint a share transfer agent or manage the share transfer facility in house
- **Co-operation with intermediaries registered with the SEBI:** Wherever applicable the listed entity shall co-operate with and submit correct and adequate information to the intermediaries registered with the SEBI such as credit rating agencies, registrar to an issue and share transfer agent etc.
- **Preservation of documents:** The listed entity shall have a policy for preservation of documents, approved by its board of directors, classifying them in at least two categories as follows-

- » documents whose preservation shall be permanent in nature
- » documents with preservation period of not less than eight years after completion of the relevant transactions

However, the listed entity may keep documents in electronic mode.

- **Filing of information:** The listed entity shall file the reports, statements, documents, filings and any other information with the recognised stock exchange(s) on the electronic platform as specified by the SEBI or the recognised stock exchange(s).
- **Scheme of Arrangement:** The listed entity shall ensure that any scheme of arrangement /amalgamation/ merger /reconstruction /reduction of capital etc. to be presented to any Court or Tribunal does not in any way violate, override or limit the provisions of securities laws or requirements of the stock exchange(s).
- **Payment of dividend or interest or redemption or repayment:** The listed entity shall use any of the electronic mode of payment facility approved by the Reserve Bank of India, in the manner specified in Schedule I, for the payment of dividends, interest, redemption or repayment amounts.
- **Grievance Redressal Mechanism:** The listed entity shall ensure that adequate steps are taken for expeditious redressal of investor complaints. The listed entity shall ensure that it is registered on the SCORES platform or such other electronic platform or system of the SEBI as shall be mandated from time to time.
- **Fees and other charges to be paid to the recognized stock exchange(s):** The listed entity shall pay all such fees or charges, as applicable, to the recognised stock exchange(s), in the manner specified by the SEBI or the recognised stock exchange(s).

COMPLIANCES UNDER SEBI (LODR) REGULATIONS

The Listed entity shall comply with the following compliances under the SEBI (LODR) Regulations:-

- One Time Compliances
- Quarterly Compliances
- Half yearly Compliances
- Yearly Compliances
- Event based Compliances

One-time Compliances

The following are the one time compliances:-

Regulation	Particulars
6(1)	A listed entity shall appoint a Company Secretary as the Compliance Officer
7(1)	The listed entity shall appoint a share transfer agent or manage the share transfer facility in house. However, in the case of in-house share transfer facility, as and when the total number of holders of securities of the listed entity exceeds one lakh, the listed entity shall either register with the SEBI as a Category II share transfer agent or appoint Registrar to an issue and share transfer agent registered with the SEBI
9	The listed entity shall have a policy for preservation of documents, approved by its Board of Directors

Quarterly Compliances

Regulation	Title	Particulars	Time Limit
13(3)	Investor complaints Statement	The listed entity shall file with the recognised stock exchange, a statement giving the number of investor complaints pending at the beginning of the quarter; those received during the quarter; disposed of during the quarter and those remaining unresolved at the end of the quarter	within 21 days from end of quarter
27(2)	Quarterly Compliance report	The listed entity shall submit a quarterly compliance report on corporate governance in the format as specified by SEBI from time to time to the recognized stock exchange(s)	within 21 days from the end of each quarter
31(1)(b)	Shareholding pattern	The listed entity shall submit to the stock exchange(s) a statement showing holding of securities and shareholding pattern separately for each class of securities, in the format specified by SEBI from time to time	within 21 days from the end of each quarter
32(1)	Statement of deviation(s) or Variation(s)	The listed entity shall submit to the stock exchange a statement of deviation or variation (for public issue, rights issue, preferential issue etc.)	Quarterly Basis till such time the issue proceeds have been fully utilized or the purpose for which these proceeds were raised has been achieved.
32(6)	Monitoring Agency Report	Where the listed entity has appointed a monitoring agency to monitor utilisation of proceeds of a public or rights issue, the listed entity shall submit to the stock exchange(s) any comments or report received from the monitoring agency	within 45 days from the end of each quarter
33(3)	Financial results	The listed entity shall submit quarterly and year-to-date standalone financial results to the stock exchange. In case the listed entity has subsidiaries, the listed entity shall also submit quarterly/ year- to date consolidated financial results	within 45 days of end of each quarter, other than the last quarter
47	Advertisements in Newspapers	Financial results, along-with the modified opinion(s) or reservation(s), if any, expressed by the auditor	Within 48 hours of conclusion of the meeting of board of directors at which the financial results were approved

Half Yearly Compliances

Regulation	Title	Particular	Time Limit
23(9)	Related Party disclosures	The listed entity shall submit to the stock exchange, disclosures of related party on consolidated basis	within 30 days from the date of publication of its standalone and consolidated financial results for the half year
33(3)	Statement of Assets and Liabilities/ Cashflow	The listed entity shall also submit as part of its standalone or consolidated financial results for the half year a statement of assets and liabilities and a statement of cash flows by way of a note	half-yearly basis

Yearly Compliances

Regulation	Title	Particulars	Time Limit
7(3)	Compliance Certificate	The listed entity shall submit a compliance certificate to the exchange, duly signed by both the compliance officer of the listed entity and the authorised representative of the share transfer agent certifying that all activities in relation to share transfer facility of the listed entity are maintained either in house or by Registrar to an issue and share transfer agent registered with the SEBI	Within 30 from the end of the financial year
14	Annual Listing Fees	The listed entity shall pay all such fees or charges, as applicable, to the recognised stock exchange(s), in the manner specified by SEBI or the recognised Stock Exchange (s)	within 30 days of the end of financial year
33(3)	Annual Financial results	The listed entity shall submit annual audited standalone financial results with audit report and Statement on Impact of Audit Qualifications applicable only for audit report with modified opinion, to the stock exchange	within 60 days from the end of the financial year
34	Annual Report	The listed entity shall submit the annual report along with the Notice of the Annual General Meeting to the stock exchange.	Not later than the day of commencement of dispatch to its shareholders.
34(1)(b)	Changes to annual report	In case any changes to the annual report, the revised copy along with the details of and explanation for the changes shall be sent	within 48 hours after the annual general meeting
36	Annual reports to securities holders	The listed entity shall send annual report to the holders of securities	Not less than 21 days before the annual general meeting. (in soft or hard copy)

40(9)	Certificate	The listed entity shall ensure that the share transfer agent and/or the in-house share transfer facility, as the case may be, produces a certificate from a practising company secretary certifying that all certificates have been issued within thirty days of the date of lodgment for transfer, subdivision, consolidation, renewal, exchange or endorsement of calls/ allotment monies	within 30 days from the end of the financial year
-------	-------------	---	---

Event Based Compliances

Regulation	Title	Particulars	Time Limit
7(5)	Share-transfer agent	The listed entity shall intimate the appointment of Share Transfer Agent, to the stock exchange(s)	Within 7 days of Agreement with RTA
28(1)	In-principle approval	The listed entity shall obtain In-principle approval from recognised stock exchange	Prior to issuance of Security
29(1)(a) read along with proviso to 29 (2)	Intimations	The listed entity shall give prior intimations of Board Meeting for financial result viz. quarterly, half yearly or annual, to the stock exchange(s)	At least 5 days in advance (excluding the date of the intimation and the date of the meeting)
29(1) (b), (c), (d), (e) & (f) read along with 29 (2)	Intimations	The listed entity shall give prior intimations of Board Meeting for Buyback, Voluntary delisting, Fund raising by way of FPO, Rights Issue, ADR, GDR, QIP, FCCB, Preferential issue, debt issue or any other method, declaration/ recommendation of dividend, issue of convertible securities including convertible debentures or of debentures carrying a right to subscribe to equity shares or the passing over of dividend, proposal for declaration of Bonus securities etc., to the stock exchange(s)	At least 2 working days in advance (excluding the date of the intimation and date of the meeting)
29(3)	Intimations	The listed entity shall give prior intimations of Board Meeting for alteration in nature of Securities, alteration in the date on which interest on debentures/ bonds/redemption amount, etc. shall be payable to the stock exchange(s)	At least 11 working days in Advance
30(6)	Disclosure of events	The listed entity shall disclose all events, as specified in Part A of Schedule III of SEBI (LODR) Regulations, to the stock exchange(s)	Not later than 24 hours from the occurrence of the event or information
31(1)(a)	Holding of Specified securities	The listed entity shall submit to the stock exchange(s) a statement showing holding of securities and shareholding pattern separately for each class of securities prior to listing of securities	One day prior to listing of Securities

31(1)(c)	Shareholding pattern	The listed entity shall submit to the stock exchange(s) a statement showing holding of securities and shareholding pattern separately for each class of securities in case of Capital Restructuring	Within 10 days of any capital restructuring exceeding 2% of the total paid-up share capital
31A (8)	Disclosure of material events in case for reclassification of any person as promoter/public	The listed entity shall disclose to the stock exchange the deemed material events i.e., receipt of request for re-classification by the listed entity from the promoter(s) seeking re-classification, Minutes of the board meeting considering such request which would include the views of the board on the request, etc	within 24 hours from the occurrence of the event
37(1)	Scheme of arrangement	The listed entity shall file draft Scheme of Arrangement to the stock exchange(s)	Prior approval before filing with Court or Tribunal
39(2)	Issue of Certificate	The listed entity shall issue certificates or receipts or advices, as applicable, of subdivision, split, consolidation, renewal, exchanges, endorsements, issuance of duplicates thereof or issuance of new certificates or receipts or advices, as applicable, in cases of loss or old decrepit or worn out certificates or receipts or advices, as applicable	within 30 days from the date of such lodgment
39(3)	Information relating loss of securities	The listed entity shall submit information with respect to loss of share certificates and issue of the duplicate certificates to the stock exchange	Within 2 days of getting information
40(3)	Registering the transfer of securities	The listed entity shall register transfers of its securities in the name of the transferee(s) and issue certificates or receipts or advices, as applicable, of transfers; or issue any valid objection or intimation to the transferee or transferor, as the case may be,	within 15 days from the date of such receipt of request for transfer.
	Transmission request	The listed entity shall proceed the transmission request for securities held in dematerialization mode and physical mode	In case securities held in Dematerialised Mode, within 7 days after receipt of the documents In case of Physical Mode, within 21 days after receipt of the documents

42(2)	Record Date / Book Closure	<p>The listed entity shall intimate the record date or date of closure of transfer books to all the stock exchange(s) specifying the purpose of the record date where it is listed or where stock derivatives are available on the stock of the listed entity or where listed entity's stock form part of an index on which derivatives are available. The listed entity shall intimate the following events:</p> <p>(a) declaration of dividend</p> <p>(b) issue of right or bonus shares</p> <p>(c) issue of shares for conversion of debentures or any other convertible security</p> <p>(d) shares arising out of rights attached to debentures or any other convertible security</p> <p>(e) corporate actions like mergers, de-mergers, splits, etc</p> <p>(f) such other purposes as may be specified by the stock exchange(s)</p> <p>* For securities held in physical form the listed entity may announce transfer book closure</p>	<p>In case of Right Issue, at least 3 working days in advance (excluding the date of intimation and record date)</p> <p>Other than Right Issue, at least 7 working days in advance (excluding the date of intimation and record date)</p>
43A	Dividend distribution policy	Dividend Distribution Policy by the top 1000 listed entities based on market capitalization (calculated as on March 31 of every financial year)	To formulate a dividend distribution policy which shall be disclosed on the website of the listed entity and a web-link shall also be provided in their annual reports.
44(3)	Voting results	The listed entity shall submit to the stock exchange details regarding voting results in the format specified by SEBI	Within 2 working days of conclusion of its General Meeting
46	Maintenance of website	The listed entity shall maintain a functional website containing the basic information about the listed entity and update any change in the content of its website.	within 2 working days from the date of change in content

Note: as per Regulation 36(4), the information and documents made by the listed entity-

- (a) to the stock exchanges shall be in XBRL; and
- (b) to the stock exchanges and on its website, shall be in a format that allows users to find relevant information easily through a searching tool.

CORPORATE GOVERNANCE UNDER SEBI (LODR) REGULATIONS, 2015

The listed entities which has listed its specified securities on any recognised stock exchange(s) either on the main board or on SME Exchange or on Innovators Growth Platform has to comply with certain corporate governance provisions which are specified in Regulations 17 to 27 and clause (b) to (i) and t of regulation 46(2) and para C, D and E of Schedule V of the SEBI (LODR) Regulations.

Sl. No.	Particulars	Listing Regulation
1.	Definitions	16
2.	Board Composition	17(1)
3.	Size of the Board	17(1)(a)
4.	Appointment of Woman Director	17(1)(a)
5.	Minimum number of directors requirement for top 1000 and top 2000 listed entities.	17(1)(c)
6.	Where the listed company has outstanding SR equity shares.	17(1)(d)
7.	Maximum age of non-executive directors	17 (1A)
8.	Number of meetings of the board of directors.	17(2)
9.	Quorum for meeting of the board of directors of top 1000 and top 2000 listed entities.	17(2A)
10.	Maximum number of directorships	17A
11.	Succession planning	17(4)
12.	Code of Conduct of Board of Directors & Senior Management	17(5)
13.	Prohibited Stock options for Independent Directors (IDs)	17(6)(d)
14.	Performance evaluation of IDs	17 (10)
15.	Maximum number of directorships	17A
16.	Constitution of Audit Committee	18
17.	Constitution of Nomination & Remuneration Committee	19
18.	Constitution of Stakeholders Relationship Committee	20
19.	Constitution of Risk management Committee	21
20.	Formulation of Vigil mechanism	22
21.	Related party transactions	23
22.	Corporate governance requirements with respect to subsidiary of listed entity.	24
23.	Secretarial Audit and Secretarial Compliance Report	24A
24.	Obligations with respect to Independent Directors	25
25.	Obligations with respect to employees including senior management, key managerial persons, directors and promoters.	26
26.	Other Corporate Governance Requirements	27
27.	Submission of Corporate Governance Report to Stock Exchange	27(2) (a)
28.	Dissemination under a separate section on the website of the company	46(2)
29.	Corporate Governance Report to be part of the Annual Report	Para C of Schedule V
30.	Declaration signed by the chief executive officer stating that the members of board of directors and senior management personnel have affirmed compliance with the code of conduct of board of directors and senior management.	Para D of Schedule V
31.	Compliance certificate from either the auditors or practicing company secretaries regarding compliance of conditions of corporate governance shall be annexed with the directors' report.	Para E of Schedule V

Exceptions for Listed Entity which has listed its Specified Securities

As per Regulation 15(2) of the SEBI (LODR) Regulations, 2015 the compliance with the corporate governance provisions as specified in Regulations 17 to 27 and clauses (b) to (i) and t of Regulation 46(2) and para C, D and E of Schedule V shall not apply, in respect of following -

1. A listed entity having:-

- paid up equity share capital not exceeding rupees 10 crore and
- net worth not exceeding rupees 25 crore, as on the last day of the previous financial year.

Provided that-

Where the provisions of regulations 17 to 27, clauses (b) to (i) and (t) of sub-regulation (2) of regulation 46 and para C, D and E of Schedule V become applicable to a listed entity at a later date, it shall ensure compliance with the same within six months from such date.

Further, once the above regulations become applicable to a listed entity, they shall continue to remain applicable till such time the equity share capital or the networth of such entity reduces and remains below the specified threshold for a period of three consecutive financial years.

Question: A Company ABC Limited, which has its Equity Shares listed on stock exchanges, has a paid up capital of Rs. 9 Crore and net worth of Rs. 26 Crore.

Answer: In such a case, the exemption will not be available to ABC Limited as it is required to comply with both conditions as stated in para 1 above.

2. A listed entity which has listed its specified securities on the SME Exchange.

3. The provisions as specified in regulation 17 shall not be applicable during the insolvency resolution process period in respect of a listed entity which is undergoing corporate insolvency resolution process under the Insolvency Code: However, the role and responsibilities of the board of directors as specified under regulation 17 shall be fulfilled by the interim resolution professional or resolution professional in accordance with sections 17 and 23 of the Insolvency Code.

4. Regulations 18, 19, 20 and 21 shall not be applicable during the insolvency resolution process period in respect of a listed entity which is undergoing corporate insolvency resolution process under the Insolvency Code.

However, the roles and responsibilities of the committees specified in the respective regulations shall be fulfilled by the interim resolution professional or resolution professional.

5. Notwithstanding any provisions under Regulation 15(2) stated above, the provisions of Companies Act, 2013 shall continue to apply, wherever applicable.

KEY PROVISIONS PERTAINING TO CORPORATE GOVERNANCE

Composition of Board of Directors

Board of Directors shall have optimum combination of executive and non-executive directors with at least one-woman director and not less than fifty per cent. of the board of directors shall comprise of non-executive directors.

However, the Board of directors of the top 500 listed entities shall have at least one independent woman director by April 1, 2019 and the Board of directors of the top 1000 listed entities shall have at least one independent woman director by April 1, 2020.

Question:

ABC Limited is a listed entity and having on Board one-woman Director as Executive Director. The Company is within the top 1000 listed entities. Whether the Company still requires to appoint another woman Director?

Answer:

In the given case, the Company will be required to appoint one Independent woman Director as the Company is having Executive woman Director and not independent.

The Composition of board of directors of the listed entity shall be as follows:

Chairman	Composition
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> In case chairperson is a non-executive director <p>Further in case-</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> non-executive chairperson is a promoter of the listed entity or is related to any promoter or person occupying management positions at the level of board of director or at one level below the board of directors 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> at least one-third of the board of directors shall comprise of independent directors at least half of the board of directors shall be independent directors
In case listed entity does not have a regular non-executive chairperson	at least half of the board of directors shall comprise of independent directors

Where the listed company has outstanding SR equity shares, atleast half of the board of directors shall comprise of independent directors.

Question:

Mr. A is non-executive director of ABC Limited. X, Y and Z are promoters of ABC Limited. Mr. A is a chairperson of the Company and he is also related to X. Suggest the requirement of Independent directors for ABC Limited.

Answer:

In the given case, since Mr. A is non-executive chairperson and is related to promoter, then ABC Limited will be required to appoint atleast half of the directors as independent director.

With effect from April 1, 2022, the top 500 listed entities shall ensure that the Chairperson of the board of such listed entity shall –

- be a non-executive director;
- not be related to the Managing Director or the Chief Executive Officer as per the definition of the term “relative” defined under the Companies Act, 2013.

However, the above shall not be applicable to the listed entities which do not have any identifiable promoters as per the shareholding pattern filed with stock exchanges.

Maximum age of non-executive directors

No listed entity shall appoint a person or continue the directorship of any person as a non-executive director who has attained the age of 75 years unless a special resolution is passed to that effect, in which case the explanatory statement annexed to the notice for such motion shall indicate the justification for appointing such a person.

Explanation: The top 1000 and 2000 entities shall be determined on the basis of market capitalisation as at the end of the immediate previous financial year.

Minimum Directors Requirement

The board of directors of the top 1000 listed entities (with effect from April 1, 2019) and the top 2000 listed entities (with effect from April 1, 2020) shall comprise of not less than six directors.

Meetings of Board

Board shall meet at least four times a year, with a maximum time gap of one hundred and twenty days between any two meetings.

Quorum of board meeting

The quorum for every meeting of the board of directors of the top 1000 listed entities with effect from April 1, 2019 and of the top 2000 listed entities with effect from April 1, 2020 shall be one-third of its total strength or three directors, whichever is higher, including at least one independent director.

In case of listed entity, one independent director should be present at the Meeting to form a quorum.

Key Compliance Requirements for Board

- Periodically review compliance reports pertaining to all laws applicable to the listed entity, as well as steps taken by the listed entity to rectify instances of non-compliances.
- Satisfy itself that plans are in place for orderly succession for appointment to the board of directors and senior management.
- Lay down a code of conduct for all members of board of directors and senior management and incorporate duties of independent directors.
- Recommend all fees or compensation, if any, paid to non-executive directors, including independent directors and shall require approval of shareholders in general meeting.
- Lay down procedures to inform members of board of directors about risk assessment and minimization procedures
- Responsible for framing, implementing and monitoring the risk management plan for the listed entity.
- Performance evaluation of independent directors
- The minimum information to be placed before the board of directors is specific in Part A of Schedule II.
- The chief executive officer and the chief financial officer shall provide the compliance certificate to the board of directors as specified in Part B of Schedule II.

Maximum Number of Directorships / Committee Membership & Chairpersonship

- A person shall not be a director in more than eight listed entities with effect from April 1, 2019 and in not more than seven listed entities with effect from April 1, 2020. However a person shall not serve as an independent director in more than seven listed entities.
- Any person who is serving as a whole time director / managing director in any listed entity shall serve as an independent director in not more than three listed entities.

[*Explanation* - For the purpose of this regulation, the count for the number of listed entities on which a person is a director / independent director shall be only those whose equity shares are listed on a stock exchange.]

- A director shall not be a member in more than ten committees or act as chairperson of more than five committees across all listed entities in which he / she is a director which shall be determined as follows:

- (a) the limit of the committees on which a director may serve in all public limited companies, whether listed or not, shall be included and all other companies including private limited companies, foreign companies and companies under Section 8 of the Companies Act, 2013 shall be excluded;
- (b) for the purpose of determination of limit, chairpersonship and membership of the audit committee and the Stakeholders' Relationship Committee alone shall be considered.

Question:

Mr. A is a Director of ABC Listed company. He holds following membership / chairmanship in following companies –

1. Chairman of Audit Committee of ABC Listed company
2. Chairman of Nomination & Remuneration Committee of ABC Listed company
3. Chairman of Stakeholders' Relationship Committee of ABC Listed company
4. Chairman of Audit Committee of XYZ Limited company
5. Chairman of Nomination & Remuneration Committee of XYZ Limited company
6. Chairman of Stakeholders' Relationship Committee of XYZ Limited company

Please advise the limit of membership / chairpersonship.

Answer:

Mr. A, in the given case, is chairman of above mentioned committees. Only Audit Committee and Stakeholders Relationship Committee will be counted for the purpose and both ABC Listed company and XYZ Limited, being public limited company will be considered.

In view of the above, his total chairperson is 4 which is within the limit of 5 committee chairpersonship as permitted.

It is to be noted that chairpersonship is counted in the overall limit of membership as well.

Board Committees

	Audit Committee	Nomination & Remuneration Committee	Stakeholders Relationship Committee	Risk Management Committee
Composition	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The committee shall comprise of at least three directors. Two-thirds of the members of audit committee shall be independent directors. In case of a listed entity having outstanding SR equity shares, the audit committee shall only comprise of independent directors. All members of audit committee shall be financially literate and at least one member shall have accounting or related financial management expertise 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The committee shall comprise of at least three directors. All directors of the committee shall be non- executive directors. At least fifty percent of the directors shall be independent directors. In case of a listed entity having outstanding SR equity shares, two thirds of the nomination and remuneration committee shall comprise of independent directors. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The committee shall comprise of atleast three directors. The committee shall have at least one independent director. In case of a listed entity having outstanding SR equity shares, at least two thirds of the Stakeholders Relationship C o m m i t t e e shall comprise of independent directors. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Risk Management Committee shall have minimum three members with majority of them being members of the board of directors, including at least one independent director. In case of a listed entity having outstanding SR equity shares, at least two thirds of the Risk Management Committee shall comprise independent directors.
Chairperson	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The chairperson shall be an independent director. The Chairperson shall be present at Annual general meeting to answer shareholder queries. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Chairperson shall be an independent director . Provided that the chairperson of the listed entity, whether executive or non- executive, may be appointed as a member of the Committee and shall not chair such Committee. The Chairperson of may be present at the annual general meeting, to answer the shareholders' q u e r i e s ; however, it shall be up to the chairperson to decide who shall answer the queries. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The chairperson of this committee shall be a non-executive director. The Chairperson of the Stakeholders Relationship Committee shall be present at the annual general meetings to answer queries of the security holders. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Chairperson of the Risk management committee shall be a member of the board of directors and senior executives of the listed entity may be members of the committee.

	Secretarial Standard 2 prescribes that the Chairman of the Audit Committee, Nomination and Remuneration Committee and the Stakeholders Relationship Committee, or any other Member of any such Committee authorised by the Chairman of the respective Committee to attend on his behalf, shall attend the General Meeting.			
Meetings	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The committee shall meet at least four times in a year and not more than one hundred and twenty days shall elapse between two meetings. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The committee shall meet at least once in a year. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The committee shall meet at least once in a year. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The committee shall meet at least twice in a year.
Quorum	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The quorum for audit committee meeting shall either be two members or one third of the members of the audit committee, whichever is greater, with at least two independent directors. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The quorum for a meeting of the nomination and remuneration committee shall be either two members or one third of the members of the committee, whichever is greater, including at least one independent director in attendance 		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The quorum for a meeting of the Risk Management Committee shall be either two members or one third of the members of the committee, whichever is higher, including at least one member of the board of directors in attendance.
				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The meetings of the risk management committee shall be conducted in such a manner that on a continuous basis not more than one hundred and eighty days shall elapse between any two consecutive meetings.
	<p>Secretarial Standard 1 prescribes that unless otherwise stipulated in the Act or the Articles or under any other law, the Quorum for Meetings of any Committee constituted by the Board shall be as specified by the Board.</p> <p>If no such Quorum is specified as stated above, the presence of all the members of any such Committee is necessary to form the Quorum.</p>			

Role of Committee	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The role of the audit committee and the information to be reviewed by the audit committee shall be as specified in Part C of Schedule II. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The role of the nomination and remuneration committee shall be as specified as in Part D of the Schedule II. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The role of the Stakeholders Relationship Committee shall be as specified as in Part D of the Schedule II. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The board of directors shall define the role and responsibility of the Risk Management Committee and may delegate monitoring and reviewing of the risk management plan to the committee and such other functions as it may deem fit (such function shall specifically cover cyber security). The role and responsibilities of the Risk Management Committee shall mandatorily include the performance of functions specified in Part D of Schedule II.
-------------------	---	--	--	---

Question:

ABC Limited is a listed company having all committees constituted in compliance with listing regulations. Its Audit committee having 5 directors, out of which 4 directors are independent. At a meeting of the Audit Committee, 2 directors were present (one non-executive and one independent). Is the meeting valid?

Answer:

In terms of the listing regulations, two independent directors should be present at the meeting of the Audit Committee to constitute a valid quorum. Therefore, the aforesaid Meeting is invalid as only one Independent Director was present.

Note:

- The Company Secretary shall act as the secretary to the audit committee.
- The provisions of Risk Management Committee shall be applicable to top 1000 listed entities, determined on the basis of market capitalisation, as at the end of the immediate previous financial year.
- The Risk Management Committee shall have powers to seek information from any employee, obtain outside legal or other professional advice and secure attendance of outsiders with relevant expertise, if it considers necessary.

Vigil Mechanism

- The listed entity shall formulate a vigil mechanism / whistle blower policy for directors and employees to report genuine concerns.
- The vigil mechanism shall provide for adequate safeguards against victimization of director(s) or employee(s) or any other person who avail the mechanism.
- The vigil mechanism shall also provide for direct access to the chairperson of the audit committee in appropriate or exceptional cases.

Related Party Transactions

Under Listing Regulations, 2015

As per Regulation 2(1) (zb) “related party” means a related party as defined under sub-section (76) of section 2 of the Companies Act, 2013 or under the applicable accounting standards.

Provided that any person or entity belonging to the promoter or promoter group of the listed entity and holding 20% or more of shareholding in the listed entity shall be deemed to be a related party.

Provided further that this definition shall not be applicable for the units issued by mutual funds which are listed on a recognised stock exchange(s).

As per Regulation 2(1)(zc) “related party transaction” means a transfer of resources, services or obligations between a listed entity and a related party, regardless of whether a price is charged and a “transaction” with a related party shall be construed to include a single transaction or a group of transactions in a contract:

Provided that this definition shall not be applicable for the units issued by mutual funds which are listed on a recognised stock exchange(s).

Under Companies Act, 2013

According to section 2 (76) “related party”, with reference to a company, means –

- (i) a director or his relative;
 - (ii) a key managerial personnel or his relative;
 - (iii) a firm, in which a director, manager or his relative is a partner;
 - (iv) a private company in which a director or manager or his relative is a member or director;
 - (v) a public company in which a director or manager is a director and holds or holds along with his relatives, more than two per cent of its paid-up share capital;
 - (vi) any body corporate whose Board of Directors, managing director or manager is accustomed to act in accordance with the advice, directions or instructions of a director or manager;
 - (vii) any person on whose advice, directions or instructions a director or manager is accustomed to act;
- However, nothing in sub-clauses (vi) and (vii) shall apply to the advice, directions or instructions given in a professional capacity;
- (viii) Any body corporate which is –
 - (A) a holding, subsidiary or an associate company of such company;
 - (B) a subsidiary of a holding company to which it is also a subsidiary; or
 - (C) an investing company or the venturer of the company;

Explanation. – For the purpose of this clause, “the investing company or the venturer of a company” means a body corporate whose investment in the company would result in the company becoming an associate company of the body corporate.

- (ix) a director other than an independent director or key managerial personnel of the holding company or his relative with reference to a company, shall be deemed to be a related party.

When will a transaction with a related party be material?

The listed entity shall formulate a policy on materiality of related party transactions and on dealing with related party transactions 108[including clear threshold limits duly approved by the board of directors and such policy shall be reviewed by the board of directors at least once every three years and updated accordingly

A transaction with a related party shall be considered material if the transaction(s) to be entered into individually or taken together with previous transactions during a financial year, exceeds 10% of the annual consolidated turnover of the listed entity as per the last audited financial statements of the listed entity



With effect from July 01, 2019 a transaction involving payments made to a related party with respect to brand usage or royalty shall be considered material if the transaction(s) to be entered into individually or taken together with previous transactions during a financial year, exceed five percent of the annual consolidated turnover of the listed entity as per the last audited financial statements of the listed entity.

Question:

A company ABC Limited, listed entity, entered into a transaction with related party namely XYZ Limited for an amount of Rs. 26 Crore. The turnover of ABC Limited is Rs. 240 Cr on standalone basis and after considering consolidation of subsidiaries & associates is Rs. 290 Cr. Please advise whether the transaction is related party transaction or not.

Answer:

A material related party transaction is transaction which either individually or taken together with previous transactions during a financial year, exceeds 10% of the annual consolidated turnover of the listed entity as per the last audited financial statements of the listed entity.

In the above case, ABC Limited has a consolidated turnover of Rs. 290 Cr and therefore, threshold for materiality would be Rs. 29 Cr for a transaction with related party.

In case ABC Limited has not entered into any transaction during the financial year 2019-20, which crosses the overall limit of Rs. 29 Cr including the existing Rs. 26 Cr transaction then it is not material related party transaction.

Approval of Audit Committee

All related party transactions shall require prior approval of the audit committee.

This approval is required irrespective of transaction is material or not.

Omnibus Approval: Audit committee may grant omnibus approval for related party transactions proposed to be entered into by the listed entity subject to the following conditions-

- the audit committee shall lay down the criteria for granting the omnibus approval in line with the policy on related party transactions of the listed entity and such approval shall be applicable in respect of transactions which are repetitive in nature;
- the audit committee shall satisfy itself regarding the need for such omnibus approval and that such approval is in the interest of the listed entity;
- the omnibus approval shall specify:

- (i) the name(s) of the related party, nature of transaction, period of transaction, maximum amount of transactions that shall be entered into,
- (ii) the indicative base price / current contracted price and the formula for variation in the price if any; and
- (iii) such other conditions as the audit committee may deem fit.

However, where the need for related party transaction cannot be foreseen and aforesaid details are not available, audit committee may grant omnibus approval for such transactions subject to their value not exceeding rupees one crore per transaction.

- (d) the audit committee shall review, at least on a quarterly basis, the details of related party transactions entered into by the listed entity pursuant to each of the omnibus approvals given.
- (e) Such omnibus approvals shall be valid for a period not exceeding one year and shall require fresh approvals after the expiry of one year.

Approval of the shareholders

All material related party transactions shall require approval of the shareholders through resolution and no related party shall vote to approve such resolutions whether the entity is a related party to the particular transaction or not.

However, the requirements specified above shall not apply in respect of a resolution plan approved under section 31 of the Insolvency Code, subject to the event being disclosed to the recognized stock exchanges within one day of the resolution plan being approved.

Exceptions

The approval of Audit committee and shareholders shall not be required in the following cases:

- (a) transactions entered into between two government companies;
- (b) transactions entered into between a holding company and its wholly owned subsidiary whose accounts are consolidated with such holding company and placed before the shareholders at the general meeting for approval.

Government Company(ies) means Government Company as defined in sub-section (45) of section 2 of the Companies Act, 2013.

Other provisions

- The provisions of this regulation shall be applicable to all prospective transactions.
- For the purpose of this regulation, all entities falling under the definition of related parties shall not vote to approve the relevant transaction irrespective of whether the entity is a party to the particular transaction or not.
- All existing material related party contracts or arrangements entered into prior to the date of notification of these regulations and which may continue beyond such date shall be placed for approval of the shareholders in the first General Meeting subsequent to notification of these regulations.
- The listed entity shall submit within 30 days from the date of publication of its standalone and consolidated financial results for the half year, disclosures of related party transactions on a consolidated basis, in the format specified in the relevant accounting standards for annual results to the stock exchanges and publish the same on its website.

Corporate Governance requirements related to Subsidiary

- “Material Subsidiary” shall mean a subsidiary, whose income or net worth exceeds ten percent of the consolidated income or net worth respectively, of the listed entity and its subsidiaries in the immediately preceding accounting year.

Explanation.- The listed entity shall formulate a policy for determining ‘material’ subsidiary.

- At least one independent director on the board of directors of the listed entity shall be a director on the board of directors of an unlisted material subsidiary, whether incorporated in India or not.
- The audit committee of the listed entity shall review the financial statements, in particular, the investments made by the unlisted subsidiary.
- The minutes of the meetings of the board of directors of the unlisted subsidiary shall be placed at the meeting of the board of directors of the listed entity.
- The management of the unlisted subsidiary shall periodically bring to the notice of the board of directors of the listed entity, a statement of all significant transactions and arrangements entered into by the unlisted subsidiary.

Explanation.- For the purpose of this regulation, the term “significant transaction or arrangement” shall mean any individual transaction or arrangement that exceeds or is likely to exceed ten percent of the total revenues or total expenses or total assets or total liabilities, as the case may be, of the unlisted subsidiary for the immediately preceding accounting year

Question:

ABC Limited is having three subsidiaries A Ltd, B Ltd and C Ltd. The consolidated income of ABC Limited is Rs. 300 Cr and networth is Rs. 600 Cr.

The income and networth of A Ltd, B Ltd and C Ltd. are as follows –

	Income	Networth
A Ltd	10 Cr	65 Cr
B Ltd	45 Cr	14 Cr
C Ltd	10 Cr	18 Cr

Please examine if there is any material subsidiary of ABC Limited.

Answer:

In the given case,

10 % of consolidated income and networth of ABC Limited would be 30 Cr and 60 Cr respectively.

Hence, A Ltd since crossed threshold in terms of Networth, would be a material subsidiary.

B Ltd since crossed threshold in terms of income, would be a material subsidiary.

C Ltd since does not cross either of the threshold, would not be a material subsidiary.

Secretarial Audit and Secretarial Compliance Report

- Every listed entity and its material unlisted subsidiaries incorporated in India shall undertake secretarial audit and shall annex a secretarial audit report given by a company secretary in practice, in such form as specified, with the annual report of the listed entity.
- Every listed entity shall submit a secretarial compliance report in such form as specified, to stock exchanges, within sixty days from end of each financial year.

Obligations in Respect of Independent Directors

- No person shall be appointed or continue as an alternate director for an independent director of a listed entity with effect from October 1, 2018.
- The maximum tenure of independent directors shall be in accordance with the Companies Act, 2013 and rules made thereunder.

- The independent directors of the listed entity shall hold at least one meeting in a financial year, without the presence of non-independent directors and members of the management and all the independent directors shall strive to be present at such meeting.
- An independent director who resigns or is removed from the board of directors of the listed entity shall be replaced by a new independent director by listed entity at the earliest but not later than the immediate next meeting of the board of directors or three months from the date of such vacancy, whichever is later.

Where the listed entity fulfils the requirement of independent directors in its board of directors without filling the vacancy created by such resignation or removal, the requirement of replacement by a new independent director shall not apply.

- The listed entity shall familiarise the independent directors through various programmes about the listed entity, including the following:
 - (a) nature of the industry in which the listed entity operates;
 - (b) business model of the listed entity;
 - (c) roles, rights, responsibilities of independent directors; and
 - (d) any other relevant information.
- Every independent director shall, at the first meeting of the board in which he participates as a director and thereafter at the first meeting of the board in every financial year or whenever there is any change in the circumstances which may affect his status as an independent director, submit a declaration that he meets the criteria of independence.
- With effect from October 1, 2018, the top 500 listed entities by market capitalization calculated as on March 31 of the preceding financial year, shall undertake Directors and Officers insurance ('D and O insurance') for all their independent directors of such quantum and for such risks as may be determined by its board of directors.

Obligation in Respect of Employees including senior Management, key Managerial persons, Directors and Promoters

- Every director shall inform the listed entity about the committee positions he or she occupies in other listed entities and notify changes as and when they take place.
- All members of the board of directors and senior management personnel shall affirm compliance with the code of conduct of board of directors and senior management on an annual basis.
- Senior management shall make disclosures to the board of directors relating to all material, financial and commercial transactions, where they have personal interest that may have a potential conflict with the interest of the listed entity at large.

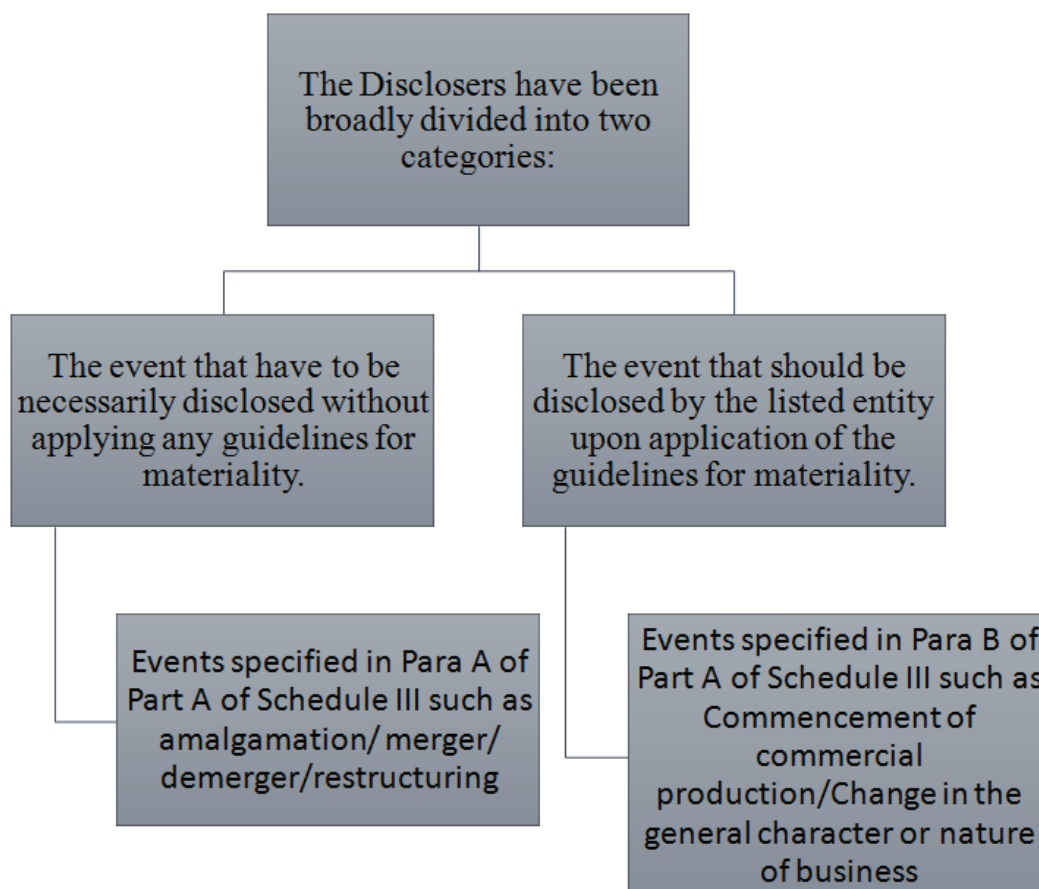
Explanation.- For the purpose of this sub-regulation, conflict of interest relates to dealing in the shares of listed entity, commercial dealings with bodies, which have shareholding of management and their relatives etc.

PRIOR INTIMATIONS [REGULATION 29]

The listed entity is required to give prior intimation to stock exchange about the meeting of the board of directors in which any of the following proposals is due to be considered. This is to ensure a complete transparency and to maintain the volatility of the market price of the shares of the Company.

At least 5 Clear Days in advance	At least 2 Working Days in advance	At least 11 Working Days in advance
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • financial results viz. quarterly, half yearly, or annual, as the case may be; 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • proposal for buyback of securities; • proposal for voluntary delisting • fund raising by way of FPO, rights issue, ADR/GDR/FCB, QIP, debt issue, preferential issue or any other method and for determination of issue price; • declaration/ recommendation of dividend, issue of convertible securities including convertible debentures • declaration of bonus securities 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • any alteration in the form or nature of any of its listed securities or in the rights or privileges of the holders thereof. • any alteration in the date on which, the interest on debentures or bonds, or the redemption amount of redeemable shares or of debentures or bonds, shall be payable.

DISCLOSURE OF EVENTS OR INFORMATION [REGULATION 30]



- The listed entity shall frame a policy for determination of materiality, based on criteria specified in this sub-regulation, duly approved by its board of directors, which shall be disclosed on its website.
- The board of directors of the listed entity shall authorize one or more Key Managerial Personnel for the purpose of determining materiality of an event or information and for the purpose of making disclosures to stock exchange and the contact details of such personnel shall be also disclosed to the stock exchange and as well as on the listed entity's website.

- The listed entity shall first disclose to stock exchange of all events or information as soon as reasonably possible and not later than 24 hours from the occurrence of event or information.

Outcome of Meetings of the board of directors

(to be disclosed to the Exchange within 30 minutes of the closure of the meeting)

- dividends and/or cash bonuses recommended or declared or the decision to pass any dividend and the date on which dividend shall be paid/dispatched;
- any cancellation of dividend with reasons thereof;
- the decision on buyback of securities;
- the decision with respect to fund raising proposed to be undertaken
- increase in capital by issue of bonus shares through capitalization including the date on which such bonus shares shall be credited/dispatched;
- reissue of forfeited shares or securities, or the issue of shares or securities held in reserve for future issue or the creation in any form or manner of new shares or securities or any other rights, privileges or benefits to subscribe to;
- short particulars of any other alterations of capital, including calls;
- financial results;
- decision on voluntary delisting by the listed entity from stock exchange(s).

In case of board meetings being held for more than one day, the financial results shall be disclosed within thirty minutes of end of the meeting for the day on which it has been considered

MEETINGS OF SHAREHOLDERS AND VOTING [REGULATION 44]

- The top 100 listed entities by market capitalization, determined as on March 31st of every financial year, shall hold their annual general meetings within a period of five months from the date of closing of the financial year.
- The top 100 listed entities shall provide one-way live webcast of the proceedings of the annual general meetings.
- The listed entity shall provide the facility of remote e-voting to its shareholders and submit to the stock exchange, within 2 working days of conclusion of its General Meeting, details regarding the voting results in the format specified by the Board.

REGULATIONS APPLICABLE ON TOP 500, TOP 1000 AND TOP 2000 LISTED ENTITIES

TOP 500 LISTED ENTITIES	TOP 1000 LISTED ENTITIES	TOP 2000 LISTED ENTITIES
Board of directors shall have at least one independent woman director by April 1, 2019	Board of directors shall have at least one independent woman director by April 1, 2020	-
With effect from April 1, 2022, the Chairperson of the board of such listed entity shall – (a) be a non-executive director; (b) not be related to the Managing Director or the Chief Executive Officer as per the definition of the term “relative” defined under the Companies Act, 2013.	The board of directors (with effect from April 1, 2019) shall comprise of not less than six directors.	The board of directors (with effect from April 1, 2020) shall comprise of not less than six directors.

With effect from October 1, 2018, entities shall undertake Directors and Officers insurance ('D and O insurance') for all their independent directors of such quantum and for such risks as may be determined by its board of directors.	The quorum for every meeting of the board of directors with effect from April 1, 2019 shall be one-third of its total strength or three directors, whichever is higher, including at least one independent director. The provisions of Risk Management Committee shall be applicable to top 1000 listed entities.	The quorum for every meeting of the board of directors with effect from April 1, 2020 shall be one-third of its total strength or three directors, whichever is higher, including at least one independent director.
-	The top 1000 listed entities shall formulate a dividend distribution policy which shall be disclosed on the website of the listed entity and a web-link shall also be provided in their annual reports.	-

- The top 500, 1000 and 2000 entities shall be determined on the basis of market capitalisation, as at the end of the immediate previous financial year.

COMPLIANCES UNDER SEBI (LODR) REGULATIONS FOR THE LISTED ENTITY WHICH HAS LISTED ITS NON-CONVERTIBLE DEBT SECURITIES OR NON- CONVERTIBLE REDEEMABLE PREFERENCE SHARES OR BOTH

Regulation	Title	Intimation to Stock Exchanges	Time Limit
50(1)	Intimation to Stock exchanges	Prior intimation to the stock exchange(s) before the due date for which the interest on debentures and bonds, and redemption amount of redeemable shares or of debentures and bonds shall be payable.	Atleast 11 working days
50(3)	Intimation of Board meetings	Intimation regarding the meeting of its board of directors, at which the recommendation or declaration of issue of non- convertible debt securities or any other matter affecting the rights or interests of holders of non- convertible debt securities or non-convertible redeemable preference shares is proposed to be considered.	Atleast 2 working days in advance
52(1)	Half Yearly Financial results	The listed entity shall prepare and submit unaudited or audited financial results on a half yearly basis in the format as specified by the Board to the recognized stock exchange accompanied by the Limited Review Report	Within 45 days from the end of each of the half year
Proviso to 52(1)	Copy of financial results to Debenture Trustee	The listed entities which have listed their equity shares and debt securities, a copy of the financial results submitted to stock exchanges shall be provided to Debenture Trustees	On the same day on which the information is submitted to the stock exchange
52(2)	Annual Financial Results	The listed entity shall prepare and submit audited financial results	Within 60 days from the end of the financial year
52(5)	Submission of certificate signed by Debenture Trustee	The listed entities shall submit a certificate signed by debenture trustee that is has taken note of the contents of half yearly/annual financial results submitted to Stock Exchange	Within 7 working days from the date of submission of the information

54(2)	Disclosure of Asset Cover	The listed entity shall disclose to the stock exchange the extent and nature of security created and maintained with respect to its secured listed non-convertible debt securities.	Quarterly, half-yearly, year-to-date and annual financial statements as applicable
55	Credit Ratings	Each rating obtained by the listed entity with respect to non-convertible debt securities shall be reviewed by a credit rating agency registered by the SEBI.	Atleast once a year
57(1)	Certificate	The listed entity shall submit a certificate to the stock exchange regarding status of payment in case of non-convertible securities.	within one working day of the interest or dividend or principal becoming due

POLICIES COVERED UNDER SEBI (LODR) REGULATIONS

Regulation	Title of Policy	Requirements
9	Preservation of documents Policy	To be classified into two categories:- 1. documents whose preservation shall be permanent in nature 2. documents with preservation period of not less than eight years after completion of the relevant transactions
16(1)(c)	Policy on determining "material subsidiary"	The listed entity shall formulate a policy for determining 'material' subsidiary.
17(5)	Code of Conduct	The board of directors shall lay down a code of conduct for all members of board of directors and senior management of the listed entity. The code of conduct shall suitably incorporate the duties of independent directors as laid down in the Companies Act, 2013
17(9)(b)	Risk Management Policy	The board of directors shall be responsible for framing, implementing and monitoring the risk management plan for the listed entity
22	Vigil Mechanism	The listed entity shall formulate a vigil mechanism/whistle blower policy for directors and employees to report genuine concerns
23(1)	Materiality of related party transactions and on dealing with related party transactions	The listed entity shall formulate a policy on materiality of related party transactions and on dealing with related party transactions, including clear threshold limits duly approved by the board of directors and such policy shall be reviewed by the board of directors at least once every three years and updated accordingly
30	Policy on determination of materiality of events/ information	The listed entity shall frame a policy for determination of materiality, based on criteria specified in this sub-regulation, duly approved by its board of directors, which shall be disclosed on its website.
43A	Dividend Distribution Policy	The top 1000 listed entities based on market capitalization shall formulate a dividend distribution policy which shall be disclosed on the website of the listed entity and a web-link shall also be provided in their annual reports
Part D of Schedule II	Board Diversity Policy	The Nomination and Remuneration Committee shall devise a policy on diversity of board of directors

LIABILITY OF A LISTED ENTITY FOR CONTRAVENTION

The listed entity or any other person thereof who contravenes any of the provisions of these SEBI (LODR) regulations, shall, in addition to liability for action in terms of the securities laws, be liable for the following actions by the respective stock exchange(s), in the manner specified in circulars or guidelines issued by the SEBI:

- (a) imposition of fines;
- (b) suspension of trading;
- (c) freezing of promoter/promoter group holding of designated securities, as may be applicable, in coordination with depositories.
- (d) any other action as may be specified by the SEBI from time to time

ROLE OF COMPANY SECRETARY

For Company Secretary in Employment

- A listed entity shall appoint a Qualified Company Secretary as the Compliance Officer. The compliance officer of the listed entity shall be responsible for –
 - ensuring conformity with the regulatory provisions applicable to the listed entity in letter and spirit.
 - co-ordination with and reporting to SEBI, recognised stock exchange(s) and depositories with respect to compliance with rules, regulations and other directives of these authorities in manner as specified from time to time.
 - ensuring that the correct procedures have been followed that would result in the correctness, authenticity and comprehensiveness of the information, statements and reports filed by the listed entity under these regulations.
 - monitoring email address of grievance redressal division as designated by the listed entity for the purpose of registering complaints by investors.
- The listed entity shall submit a compliance certificate to the exchange, duly signed by both the compliance officer of the listed entity and the authorised representative of the share transfer agent, wherever applicable, within one month of end of each half of the financial year, certifying that all activities in relation to both physical and electronic share transfer facility are maintained either in house or by Registrar to an issue and share transfer agent registered with SEBI.
- “Senior Management” shall mean Officers/Personnel of the listed entity who are members of its core management team excluding Board of directors and normally this shall comprise all members of management one level below Chief Executive Officer/ Managing Director/ Whole Time Director/

Manager (including Chief Executive Officer/Manager, in case they are not part of the board) and shall specifically include Company Secretary and Chief Financial Officer.

For Company Secretary in Practice

In addition to the above responsibilities, the following are the recognition to Company Secretary under the SEBI Listing Regulations, 2015 :

- **Certificate regarding Transfer of Securities:** Certification to the effect that all transfers have been completed within the stipulated time. [Regulation 40(9)]
- **Certificate Regarding Compliance of Conditions of Corporate Governance under SEBI Listing Regulations:** SEBI listing regulations authorizes Company Secretary in Practice to issue certificate regarding compliance of conditions of Corporate Governance. [Schedule V, clause E]
- **Secretarial Audit and Secretarial Compliance Report:** Every listed entity and its material unlisted subsidiaries incorporated in India shall undertake secretarial audit and shall annex a secretarial audit report

given by a company secretary in practice, in such form as specified, with the annual report of the listed entity [Regulation 24A].

- **Certification regarding Director's Disqualification:** A certificate from a Company Secretary in Practice that none of the directors on the board of the company have been debarred or disqualified from being appointed or continuing as Directors of Companies by the Board/ Ministry of Corporate Affairs or any such Statutory Authority. [Schedule V, Part C, Clause 10 (i)]

CASE LAWS

1.	04.03.2020	<i>Picturehouse Media Ltd. vs. Bombay Stock Exchange Ltd.</i>	Securities Appellate Tribunal
----	------------	---	-------------------------------

Penalty imposed for non compliance of SEBI LODR Regulations on delay appointment of women director

The provisions of the LODR regulations require that every listed company should have a women director. The appellant hereby is a public listed company and one women director resigned and consequently the post became vacant which was require to be filled up by another woman under the LODR Regulations. Since there was a delay in appointing a woman director of the company, the penalty was imposed by BSE under LODR Regulations. The appellant has filed the appeal against the order passed by BSE imposing a penalty of Rs.7,59,920/- for violation of Regulations 17(1) and 19(1) and 19(2) of SEBI LODR Regulations, 2015. In the light of default committed by the appellant SAT did not find any error in the impugned order and dismissed the appeal.

CASE STUDIES

1. Ms. Maya is the promoter director of Mayamruga Limited, who founded the Company along with her late father many decades ago. Ms. Maya still owns 24% of the share capital and is a major shareholder. Due to personal issues she resigned from the Board and had appointed professional directors as part of succession planning for the Company.

Although she is no longer a director, Ms. Maya continues to show considerable interest in the business affairs of the company. Recently she has been indicating that the board should consult her on issues of business strategy and dividend policy. She has her own opinion about executive directors and wants the Board to remove two executive directors as she believes that they contribute nothing of value to the board. Two other members of the board agree, and argue that Ms. Maya should be consulted regularly on important issues, given her success in leading the company in the past. However, the majority of the board members are hostile and resent Ms. Maya's continual interference.

After a recent showdown with the chairman, Ms. Maya has threatened to sue members of the board for gross dereliction of their duties as directors. She believed that one director has deceived the Company by selling his own property to the Company at an excessive price. The chairman was unaware of this transaction.

Required

As company secretary, prepare a report advising the chairman-

- the powers of the board under the Companies Act, 2013
- the appropriate measures for dealing with Ms. Maya and responsibility of the board towards her.
- Whether the purchase of property by the company from one of its director was compliant with the provisions of SEBI (LODR)

Suggested Solution -

- (a) **Powers of the Board:** As per Section 179(3) read with Rule 8 of Companies (Meetings of Board and its Powers) Rules, 2014, the Board of Directors of a company shall exercise the following powers on behalf of the company by means of resolutions passed at meetings of the Board, namely:–
- to make calls on shareholders in respect of money unpaid on their shares;
 - to authorise buy-back of securities under section 68;
 - to issue securities, including debenture, whether in or outside India;
 - to borrow monies;
 - to invest the funds of the company;
 - to grant loans or give guarantee or provide security in respect of loans;
 - to approve financial statement and the Board's report;
 - to diversify the business of the company;
 - to approve amalgamation, merger or reconstruction;
 - to take over a company or acquire a controlling or substantial stake in another company;
 - to make political contributions;
 - to appoint or remove key managerial personnel (KMP);
 - to appoint internal auditors and secretarial auditor.
- (b) Ms. Maya was one of the founders and promoter directors of the Company and a major shareholder of the company holding 24% of the shares. A responsible business acts with care and loyalty towards its shareholders and in good faith for the best interests of the corporation. Business therefore has a responsibility to:
- Apply professional and diligent management in order to secure fair, sustainable and competitive returns on shareholder investments.
 - Disclose relevant information to shareholders, subject only to legal requirements and competitive constraints.
 - Conserve, protect, and increase shareholder wealth.
 - Respect shareholder views, complaints, and formal resolutions.
- (c) According to Section 2(76) of Companies Act 2013, “related party”, with reference to a company, means–
- (i) a director or his relative;
 - (ii) key managerial personnel or his relative;
 - (iii) a firm, in which a director, manager or his relative is a partner;
 - (iv) a private company in which a director or manager or his relative is a member or director;
 - (v) a public company in which a director or manager is a director and holds or holds along with his relatives, more than two per cent. (2%) of its paid-up share capital;
 - (vi) any body corporate whose Board of Directors, managing director or manager is accustomed to act in accordance with the advice, directions or instructions of a director or manager;
 - (vii) any person on whose advice, directions or instructions a director or manager is accustomed to act:
Provided that nothing in sub-clauses (vi) and (vii) shall apply to the advice, directions or instructions given in a professional capacity;
 - (viii) any body corporate which is—

- (A) a holding, subsidiary or an associate company of such company;
- (B) a subsidiary of a holding company to which it is also a subsidiary; or
- (C) an investing company or the venturer of the company;”;

Explanation. — For the purpose of this clause, “the investing company or the venturer of a company” means a body corporate whose investment in the company would result in the company becoming an associate company of the body corporate.

- (ix) a director other than an independent director or key managerial personnel of the holding company or his relative with reference to a company, shall be deemed to be a related party.

Section 188 (1) of the Companies Act 2013 deals with the related party transactions with respect to:

- Sale, purchase or supply of any goods or materials
- Selling or otherwise disposing of, or buying, property of any kind
- Leasing of property of any kind
- Availing or rendering of any services
- Appointment of any agent for purchase or sale of goods, materials, services or property
- Related party’s appointment to any office or place of profit in the company, its subsidiary company or associate company, and
- Underwriting the subscription of any securities or derivatives thereof, of the company.

Also, Section 188(1) of the Companies Act 2013 provides that a company shall enter into any contract or arrangement with a related party with respect to Related party transactions only with the consent of the Board of Directors given by a resolution at a meeting of the Board and subject to certain conditions as prescribed under Rule 15 of the Companies (Meetings of Board and its Powers) Rules, 2014.

One of the board members had sold his property to Mayamrug Ltd. at a price which Ms. Maya considers excessive. The board member is related party as per Section 2(76) of Companies Act 2013 and selling property of any kind is a related party transaction as per Section 188(1) of the Companies Act 2013.

The law in India does not prohibit RPTs. Instead, the law puts into place a system of checks and balances, such as requirements for approval from the board of directors/shareholders, timely disclosures and prior statutory approvals, to ensure that the transactions are conducted within appropriate boundaries. RPTs are required to be managed transparently, so as not to impose a heavy burden on a company’s resources, affect the optimum allocation of resources, distort competition or siphon off public resources.

Therefore, if the related party transaction has taken place with the consent of the Board of Directors given by a resolution at a meeting of the Board and subject to certain conditions as prescribed under Rule 15 of the Companies (Meetings of board and its Powers) Rules, 2014, then it is allowed as per the laws and regulations and the allegations will not hold much significance.

2. Dr. Mahopatra, is a pathologist with more than 20 years of experience and has recently been appointed to the post of Chairman of Testocare Ltd., a listed company. He has previously been employed in the company as Research Director. Dr. Mahopatra had always been heading technical matters and management was a new avenue for him. He is trying to spearhead the management of such a vast listed company and uphold the principles of corporate governance. The Board is also evaluating to appoint another CEO.

Presently, the board of directors comprise of total ten directors (including one women director), six non-executive directors and five were independent. The board is responsible for overseeing strategy, approving major corporate initiatives and reviewing performance. There are three board committees - the Audit Committee, Remuneration Committee and Stakeholders Relationship Committees. However, there is no Nomination Committee.

As the Company Secretary and Compliance Officer of Testocare Ltd, he is seeking your assistance to clarify some issues of concern.

You have been asked to prepare a brief report to:

- (a) Provide Dr. Mahapatra with a robust definition of corporate governance and a brief explanation of what you understand corporate governance to be.
- (b) Comment on the board composition of Testocare Ltd. with respect to the Companies Act, 2013 and SEBI LODR Regulations, 2015.
- (c) Also comment whether the Board should appoint a CEO when Dr. Mahapatra is already the Chairman of the Company.

Suggested Solution

- (a) Corporate Governance has a broad scope. It includes both social and institutional aspects. Corporate Governance encourages a trustworthy, moral, as well as ethical environment. In other words, the heart of corporate governance is transparency, disclosure, accountability and integrity. It is to be borne in mind that mere legislation does not ensure good governance. Good governance flows from ethical business practices even when there is no legislation.

Good corporate governance promotes investor confidence, which is crucial to the ability of entities listed to compete for capital. Good corporate governance is essential to develop added value to the stakeholders as it ensures transparency which ensures strong and balanced economic development. This also ensures that the interests of all shareholders (majority as well as minority shareholders) are safeguarded. It ensures that all shareholders fully exercise their rights and that the organization fully recognizes their rights.

The Institute of Company Secretaries of India defines - "Corporate Governance is concerned with the way corporate entities are governed, as distinct from the way business within those companies are managed. Corporate governance addresses the issues facing Board of Directors, such as the interaction with top management and relationships with the owners and others interested in the affairs of the company".

- (b) Board Composition: Section 149(1) of the Companies Act 2013 provides that every company shall have a Board of Directors consisting of individuals as Directors and shall have—
 - A minimum number of three directors in the case of a public company,
 - Atleast two directors in the case of a private Company, and
 - Atleast one director in the case of a One Person Company, and
 - A maximum of fifteen directors provided that a company may appoint more than fifteen directors after passing a special resolution.

Section 149(4) provides that every public listed company shall have at- least one third of total number of directors as independent directors.

Regulation 17(1)(a) of SEBI LODR Regulations, 2015 provides that Board of directors shall have an optimum combination of executive and non-executive directors with at least one woman director and not less than fifty per cent of the board of directors shall comprise of non-executive directors.

The board of Testocare Ltd. comprises of total ten directors, six non-executive directors and five were considered independent. The total number of directors is more than the minimum required directors and at-least one third of total number of directors are independent directors.

Also, as per SEBI Regulations, more than fifty per cent of the board of directors comprises of non- executive directors and one women director. Therefore, the board composition of Company. is optimum as per the laws and regulations.

The Company may also consider enhancing the scope of Remuneration Committee and make it Nomination & Remuneration Committee.

- (C) **Separation of Chairman and CEO:** First proviso to Section 203(1) of the Companies Act, 2013 provides for the separation of role of Chairman and Chief Executive Officer subject to conditions thereunder.

It specifies that an individual shall not be appointed or reappointed as the chairperson of the company, in pursuance of the articles of the company, as well as the managing director or Chief Executive Officer of the company at the same time after the date of commencement of this Act unless, –

- (a) the articles of such a company provide otherwise;
- (b) the company does not carry multiple businesses:

Regulation 17(1B) of SEBI (LODR) Regulations, 2015 provides that effect from April 1, 2022, the top 500 listed entities shall ensure that the Chairperson of the board of such listed entity shall –

- (a) be a non-executive director;
- (b) not be related to the Managing Director or the Chief Executive Officer as per the definition of the term “relative” defined under the Companies Act, 2013:

Also, it is perceived that separating the roles of chairman and chief executive officer (CEO) increases the effectiveness of a company’s board. It is the board’s and chairman’s job to monitor and evaluate a company’s performance. A CEO, on the other hand, represents the management team. If the two roles are performed by the same person, then there is less accountability. A clear demarcation of the roles and responsibilities of the Chairman of the Board and that of the Managing Director/CEO promotes balance of power.

The benefits of separation of roles of Chairman and CEO can be:

Director Communication: A separate chairman provides a more effective channel for the board to express its views on management

Guidance: A separate chairman can provide the CEO with guidance and feedback on his/her performance

Shareholders’ interest: The chairman can focus on shareholder interests, while the CEO manages the company

Governance: A separate chairman allows the board to more effectively fulfill its regulatory requirements
Long-Term Outlook: Separating the position allows the chairman to focus on the long-term strategy while the CEO focuses on short-term profitability

Succession Planning: A separate chairman can more effectively concentrate on corporate succession plans.

Therefore, on the basis of abovementioned laws and regulations and the potential benefits of separating Chairman and CEO, the Company may appoint a CEO for the Company.

LESSON ROUND UP

- SEBI has notified the SEBI (Listing Obligations and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2015 on September 2, 2015 after the consultation process. The LODR Regulations came into force w.e.f. December 1, 2015.
- A listed entity shall appoint a Qualified Company Secretary as a Compliance Officer.
- The Listed entity shall comply with the following compliances under Listing Regulations:
 - One Time Compliances
 - Quarterly Compliances
 - Half yearly Compliances
 - Yearly Compliances
 - Event based Compliances
- The listed entities which has listed its specified securities on any recognised stock exchange(s) either on the main board or on SME Exchange or on institutional trading platform has to comply with certain corporate governance provisions which are specified in Regulations 17 to 27 of the SEBI (LODR) Regulations.
- The Board of directors shall have an optimum combination of executive and non-executive directors with at least one-woman independent director and at least 50% of the board of directors shall comprise of non-executive directors.
- The Board Committees are required to be constituted under SEBI (LODR) Regulations:
 - » Audit Committee
 - » Nomination and Remuneration committee
 - » Stakeholders Relationship Committee
 - » Risk Management Committee
- The listed entity shall formulate a vigil mechanism/whistle blower policy for directors and employees to report genuine concerns.
- The listed entity shall formulate a policy on materiality of related party transactions and on dealing with related party transactions including clear threshold limits duly approved by the board of directors and such policy shall be reviewed by the board of directors at least once every three years and updated accordingly.
- All material related party transactions shall require approval of the shareholders through resolution and no related party shall vote to approve such resolutions whether the entity is a related party to the particular transaction or not.
- Every listed entity and its material unlisted subsidiaries incorporated in India shall undertake secretarial audit and shall annex a secretarial audit report given by a company secretary in practice with the annual report of the listed entity.

GLOSSARY

Financial year	It means the period of twelve months commencing on the first day of April every year. However, a company may at its option have a financial year commencing on a date other than the first day of April.
Interim Dividend,	A dividend payment made during the course of a company's financial year. Interim Dividend unlike the final dividend does not have to be agreed in a general meeting.
Investing Company/ Venture of a Company	It means a body corporate whose investment in the company would result in the company becoming an associate company of the body corporate.
Record Date	A date on which the records of a company are closed for the purpose of determining the stock-holders to whom dividends, proxies rights etc., are to be sent.
Committee	Committee" shall mean committee of board of directors or any other committee so constituted;
Half Year	Half year" means the period of six months commencing on the first day of April or October of a financial year;
Net Worth	"Net worth" means net worth as defined in sub-section (57) of section 2 of the Companies Act, 2013;
Schedule	"Schedule" means a schedule annexed to these regulations;

TEST YOURSELF

(These are meant for recapitulation only. Answer to these questions are not to be submitted for evaluation)

1. Briefly explain the applicability of the SEBI LODR Regulations, 2015.
2. Elucidate the obligations of Listed Entities under the SEBI LODR Regulations, 2015.
3. State the conditions for which Omnibus approval of Audit Committee is required under the SEBI LODR Regulations, 2015.
4. What are the requirement of Secretarial Audit under the SEBI LODR Regulations, 2015?
5. Explain the Event based compliances under the SEBI LODR Regulations, 2015.
6. Discuss about the various committees which are required to be mandatorily constituted under the SEBI LODR Regulations, 2015.
7. Explain the obligations of Independent Directors w.r.t Directorship / membership of the Committees under the SEBI LODR Regulations.
6. List out Various Policies which are to be maintained by the listed companies under SEBI LODR Regulations.

LIST OF FURTHER READINGS

- SEBI Circulars
- SEBI Notifications
- SEBI Annual Reports
- SEBI Monthly Bulletin
- SS - 1 Secretarial Standard on Meetings of the Board of Directors
- FAQs
- SEBI orders

OTHER REFERENCES (Including Websites/Video Links)

- <https://www.sebi.gov.in/index.html>
- <https://www.nseindia.com/>
- <https://www.bseindia.com/>

An Overview of SEBI (Substantial Acquisition of Shares and Takeovers) Regulations, 2011

Lesson 6

Key Concepts One Should Know

- Target Company
- Acquirer
- Person acting in concert
- Control
- Acquisition
- Offer period and tendering period
- Offer size

Learning Objectives

To understand:

- Meaning and purpose of substantial acquisition
- Background on evolution of the SEBI (Substantial Acquisition of Shares and Takeovers) Regulations, 2011
- Understanding the methods including strategy for such acquisitions
- Events requiring the Open offer to be made to shareholders of Target Company
- Understanding the process of making open offer
- Statutory Obligations of Acquirer / Directors of the Target Company / Manager of the Offer
- Disclosure requirements by promoters / certain persons
- Certain exemptions from this Regulations

Lesson Outline

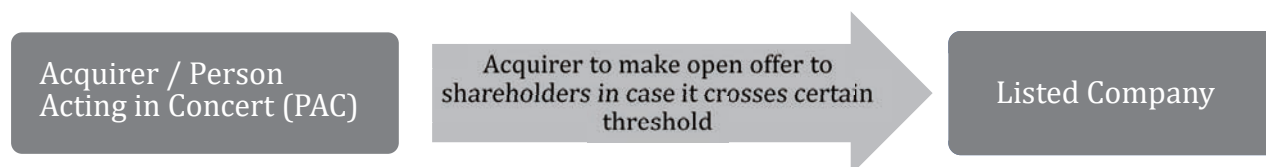
- Introduction
- Genesis
- SEBI (Substantial Acquisition of Shares and Takeovers) Regulations, 2011
- Important Definitions
- Applicability & Exception
- Trigger point for making an open offer by an acquirer
- Open Offer
- Minimum Offer Size
- Conditional Offer
- Public Announcement
- Offer Price
- Filing of letter of Offer with the SEBI
- Dispatch of Letter of Offer
- Opening of the Offer
- Completion of Requirements
- Process at glance
- Obligations on Further Acquisition
- Completion of Acquisition
- Disclosures for Acquisition during Offer period
- Provision of Escrow
- Mode of Payment
- Competing Offer
- Withdrawal of Open Offer
- Obligations of the Target Company
- Obligations of the Acquirer
- Obligations of the Managers
- Disclosures
- Exemptions
- Power of SEBI to relax strict enforcement of the Regulations
- LESSON ROUND-UP
- GLOSSARY
- TEST YOURSELF
- LIST OF FURTHER READINGS
- OTHER REFERENCES

Regulatory Framework

- SEBI (Substantial Acquisition of Shares and Takeovers) Regulations, 2011
- SEBI (Delisting of Equity Shares) Regulations, 2021
- SEBI (Issue of Capital and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2018

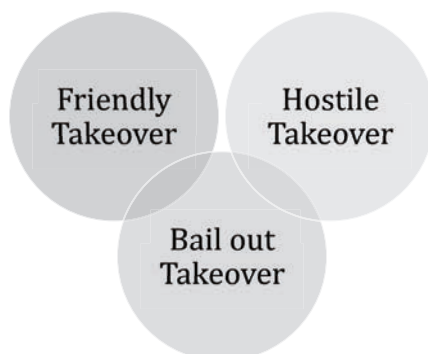
INTRODUCTION

The SEBI (Substantial Acquisition of Shares and Takeovers) Regulations, 2011 [SEBI Takeover Regulations or SEBI (SAST) Regulations] prescribes a systematic framework for acquisition of stake in listed companies. By these laws the regulatory system ensures that the interests of the shareholders of listed companies are not compromised in case of an acquisition or takeover by acquirer. It also protect the interests of minority shareholders, which is also a fundamental attribute of corporate governance principle. Evidently, it is equally important to note that in this highly competitive business world, it is critical for each of the stakeholders in a company to guard their interests in the company from all forms of third party. So, in case third party (Acquirer) proposes any such acquisition or control over listed companies, such Acquirer would provide exit opportunity to Shareholders of that listed company prior to completion of such transaction.



The SEBI Takeover Regulations ensures that public shareholders of a listed company are treated fairly and equitably in relation to a substantial acquisition in, or takeover of, a listed company thereby maintaining stability in the securities market. The objective of the takeover regulations is to ensure that the public shareholders of a company are mandatorily offered an exit opportunity at the best possible terms in case of a substantial acquisition in, or change in control of, a listed company.

Corporate takeovers may be classified under three broad classes:



Friendly Takeover:

This type of takeover takes place with the consent of target listed company. It be either by way of agreement between two management or between two groups. Friendly takeover often termed as negotiated takeover.

Hostile Takeover:

This is the takeover which usually takes place when the acquirer does not offer the target listed company the proposal. Rather the acquirer continues to acquire silently to have control over the target listed company.

Unlike Friendly Takeover, this type of takeover takes place without consent between the management of both acquirer and target listed company.

Bailout Takeover:

As the name suggest, this takeover is made by a financially strong acquirer to takeover sick or financially sick company. In this takeover, generally the acquirer has advantage of negotiating the price as all lenders / creditors / suppliers of financially sick company would like to recover their amount.

GENESIS

The existence of an efficient and smooth-functioning market for takeovers plays an important role in the economic development of a country. It is a widely recognized fact that one of the key elements of a robust corporate governance regime in any country is the existence of an efficient and well-administered set of Takeover Regulations. Regulations on takeovers seek to ensure that the takeover markets operate in a fair, equitable and transparent manner.

The evolution of SEBI Takeover Regulations can be summarised as follows:

1980s	Initial threads of regulation were incorporated in the late 1980s through Listing Agreement
1992	The SEBI Act, 1992 expressly mandated SEBI to regulate substantial acquisition of shares and takeovers by suitable measures
1994	Takeover Regulations of 1994
1995	SEBI appointed a committee to review the Takeover Regulations of 1994 under the chairmanship of Justice P.N. Bhagwati (the Bhagwati Committee). Bhagwati Committee submitted its report in January 1997.
1997	Taking into consideration its recommendations of Bhagwati Committee, the SEBI (SAST) Regulations of 1997 were notified by SEBI on February 20, 1997, repealing the Takeover Regulations of 1994
2001	A review of the Takeover Regulations of 1997 was carried out by a reconstituted committee chaired by Justice P.N. Bhagwati. The reconstituted Bhagwati committee submitted its report in May 2002. SEBI(SAST) Regulation, 1997 was amended 23 times.
2009	SEBI constituted the Takeover Regulations Advisory Committee with the mandate to examine and review the Takeover Regulations of 1997 and to suggest suitable amendments, as deemed fit. The Committee was chaired by Mr. C. Achutan.
2011	Taking into consideration its recommendations of C. Achutan Committee, the SEBI (SAST) Regulation of 2011 were notified by SEBI on September 23, 2011, repealing the Takeover Regulations of 1997

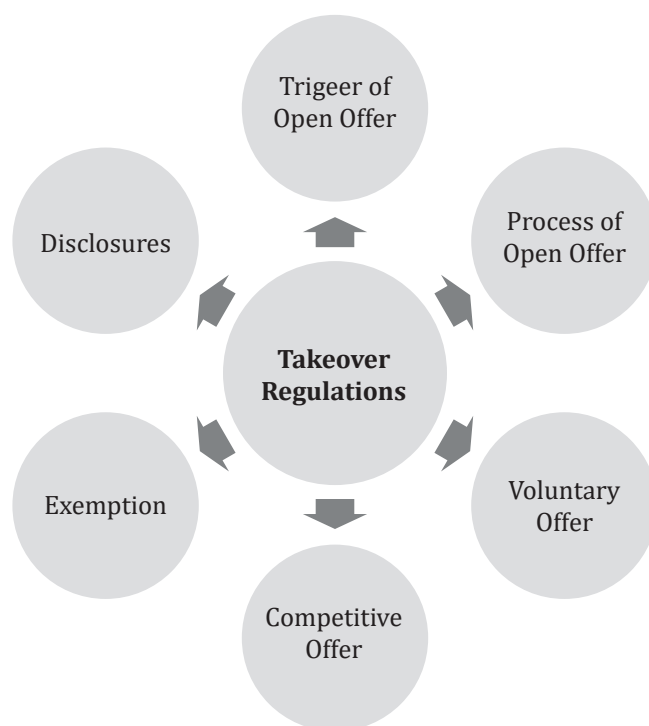
C. Achutan Committee had provided for following objectives of the then proposed Takeover SEBI (SAST), Regulation, 2011:

- To provide a transparent legal framework for facilitating takeover activities;
- To protect the interests of investors in securities and the securities market, taking into account that both the acquirer and the other shareholders or investors need a fair, equitable and transparent framework to protect their interests;
- To balance the various, and at times, conflicting objectives and interests of various stakeholders in the context of substantial acquisition of shares in, and takeovers of, listed companies.
- To provide each shareholder an opportunity to exit his investment in the target company when a substantial acquisition of shares in, or takeover of a target company takes place, on terms that are not inferior to the terms on which substantial shareholders exit their investments;
- To provide acquirers with a transparent legal framework to acquire shares in or control of the target company and to make an open offer;
- To ensure that the affairs of the target company are conducted in the ordinary course when a target company is subject matter of an open offer;
- To ensure that fair and accurate disclosure of all material information is made by persons responsible for making them to various stakeholders to enable them to take informed decisions;

- h. To regulate and provide for fair and effective competition among acquirers desirous of taking over the same target company; and
- i. To ensure that only those acquirers who are capable of actually fulfilling their obligations under the Takeover Regulations make open offers.

SEBI (SUBSTANTIAL ACQUISITION OF SHARES AND TAKEOVERS) REGULATIONS, 2011

1.	Chapter I	Preliminary (Regulation 1 and 2)
2.	Chapter II	Substantial acquisition of Shares, Voting Rights or Control, Threshold limit for open offer, Exemptions (Regulations 3 to 11)
3.	Chapter III	Open offer process (Regulations 12 to 23)
4.	Chapter IV	Obligations of Directors, Target Company, Acquirer, Manager (Regulations 24 to 27)
5.	Chapter V	Disclosures of Shareholding and Control (Regulations 28 to 31)
6.	Chapter V-A	Power to Relax Strict Enforcement of the Regulations (Regulation 31A)
7.	Chapter VI	Miscellaneous (Regulations 32 to 35)



IMPORTANT DEFINITIONS

Acquirer

“Acquirer” means any person who, directly or indirectly, acquires or agrees to acquire whether by himself, or through, or with persons acting in concert with him, shares or voting rights in, or control over a target company. [Reg. 2(1)(a)]

Acquisition

“Acquisition” means, directly or indirectly, acquiring or agreeing to acquire shares or voting rights in, or control over, a target company. [Reg. 2(1)(b)]

Control

“Control” includes the right to appoint majority of the directors or to control the management or policy decisions exercisable by a person or persons acting individually or in concert, directly or indirectly, including by virtue of

their shareholding or management rights or shareholders agreements or voting agreements or in any other manner. However, a director or officer of a target company shall not be considered to be in control over such target company, merely by virtue of holding such position. [Reg. 2(1)(e)]

Enterprise value

Enterprise value means the value calculated as market capitalization of a company plus debt, minority interest and preferred shares, minus total cash and cash equivalents. [Reg. 2(1)(h)]

Enterprise Value= Market capitalization+ Debt+ Minority Interest + Preferred Shares- Total Cash and Cash Equivalents

Frequently traded shares

"Frequently traded shares" means shares of a target company, in which the traded turnover on any stock exchange during the twelve (12) calendar months preceding the calendar month in which the public announcement is required to be made under these regulations, is at least ten percent of the total number of shares of such class of the target company. However, where the share capital of a particular class of shares of the target company is not identical throughout such period, the weighted average number of total shares of such class of the target company shall represent the total number of shares. [Reg. 2(1)(j)]

Maximum permissible non-public shareholding

"Maximum permissible non-public shareholding" means such percentage shareholding in the target company excluding the minimum public shareholding required under the Securities Contracts (Regulation) Rules, 1957.

Fugitive Economic Offender

"Fugitive economic offender" shall mean an individual who is declared a fugitive economic offender under section 12 of the Fugitive Economic Offenders Act, 2018. [Reg. 2(1)(ja)]

Identified Date

"Identified date" means the date falling on the tenth working day prior to the commencement of the tendering period, for the purposes of determining the shareholders to whom the letter of offer shall be sent. [Reg. 2(1)(k)]

Immediate Relative

"Immediate relative" means any spouse of a person, and includes parent, brother, sister or child of such person or of the spouse. [Reg. 2(1)(l)]

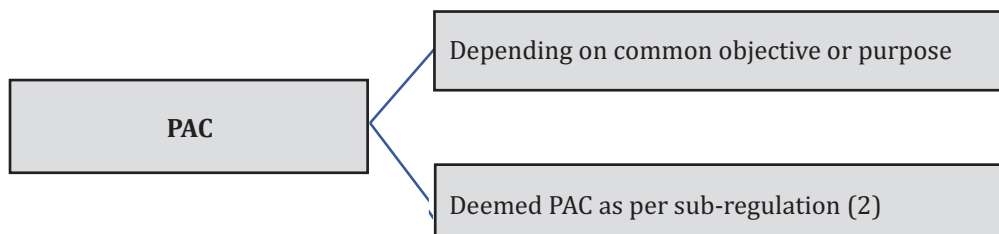
Offer period

"Offer period" means the period between the date of entering into an agreement, formal or informal, to acquire shares, voting rights in, or control over a target company requiring a public announcement, or the date of the public announcement, as the case may be, and the date on which the payment of consideration to shareholders who have accepted the open offer is made, or the date on which open offer is withdrawn, as the case may be. [Reg. 2(1)(p)]

Tendering Period and Offer Period both are different. Offer Period is wider and includes tendering period.

Persons Acting in Concert [Reg. 2(1)(q)]

"Person acting in concert" may be classified in two category as follows :



“Persons acting in concert” means, –

- (1) persons who, with a common objective or purpose of acquisition of shares or voting rights in, or exercising control over a target company, pursuant to an agreement or understanding, formal or informal, directly or indirectly co-operate for acquisition of shares or voting rights in, or exercise of control over the target company.
- (2) Without prejudice to the generality of the foregoing, the persons falling within the following categories shall be deemed to be persons acting in concert with other persons within the same category, unless the contrary is established, –
 - (i) a company, its holding company, subsidiary company and any company under the same management or control;
 - (ii) a company, its directors, and any person entrusted with the management of the company;
 - (iii) directors of companies referred to in item (i) and (ii) of this sub-clause and associates of such directors;
 - (iv) promoters and members of the promoter group;
 - (v) immediate relatives;
 - (vi) a mutual fund, its sponsor, trustees, trustee company, and asset management company;
 - (vii) a collective investment scheme and its collective investment management company, trustees and trustee company;
 - (viii) a venture capital fund and its sponsor, trustees, trustee company and asset management company;
 - (ix) an alternate investment fund and its sponsor, trustees, trustee company and manager;
 - (x) a merchant banker and its client, who is an acquirer;
 - (xi) a portfolio manager and its client, who is an acquirer;
 - (xii) banks, financial advisors and stock brokers of the acquirer, or of any company which is a holding company or subsidiary of the acquirer, and where the acquirer is an individual, of the immediate relative of such individual. However, this shall not apply to a bank whose sole role is that of providing normal commercial banking services or activities in relation to an open offer under these regulations;
 - (xiii) an investment company or fund and any person who has an interest in such investment company or fund as a shareholder or unitholder having not less than 10 per cent of the paid-up capital of the investment company or unit capital of the fund, and any other investment company or fund in which such person or his associate holds not less than 10 per cent of the paid-up capital of that investment company or unit capital of that fund. However, this shall not be applicable to holding of units of mutual funds registered with the SEBI.

Judicial Pronouncement: *Supreme Court in the case of M/S Daiichi Sankyo Company vs. Jayaram Chigurupati*

& Ors. [2010] INSC 470 (8 July 2010) *held that what does the deeming provision do? The deeming provision simply says that in case of specified kinds of relationships, in each category, the person paired with the other would be deemed to be acting in concert with him/it. What it means is that if one partner in the pair makes or agrees to make substantial acquisition of shares etc. in a company it would be presumed that he/it was acting in pursuance of a common objective or purpose shared with the other partner of the pair. For example, if a company or its holding company makes or agrees to make a move for substantial acquisition of shares etc. of a certain target company then it would be presumed that the move is in pursuance of a common objective and purpose jointly shared by the holding company and the subsidiary company. But the mere fact that two companies are in the relationship of a holding company and a subsidiary company, without anything else, is not sufficient to comprise "persons acting in concert". Something more is required to comprise "persons acting in concert" than the mere relationship of a holding company and a subsidiary company. There may be hundreds of instances of a company having a subsidiary company but to dub them as "persons acting in concert" would be quite ridiculous unless another company is identified as the target company and either the holding company or the subsidiary make some positive move or show some definite inclination for substantial acquisition of shares etc. of the target company.*

Target company

"Target Company" means a company and includes a body corporate or corporation established under a Central legislation, State legislation or Provincial legislation for the time being in force, whose shares are listed on a stock exchange. [Reg. 2(1)(z)]

Tendering period

"Tendering period" means the period within which shareholders may tender their shares in acceptance of an open offer to acquire shares made under these regulations. [Reg. 2(1)(za)]

Volume weighted average market price

"Volume weighted average market price" means the product of the number of equity shares traded on a stock exchange and the price of each equity share divided by the total number of equity shares traded on the stock exchange. [Reg. 2(1)(zb)]

Number of shares traded on the Stock Exchange on a particular day: X, Market Price: Y

$$\text{Volume Weighted Average Market Price} = \frac{X1*Y1+X2*Y2+X3*Y3.....}{X1+X2+X3.....}$$

Volume weighted average price

"Volume weighted average price" means the product of the number of equity shares bought and price of each such equity share divided by the total number of equity shares bought. [Reg. 2(1)(zc)]

Weighted average number of total shares

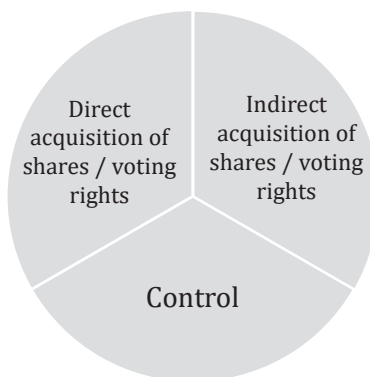
"Weighted average number of total shares" means the number of shares at the beginning of a period, adjusted for shares cancelled, bought back or issued during the aforesaid period, multiplied by a time-weighting factor. [Reg. 2(1)(zd)]

Wilful defaulter

"wilful defaulter" means any person who is categorized as a wilful defaulter by any bank or financial institution or consortium thereof, in accordance with the guidelines on wilful defaulters issued by the Reserve Bank of India and includes any person whose director, promoter or partner is categorized as such [Reg. 2(1)(ze)]

APPLICABILITY & EXCEPTION

These regulations shall apply to direct and indirect acquisition of shares or voting rights, in or control over Target Company.



The Regulations therefore, gets triggered on the following event (on case basis)

- Direct acquisition of shares / voting rights
- Indirect acquisition of shares / voting rights
- Control

Further it may be triggered by Acquirer alone OR along with Person acting in concert.

However, these regulations shall not apply to direct and indirect acquisition of shares or voting rights in, or control over a company listed without making a public issue, on the Innovators Growth platform of a recognized stock exchange.

TRIGGER POINT FOR MAKING AN OPEN OFFER BY AN ACQUIRER

25% Shares or Voting Rights

An acquirer, along with Persons acting in concert (PAC), if any, who intends to acquire shares which along with his existing shareholding would entitle him to exercise 25% or more voting rights, can acquire such additional shares only after making a Public Announcement (PA) to acquire minimum twenty six percent shares of the Target Company from the shareholders through an Open Offer.

For example –

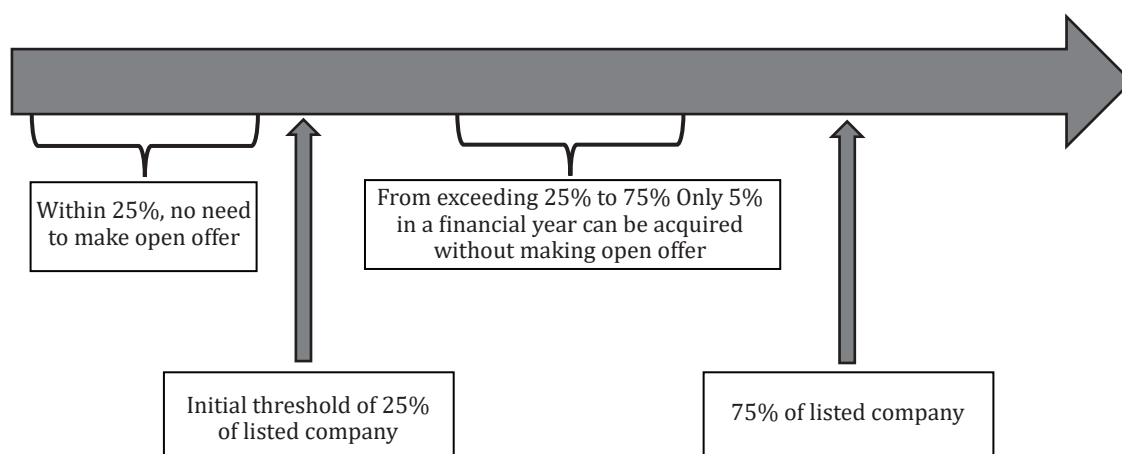
Mr. A is presently holding 1% in Ram Enterprises Limited, a listed entity and he further desires to acquire the shares as tabulated below :

Case	Pre Holding	Proposed Acquisition	Post Holding	Applicability of SEBI Takeover Regulation, 2011
1	1%	26%	27%	Open offer required
2	1%	23%	24%	Open offer NOT required

Creeping Acquisition Limit

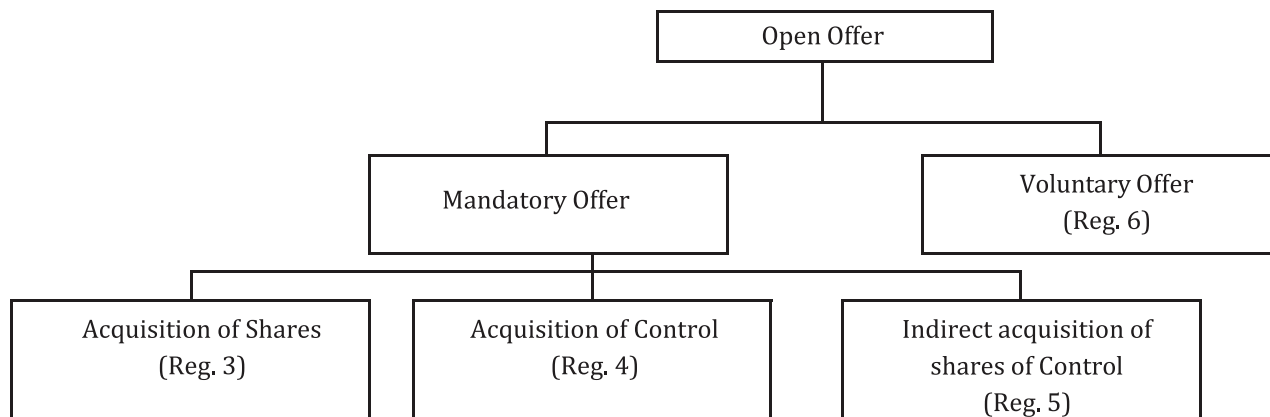
An acquirer who holds 25% or more but less than maximum permissible non-public shareholding of the Target Company, can acquire such additional shares as would entitle him to exercise more than 5% of the voting rights in any financial year ending March 31 only after making a Public Announcement to acquire minimum twenty six percent shares of Target Company from the shareholders through an Open Offer.

Name	Per Holding	Creeping Acquisition	Post Holding	Applicability of SEBI Takeover Regulation, 2011
A	26%	3%	29%	Open offer NOT required
B	26%	6%	32%	Open Offer required



OPEN OFFER

SEBI Takeover Regulations, 2011 provides certain trigger events wherein the Acquirer is required to give Open Offer to the shareholders of the Target Company to provide them exit opportunity. However, it also allows the Acquirer to make voluntary offer as well.



I. Mandatory Open Offer

Acquisition of Shares (Regulation 3)

SEBI Takeover Regulations, 2011 provides a threshold for mandatory Open Offer. These regulations provides that whenever an acquirer acquires the shares in excess of the threshold as prescribed under regulation 3 and in case of control Regulation 4 of SEBI Takeover Regulations, 2011, the acquirer is required to make a public announcement of offer to the shareholders of the Target Company.

Regulation 3 of the SEBI Takeover Regulations, 2011 provides the Acquirer to give an open offer to the shareholders of Target Company on the acquisition of shares or voting rights entitling the Acquirer along with the persons acting in concert with him to exercise 25% or more voting rights in the Target Company.

Further any Acquirer who holds shares between 25%-75%, together with PACs can acquire further 5% shares as creeping acquisition without giving an Open Offer to the shareholders of the Target Company upto a maximum of 75%. The quantum of acquisition of additional voting rights shall be calculated after considering the following:

ONE TIME EXEMPTION FOR CREEPING ACQUISITION -

The acquisition beyond 5% but up to 10% of the voting rights in the target company shall be permitted for the financial year 2020-21 only in respect of acquisition by a promoter pursuant to preferential issue of equity shares by the target company.

This exemption was only permitted through preferential issue to promoters and not otherwise.

(a) No Netting off allowed:

For the purpose of determining the quantum of acquisition of additional voting rights, the gross acquisitions without considering the disposal of shares or dilution of voting rights owing to fresh issue of shares by the target company shall be taken into account.

Case of Mr. A for FY 2020-21:

Details of Acquirer	Present holding	Acquisition	Disposal	Post Holding
A	27%	3%	-	30%
A	30%	1%	-	31%
A	31%	-	4%	27%
A	27%	3%	-	30%

The shareholding of Mr. A at the beginning of FY 2020-21 was 27% and at the closure of FY 2020-21 was 30%. Therefore, during the year he has increased holding by (30-27=3%).

However, netting is not permitted under Takeover Regulations, therefore if you add all acquisitions i.e. 3%, 1%, 3%, it amounts to 7%. Therefore, the 4th transaction whereby Mr. A further acquires 3% would trigger the Open offer requirements.

(b) Incremental voting rights in case of fresh issue

In the case of acquisition of shares by way of issue of new shares by the target company, the difference between the pre-allotment and the post-allotment percentage voting rights shall be regarded as the quantum of additional acquisition. **[Regulation 3(2)]**

Question:

What is the basis of computation of the creeping acquisitions limit under Regulation 3(2) of Takeover Regulations 2011?

Answer:

For computing acquisitions limits for creeping acquisition specified under regulation 3(2), gross acquisitions/purchases shall be taken in to account thereby ignoring any intermittent fall in shareholding or voting rights whether owing to disposal of shares or dilution of voting rights on account of fresh issue of shares by the target company. SEBI in the interpretative letter dated 18th September, 2015 issued under the SEBI (Informal Guidance) Scheme, 2003 as requested by M/s Adani Properties Private Limited has held that an exempt acquisition would not be counted towards computing acquisitions on a gross basis.

Acquisition of shares by any person, such that the individual shareholding of such person acquiring shares exceed the stipulated thresholds, shall also be attracting the obligation to make an open offer for acquiring shares of the target company irrespective of where there is a change in the aggregate shareholding with persons action in concert. **[Regulation 3(3)]**

Example:

Mr. A is contemplating acquisition of XYZ Limited, a listed entity. He presently holds 23% and his brother, who is having common objective holds 3%. Together their holding is 26%.

Mr. A, in view of creeping acquisition limits, desires to further acquire 3% assuming the 5% ceiling in every financial year.

Answer:

In view of Regulation 3(3) as discussed above, though together they hold 26% and can avail 5% ceiling, but in case Mr. A on individual basis crossing the threshold of 25% or more (since presently he holds 23% and further contemplates to acquire 3% more), he will be required to make open offer.

However, in given case, if his brother only acquires 3% and increase their total holding to 29% then their will be no requirement of Open Offer.

This entire Regulation shall not apply to acquisition of shares or voting rights of a company by the promoters or shareholders in control, in terms of the provisions of Schedule XX of the SEBI (Issue of Capital and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2018. **[Regulation 3(4)]**

Further for the purpose of this regulation, any reference to “twenty-five per cent” in case of listed entity which has listed its specified securities on Innovators Growth Platform shall be read as “forty-nine per cent”.

Acquisition of Control

Regulation 4 of the SEBI Takeover Regulations, 2011 specifies that if any acquirer acquires, directly or indirectly, control over the Target Company irrespective of the fact whether there has been any acquisition of shares or not, then he has to give public announcement to acquire shares from shareholders of the Target Company.

Indirect Acquisition of Shares or control

The concept of Indirect acquisition of shares has been recognized under Regulation 5 of the SEBI Takeover Regulations, 2011. It explains indirect acquisition as the acquisition of shares, voting rights or control over any other company which would enable the acquirer of shares, voting rights or control to exercise such percentage of voting rights, which would otherwise have triggered an open offer process over which would enable the acquirer to exercise control over a company.

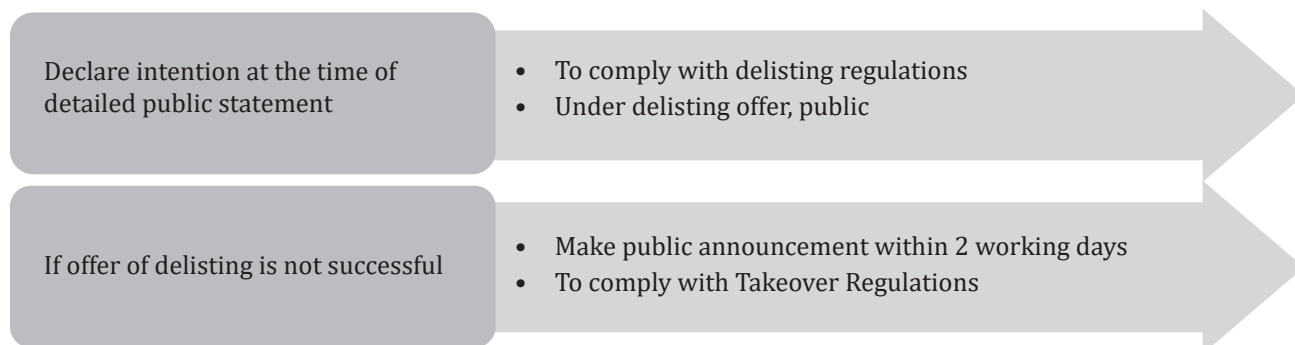
Certain indirect acquisitions are regarded as 'deemed direct acquisitions' if such indirect acquisition satisfy the following conditions such as:



The 'deemed direct acquisition' has to follow the same mandatory open offer related requirements as a direct acquisition of shares, voting rights or control.

Delisting Offer

Acquirer may opt to delist the target listed company by declaring such intention upfront.



In case of delisting offer not being successful, the timelines will be revised from such Public Announcement

AND

Acquirer will be required to enhance the offer price for the difference of days between the actual date of payment as per open offer and the revised date of payment (at the rate of 10% p.a.)

Regulation 5A deals with delisting in case of certain cases arising out of open offer which is discussed below:

In the event the acquirer makes a public announcement of an open offer for acquiring shares of a target company in terms of regulations 3, 4 or 5, he may delist the company in accordance with provisions of the SEBI (Delisting of Equity Shares) Regulations, 2009, but the acquirer shall have declared upfront his intention to so delist at the time of making the detailed public statement and a subsequent declaration of delisting for the purpose of the offer proposed to be made under sub regulation (1) of regulation 5A will not suffice.

Intention to delist shall be disclosed upfront i.e. shall be published in the detailed public statement. Subsequent intention will not be accepted

Where an offer made is not successful-

- (i) On account of non-receipt of prior approval of shareholders in terms of regulation 8(1)(b) of SEBI (Delisting of Equity Shares) Regulations, 2009; or
- (ii) In terms of regulation 17 of SEBI (Delisting of Equity Shares) Regulations, 2009; or
- (iii) On account of the acquirer rejecting the discovered price determined by the book building process in terms of regulation 16(1) of SEBI (Delisting of Equity Shares) Regulations, 2009,

the acquirer shall make an announcement within 2 working days in respect of such failure in all the newspapers in which the detailed public statement was made and shall comply with all applicable provisions of these regulations.

In the event of failure of the delisting offer, the open offer obligations shall be fulfilled by the acquirer in the following manner:

- (i) the acquirer, through the manager to the open offer, shall within five working days from the date of the announcement, file with the SEBI, a draft of the letter of offer; and
- (ii) shall comply with all other applicable provisions of these regulations.

However, the offer price shall stand enhanced by an amount equal to a sum determined at the rate of ten per cent per annum for the period between the scheduled date of payment of consideration to the shareholders and the actual date of payment of consideration to the shareholders.

Explanation: For the purpose of this sub-regulation, scheduled date shall be the date on which the payment of consideration ought to have been made to the shareholders in terms of the timelines in these regulations.

Where a competing offer is made -

- (a) the acquirer shall not be entitled to delist the company;
- (b) the acquirer shall not be liable to pay interest to the shareholders on account of delay due to competing offer;
- (c) the acquirer shall comply with all the applicable provisions of these regulations and make an announcement in this regard, within two working days from the date of public announcement made, in all the newspapers in which the detailed public statement was made.

Shareholders who have tendered shares in acceptance of the offer, shall be entitled to withdraw such shares tendered, within 10 working days from the date of the announcement. Shareholders who have not tendered their shares in acceptance of the offer shall be entitled to tender their shares in acceptance of the offer made under these regulations.

II. Voluntary Offer

Voluntary Offer means the Open Offer given by the acquirer voluntarily without triggering the mandatory Open Offer obligations as envisaged under these regulations. Voluntary Offers are an important means for substantial shareholders to consolidate their stake and therefore recognized the need to introduce a specific framework for such Open Offers.

Regulation 6 of the Takeover Regulations provides the threshold and conditions for making the Voluntary Open Offer which are detailed below:

Prior holding of at least 25 % shares and shareholding of the acquirer and persons acting in concert (PAC) post completion of Open Offer

An acquirer, who together with persons acting in concert with him, holds shares or voting rights in a target company entitling them to exercise twenty-five per cent or more but less than the maximum permissible non-public shareholding, shall be entitled to voluntarily make a public announcement of an open offer for acquiring shares in accordance with these regulations, subject to their aggregate shareholding after completion of the open offer not exceeding the maximum permissible non-public shareholding.

Therefore, under Voluntary Offer the size of the Offer would be as such that the minimum public shareholding shall be maintained even after acquisition of shares by the Acquirer.

Further for the purpose of this regulation, any reference to “twenty-five per cent” in case of listed entity which has listed its specified securities on Innovators Growth Platform shall be read as “forty-nine per cent”.

Acquisition of shares prior to the voluntary open offer

However, where an acquirer or any person acting in concert with him has acquired shares of the target company in the preceding fifty-two weeks without attracting the obligation to make a public announcement of an open offer, he shall not be eligible to voluntarily make a public announcement of an open offer for acquiring shares under this regulation.

Prohibition on the acquisition of shares during the Offer Period

SEBI Takeover Regulations, 2011 prohibits the acquirer who has made a Voluntary Open Offer from further acquiring the shares during the Offer Period otherwise than under the Open Offer.

Restriction of the acquisition of shares after completion of open offer

An acquirer and persons acting in concert with him, who have made a public announcement under this regulation to acquire shares of a target company shall not be entitled to acquire any shares of the target company for a period of six months after completion of the open offer except pursuant to another voluntary open offer.

However, such restriction shall not prohibit the acquirer from making a competing offer upon any other person making an open offer for acquiring shares of the target company. Shares acquired through bonus issue or stock splits shall not be considered for purposes of the dis-entitlement set out in this regulation.

Wilful Defaulter

No person who is a wilful defaulter shall make a public announcement of an open offer for acquiring shares or enter into any transaction that would attract the obligation to make a public announcement of an open offer for acquiring shares under these regulations.

However, this regulation shall not prohibit the wilful defaulter from making a competing offer in accordance with regulation 20 of these regulations upon any other person making an open offer for acquiring shares of the target company.

Therefore, for willful defaulter the only route available is making competing offer.

Fugitive Economic Offender

Notwithstanding anything contained in these regulations, no person who is a fugitive economic offender shall make a public announcement of an open offer or make a competing offer for acquiring shares or enter into any transaction, either directly or indirectly, for acquiring any shares or voting rights or control of a target company.

Key differences between Compulsory and Voluntary Open Offer

Particulars	Compulsory Open Offer	Voluntary Open Offer
Eligibility	Can be triggered through both direct and indirect acquisition.	Can be triggered by acquirer holding in excess of 25% or more. Further the acquirer or PAC should not have acquired shares of target Company without the obligation to make mandatory offer during the preceding 52 weeks
Applicability	On crossing the threshold or the creeping acquisition or by way of control	No such applicability is required
Minimum size of Open Offer	Minimum size shall be 26% of the total shares of the target company	Minimum size shall be 10% of the total shares of the target company

MINIMUM OFFER SIZE

The minimum offer size for an open offer is as under:

Open offer when triggered	Minimum open offer size
Direct acquisition under Regulation 3 & 4 or Indirect acquisition under Regulation 5	26% of the total shares of the Target Company as on the 10th working day from the closure of the tendering period.
Voluntary under Regulation 6	10% of the voting rights in the Target Company of the company. The post offer shareholding of the Acquirer and PACs in such case shall not exceed the maximum permissible non-public shareholding.

CONDITIONAL OFFER

An offer in which the acquirer has stipulated a minimum level of acceptance is known as a conditional offer.

Minimum level of acceptance implies minimum number of shares which the acquirer desires under the said conditional offer. If the number of shares validly tendered in the conditional offer, are less than the minimum level of acceptance stipulated by the acquirer, then the acquirer is not bound to accept any shares under the offer. In a conditional offer, if the minimum level of acceptance is not reached, the acquirer shall not acquire any shares in the target company under the open offer or the Share Purchase Agreement which has triggered the open offer.

PUBLIC ANNOUNCEMENT

SEBI (SAST) Regulation, 2011 provides that whenever acquirer acquires the shares or voting rights of the Target Company in excess of the limits prescribed under these Regulations, Acquirer is required to give a Public Announcement of an Open Offer to the shareholder of the Target Company as stated under Regulation 13. During the process of making the Public Announcement of an Open Offer, the Acquirer is required to give Public Announcement and publish Detailed Public Statement. The regulations have prescribed separate timelines for Public Announcement as well as for Detailed Public Statement.

- I. Public Announcement
- II. Detailed Public Statement

Timing of Public Announcement

The Public Announcement shall be sent to all the stock exchanges on which the shares of the target company are listed. Further, a copy of the same shall also be sent to the SEBI and to the target company at its registered office within one working day of the date of the public announcement. The time within which the Public Announcement is required to be made to the Stock Exchanges under different circumstances is tabulated below:

PUBLIC ANNOUNCEMENT		
Regulation	Particulars of Compliances	Time frame within which it shall be complied
13(1)	Agreement to acquire shares or voting rights or control over the Target Company.	On the same day of entering into agreement to acquire share, voting rights or control over the Target Company.
13(2)(a)	Market Purchase of shares.	Prior to the placement of purchase order with the stock broker to acquire the shares.
13(2)(b)	Acquisition pursuant to conversion of Convertible Securities without a fixed date of conversion or upon conversion of depository receipts for the underlying shares of the target company.	On the same day when the option to convert such securities into shares of the target company is exercised.

13(2)(c)	Acquiring shares or voting rights or control pursuant to conversion of Convertible Securities with a fixed date of conversion.	On the second working day preceding the scheduled date of conversion of such securities into shares of the target company.
13(2)(d)	In case of disinvestment.	On the date of execution of agreement for acquisition of shares or voting rights or control over the target company.
13(2)(e)	In case of Indirect Acquisition of shares or voting rights in, or control over the target company where none of the parameters mentioned in Regulation 5(2) are met.	At any time within four working days of the following dates, whichever is earlier: a. When the primary acquisition is contracted; and b. Date on which the intention or decision to make the primary acquisition is announced in the public domain.
13(2)(f)	In case of Indirect Acquisition of shares or voting rights in, or control over the target company where any of the parameters mentioned in Regulation 5(2) is / are met.	On the following dates, whichever is earlier: a. When the primary acquisition is contracted; and b. Date on which the intention or decision to make the primary acquisition is announced in the public domain.
13(2)(g)	Acquisition of shares, voting rights or control over the Target Company pursuant to an Preferential Issue.	On the date when the board of directors of the target company authorizes such preferential issue.
13(2)(h)	An increase in voting rights consequential to a buy-back not qualifying for exemption under Regulation 10.	Not later than the 90th day from the date of closure of the buy-back offer by the target company.
13(2)(i)	Acquisition of shares, voting rights or control over the Target Company where the specific date on which title to such shares, voting rights or control is acquired is beyond the control of the acquirer.	Not later than two working days from the date of receipt of such intimation of having acquired such title.
13(2A)	Pursuant to regulation 3 and regulation 4 for a proposed acquisition of shares or voting rights in or control over the target company through a combination of, (i) an agreement and any one or more modes of acquisition referred to in sub-regulation (2) of regulation 13, or (ii) any one or more modes of acquisition referred in clause (a) to (i) of sub-regulation (2) of regulation 13.	On the date of first such acquisition. (Provided the acquirer discloses in the public announcement the details of the proposed subsequent acquisition.)
13(3)	Voluntary Offer.	On the same day when the Acquirer decides to make Voluntary Offer.

Timing of Detailed Public Statement

In terms of Regulation 13(4) of SEBI (SAST) Regulations, 2011, a Detailed Public Statement shall be published by the acquirer through the Manager to the Open Offer, not later than 5 working days of the Public Announcement.

However, in case of Indirect Acquisition where none of condition specified in Regulation 5(2) are satisfied, the Detailed Public Statement shall be published not later than five working days of the completion of the primary acquisition of shares or voting rights in or control over the company or entity holding shares or voting rights in, or control over the target company.

Publication of Public Announcement and Detailed Public Statement

Regulation 14 of SEBI (SAST) Regulation, 2011 provides the requirements relating to publication of Public Announcement and Detailed Public Statement which are tabulated below :

Regulation	Particulars of Compliances	Time frame within which it shall be complied
14(1)	Public Announcement shall be sent to the Stock Exchange, all the stock exchanges and same information disseminate to public.	On the same day
14(2)	Copy of Public Announcement shall also be sent to the SEBI and target company at its Registered Office	Within one working day of the date of the public announcement
14(3)	Detailed Public Statement pursuant to the public announcement shall be published in all Editions of any one of English Newspaper, any one Hindi Newspaper and any one regional language newspaper, where the registered office of the target company is situated and any one regional language newspaper at place of stock exchange where highest volume of trading in shares of the target company are recorded during the sixty trading days preceding the date of the public announcement.	Within 5 working days from the date of Public Announcement
14(4)	Within the publication of such detailed public statement in the newspapers, a copy of the same shall be sent to - a) SEBI through the manager to the open offer ; b) All the stock exchanges on which the shares of the target company are listed and the stock exchanges shall forthwith disseminate such information to the public; c) the target company at its registered office and the target company shall forthwith circulate it to the members of its board.	Immediately

OFFER PRICE

Offer price is the price at which the acquirer announces to acquire shares from the public shareholders under the open offer.

- (1) The offer price shall not be less than the price as calculated under regulation 8 of the SAST Regulations, 2011 for frequently or infrequently traded shares.
- (2) In the case of direct acquisition of shares or voting rights in, or control over the target company, and indirect acquisition of shares or voting rights in, or control over the target company where the parameters referred to in sub-regulation (2) of regulation 5 are met, the offer price shall be the highest of,—
 - (a) the highest negotiated price per share of the target company for any acquisition under the agreement attracting the obligation to make a public announcement of an open offer;
 - (b) the volume-weighted average price paid or payable for acquisitions, whether by the acquirer or by any person acting in concert with him, during the fifty-two weeks immediately preceding the date of the public announcement;

- (c) the highest price paid or payable for any acquisition, whether by the acquirer or by any person acting in concert with him, during the twenty-six weeks immediately preceding the date of the public announcement;
 - (d) the volume-weighted average market price of such shares for a period of sixty trading days immediately preceding the date of the public announcement as traded on the stock exchange where the maximum volume of trading in the shares of the target company are recorded during such period, provided such shares are frequently traded;
 - (e) where the shares are not frequently traded, the price determined by the acquirer and the manager to the open offer taking into account valuation parameters including, book value, comparable trading multiples, and such other parameters as are customary for valuation of shares of such companies; and
 - (f) the per share value computed under sub-regulation (5), if applicable.
- (3) In the case of an indirect acquisition of shares or voting rights in, or control over the target company, where the parameter referred to in sub-regulation (2) of regulation 5 are not met, the offer price shall be the highest of, –
 - (a) the highest negotiated price per share, if any, of the target company for any acquisition under the agreement attracting the obligation to make a public announcement of an open offer;
 - (b) the volume-weighted average price paid or payable for any acquisition, whether by the acquirer or by any person acting in concert with him, during the fifty-two weeks immediately preceding the earlier of, the date on which the primary acquisition is contracted, and the date on which the intention or the decision to make the primary acquisition is announced in the public domain;
 - (c) the highest price paid or payable for any acquisition, whether by the acquirer or by any person acting in concert with him, during the twenty-six weeks immediately preceding the earlier of, the date on which the primary acquisition is contracted, and the date on which the intention or the decision to make the primary acquisition is announced in the public domain;
 - (d) the highest price paid or payable for any acquisition, whether by the acquirer or by any person acting in concert with him, between the earlier of, the date on which the primary acquisition is contracted, and the date on which the intention or the decision to make the primary acquisition is announced in the public domain, and the date of the public announcement of the open offer for shares of the target company made under these regulations;
 - (e) the volume-weighted average market price of the shares for a period of sixty trading days immediately preceding the earlier of, the date on which the primary acquisition is contracted, and the date on which the intention or the decision to make the primary acquisition is announced in the public domain, as traded on the stock exchange where the maximum volume of trading in the shares of the target company are recorded during such period, provided such shares are frequently traded; and
 - (f) the per share value computed under sub-regulation (5).
- (4) In the event the offer price is incapable of being determined under any of the parameters specified in sub-regulation (3), without prejudice to the requirements of sub-regulation (5), the offer price shall be the fair price of shares of the target company to be determined by the acquirer and the manager to the open offer taking into account valuation parameters including, book value, comparable trading multiples, and such other parameters as are customary for valuation of shares of such companies.
- (5) In the case of an indirect acquisition and open offers under sub-regulation (2) of regulation 5 where,–
 - (a) the proportionate net asset value of the target company as a percentage of the consolidated net asset value of the entity or business being acquired;
 - (b) the proportionate sales turnover of the target company as a percentage of the consolidated sales turnover of the entity or business being acquired; or
 - (c) the proportionate market capitalization of the target company as a percentage of the enterprise value for the entity or business being acquired;

is in excess of fifteen per cent, on the basis of the most recent audited annual financial statements, the acquirer shall, notwithstanding anything contained in sub-regulation (2) or sub-regulation (3), be required to compute and disclose, in the letter of offer, the per share value of the target company taken into account for the acquisition, along with a detailed description of the methodology adopted for such computation.

Explanation. – For the purposes of computing the percentages referred to in clause (c) of this sub-regulation, the market capitalisation of the target company shall be taken into account on the basis of the volume-weighted average market price of such shares on the stock exchange for a period of sixty trading days preceding the earlier of, the date on which the primary acquisition is contracted, and the date on which the intention or the decision to make the primary acquisition is announced in the public domain, as traded on the stock exchange where the maximum volume of trading in the shares of the target company are recorded during such period.

- (6) For the purposes of sub-regulation (2) and sub-regulation (3), where the acquirer or any person acting in concert with him has any outstanding convertible instruments convertible into shares of the target company at a specific price, the price at which such instruments are to be converted into shares, shall also be considered as a parameter under sub-regulation (2) and sub-regulation (3).
- (7) For the purposes of sub-regulation (2) and sub-regulation (3), the price paid for shares of the target company shall include any price paid or agreed to be paid for the shares or voting rights in, or control over the target company, in any form whatsoever, whether stated in the agreement for acquisition of shares or in any incidental, contemporaneous or collateral agreement, whether termed as control premium or as non-compete fees or otherwise.
- (8) Where the acquirer has acquired or agreed to acquire whether by himself or through or with persons acting in concert with him any shares or voting rights in the target company during the offer period, whether by subscription or purchase, at a price higher than the offer price, the offer price shall stand revised to the highest price paid or payable for any such acquisition.

However, no such acquisition shall be made after the third working day prior to the commencement of the tendering period and until the expiry of the tendering period.

- (9) The price parameters under sub-regulation (2) and sub-regulation (3) may be adjusted by the acquirer in consultation with the manager to the offer, for corporate actions such as issuances pursuant to rights issue, bonus issue, stock consolidations, stock splits, payment of dividend, de-mergers and reduction of capital, where the record date for effecting such corporate actions falls prior to three working days before the commencement of the tendering period.

However, no adjustment shall be made for dividend declared with a record date falling during such period except where the dividend per share is more than five per cent higher than the average of the dividend per share paid during the three financial years preceding the date of the public announcement.

- (10) Where the acquirer or persons acting in concert with him acquires shares of the target company during the period of twenty-six weeks after the tendering period at a price higher than the offer price under these regulations, the acquirer and persons acting in concert shall pay the difference between the highest acquisition price and the offer price, to all the shareholders whose shares were accepted in the open offer, within sixty days from the date of such acquisition:

However, this provision shall not be applicable to acquisitions under another open offer under these regulations or pursuant to the SEBI (Delisting of Equity Shares) Regulations, 2009, or open market purchases made in the ordinary course on the stock exchanges, not being negotiated acquisition of shares of the target company whether by way of bulk deals, block deals or in any other form.

- (11) Where the open offer is subject to a minimum level of acceptances, the acquirer may, subject to the other provisions of this regulation, indicate a lower price, which will not be less than the price determined under this regulation, for acquiring all the acceptances despite the acceptance falling short of the indicated minimum level of acceptance, in the event the open offer does not receive the minimum acceptance.
- (12) In the case of any indirect acquisition, other than the indirect acquisition referred in sub-regulation (2) of regulation 5, the offer price shall stand enhanced by an amount equal to a sum determined at the rate of ten

per cent per annum for the period between the earlier of the date on which the primary acquisition is contracted or the date on which the intention or the decision to make the primary acquisition is announced in the public domain, and the date of the detailed public statement, provided such period is more than five working days.

- (13) The offer price for partly paid up shares shall be computed as the difference between the offer price and the amount due towards calls-in-arrears including calls remaining unpaid with interest, if any, thereon.
- (14) The offer price for equity shares carrying differential voting rights shall be determined by the acquirer and the manager to the open offer with full disclosure of justification for the price so determined, being set out in the detailed public statement and the letter of offer.

However, such price shall not be lower than the amount determined by applying the percentage rate of premium, if any, that the offer price for the equity shares carrying full voting rights represents to the price parameter computed under clause (d) of sub-regulation 2, or as the case may be, clause (e) of sub-regulation 3, to the volume-weighted average market price of the shares carrying differential voting rights for a period of sixty trading days computed on the same terms as specified in the aforesaid provisions, subject to shares carrying full voting rights and the shares carrying differential voting rights, both being frequently traded shares.

- (15) In the event of any of the price parameters contained in this regulation not being available or denominated in Indian rupees, the conversion of such amount into Indian rupees shall be effected at the exchange rate as prevailing on the date preceding the date of public announcement and the acquirer shall set out the source of such exchange rate in the public announcement, the detailed public statement and the letter of offer.
- (16) For purposes of clause (e) of sub-regulation (2) and sub-regulation (4), the SEBI may, at the expense of the acquirer, require valuation of the shares by an independent merchant banker other than the manager to the open offer or an independent chartered accountant in practice having a minimum experience of ten years.

FILING OF LETTER OF OFFER WITH THE SEBI

The Acquirer shall submit a draft letter of offer to the SEBI within 5 working days from the date of detailed public statement along with a non-refundable fee as applicable. **[Regulation 16(1)]**

Simultaneously, a copy of the draft letter of offer shall be send to the Target Company at its registered office and to all the Stock Exchanges where the shares of the Company are listed. **[Regulation 18(1)]**

Sr. No.	Consideration payable under the Open Offer	Fees (Rs.)
1.	Up to ten crore rupees	Five lakh rupees (Rs. 5,00,000)
2.	More than ten crore rupees but less than or equal to one thousand crore rupees	0.5 per cent of the offer size
3.	More than one thousand crore rupees	Five crore rupees (Rs. 5,00,00,000) plus 0.125 per cent of the portion of the offer size in excess of one thousand crore rupees (1000,00,00,000)

The consideration payable under the open offer shall be calculated at the offer price, assuming full acceptance of the open offer, and in the event the open offer is subject to differential pricing, shall be computed at the highest offer price, irrespective of manner of payment of the consideration.

However in the event of consideration payable under the open offer being enhanced owing to a revision to the offer price or offer size the fees payable shall stand revised accordingly, and shall be paid within five working days from the date of such revision.

DISPATCH OF LETTER OF OFFER

The Acquirer shall ensure that the letter of offer is dispatched to the shareholders whose names appear on the register of members of the Target Company as of the identified date, not later than 7 working days from the date of receipt of communication of comments from the SEBI or where no comments are offered by the SEBI, within 7 working days from the expiry of 15 working days from the date of receipt of draft letter of offer by SEBI.

Explanation

- (i) Letter of offer may also be dispatched through electronic mode in accordance with the provisions of Companies Act, 2013.
- (ii) On receipt of a request from any shareholder to receive a copy of the letter of offer in physical format, the same shall be provided.
- (iii) The aforesaid shall be disclosed in the letter of offer.

Simultaneously with the dispatch of the letter of offer to Shareholders, the acquirer shall send the letter of offer to the custodian of shares underlying depository receipts, if any, of the target company. **[Regulation 18(3)]**

The target company shall furnish to the acquirer within two working days from the identified date, a list of shareholders as per the register of members of the target company containing names, addresses, shareholding and folio number, in electronic form, wherever available, and a list of persons whose applications, if any, for registration of transfer of shares are pending with the target company.

However, the acquirer shall reimburse reasonable costs payable by the target company to external agencies in order to furnish such information.

However, it is provided that where a shareholder holding less than 5% of the voting rights of the Target Company is resident outside India and local laws or regulations of such jurisdiction may expose the acquirer or the target company to material risk of civil, regulatory or criminal liabilities in the event, then the letter of offer in its final form were to be sent without material amendments or modifications into such jurisdiction, then the acquirer may refrain from dispatch of the letter of offer into such jurisdiction. **[Regulation 18(2)]**

OPENING OF THE OFFER

The tendering period shall start not later than 12 working days from date of receipt of comments from SEBI and shall remain open for 10 working days. **[Regulation 18(8)]**

Shareholders who have tendered shares in acceptance of the open offer shall not be entitled to withdraw such acceptance during the tendering period. **[Regulation 18(9)]**

COMPLETION OF REQUIREMENTS

Within 10 working days from the last date of the tendering period, the acquirer shall complete all requirements as prescribed under these regulations and other applicable law relating to the Open Offer including payment of consideration to the shareholders who have accepted the open offer. **[Regulation 18(10)]**

PROCESS AT GLANCE

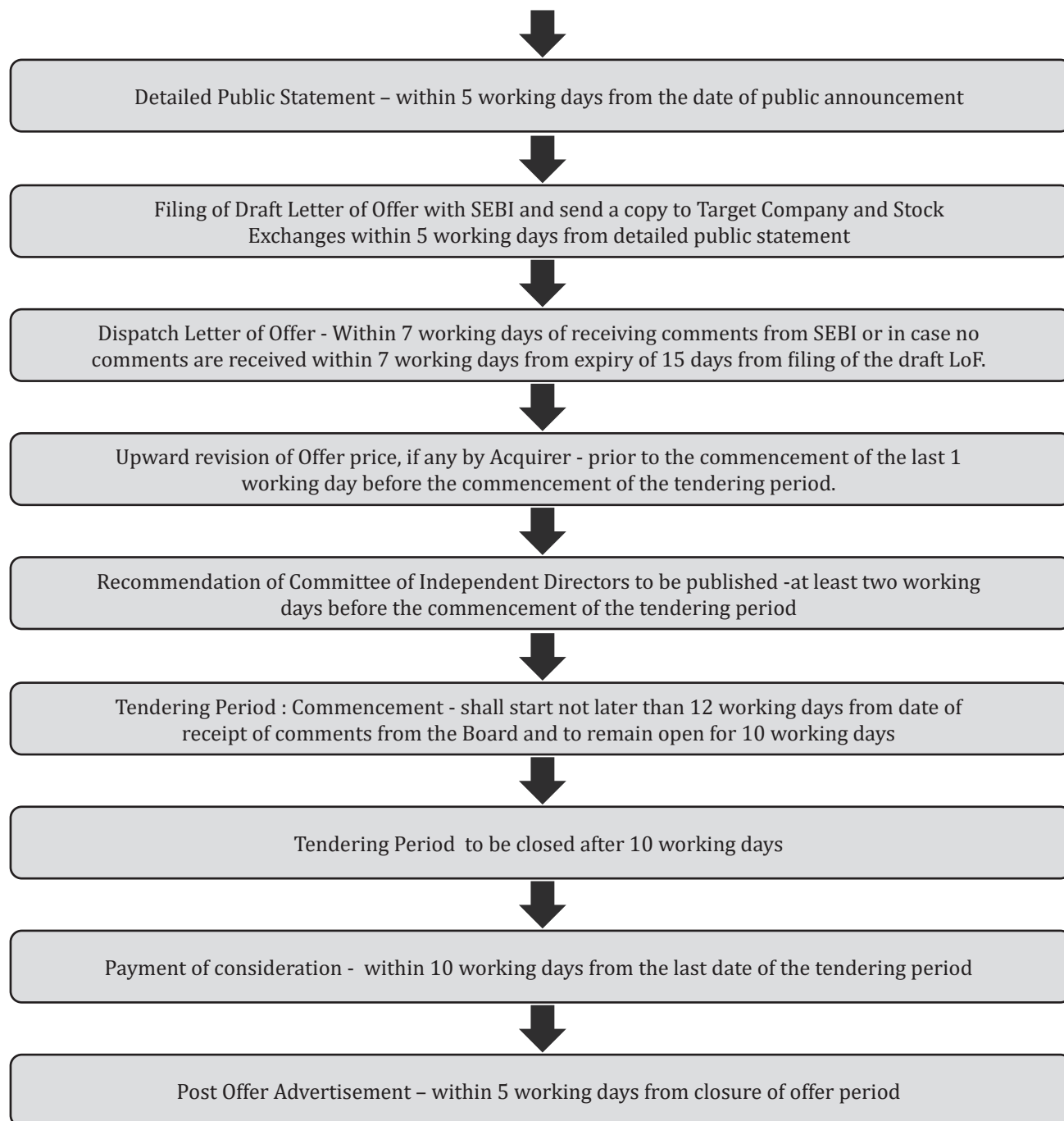
Appointment of Merchant Banker prior to Public Announcement (PA)



Public Announcement depending on transaction



Opening of Escrow Account - 2 working days prior to the date of the detailed public statement



OBLIGATIONS ON FURTHER ACQUISITION

If the acquirer or persons acting in concert (PAC) with him acquires shares of the target company during the period of 26 weeks after the tendering period at a price higher than the offer price, then the acquirer and PAC shall pay the difference between the highest acquisition price and the offer price, to all the shareholders whose shares were accepted in the open offer, within 60 days from the date of such acquisition.

However, such provisions shall not be applicable if the acquisition is made through another open offer under these regulations or pursuant to the SEBI (Delisting of Equity Shares) Regulations, 2009 or open market purchase in the

ordinary course on the stock exchange not being negotiated acquisition of shares of the target company whether by way of bulk deals, block deals or in any other form. **[Regulation 8(10)]**

COMPLETION OF ACQUISITION

The acquirer shall not complete the acquisition of shares or voting rights in, or control over, the target company, whether by way of subscription to shares or a purchase of shares attracting the obligation to make an open offer for acquiring shares, until the expiry of the offer period, provided that in case of an offer made under sub-regulation (1) of regulation 20, pursuant to a preferential allotment, the offer shall be completed within the period as provided under sub-regulation (1) of regulation 170 of Securities and Exchange Board of India (Issue of Capital and Disclosure) **Regulations, 2018.**

In case of a delisting offer made under regulation 5A, the acquirer shall complete the acquisition of shares attracting the obligation to make an offer for acquiring shares in terms of regulations 3, 4 or 5, only after making the public announcement regarding the success of the delisting proposal made in terms of sub-regulation (1) regulation 18 of Securities and Exchange Board of India (Delisting of Equity Shares) Regulations, 2009.

Example-

Mr. A agreed to purchase shares of XYZ Limited, listed entity pursuant to Share Purchase Agreement (SPA) and accordingly made open offer. However, he cannot complete the transactions as agreed in the SPA till completion of open offer

EXCEPTION TO ABOVE:

Subject to the acquirer depositing in the escrow account, cash of an amount equal to the entire consideration payable under the open offer assuming full acceptance of the open offer, the parties to such agreement may after the expiry of twenty-one working days from the date of detailed public statement, act upon the agreement and the acquirer may complete the acquisition of shares or voting rights in, or control over the target company as contemplated.

An acquirer may acquire shares of the target company through preferential issue or through the stock exchange settlement process subject to such shares being kept in an escrow account. The acquirer shall not exercise any voting rights on the shares kept in the escrow account.

DISCLOSURES FOR ACQUISITION DURING OFFER PERIOD

The acquirer shall disclose during the offer period every acquisition made by the acquirer or persons acting in concert with him of any shares of the target company in such form as may be specified, to each of the stock exchanges on which the shares of the target company are listed and to the target company at its registered office within twenty-four hours of such acquisition, and the stock exchanges shall forthwith disseminate such information to the public.

However the acquirer and persons acting in concert with him shall not acquire or sell any shares of the target company during the period between three working days prior to the commencement of the tendering period and until the expiry of the tendering period.

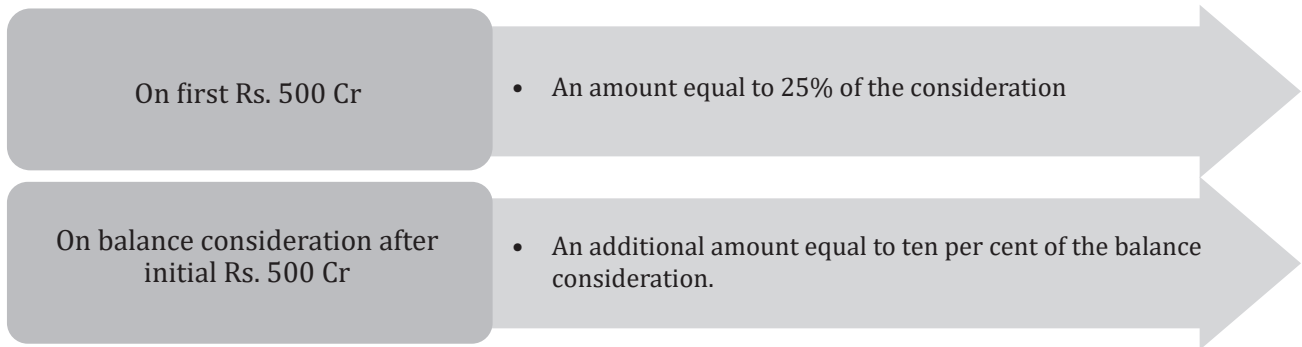
PAYMENT OF INTEREST IN CASE OF DELAY

In case the acquirer is unable to make payment to the shareholders who have accepted the open offer within such period, the acquirer shall pay interest for the period of delay to all such shareholders whose shares have been accepted in the open offer, at the rate of ten per cent per annum. However, in case the delay was not attributable to any act of omission or commission of the acquirer, or due to the reasons or circumstances beyond the control of acquirer, the Board may grant waiver from the payment of interest.

Provided further that the payment of interest would be without prejudice to the SEBI taking any action under regulation 32 of these regulation or under the Act **[Regulation 18(11A)]**.

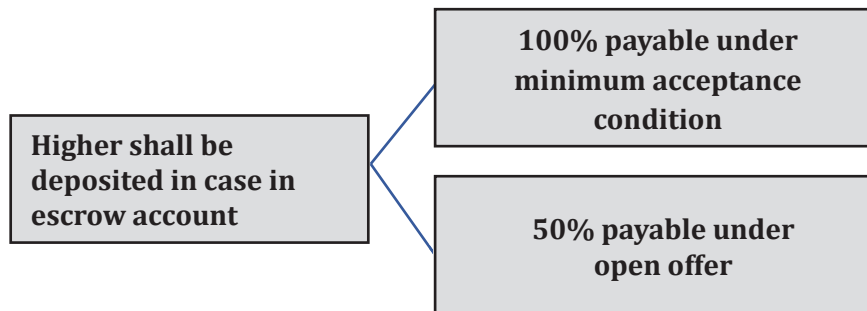
PROVISION OF ESCROW

Not later than two working days prior to the date of the detailed public statement of the open offer for acquiring shares, the acquirer shall create an escrow account towards security for performance of his obligations under these regulations, and deposit in escrow account such aggregate amount as per the following scale:



Requirement for Conditional Offer

However, where an open offer is made conditional upon minimum level of acceptance, hundred per cent of the consideration payable in respect of minimum level of acceptance or fifty per cent of the consideration payable under the open offer, whichever is higher, shall be deposited in cash in the escrow account.



Requirement for Indirect Acquisition

In case of indirect acquisitions where public announcement has been made in terms of clause (e) of sub-regulation (2) of regulation 13 of these regulations i.e. indirect acquisition where none of the parameters of Regulation 5 (2) are met, an amount equivalent to hundred per cent of the consideration payable in the open offer shall be deposited in the escrow account.

The escrow account may be kept in following form –



Regulation 17 (3) prescribes that the escrow account may be in the form of, –

- cash deposited with any scheduled commercial bank;
- bank guarantee issued in favour of the manager to the open offer by any scheduled commercial bank; or
- deposit of frequently traded and freely transferable equity shares or other freely transferable securities with appropriate margin.

However, deposit of securities shall not be permitted in respect of indirect acquisitions where public announcement has been made.

Explanation : The cash component of the escrow account as referred to in clause (a) above may be maintained in an interest bearing account, subject to the merchant banker ensuring that the funds are available at the time of making payment to the shareholders.

In the event of the escrow account being created by way of a bank guarantee or by deposit of securities, the acquirer shall also ensure that at least one per cent of the total consideration payable is deposited in cash with a scheduled commercial bank as a part of the escrow account.

For such part of the escrow account as is in the form of a cash deposit with a scheduled commercial bank, the acquirer shall while opening the account, empower the manager to the open offer to instruct the bank to issue a banker's cheque or demand draft or to make payment of the amounts lying to the credit of the escrow account, in accordance with requirements under these regulations.

For such part of the escrow account as is in the form of a bank guarantee, such bank guarantee shall be in favour of the manager to the open offer and shall be kept valid throughout the offer period and for an additional period of thirty days after completion of payment of consideration to shareholders who have tendered their shares in acceptance of the open offer.

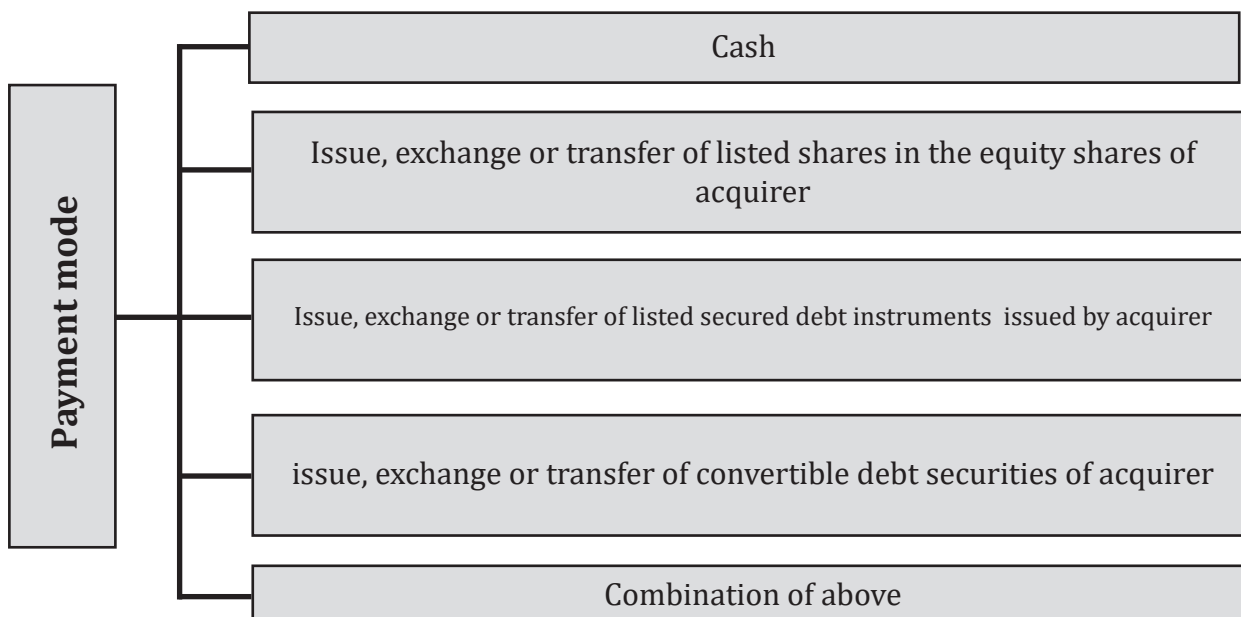
For such part of the escrow account as is in the form of securities, the acquirer shall empower the manager to the open offer to realise the value of such escrow account by sale or otherwise, and in the event there is any shortfall in the amount required to be maintained in the escrow account, the manager to the open offer shall be liable to make good such shortfall.

The manager to the open offer shall not release the escrow account until the expiry of thirty days from the completion of payment of consideration to shareholders who have tendered their shares in acceptance of the open offer, save and except for transfer of funds to the special escrow account as required under regulation 21.

Forfeiture of Escrow Account

In the event of non-fulfillment of obligations under these regulations by the acquirer the Board may direct the manager to the open offer to forfeit the escrow account or any amounts lying in the special escrow account, either in full or in part.

MODE OF PAYMENT



Certain case requires only cash mode payment

However, where any shares have been acquired or agreed to be acquired by the acquirer and persons acting in concert with him during the fifty-two weeks immediately preceding the date of public announcement constitute more than ten per cent of the voting rights in the target company and has been paid for in cash, the open offer shall entail an option to the shareholders to require payment of the offer price in cash, and a shareholder who has not exercised an option in his acceptance shall be deemed to have opted for receiving the offer price in cash.

Amount to be deposited in case of revision of offer

In case of revision in offer price the mode of payment of consideration may be altered subject to the condition that the component of the offer price to be paid in cash prior to such revision is not reduced.

Therefore, say Mr. A as an acquirer announced earlier offer for Rs. 50 Crore with cash mode only and subsequent to revision in offer price totaling to open offer for Rs. 70 Crore, he may alter the payment mode. However, he needs to ensure that earlier announced cash mode of Rs. 50 Crore shall not be reduced. For Balance Rs. 20 Crore he may opt for other mode of payment.

COMPETING OFFER

Upon a public announcement of an open offer for acquiring shares of a target company being made, any person, other than the acquirer who has made such public announcement, shall be entitled to make a public announcement of an open offer within fifteen working days of the date of the detailed public statement made by the acquirer who has made the first public announcement. [Regulation 20(1)]

However, the open offer made under this regulation shall be for such number of shares which, when taken together with shares held by such acquirer along with persons acting in concert with him, shall be at least equal to the holding of the acquirer who has made the first public announcement, including the number of shares proposed to be acquired by him under the offer and any underlying agreement for the sale of shares of the target company pursuant to which the open offer is made.

Revision of original offer in case of competing offer

Upon the public announcement of a competing offer, an acquirer who had made a preceding competing offer shall be entitled to revise the terms of his open offer provided the revised terms are more favourable to the shareholders of the target company.

However, the acquirers making the competing offers shall be entitled to make upward revisions of the offer price at any time up to one working day prior to the commencement of the tendering period.

Timelines in case of competing offer

The schedule of activities and the tendering period for all competing offers shall be carried out with identical timelines and the last date for tendering shares in acceptance of the every competing offer shall stand revised to the last date for tendering shares in acceptance of the competing offer last made.

The timeline i.e. starting from Public Announcement of Competing offer would be revised and accordingly will be extended including the tendering period.

WITHDRAWAL OF OPEN OFFER

An open offer for acquiring shares once made shall not be withdrawn except under any of the following circumstances,–

- (a) statutory approvals required for the open offer or for effecting the acquisitions attracting the obligation to make an open offer under these regulations having been finally refused, subject to such requirements for approval having been specifically disclosed in the detailed public statement and the letter of offer;

- (b) the acquirer, being a natural person, has died;
- (c) any condition stipulated in the agreement for acquisition attracting the obligation to make the open offer is not met for reasons outside the reasonable control of the acquirer, then it should be disclosed in the detailed public statement and the letter of offer; or

However, an acquirer shall not withdraw an open offer pursuant to a public announcement made under clause (g) of sub-regulation (2) of regulation 13 i.e. relating to preferential issue, even if the proposed acquisition through the preferential issue is not successful.

- (d) such circumstances as in the opinion of the SEBI, merit withdrawal.

SEBI shall pass a reasoned order permitting withdrawal and such order shall be listed by SEBI on its official website.

Obligations on withdrawal of offer

In the event of withdrawal of the open offer, the acquirer shall through the manager to the open offer, within two working days, –

- (a) make an announcement in the same newspapers in which the public announcement of the open offer was published, providing the grounds and reasons for withdrawal of the open offer; and
- (b) simultaneously with the announcement, inform in writing to,–
 - (i) SEBI;
 - (ii) all the stock exchanges on which the shares of the target company are listed, and the stock exchanges shall forthwith disseminate such information to the public; and
 - (iii) the target company at its registered office. **[Regulation 23]**

OBLIGATIONS OF THE TARGET COMPANY

- (1) Upon a public announcement of an open offer for acquiring shares of a target company being made, the board of directors of such target company shall ensure that during the offer period, the business of the target company is conducted in the ordinary course consistent with past practice.
- (2) During the offer period, unless the approval of shareholders of the target company by way of a special resolution by postal ballot is obtained, the board of directors of either the target company or any of its subsidiaries shall not, –
 - (a) alienate any material assets whether by way of sale, lease, encumbrance or otherwise or enter into any agreement therefore outside the ordinary course of business;
 - (b) effect any material borrowings outside the ordinary course of business;
 - (c) issue or allot any authorised but unissued securities entitling the holder to voting rights. However, the target company or its subsidiaries may, –
 - (i) issue or allot shares upon conversion of convertible securities issued prior to the public announcement of the open offer, in accordance with pre-determined terms of such conversion;
 - (ii) issue or allot shares pursuant to any public issue in respect of which the red herring prospectus has been filed with the Registrar of Companies prior to the public announcement of the open offer; or
 - (iii) issue or allot shares pursuant to any rights issue in respect of which the record date has been announced prior to the public announcement of the open offer;
 - (d) implement any buy-back of shares or effect any other change to the capital structure of the target company;
 - (e) enter into, amend or terminate any material contracts to which the target company or any of its subsidiaries is a party, outside the ordinary course of business, whether such contract is with a

related party, within the meaning of the term under applicable accounting principles, or with any other person; and

- (f) accelerate any contingent vesting of a right of any person to whom the target company or any of its subsidiaries may have an obligation, whether such obligation is to acquire shares of the target company by way of employee stock options or otherwise.
- (3) In any general meeting of a subsidiary of the target company in respect of the matters referred to in sub-regulation (2), the target company and its subsidiaries, if any, shall vote in a manner consistent with the special resolution passed by the shareholders of the target company.
- (4) The target company shall be prohibited from fixing any record date for a corporate action on or after the third working day prior to the commencement of the tendering period and until the expiry of the tendering period.
- (5) The target company shall furnish to the acquirer within two working days from the identified date, a list of shareholders as per the register of members of the target company containing names, addresses, shareholding and folio number, in electronic form, wherever available, and a list of persons whose applications, if any, for registration of transfer of shares are pending with the target company.

However, the acquirer shall reimburse reasonable costs payable by the target company to external agencies in order to furnish such information.

- (6) Upon receipt of the detailed public statement, the board of directors of the target company shall constitute a committee of independent directors to provide reasoned recommendations on such open offer, and the target company shall publish such recommendations.

However, such committee shall be entitled to seek external professional advice at the expense of the target company. Provided further that while providing reasoned recommendations on the open offer proposal, the committee shall disclose the voting pattern of the meeting in which the open offer proposal was discussed.

- (7) The committee of independent directors shall provide its written reasoned recommendations on the open offer to the shareholders of the target company and such recommendations shall be published in such form as may be specified, at least two working days before the commencement of the tendering period, in the same newspapers where the public announcement of the open offer was published, and simultaneously, a copy of the same shall be sent to, –
 - (i) the SEBI;
 - (ii) all the stock exchanges; and
 - (iii) to the manager to the open offer, and where there are competing offers, to the manager to the open offer for every competing offer.
- (8) The board of directors of the target company shall facilitate the acquirer in verification of shares tendered in acceptance of the open offer.
- (9) The board of directors of the target company shall make available to all acquirers making competing offers, any information and co-operation provided to any acquirer who has made a competing offer.
- (10) Upon fulfilment by the acquirer, of the conditions required under these regulations, the board of directors of the target company shall without any delay register the transfer of shares acquired by the acquirer in physical form, whether under the agreement or from open market purchases, or pursuant to the open offer.

Clarification: In case an acquirer or any person acting in concert with the acquirer who proposes to acquire shares under the offer is not eligible to acquire shares through stock exchange due to operation of any other law, such offers would follow the existing 'tender offer method. In case of competing offers under Regulation 20 of the Takeover Regulations, in order to have a level playing field, in the event one of the acquirers is ineligible to acquire shares through stock exchange mechanism, then all acquirers shall follow the existing 'tender offer method. [Circular No. CIR/CFD/POLICYCELL/1/2015 dated 13th April, 2015]

OBLIGATIONS OF THE ACQUIRER

- (1) Prior to making the public announcement of an open offer for acquiring shares under these regulations, the acquirer shall ensure that firm financial arrangements have been made for fulfilling the payment obligations under the open offer and that the acquirer is able to implement the open offer, subject to any statutory approvals for the open offer that may be necessary.
- (2) In the event the acquirer has not declared an intention in the detailed public statement and the letter of offer to alienate any material assets of the target company or of any of its subsidiaries whether by way of sale, lease, encumbrance or otherwise outside the ordinary course of business, the acquirer, where he has acquired control over the target company, shall be debarred from causing such alienation for a period of two years after the offer period.

However, in the event the target company or any of its subsidiaries is required to so alienate assets despite the intention to alienate not having been expressed by the acquirer, such alienation shall require a special resolution passed by shareholders of the target company, by way of a postal ballot and the notice for such postal ballot shall inter alia contain reasons as to why such alienation is necessary.

- (3) The acquirer shall ensure that the contents of the public announcement, the detailed public statement, the letter of off and the post-off advertisement are true, fair and adequate in all material aspects and not misleading in any material particular, and are based on reliable sources, and state the source wherever necessary.
- (4) The acquirer and persons acting in concert with him shall not sell shares of the target company held by them, during the offer period.
- (5) The acquirer and persons acting in concert with him shall be jointly and severally responsible for fulfilment of applicable obligations under these regulations.

OBLIGATIONS OF THE MANAGER TO THE OPEN OFFER

- (1) Prior to public announcement being made, the manager to the open offer shall ensure that,—
 - (a) the acquirer is able to implement the open offer; and
 - (b) firm arrangements for funds through verifiable means have been made by the acquirer to meet the payment obligations under the open offer.
- (2) The manager to the open offer shall ensure that the contents of the public announcement, the detailed public statement and the letter of offer and the post-offer advertisement are true, fair and adequate in all material aspects, not misleading in any material particular, are based on reliable sources, state the source wherever necessary, and are in compliance with the requirements under these regulations.
- (3) The manager to the open offer shall furnish to the Board a due diligence certificate along with the draft letter of offer filed under regulation 16.
- (4) The manager to the open offer shall ensure that market intermediaries engaged for the purposes of the open offer are registered with the Board.
- (5) The manager to the open offer shall exercise diligence, care and professional judgment to ensure compliance with these regulations.
- (6) The manager to the open offer shall not deal on his own account in the shares of the target company during the offer period.
- (7) The manager to the open offer shall file a report with the Board within fifteen working days from the expiry of the tendering period, in such form as may be specified, confirming status of completion of various open offer requirements.

DISCLOSURES

In the SEBI Takeover Regulations, 2011, the obligation to give the disclosures on the acquisition of certain limits, is only on the acquirer and not on the Target Company. Further as against the Open Offer obligations where the individual shareholding is also to be considered, the disclosure shall be of the aggregated shareholding and voting rights of the acquirer or promoter of the target company or every person acting in concert with him.

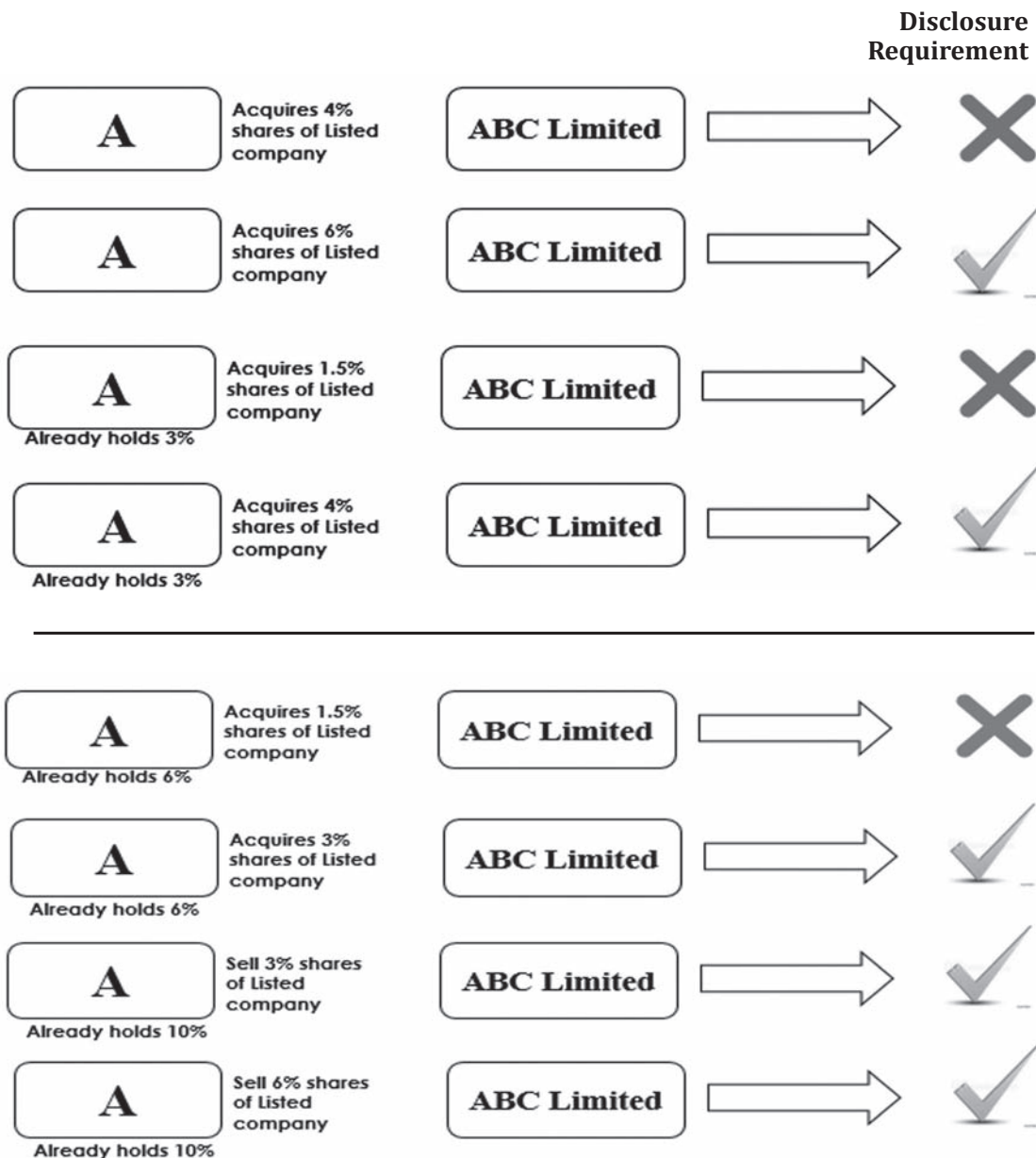
EVENT BASED DISCLOSURES

Regulation	Made by	Trigger	Time Period	Made to
Regulation 29(1)	Acquirer	<p>Acquirer + persons acting in concert (PAC) acquiring 5% or more of the shares or voting rights of the target company shall disclose to their aggregate shareholding and voting rights in such target company.</p> <p>This disclosure is like an initial disclosure which is required to be given on acquiring 5% or more shares or voting rights of Target Company.</p> <p>Further in case of listed entity which has listed its specified securities on Innovators Growth Platform, any reference to “five per cent” shall be read as “ten per cent”.</p>	Within two working days of the receipt of intimation of allotment of shares, or the acquisition or the disposal of shares or voting rights in the target company.	Every Stock Exchange where the shares of the target company are listed and the target company at its registered office.
Regulation 29(2)	Acquirer	<p>Any person + persons acting in concert (PAC), holds shares or voting rights entitling them to five per cent or more of the shares or voting rights in a target company, shall disclose the number of shares or voting rights held and change in shareholding or voting rights, even if such change results in shareholding falling below five percent, if there has been change in such holdings from the last disclosure made under sub-regulation (1) or under this sub-regulation; and such change exceeds two per cent of total shareholding or voting rights in the target company.</p> <p>Further in case of listed entity which has listed its specified securities on Innovators Growth Platform, any reference to “five per cent” shall be read as “ten per cent” and any reference to “two per cent” shall be read as “five per cent”.</p>	Within two working days of the receipt of intimation of allotment of shares or the acquisition or the disposal of shares or voting rights in the target company.	Every Stock Exchange where the shares of the target company are listed and the target company at its registered office.

Note :

- Shares taken by way of encumbrance shall be treated as an “acquisition”.
- Share given upon release of encumbrance shall be treated as a “disposal”
- The requirement as listed above shall not apply to a Scheduled Commercial bank or public financial institution or a housing finance company or a systematically important non-banking financial company as pledgee in connection with a pledge of shares for securing indebtedness in the ordinary course of business.

Example:



CONTINUAL DISCLOSURES / YEARLY DISCLOSURES

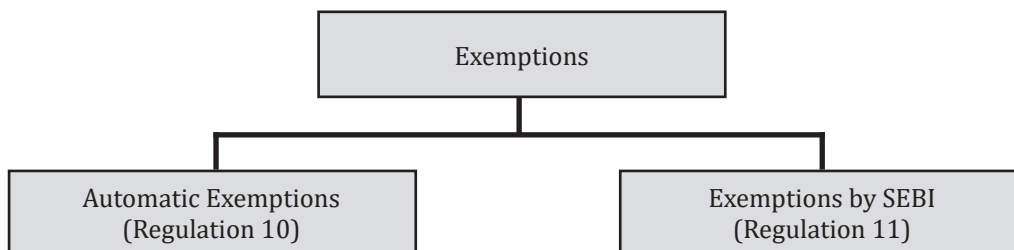
Regulation	Trigger	Time Period	Made to
Regulation 30(1)	Every Person + PAC holding more than 25% shares or voting rights in a target company to disclose their aggregate shareholding and voting rights as on 31st March.	Within 7 working days from the financial year ending 31st March every year.	Every Stock Exchange where the shares of the target company are listed and the target company at its registered office.
Regulation 30(2)	Promoter +PAC disclose their aggregate shareholding and voting rights as of the 31st March, in such target company. This disclosure is to be made irrespective of the holding of Promoters + PAC.	Within 7 working days from the financial year ending 31st March every year.	Every stock exchange where the shares of the target company are listed and the target company at its registered office.

DISCLOSURES OF ENCUMBERED SHARES

Regulation	Who will make	Trigger	Time Period	Made to
Regulation 31(1)	Promoter	Promoter + PAC creating encumbrance on the shares of the target company.	Within 7 working days from the creation or invocation or release of encumbrance as the case may be.	Every Stock exchange where the shares
Regulation 31(2)	Promoter	Invocation of such encumbrance or release of such encumbrances of the shares of the target company.	Within 7 working days from the creation or invocation or release of encumbrance as the case may be.	Every Stock exchange where the shares
Regulation 31(4)	Promoter	Promoter + PAC shall declare on a yearly basis that he, along with persons acting in concert, has not made any encumbrance, directly or indirectly, other than those already disclosed during the financial year.	Within 7 working days from the financial year ending 31st March every year.	Every Stock exchange where the shares are listed and the Audit Committee of the Target Company.

EXEMPTIONS

While the fundamental objective of the SEBI Takeover Regulations is investor protection, the SEBI Takeover Regulations also provides for certain exemptions from the open offer obligation without deviating from its objective.

**Regulation 10 - Automatic Exemptions**

Regulation 10 of the SEBI Takeover Regulations, 2011 provides for automatic exemptions from the applicability of making Open Offer to the shareholders of the Target Company in respect of certain acquisitions subject to the compliance of certain conditions specified therein.

Further, Regulation 11 of SEBI Takeover Regulations, 2011 provides the provisions whereby the acquirer can apply to SEBI for availing the exemption from the Open Offer obligations and the Target Company can apply for relaxation from strict compliance with any procedural requirement relating to Open Offer as provided under Chapter III and IV of these regulations.

Some of the important exemptions provided therein regulation 10 along with their conditions for exemption is detailed below.

The following acquisitions shall be exempt from the obligation to make an open offer under regulation 3 and regulation 4 subject to fulfillment of the conditions stipulated therefor :

(1) (a) acquisition pursuant to inter se transfer of shares amongst qualifying persons, being, –

- (i) immediate relatives;
- (ii) persons named as promoters in the shareholding pattern filed by the target company in terms of the listing regulations or as the case may be, the listing agreement or these regulations for not less than three years prior to the proposed acquisition;

It is necessary that promoters should have shown as such in the filing for a period of at least 3 years prior to the acquisition.

- (iii) a company, its subsidiaries, its holding company, other subsidiaries of such – holding company, persons holding not less than fifty per cent of the equity shares of such company, other companies in which such persons hold not less than fifty per cent of the equity shares, and their subsidiaries subject to control over such qualifying persons being exclusively held by the same persons;

For this sub-regulation, the company shall include a body corporate, whether Indian or foreign.

- (iv) persons acting in concert for not less than three years prior to the proposed acquisition, and disclosed as such pursuant to filings under the listing regulations or as the case may be, the listing agreement;

It is necessary that persons acting in concert should have shown as such in the filing for a period of at least 3 years prior to the acquisition.

- (v) shareholders of a target company who have been persons acting in concert for a period of not less than three years prior to the proposed acquisition and are disclosed as such pursuant to fi under the listing regulations or as the case may be, the listing agreement, and any company in which the entire equity share capital is owned by such shareholders in the same proportion as their holdings in the target company without any differential entitlement to exercise voting rights in such company.

However, for purposes of availing of the exemption under this clause, –

- (i) If the shares of the target company are frequently traded, the acquisition price per share shall not be higher by more than twenty-five per cent of the volume-weighted average market price for a period of sixty trading days preceding the date of issuance of notice for the proposed inter se transfer, as traded on the stock exchange where the maximum volume of trading in the shares of the target company are recorded during such period, and if the shares of the target company are infrequently traded, the acquisition price shall not be higher by more than twenty-five percent of the price determined; and
- (ii) the transferor and the transferee shall have complied with applicable disclosure requirements set out in these regulations.

(b) acquisition in the ordinary course of business by, –

- (i) an underwriter registered with the SEBI by way of allotment pursuant to an underwriting agreement in terms of the SEBI (ICDR) Regulations, 2018;
- (ii) a stock broker registered with SEBI on behalf of his client in exercise of lien over the shares purchased on behalf of the client under the bye-laws of the stock exchange where such stock broker is a member;
- (iii) a merchant banker registered with SEBI or a nominated investor in the process of market making or subscription to the unsubscribed portion of issue in terms of the SEBI (ICDR) Regulations, 2018;
- (iv) any person acquiring shares pursuant to a scheme of safety net in terms of the then existing SEBI (ICDR) Regulations, 2009;
- (v) a merchant banker registered with SEBI acting as a stabilising agent or by the promoter or pre-issue shareholder in terms of the SEBI (ICDR) Regulations, 2018;
- (vi) by a registered market-maker of a stock exchange in respect of shares for which he is the market maker during the course of market making;
- (vii) a Scheduled Commercial Bank, acting as an escrow agent; and

- (viii) invocation of pledge by Scheduled Commercial Banks or Public Financial Institutions as a pledgee.
- (c) acquisitions at subsequent stages, by an acquirer who has made a public announcement of an open offer for acquiring shares pursuant to an agreement of disinvestment, as contemplated in such agreement. However, (i) both the acquirer and the seller are the same at all the stages of acquisition; and (ii) full disclosures of all the subsequent stages of acquisition, if any, have been made in the public announcement of the open offer and in the letter of offer.
- (d) acquisition pursuant to a scheme, –
- (i) made under section 18 of the Sick Industrial Companies (Special Provisions) Act, 1985 or any statutory modification or re-enactment thereto;
 - (ii) of arrangement involving the target company as a transferor company or as a transferee company, or reconstruction of the target company, including amalgamation, merger or demerger, pursuant to an order of a court or a tribunal under any law or regulation, Indian or foreign; or
 - (iii) of arrangement not directly involving the target company as a transferor company or as a transferee company, or reconstruction not involving the target company's undertaking, including amalgamation, merger or demerger, pursuant to an order of a court or a tribunal or under any law or regulation, Indian or foreign, subject to, –
 - A. the component of cash and cash equivalents in the consideration paid being less than twenty-five per cent of the consideration paid under the scheme; and
 - B. where after implementation of the scheme of arrangement, persons directly or indirectly holding at least thirty-three per cent of the voting rights in the combined entity are the same as the persons who held the entire voting rights before the implementation of the scheme.
- (da) acquisition pursuant to a resolution plan approved under section 31 of the Insolvency and Bankruptcy Code, 2016.
- (e) acquisition pursuant to the provisions of the Securitisation and Reconstruction of Financial Assets and Enforcement of Security Interest Act, 2002.
- (f) acquisition pursuant to the provisions of SEBI (Delisting of Equity Shares) Regulations, 2009.
- (g) acquisition by way of transmission, succession or inheritance.
- (h) acquisition of voting rights or preference shares carrying voting rights arising out of the operation of sub-section (2) of section 47 of the Companies Act, 2013.
- (i) acquisition of shares by the lenders pursuant to conversion of their debt as part of a debt restructuring implemented in accordance with the guidelines specified by RBI.
- However, the conditions specified under sub-regulation (6) of regulation 158 of the SEBI (ICDR) Regulations, 2018 are complied with.
- (j) increase in voting rights arising out of the operation of sub-section (1) of section 106 of the Companies Act, 2013 or pursuant to a forfeiture of shares by the target company, undertaken in compliance with the provisions of the Companies Act, 2013 and its articles of association.
- (2A) An increase in the voting rights of any shareholder beyond the threshold limits stipulated in sub-regulations (1) and (2) of regulation 3, without the acquisition of control, pursuant to the conversion of equity shares with superior voting rights into ordinary equity shares, shall be exempted from the obligation to make an open offer under regulation 3.
- (2B) Any acquisition of shares or voting rights or control of the target company by way of preferential issue in compliance with regulation 164A of the Securities and Exchange Board of India (Issue of Capital and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2018 shall be exempt from the obligation to make an open offer under sub-regulation (1) of regulation 3 and regulation 4.

Explanation. - The above exemption from open offer shall also apply to the target company with infrequently traded shares which is compliant with the provisions of sub-regulations (2), (3), (4), (5), (6), (7) and (8) of regulation 164A of the Securities and Exchange Board of India (Issue of Capital and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2018. The pricing of such infrequently traded shares shall be in terms of regulation 165 of the Securities and Exchange Board of India (Issue of Capital and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2018.

- (3) An increase in voting rights in a target company of any shareholder beyond the limit attracting an obligation to make an open offer under sub-regulation (1) of regulation 3, pursuant to buy-back of shares by the target company shall be exempt from the obligation to make an open offer provided such shareholder reduces his shareholding such that his voting rights fall to below the threshold referred to in regulation 3(1) within ninety days from the date of the closure of the said buy back offer.
- (4) The following acquisitions shall be exempt from the obligation to make an open offer –
 - (a) acquisition of shares by any shareholder of a target company, upto his entitlement, pursuant to a rights issue;
 - (b) acquisition of shares by any shareholder of a target company, beyond his entitlement, pursuant to a rights issue, subject to fulfilment of the following conditions, –
 - (i) the acquirer has not renounced any of his entitlements in such rights issue; and
 - (ii) the price at which the rights issue is made is not higher than the ex-rights price of the shares of the target company, being the sum of, –
 - (A) the volume weighted average market price of the shares of the target company during a period of sixty ending on the day prior to the date of determination of the rights issue price, multiplied by the number of shares outstanding prior to the rights issue, divided by the total number of shares outstanding after allotment under the rights issue. However, such volume weighted average market price shall be determined on the basis of trading on the stock exchange where the maximum volume of trading in the shares of such target company is recorded during such period; and
 - (B) the price at which the shares are offered in the rights issue, multiplied by the number of shares so offered in the rights issue divided by the total number of shares outstanding after allotment under the rights issue.
- (c) increase in voting rights in a target company of any shareholder pursuant to buy-back of shares. However:
 - (i) such shareholder has not voted in favour of the resolution authorising the buy-back of securities under section 68 of the Companies Act, 2013;
 - (ii) in the case of a shareholder resolution, voting is by way of postal ballot;
 - (iii) where a resolution of shareholders is not required for the buy-back, such shareholder, in his capacity as a director, or any other interested director has not voted in favour of the resolution of the board of directors of the target company authorising the buy-back of securities under section 68 of the Companies Act, 2013; and
 - (iv) the increase in voting rights does not result in an acquisition of control by such shareholder over the target company.

However, where the aforesaid conditions are not met, in the event such shareholder reduces his shareholding such that his voting rights fall below the level at which the obligation to make an open offer would be attracted under sub-regulation (2) of regulation 3, within ninety days from the date of closure of the buy-back offer by the target company, the shareholder shall be exempt from the obligation to make an open offer.

- (d) acquisition of shares in a target company by any person in exchange for shares of another target company tendered pursuant to an open offer for acquiring shares under these regulations;
- (e) acquisition of shares in a target company from state-level financial institutions or their subsidiaries or companies promoted by them, by promoters of the target company pursuant to an agreement between such transferors and such promoter;

- (f) acquisition of shares in a target company from a venture capital fund or Category I Alternative Investment Fund or a foreign venture capital investor registered with the SEBI, by promoters of the target company pursuant to an agreement between such venture capital fund or category I Alternative Investment Fund or foreign venture capital investor and such promoters.
- (5) In respect of acquisitions under clause (a) of sub-regulation (1), and clauses (e) and (f) of sub-regulation (4), the acquirer shall intimate the stock exchanges where the shares of the target company are listed, the details of the proposed acquisition in such form as may be specified, at least four working days prior to the proposed acquisition, and the stock exchange shall forthwith disseminate such information to the public.
- (6) In respect of any acquisition made pursuant to exemption provided for in this regulation, the acquirer shall file a report with the stock exchanges where the shares of the target company are listed, in such form as may be specified not later than four working days from the acquisition, and the stock exchange shall forthwith disseminate such information to the public.
- (7) In respect of any acquisition of or increase in voting rights pursuant to exemption provided for in clause (a) of sub-regulation (1), sub-clause (iii) of clause (d) of sub-regulation (1), clause (h) of sub-regulation (1), sub-regulation (2), sub-regulation (3) and clause (c) of sub-regulation (4), clauses (a), (b) and (f) of sub-regulation (4), the acquirer shall, within twenty-one working days of the date of acquisition, submit a report in such form as may be specified along with supporting documents to SEBI giving all details in respect of acquisitions, along with a non-refundable fee of rupees one lakh fifty thousand by way of direct credit in the bank account through NEFT/ RTGS/IMPS or any other mode allowed by RBI or by way of a banker's cheque or demand draft payable in Mumbai in favour of SEBI.

Explanation : For the purpose of sub-regulation (5), (6) & (7), in case the convertible securities the date of the acquisition shall be the date of conversion of such securities.

However, certain exemptions require PRIOR disclosures / intimation to stock exchanges as tabulated below:

Particulars	Timeline
Regulation 10(1): (a) acquisition pursuant to inter se transfer of shares amongst qualifying persons, being – (i) immediate relatives; (ii) persons named as promoters in the shareholding pattern filed by the target company in terms of the listing regulations or as the case may be, the listing agreement or these regulations for not less than three years prior to the proposed acquisition; (iii) a company, its subsidiaries, its holding company, other subsidiaries of such – holding company, persons holding not less than fifty per cent of the equity shares of such company, other companies in which such persons hold not less than fifty per cent of the equity shares, and their subsidiaries subject to control over such qualifying persons being exclusively held by the same persons; (iv) persons acting in concert for not less than three years prior to the proposed acquisition, and disclosed as such pursuant to filings under the listing regulations or as the case may be, the listing agreement; (v) shareholders of a target company who have been persons acting in concert for a period of not less than three years prior to the proposed acquisition and are disclosed as such pursuant to fi under the listing regulations or as the case may be, the listing agreement, and any company in which the entire equity share capital is owned by such shareholders in the same proportion as their holdings in the target company without any differential	At least four working days prior to the proposed acquisition, intimate the Stock Exchanges and the Target company with details of proposed acquisition.

Regulation 10(4)

- (e) acquisition of shares in a target company from state-level financial institutions or their subsidiaries or companies promoted by them, by promoters of the target company pursuant to an agreement between such transferors and such promoter;
- (f) acquisition of shares in a target company from a venture capital fund or Category I Alternative Investment Fund or a foreign venture capital investor registered with the SEBI, by promoters of the target company pursuant to an agreement between such venture capital fund or category I Alternative Investment Fund or foreign venture capital investor and such promoters.

At least four working days prior to the proposed acquisition, intimate the Stock Exchanges and the Target company with details of proposed acquisition.

In all exemptions a report is to be submitted to Stock Exchanges: In respect of any acquisition made pursuant to exemption provided, the acquirer shall file a report with the stock exchanges where the shares of the target company are listed, in such form as may be specified not later than four working days from the acquisition.

In certain exemptions a detailed report also to be submitted to stock exchanges: In respect of any acquisition of or increase in voting rights pursuant to exemption provided for in clause (a) of sub-regulation (1), sub-clause (iii) of clause (d) of sub-regulation (1), clause (h) of sub-regulation (1), sub-regulation (2), sub-regulation (3) and clause (c) of sub-regulation (4), clauses (a), (b) and (f) of sub-regulation (4), the acquirer shall, within twenty-one working days of the date of acquisition, submit a report in such form as may be specified along with supporting documents to the Board giving all details in respect of acquisitions, along with a non-refundable fee of rupees one lakh fifty thousand.

This Report is in addition to Report which is applicable for all exemptions.

Question: Mr. X is Promoter of ABC (India) Limited (Target Company). Mr. X is presently holding 53,073 shares constituting 0.52% of the paid up equity capital of the Target Company. Further, Mr. X has been allotted 75,000 convertible warrants, convertible in to equity. After conversion of warrant in to equity the shareholding of Mr. X will increase from 0.52% to 1.26% of the paid up equity capital. Further, Ms. Z who is Mr. X's elder sister's daughter and holding 7,80,000 equity shares constituting 7.76% of the paid up equity share capital of the Company. Ms. Z is a foreign shareholder and she wanted to gift (Off Market Transaction) her entire shareholding to her mother Mrs. Y and in turn Mrs. Y wanted to gift the entire shareholding to Mr.

- X. If the entire transaction as contemplated, if concluded, then the shareholding of Mr. X will increase from 0.52% to 9.02% and the shareholding of the promoter group will increase from 34.28% to 43.30%. You have been engaged as Practising Company Secretary by Mr. X to advise on the following:
- Is this increase in the promoter group shareholding would trigger open offer requirements in terms of Regulation 3(2) of the SEBI (SAST) Regulation, 2011.
 - Further, Whether such transaction would be exempted under Regulation 10 of the SEBI (SAST) Regulations, 2011.

Answer: The set of facts as disclosed in the question contains three transactions. First, conversion of convertible warrants in to equity. Secondly, transfer of shares through off market transaction from Ms. Z to Mrs. Y and thirdly, transfer of shares through off market transaction from Mrs. Y to Mr. X. Regarding the first transaction, the trigger and open offer requirements, if any has to be considered at the time of conversion of warrants in to equity as the same would depends on the shareholding pattern of the promoter and promoter's group prevailing at the time of conversion of warrants in to equity shares. Regarding the second and third transaction, considering that Ms. Z, Mrs. Y and Mr. X are immediate relative thus they would be considered as PAC in terms of Regulation 2(1)(q) of the SEBI (SAST) Regulations, 2011. Therefore, the shareholding of the promoters along with PACs would increase more than 5% limit and would trigger open offer requirements under Regulation 3(2) of the SEBI (SAST), 2011. However, the transaction is between immediate relatives, the transaction would be exempt from the obligation to make an open offer as per Regulation 10(1)(a)(i) of the SEBI (SAST), Regulations, 2011

subject to the compliance with the conditions as mentioned under the proviso to Regulation 10(1)(a)(i) and Regulation 10(5), (6) and (7) of the SEBI (SAST), Regulations, 2011. Further, SEBI in the interpretative letter dated 18th September, 2015 issued under the SEBI (Informal Guidance) Scheme, 2003 as requested by M/s Adani Properties Private Limited has held that an exempt acquisition would not be counted towards computing acquisitions on a gross basis.

Regulation 11 – Exemption by SEBI

Regulation 11 provides that on an application being made by the acquirer in writing giving the details of the proposed acquisition and grounds on which the exemption is sought along with duly sworn affidavit, SEBI may grant exemption to the acquirer from the Open Offer obligations subject to the compliance with such conditions as it deems fits. For instance, in case where the exemptions is sought from the Open Offer obligations which has been triggered pursuant to the issue of shares by way preferential allotment, SEBI may require that the approval of shareholders should be obtained by way of postal ballot. Further, along with the application, the acquirer is also required to pay a non-refundable fee of Rs.5,00,000, by way of direct credit in the bank account through NEFT/RTGS/IMPS or any other mode allowed by or by way of banker's cheque or demand draft in favour of SEBI payable at Mumbai. Further SEBI has prescribed a standard format for application under Regulation 11(1) of the SEBI (SAST) Regulations, 2011 in order to ensure uniformity of disclosures in such application vide circular No. SEBI/HO/CFD/DCR1/CIR/P/2017/131 dated 22nd December, 2017.

However, it is to be noted that the Acquirer is not exempted from making other compliances related to the disclosure requirements as provided under regulation 29, 30 and 31 of the SEBI Takeover Regulations, 2011.

Points to ponder:

M/s ABC Ltd is a listed Company on the Bombay Stock Exchange Limited. The promoter of M/s ABC Ltd is M/s BCD Private Limited which holds 49.84% of the total paid up capital of the M/s ABC Ltd and the remaining shares are held by the public. M/s BCD Private Limited is in turn promoted by one Mr. X and M/s DEF Private Limited. The shareholding of M/s BCD is divided between Mr. X and M/s DEF Private Limited in the ratio of 60% and 40% respectively. Mr. X has approached M/s DEF Private Limited to sell 40% of its shares in the M/s BCD Private Limited to M/s DEF Private Limited. After this transaction the shareholding of M/s BCD Private Limited will be divided between Mr. X and M/s DEF Private Limited in the ratio of 20% and 80% respectively. This transaction had resulted in the indirect acquisition of control of M/s ABC Limited in the favour of M/s DEF Private Limited. Now, M/s DEF Private Limited is planning to make an application to the SEBI under Regulation 11 of the SEBI (SAST), Regulation, 2011 for obtaining the exemption for making an open offer in terms of the provision of the SEBI (SAST), Regulation, 2011. In these circumstances, you are asked to put your argument, if:

- a) you are representing M/s DEF Private Limited before the whole-time Member of SEBI.
- b) You are working as a representative of the SEBI and presenting your argument before the whole-time Member of SEBI.

POWER OF SEBI TO RELAX STRICT ENFORCEMENT OF THE REGULATIONS

Exemption from enforcement of the regulations in special cases

SEBI may, exempt any person or class of persons from the operation of all or any of the provisions of these regulations for a period as may be specified but not exceeding twelve months, for furthering innovation relating to testing new products, processes, services, business models, etc. in live environment of regulatory sandbox in the securities markets.

Any exemption granted by the SEBI shall be subject to the applicant satisfying such conditions as may be specified by the SEBI including conditions to be complied with on a continuous basis.

Explanation. — For the purposes of these regulations, “regulatory sandbox” means a live testing environment where new products, processes, services, business models, etc. may be deployed on a limited set of eligible customers for a specified period of time, for furthering innovation in the securities market, subject to such conditions as may be specified by the Board.

This exemption is to promoter further innovation and accordingly, SEBI may from time to time grant such relaxations as stated above. The relaxation may also be provided to acquirer / PAC on application to SEBI, however that has been covered earlier in this chapter.

CASE LAWS

1	07.07.2020	<i>M/s Sungold Capital Limited vs. SEBI</i>	Whole Time Member, Securities and Exchange Board of India
---	------------	---	---

One of the principles underlying under SAST Regulations is exit opportunity to the public shareholders of the Target Company at the best price and accordingly, the provisions of SAST Regulations deals with offer price, that offer price in an open offer highest of the prices of shares of the Target Company derived through various methods.

Facts of the case:

The respective acquirers/PAC's after acquiring shares/voting rights of Sungold Capital Limited (“Target Company”) beyond the threshold of initial/creeping acquisition have failed to make an open offer in terms of Regulation 10 and 11(1) of SAST Regulations, 1997, on, April 1, 2007 and September 14, 2007, respectively. As per Regulation 21(19) of SAST Regulations, 1997, the acquirer and the PAC's were jointly and severally liable for discharge of obligations under SAST Regulations, 1997.

SAST Regulations, 1997 has been repealed by Regulation 35(1) of SAST Regulations, 2011 and has been replaced by SAST Regulations, 2011. Regulation 35(2)(b) of SAST Regulations, 2011, *provides that all obligations incurred under the SAST Regulations, 1997, including the obligation to make an open offer, shall remain unaffected as if the repealed regulations has never been repealed.*

Therefore, the obligations to make open offer, incurred by the acquirers/PAC's under SAST Regulations, 1997, are saved and can be enforced against them by virtue of Regulation 35 of SAST Regulations, 2011.

Order:

SEBI directed acquirers/PAC's of the target company to make a public announcement of a combined open offer for acquiring shares of Sungold Capital Ltd., under Regulation 10 and 11(1) of the SAST Regulations, 1997, within a period of 45 days from the date when this order comes into force, in accordance with SAST Regulations, 1997. The acquirers/PAC's shall along with the offer price, pay interest at the rate of 10% per annum for delay in making of open offer, for the period starting from the date when the Noticees incurred the liability to make the public announcement and till the date of payment of consideration, to the shareholders who were holding shares in the Target Company on the date of violation and whose shares are accepted in the open offer, after adjustment of dividend paid, if any.

2.	17.03.2020	<i>Susheel Somani & Ors. (Appellant) vs. SEBI (Respondent)</i>	Securities Appellate Tribunal
----	------------	--	-------------------------------

Penalty imposed by SEBI on violating SAST Regulations, further reduced by SAT considering it a technical breach

Facts of the case:

Aggrieved by the order of the Adjudicating Officer (AO) of the respondent SEBI dated December 27, 2017 imposing a penalty of Rs. 15 lacs for violation of provisions of public announcement of an open offer under Regulation 3(2) read with Regulation 13(1) of the SEBI (SAST) Regulations, 2011, the present appeal is preferred.

The appellants contended before the AO that there was no violation of Regulation 3(2) read with Regulation 13(1) of the SAST Regulations, 2011 since the transfer was inter se between the promoters, the same was exempted from making a public announcement as provided by Regulation 10 of the SAST Regulations.

As regard the exemption, the AO found that while Regulation 10 of the SAST Regulations provides for making disclosures to the stock exchanges and to the company within a period of two working days. In the present case, the appellants made the disclosures on 7th day as against the provisions of Regulation 29(3).

[Reg. 29(3) - the disclosures are required to be made within two working days]

Order:

Thus, technically the appellants were not exempted from making public announcement and, thus, are in violation of the relevant regulations. The AO has observed that as the condition of making disclosures within two working days is not fulfilled the act was not found for grant of exemption. In the circumstances, the penalty was imposed. The appellants made the disclosures though belatedly after five days as required by Regulation 29 of the SAST Regulations.

Thus, it was a technical breach and, therefore, AO instead of imposing a penalty of Rs. 15 lacs, imposed a penalty of Rs. 5 lacs which would have been just and sufficient. The appeal was partly allowed.

3.	07.09.2017	<i>Mega Resources Ltd. (Appellant) vs. SEBI (Respondent)</i>	Securities Appellate Tribunal
----	------------	--	-------------------------------

Ignorance of law will not excuse the appellant to escape the liability of violating the law

Facts of the case:

The Appellant, Mega Resources Limited, is aggrieved by the order dated 13.08.2014 passed by the Adjudicating Officer (AO), SEBI imposing a penalty of Rs. 2,00,000/- under Section 15A(b) of the SEBI Act and Rs. 50,00,000/- under Section 15 H(ii) of the SEBI Act for failure on the part of the appellant to comply with the provisions of Regulation 7(1) read with Regulation 7(2) and Regulation 11(1) read with Regulation 14(1) of the SEBI (Substantial Acquisition of Shares and Takeovers) Regulations, 1997.

The appellant has admitted that pursuant to the acquisition of 25000 equity shares through off-market transactions the shareholding of the Promoters/Promoter Group of the Company had increased from 50.46% to 60.46% of the Target Company. This triggered Regulation 11(1) of the erstwhile SAST Regulations along

with the requirement of submission of certain disclosures under Regulation 7(1) and 7(2) of the erstwhile Regulations. It is admitted by the appellant that the non compliance with the disclosure requirements in respect of acquisition of shares and failure to make an open offer to the shareholders of the Company was due to lack of awareness of the erstwhile regulations on the part of the Appellant and purely unintentional and without any malafide intentions. However, It is trite law that ignorance of law will not excuse the appellant to escape the liability of violating the law nor ever absolve the wrongdoer of his crime or misconduct.

Further, the appellant contended that in the matter of imposition of penalty, the Section 15(H)(ii) of the SEBI Act, 1992 was amended dated October 29, 2002 and the penalty for non-disclosure of acquisition of shares and takeovers was enhanced from a maximum of Rs. Five Lakh to Rs. Twenty Five crore. It is argued that since the violation in Appeal was committed in February, 2001, the appellant would be governed by the erstwhile provisions of Section 15H(ii) of the SEBI Act, which existed on the date of violation in question.

Order:

It is true that the maximum monetary penalty imposable for non disclosure of acquisition of shares and takeovers under the erstwhile SEBI Act on the date of violation by the Appellant was Rs. Five Lakh and by the amendment dated October 29, 2002 it is up to Rs. Twenty Five Crore or three times of the amount of

profits made out of such failure, whichever is higher. However, the moot point in this connection to be noted is that as on October 29, 2002 the obligation to make disclosure and public announcement under Regulations 7(1) read with 7(2) and 11(1) read with 14(1) continued. Therefore, because the violation was continued even after October 29, 2002, the appellant has been rightly imposed penalty under the amended provisions of Section 15H(ii) of the SEBI Act. Since the punishment imposable now for such non-disclosure and public announcement is up to Rs. Twenty Five Crore, SAT finds that the penalty of Rs. Fifty Lakh is just and reasonable and not disproportionate. The contention of the appellant in this regard is, therefore, liable to be turned down. Therefore, in the peculiarity of the facts and circumstances of the case and, in particular, the continuity of the obligation to make disclosure and public announcement, the penalty of Rs. Fifty Lakh is upheld and the appeal is dismissed.

4.	16.03.2020	<i>G P Shah Investment Private Limited & Ors. (Appellant) vs. SEBI (Respondent)</i>	Securities Appellate Tribunal
----	------------	---	-------------------------------

Facts of the case:

The present appeal has been filed against the order of the Adjudicating Officer (AO), SEBI dated March 13, 2019 imposing a penalty of 5 crores to be paid by the appellants jointly and severally, under Section 15H (ii) of the SEBI Act, 1992 for violation of Regulation 3(2) of the SEBI (Substantial Acquisition of Shares and Takeover) Regulations, 2011 ("SAST Regulations, 2011" for convenience).

This Tribunal held that the date on which the appellants acquired the shares triggered the provisions of Regulation 3(2) of the SAST Regulations, 2011 and consequently incurred an obligation to make a combined public announcement of an open offer for acquiring the shares of the target company.

Order:

SAT finds that no relief can be granted to the appellants as AO granted several opportunities but the appellants chose not to appear or file any reply. In the light of the aforesaid, SAT are of the opinion that sufficient opportunity was given to the appellants to contest the matter which they failed to do so. Thus, remanding the matter back to the AO in the given circumstances does not arise. With regard to the quantum of penalty, SAT finds that the order of the Whole Time Member (WTM) directing the appellants to make a public announcement was issued as far back as on July 08, 2013 which after 7 years has not as yet been complied with. Considering the aforesaid and the admitted violations, SAT did not find any error in the imposition of penalty imposed by the AO though, under Section 15HB a maximum penalty of Rs. 25 crores or three times the amount of profits could have been imposed. In view of the aforesaid, SAT do not find any merit in the appeal and the same is dismissed with no order as to costs.

LESSON ROUND-UP

- The SEBI (Substantial Acquisition of Shares and Takeovers) Regulations, 2011, aims at protecting interest of the investors in securities of a listed company providing amongst others, an opportunity for the public shareholders to exit where there is a substantial acquisition of shares or voting rights or control over a listed company, consolidation of holdings by existing shareholders and related disclosures and penalties for non-compliance etc.
- The Takeover Regulations, 1997 stands repealed from October 22, 2011, i.e. the date on which SAST Regulations, 2011 came into force.
- The SEBI Takeover Regulations, 2011 provides certain trigger events wherein the Acquirer is required to give Open Offer to the shareholders of the Target Company to provide them exit opportunity.
- Regulation 6 of the Takeover Regulations provides the threshold and conditions for making the Voluntary Open Offer.

- An offer in which the acquirer has stipulated a minimum level of acceptance is known as a conditional offer.
- Regulation 10 & 11 provides for automatic exemptions and exemptions by SEBI.
- The public announcement shall be sent to all the stock exchanges on which the shares of the target company are listed, and the stock exchanges shall forthwith disseminate such information to the public. The Acquirer also need to publish Detailed Public Statement within 5 working days.
- The Tendering Period remains open for 10 working days.
- In SEBI Takeover Regulations, 2011, the obligation to give the disclosures on the acquisition of certain limits is only on the acquirer and not on the Target Company.

GLOSSARY

Competitive Bid	An offer made by a person other than the acquirer who has made the first public announcement.
Control of management	The right to appoint directly or indirectly or by virtue of agreements or in any other manner majority of directors on the Board of the target company or to control management or policy decisions affecting the target company.
Corporate restructuring	Involves making radical changes in the composition of the businesses in the company's portfolio.
Disinvestment	Disinvestment means the direct or indirect sale by the Central Government or any State Government or by a government company, as the case may be, of shares or voting rights in, or control over, a target company, which is a public sector undertaking;
Encumbrance	It shall include a pledge, lien or any such transaction, by whatever name called.
Public Announcement	A public announcement is an announcement made in the newspapers by the acquirer primarily disclosing his intention to acquire shares of the target company from existing shareholders by means of an open offer.
Takeover	Takeover is a corporate device whereby one company acquires control over another company, usually by purchasing all or majority of its shares.
Weighted average number of total shares	means the number of shares at the beginning average number of a period, adjusted for shares cancelled, bought back or issued during the aforesaid of total shares period, multiplied by a time-weighting factor.

TEST YOURSELF

(These are meant for re-capitulation only. Answers to these questions are not to be submitted for evaluation)

1. What do you mean by Persons Acting in Concert under the SEBI (SAST) Regulations, 2011?
2. What are the conditions for making Voluntary open offer?
3. What are the provisions relating to Public announcement under the Takeover regulations?
4. Discuss about the continuous disclosure required to be made under these regulations.

5. Briefly explain the conditions on which SEBI can grant exemption to an acquirer.
6. What do you mean by creeping acquisition?
7. Briefly explain the obligations of the Manager under the Open Offer?
8. Discuss on the minimum size of offer to be made by the Acquirer and exception to it, if any.
9. Briefly explain the provisions relating to Escrow Account.
10. Mr. A, the acquirer who proposes to acquire 27% shares of ABC Limited, listed company. Mr. A wants to nominate a person on the Board of ABC Limited. Please advise whether Mr. A can appoint Director on the Board of ABC Limited and what are the conditions / compliance required related thereto.
11. M/s A Limited is listed Company. Mr. X is promoter of the M/s A Limited and holding 71% of the paid up equity share capital of the Company. Mr. X as part of the succession planning and family settlement has decided to transfer his shares to the Mr. X family trust. The trustees of the Trust are Mr. X, his wife and his daughter and beneficiaries of the Trust are Mr. X's son. Mr. X approached you and seeking your advice whether the transfer of shares from Mr. X to Mr. X family trust is attracting the open offer obligations under the SEBI (SAST) Regulations, 2011. If yes, whether the Mr. X family trust can get exemption under Regulation 10 or 11 of the SEBI (SAST) Regulations, 2011.
12. M/s XYZ is public sector bank. Government of India is holding 82.23% and intending to further acquire 16,83,09,689 shares to maintain minimum 8% Tier I Capital to Risk-weighted Assets Ratio (CRAR). The entire infusion of capital by Government of India is being made to comply with Basel III requirements and there would be no change in control in the management of the Bank. As the difference between the post-allotment and pre-allotment shareholding of the Government of India in the Bank may be over 5%. therefore the Bank filed an application with the SEBI, on behalf of its promoter, the Government of India, under regulation 11(1) of the SEBI (SAST) Regulations, 2011, seeking exemption for the Government of India from the applicability of regulation 3(2) of the Takeover Regulations in respect of its proposed acquisition of 16,83,09,689 shares. Please advise whether Bank can get the exemption under Regulation 11 of the SEBI (SAST) Regulations, 2011.

LIST OF FURTHER READINGS

- SEBI Manual
- SEBI Circulars
- SEBI Notifications

OTHER REFERENCES (Including Websites/Video Links)

www.sebi.gov.in
www.nseindia.com
www.bseindia.com

SEBI (Buy-Back of Securities) Regulations, 2018

Lesson 7

Key Concepts One Should Know

- Associate
- Buy-back Period
- Control
- Small Shareholder
- Odd Lots
- Specified Securities
- Tender Offer

Learning Objectives

To understand:

- Conceptual understanding on buy-back of securities
- Provisions of the SEBI (Buy-Back of Securities) Regulations 2018
- Regulatory prescriptions on conditions/methods/sources of buy-back of securities
- Obligations of the Company/Merchant Banker for buy-back of shares

Regulatory Framework

- SEBI (Buy-Back of Securities) Regulations, 2018
- Companies Act, 2013
- Companies (Share Capital and Debenture) Rules, 2014
- SEBI (Substantial Acquisition of shares and Takeovers) Regulations, 2011
- SEBI (Listing obligations and disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2015

Lesson Outline

- Introduction
- Objectives of Buy-Back
- Buy-back provisions under Companies Act, 2013
- Applicability
- Important Definitions
- Conditions for Buy-back of Shares or Other Securities
- Methods of buy-back
- Sources for buy-back
- Prohibitions for buy-back
- Authorisation for buy-back
- Explanatory Statement
- Additional Disclosures
- Buy-back Process
- Buy-back through Tender Offer
- Odd-lot Buy-back
- Buy-back from the Open Market
- Obligations of the Company/Merchant Banker for all buy-back of shares or other specified securities
- Power of SEBI to relax strict enforcement of the regulations.
- Buy-back *vis-a-vis* compliance under SEBI (SAST) Regulations, 2011
- LESSON ROUND-UP
- GLOSSARY
- TEST YOURSELF
- LIST OF FURTHER READINGS
- OTHER REFERENCES

INTRODUCTION

Meaning of Buy-back

The term buy-back implies the act of purchasing its own shares/securities by a company. This facility enables the Company to go back to the holders of its own shares/securities and make an offer to purchase such shares/ securities from them.

The corporates adopts various tools, viz., mergers, amalgamations and takeovers for restructuring the business. All these activities, in turn, impacts the functioning of the capital market, more particularly the movement of share prices. As the shares of companies are held by different segments of society, viz., entrepreneurs, Body Corporates, institutional investors and individual shareholders including small investors, it is reasonable that there should be equality of treatment and opportunities to all shareholders, transparency, proper disclosure and above all protection of interests of small and minority shareholders.

Similarly, buy-back of securities is a corporate financial strategy which involves repurchase of its outstanding shares by a company.

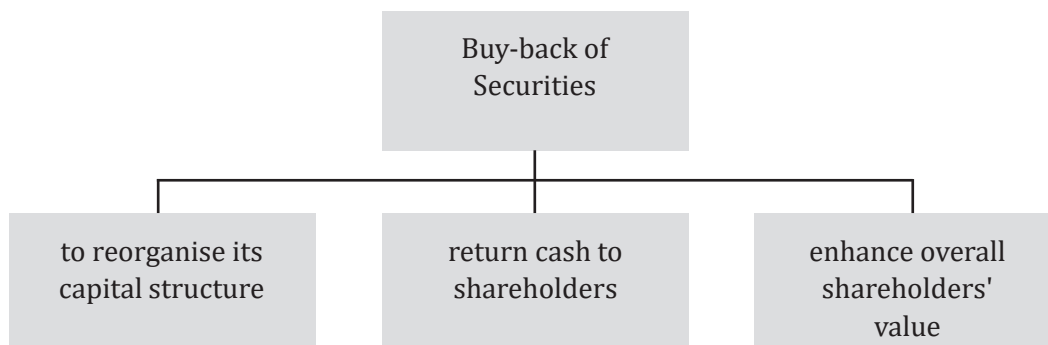
There are generally two ways a company can return cash to its shareholders –

- declaration of dividend or
- through buy-back of shares.

A buy-back represent a more flexible way of returning surplus cash to its shareholders as it is governed by a process laid down by law, it is carried out through the stock exchange mechanism and is more tax efficient as it does not involve the company to make payment of dividend distribution tax and it has the benefits of long term capital gains.

Buy-back leads to reduction in outstanding number of equity shares, which may lead to improvement in earnings per equity share and enhance return on net worth and create long term value for continuing shareholders. In India, while buy-back of securities is not permitted as a treasury option under which the securities may be reissued later, a company can resort to buy-back to reduce the number of shares issued and return surplus cash to the shareholders.

The buy-back of securities is governed by Section 68, 69 and 70 of the Companies Act, 2013 and Rule 17 of the Companies (Share Capital and Debentures) Rules, 2014. For Listed Companies, the SEBI Regulations for Buy Back will also be applicable.



Recent Trends of Industry

A rise in buy-backs in the FY 2021 was seen as a global phenomenon with companies such as Apple and Berkshire doubling their share buy-backs. Another reason for the jump in buy-backs is dividend distribution taxation (DDT) being in the hands of shareholders, who are mandated to pay tax on dividends received at the applicable tax rate compared to a low (capital gains) tax rate in case of buy-backs.

The FY 2020 budget put dividend taxation in the hands of shareholders while keeping buy-back taxation in hands of companies. This led to buy-backs being a favoured option to reward shareholders while managing the recapitalization of companies and improving promoter shareholding and return on capital employed (ROCE) through reduction in overall capital, *Khetan and Sonchhatra said*.

If companies find it difficult to opt for investment opportunities that would help them to increase ROCE, it would not be advisable to continue to remain seated on a big pile of cash for long without optimum returns. This will negatively impact Return on Capital Employed (ROCE) In that case, it would be optimal for companies to return the capital to shareholders.

OBJECTIVES OF BUY-BACK

Buy-back is a process whereby a company purchases its own shares or other specified securities from the holders thereof.

1. • To strategically increase promoters' shareholding subject to compliance with SEBI (SAST) Regulations
2. • To improve earnings per share;
3. • To improve return on capital, return on net worth and to enhance the long-term shareholder value;
4. • To enhance consolidation of stake in the company;
5. • To prevent unwelcome takeover bids;
6. • To return surplus cash to shareholders and allow profitable deployment of cash surpluses;
7. • To achieve optimum capital structure;
8. • To support share price during periods of sluggish market conditions; and
9. • To service the equity more efficient.
10. To provide an additional exit route to shareholders when shares are under valued or are thinly traded.

The decision to buy-back is also influenced by various other factors relating to the company, such as growth opportunities, capital structure, sourcing of funds, cost of capital and optimum allocation of funds generated.

PROVISIONS OF THE COMPANIES ACT, 2013

Buy back of securities are governed by Section 68, 69 and 70 of the Companies Act, 2013 and Rule 17 of Companies (Share Capital and Debentures) Rules, 2014. Listed companies have to comply with the regulations laid down by SEBI also in this behalf. Pursuant to Section 68(1) of the Companies Act, 2013, a company may purchase its own shares or other specified securities (hereinafter referred to as buy-back) out of –

- (a) its free reserves;
- (b) the securities premium account; or
- (c) the proceeds of the issue of any shares or other specified securities:

However no buy-back of any kind of shares or other specified securities shall be made out of the proceeds of an earlier issue of the same kind of shares or same kind of other specified securities.

Conditions for Buy-Back pursuant to section 68(2) of the Companies Act, 2013

- (a) the buy-back is authorised by its articles.
- (b) Buy back must be authorized by a Special Resolution. But if the buy-back amounts to 10% or less of the total paid-up equity capital and free reserves of the company then the Board resolution is enough and the company is not required to pass any special resolution.
- (c) the buy-back is twenty-five per cent or less of the aggregate of paid-up capital and free reserves of the company.

However in respect of the buy-back of equity shares in any financial year, the reference to twenty-five per cent in this clause shall be construed with respect to its total paid-up equity capital in that financial year.

- (d) the ratio of the aggregate of secured and unsecured debts owed by the company after buy-back is not more than twice the paid-up capital and its free reserves.

However the Central Government may, by order, notify a higher ratio of the debt to capital and free reserves for a class or classes of companies.

- (e) all the shares or other specified securities for buy-back are fully paid-up.
- (f) the buy-back of the shares or other specified securities listed on any recognised stock exchange is in accordance with the regulations made by the Securities and Exchange Board in this behalf.
- (g) the buy-back in respect of shares or other specified securities other than those specified in clause (f) is in accordance with such rules as may be prescribed. However no offer of buy-back mentioned above shall be made within a period of one year reckoned from the date of the closure of the preceding offer of buy-back, if any.

The notice of the meeting at which the special resolution is proposed to be passed shall be accompanied by an explanatory statement.

Every buy-back shall be completed within a period of one year from the date of passing of the special resolution or Board Resolution as the case may be.

SEBI (BUY-BACK) REGULATIONS, 2018

The objective of notifying the SEBI (Buy-back of Securities) Regulations, 2018 was to simplify the language of Buy-back Regulations, 1998, removing redundant provisions and inconsistencies, updating the references to the new Companies Act, 2013/ other new SEBI Regulations, and incorporating the circulars, FAQs and informal guidance in the Buy-back Regulations, wherever possible.

Considering that a significant number of provisions as outlined under Section 68, 69 and 70 of the Companies Act, 2013 were proposed to be incorporated in the Buy-back Regulations to make it self-contained and more comprehensive, it was proposed to re-frame an entirely new set of Buy-back Regulations in lieu of the extant 1998 version of the regulations. Further, the existing provisions have also been re-structured and re-sequenced to give a better flow in the new Buy-back Regulations.

In line with the aforesaid mandate, the SEBI in its Board Meeting held on March 28, 2018 approved the proposal to undertake public consultation process before coming out with new Buy-back Regulations for reviewing the SEBI (Buy-Back of Securities) Regulations, 1998.

Thereafter, SEBI vide its Notification dated September 11, 2018, notified the changes proposed by it in the discussion paper, through the SEBI (Buy-Back of Securities) Regulations, 2018.

SEBI (Buy-Back) Regulations, 2018 are applicable only on Listed Entities and the unlisted entities shall continue to be governed by applicable provisions of Companies Act, 2013.

Regulatory Framework

- SEBI (Buy-Back of Securities) Regulations, 2018**

Chapter	Deals with
I	Definitions
II	Conditions of Buy-back
III	Buy-Back Through Tender Offer
IV	Buy-Back From the Open Market
V	General Obligations
VI	Miscellaneous

- Companies Act, 2013**

Section	Deals with
Section 68	Power of Company to purchase its own securities
Section 69	Transfer of certain sums to capital redemption reserve account
Section 70	Prohibition for Buy-Back in certain circumstances

- Rule 17 of the companies (Share Capital and Debenture) Rules, 2014**

APPLICABILITY

SEBI (Buy-back of Securities) Regulations, 2018 shall apply to buy-back of shares or other specified securities of a company in accordance with the applicable provisions of the Companies Act, 2013.

Explanation: For the purposes of these regulations, the term “shares” shall include equity shares having superior voting rights.

IMPORTANT DEFINITIONS

Associate	It includes a person, – <ul style="list-style-type: none"> who directly or indirectly by himself or in combination with relatives, exercise control over the company; or whose employee, officer or director is also a director, officer or employee of company.
Buy-back Period	The period between the date of board of directors resolution; or date of declaration of results of the postal ballot for special resolution, as the case may be, to authorize buy-back of shares of the company and the date on which the payment of consideration to shareholders who have accepted the buy-back offer is made.

Control	It has the same meaning as defined in clause (e) of sub-regulation (1) of regulation (2) of the Securities and Exchange Board of India (Substantial Acquisition of Shares and Takeovers) Regulations, 2011;
Odd Lots	'Odd Lots' mean the lots of shares or other specified securities of a company, whose shares are listed on a recognised stock exchange, which are smaller than such marketable lots, as may be specified by the stock exchange
Small Shareholder	A shareholder of a company, who holds shares or other specified securities whose market value, on the basis of closing price of shares or other specified securities, on the recognised stock exchange in which highest trading volume in respect of such securities, as on record date is not more than two lakh rupee.
Specified Securities	It includes employees' stock option or other securities as may be notified by the Central Government from time to time.
Tender offer	An offer by a company to buy-back its own shares or other specified securities through a letter of offer from the holders of the shares or other specified securities of the company.

CONDITIONS FOR BUYBACK OF SHARES OR OTHER SECURITIES

The maximum limit of any buy-back shall be 25% or less of the aggregate of paid-up capital and free reserves of the company, based on both standalone and consolidated financial statements of the company

All shares or other specified securities for buy-back shall be fully paid-up.

Note:

- In respect of the buy-back of equity shares in any financial year, the reference to 25% in this regulation shall be construed with respect to its total paid-up equity capital in that financial year.
- The ratio of the aggregate of secured and unsecured debts owed by the company to the paid-up capital and free reserves after buy-back shall,-
 - (a) be less than or equal to 2:1, based on both standalone and consolidated financial statements of the company. However if a higher ratio of the debt to capital and free reserves for the company has been notified under the Companies Act, 2013, the same shall prevail; or
 - (a) be less than or equal to 2:1, based on both standalone and consolidated financial statements of the company, after excluding financial statements of all subsidiaries that are non-banking financial companies and housing finance companies regulated by Reserve Bank of India or National Housing Bank, as the case may be. However buy-back of securities shall be permitted only if all such excluded subsidiaries have their ratio of aggregate of secured and unsecured debts to the paid-up capital and free reserves of not more than 6:1 on standalone basis.

Additional Conditions for Buy-back of Shares or Other Securities

- A company shall not buy-back its shares or other specified securities :
 - (a) so as to delist its shares or other specified securities from the stock exchange.
 - (b) from any person through negotiated deals, whether on or off the stock exchange or through spot transactions or through any private arrangement.
- A company shall not make any offer of buy-back within a period of one year reckoned from the date of expiry of buy-back period of the preceding offer of buy-back, if any.
- A company shall not allow buy-back of its shares unless the consequent reduction of its share capital is effected.

Illustration:

Extract of Balance Sheet of X Ltd consist of:

Equity Share Capital = Rs. 6,00,000 of Rs. 10 each

12% Preference Share Capital = Rs. 1,00,000 of Rs. 100 each

14% Debenture Capital = Rs. 3,00,000 of Rs. 100

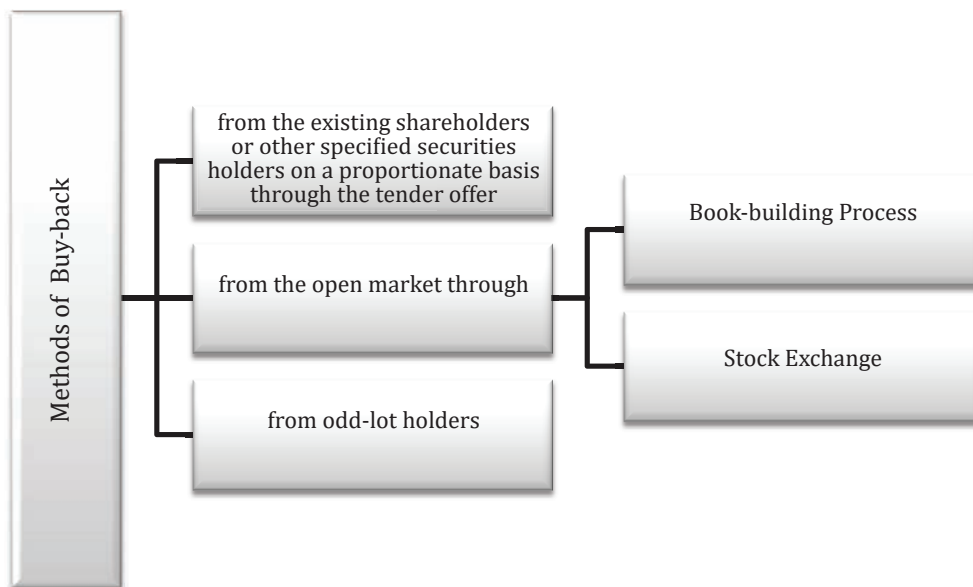
What is the maximum equity share capital and number of equity shares that can be bought back?

Solution:

- (i) Maximum equity share capital that can be bought back
 $= \text{Rs. } 6,00,000 \times 25\%$
 $= \text{Rs. } 1,50,000$
- (ii) Maximum number of equity shares that can be bought back
 $= \text{Rs. } 1,50,000 / 10$
 $= 15,000 \text{ equity shares}$

METHODS OF BUY-BACK

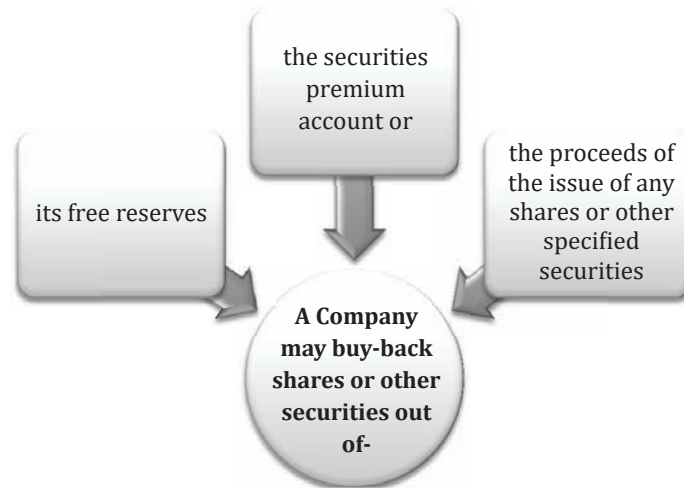
A company may buy-back its shares or other specified securities by any one of the following methods:



No offer of buy-back for fifteen percent or more of the paid up capital and free reserves of the company, based on both standalone and consolidated financial statements of the company, shall be made from the open market.

Section 68(5)(c) of the Companies Act, 2013 permits buy-back of equity shares by purchasing the securities

SOURCES OF BUY-BACK



Note: Buy-back shall not be made out of the proceeds of an earlier issue of the same kind of shares or same kind of other specified securities.

PROHIBITIONS FOR BUY-BACK

The Company shall not directly or indirectly purchase its own shares or other specified securities:

- through any subsidiary company including its own subsidiary companies;
- through any investment company or group of investment companies; or
- if a default is made by the company in the repayment of deposits accepted either before or after the commencement of the Companies Act, interest payment thereon, redemption of debentures or preference shares or payment of dividend to any shareholder; or repayment of any term loan or interest payable thereon to any financial institution or banking company.

The buy-back is not prohibited, if the default is remedied and a period of three years has lapsed after such default ceased to subsist.

AUTHORISATION FOR BUY-BACK

The company shall not authorise for any buy-back whether by way of tender offer or from open market or odd lot unless:

Authorisation for Buyback in the Articles of the Company.

A special resolution is required to be passed at a general meeting of the company for such authorisation.

No special resolution is required where the buy-back is 10% or less of the total paid-up equity capital and free reserves of the company and such buy-back has been authorised by the board of directors by means of a resolution passed at its meeting.

Note:

- In case of Special Resolution, a copy of the resolution passed at the general meeting shall be filed with SEBI and the stock exchanges where the shares or other specified securities of the company are listed, within seven days from the date of passing of the resolution.
- In case of only Board Resolution, a copy of Board Resolution passed in the meeting of the Board of Directors, shall file with SEBI and the stock exchanges, where the shares or other specified securities of the company are listed, within two working days of the date of the passing of the resolution.

Every buy-back shall be completed within a period of one year from the date of passing of the special resolution at general meeting, or the resolution passed by the board of directors of the company, as the case may be.

The company shall, after expiry of the buy-back period, file with the Registrar of Companies and SEBI, a return containing such particulars relating to the buy-back within thirty days of such expiry, in the format as specified in the Companies (Share Capital and Debentures) Rules, 2014.

Where the buy-back is from open market either through the stock exchange or through book building, the resolution of board of directors shall specify the maximum price at which the buy-back shall be made. However where there is a requirement for the Special Resolution as specified in clause (b) of sub-regulation 1 of regulation 5 of these Regulations, the special resolution shall also specify the maximum price at which the buy-back shall be made.

No insider shall deal in shares or other specified securities of the company on the basis of unpublished price sensitive information relating to buy-back of shares or other specified securities of the company.

EXPLANATORY STATEMENT

The notice of the meeting at which the special resolution is proposed to be passed shall be accompanied by an explanatory statement pursuant to section 102 of the Companies Act containing mandatory disclosures as specified under sub-section 3 of section 68 of the Companies Act –

- a full and complete disclosure of all material facts;
- the necessity for the buy-back;
- the class of shares or securities intended to be purchased under the buy-back;
- the amount to be invested under the buy-back; and
- the time-limit for completion of buy-back.

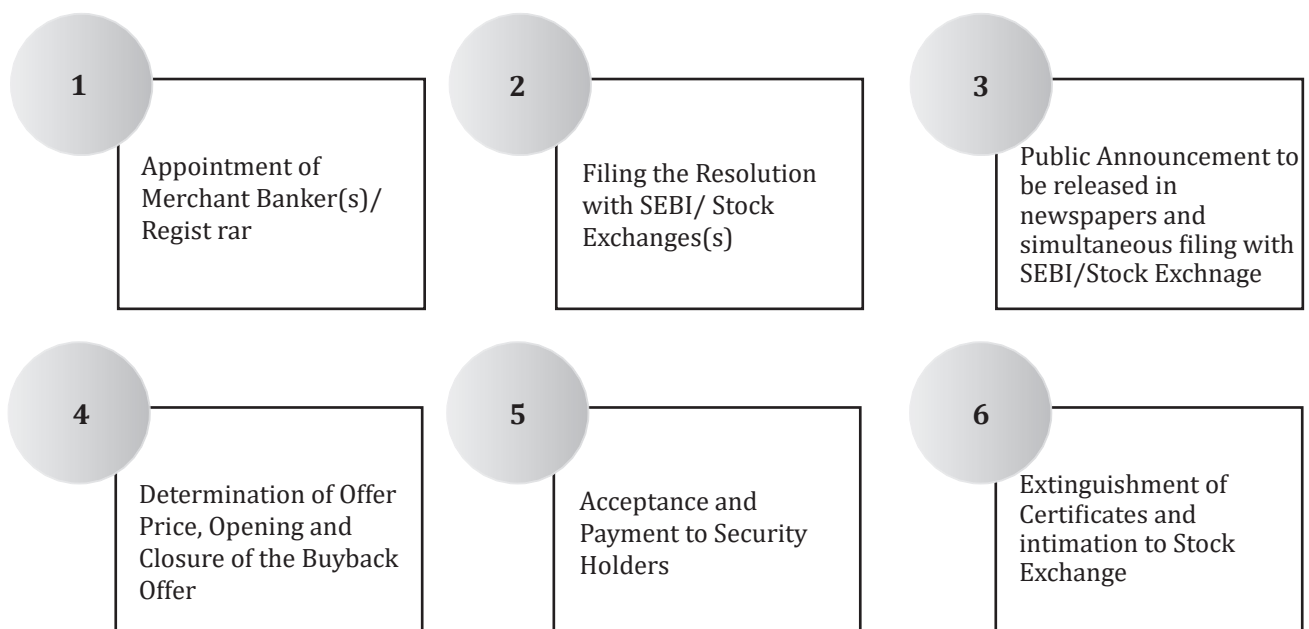
ADDITIONAL DISCLOSURES

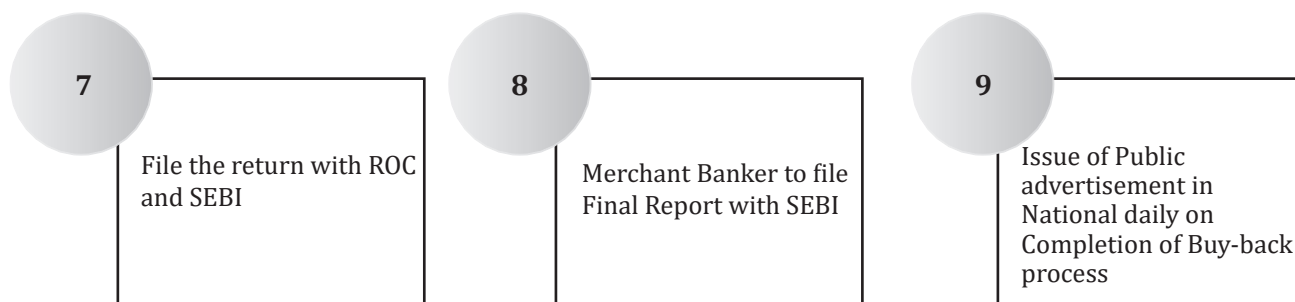
The company is required to provide an additional disclosure as per Schedule I to these regulations, in addition to disclosures mentioned above under sub section 3 of section 68 of the Companies Act, 2013 as discussed below:

- (i) Date of the Board meeting at which the proposal for buy-back was approved by the Board of Directors of the company;
- (ii) Necessity for the buy-back;
- (iii) Maximum amount required under the buy-back and its percentage of the total paid up capital and free reserves;
- (iv) Maximum price at which the shares or other specified securities are proposed be bought back and the basis of arriving at the buy-back price;
- (v) Maximum number of securities that the company proposes to buy-back;
- (vi) Method to be adopted for buy-back as referred to in sub-regulation (iv) of regulation 4;
- (vii)
 - (a) the aggregate shareholding of the promoter and of the directors of the promoters, where the promoter is a company and of persons who are in control of the company as on the date of the notice convening the General Meeting or the Meeting of the Board of Directors;
 - (b) aggregate number of shares or other specified securities purchased or sold by persons including persons mentioned in (a) above from a period of six months preceding the date of the Board Meeting at which the buy-back was approved till the date of notice convening the general meeting;

- (c) the maximum and minimum price at which purchases and sales referred to in (b) above were made along with the relevant dates;
- (viii) Intention of the promoters and persons in control of the company to tender shares or other specified securities for buy-back indicating the number of shares or other specified securities, details of acquisition with dates and price;
- (ix) A confirmation that there are no defaults subsisting in repayment of deposits, redemption of debentures or preference shares or repayment of term loans to any financial institutions or banks;
- (x) A confirmation that the Board of Directors has made a full enquiry into the affairs and prospects of the company and that they have formed the opinion:
 - (a) that immediately following the date on which the General Meeting or the meeting of the Board of Directors is convened there will be no grounds on which the company could be found unable to pay its debts;
 - (b) as regards its prospects for the year immediately following that date that, having regard to their intentions with respect to the management of the company's business during that year and to the amount and character of the financial resources which will in their view be available to the company during that year, the company will be able to meet its liabilities as and when they fall due and will not be rendered insolvent within a period of one year from that date; and
 - (c) in forming their opinion for the above purposes, the directors shall take into account the liabilities as if the company were being wound up under the provisions of the Companies Act, 1956 or Companies Act, 2013 or the Insolvency and Bankruptcy Code 2016 (including prospective and contingent liabilities);
- (xi) A report addressed to the Board of Directors by the company's auditors stating that-
 - (a) they have inquired into the company's state of affairs;
 - (b) the amount of the permissible capital payment for the securities in question is in their view properly determined; and
 - (c) the Board of Directors have formed the opinion as specified in clause (x) on reasonable grounds and that the company will not, having regard to its state of affairs, will not be rendered insolvent within a period of one year from that date.

BUY-BACK PROCESS





BUY-BACK THROUGH TENDER OFFER

A company may buy-back its shares or other specified securities from its existing securities holders on a proportionate basis in accordance with the provisions of these Regulations.

However fifteen percent of the number of securities which the company proposes to buy-back or number of securities entitled as per their shareholding, whichever is higher, shall be reserved for small shareholders.

Additional Disclosures

In addition to the disclosures provided in Schedule I to these regulations, the following disclosure are required to be made in the explanatory statement:

- the maximum price at which the buy-back of shares or other specified securities shall be made and whether the board of directors of the company is being authorised at the general meeting to determine subsequently the specific price at which the buy-back may be made at the appropriate time;
- if the promoter intends to offer his shares or other specified securities, the quantum of shares or other specified securities proposed to be tendered and the details of their transactions and their holdings for the last six months prior to the passing of the special resolution for buy-back including information of number of shares or other specified securities acquired, the price and the date of acquisition.

Disclosures, filing requirements and timelines for public announcement and draft letter of offer

1.	Public Announcement	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The company shall make a public announcement within two working days from the date of declaration of results of the postal ballot for special resolution/ board of directors resolution in at least one English National Daily, one Hindi National Daily and one Regional language daily, all with wide circulation at the place where the Registered Office of the company is situated. • A copy of the public announcement along with the soft copy, shall also be submitted to SEBI, simultaneously, through a merchant banker.
2.	Filing with SEBI	<p>The company shall within five working days of the public announcement file the following :</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A draft letter of offer, along with a soft copy, containing disclosures as specified in these regulations through a merchant banker who is not associated with the company. • A declaration of solvency in specified form and in a manner provided in Section 68(6) of the Companies Act, 2013. • Prescribed fees as specified in these regulations. <p>SEBI may provide its comments on the draft letter of offer within seven working days of the receipt of the draft letter of offer. Letter of Offer shall be dispatch to the shareholders after making changes suggested by SEBI, if any.</p>

Offer Procedure

- While making buy-back offer, the company shall announce a record date in the public announcement for the purpose of determining the entitlement and the names of the security holders, who are eligible to participate in the proposed buy-back offer.
- The company shall dispatch the letter of offer along with the tender form to all securities holders which are eligible to participate in the buy-back offer not later than five working days from the receipt of communication of comments from SEBI.

Note:

- » Letter of Offer may also be dispatched through electronic mode in accordance with the provisions of the Companies Act, 2013.
- » On receipt of a request from any shareholder to receive a copy of the letter of offer in physical form, the same shall be provided.
- If case an eligible public shareholder does not receive the tender offer/off form, even though he can participate in the buy-back off and tender shares in the manner as provided by the SEBI.
- The date of the opening of the offer shall be not later than five working days from the date of dispatch of the letter of offer. It shall be remain open for a period of ten working days.
- The company shall provide the facilities for tendering of shares by the shareholders and settlement of the same, through the stock exchange mechanism in the manner as provided by the SEBI.
- The company shall accept shares or other specified securities from the securities holders on the basis of their entitlement as on record date.
- The shares proposed to be bought back shall be divided into two categories;
 - a. Reserved category for small shareholders; and
 - b. General category for other shareholders, and the entitlement of a shareholder in each category shall be calculated accordingly.

Note:

Holdings of multiple demat accounts would be clubbed together for identification of small shareholder if sequence of Permanent Account Number for all holders is matching. Similarly, in case of physical shareholders, if the sequence of names of joint holders is matching, holding under such folios should be clubbed together for identification of small shareholder.

- After accepting the shares or other specified securities tendered on the basis of entitlement, shares or other specified securities left to be bought back, if any in one category shall first be accepted, in proportion to the shares or other specified securities tendered over and above their entitlement in the offer by securities holders in that category and thereafter from securities holders who have tendered over and above their entitlement in other category.

Can unregistered shareholder tender his shares for buy- back?

Yes, unregistered shareholder may also tender his shares for buy-back by submitting the duly executed **Transfer Deed** for transfer of shares in his name, along with the offer form and other relevant documents as required for transfer, if any.

Please note that shareholders holding shares in physical form will not be eligible to tender shares under the offer, unless the shares held by them are dematerialised.

Escrow Account

The company shall as and by way of security for performance of its obligations under the regulations, on or before the opening of the offer, deposit in an escrow account such sum as specified under SEBI Regulations.

The amount in the escrow shall be deposited in the following manner:

Amount of Consideration	% of amount to be deposited
Consideration not more than Rs. 100 crores	25 per cent of the consideration payable;
Consideration exceeds Rs. 100 crores	25 percent upto Rupees 100 crores and 10 percent thereafter.

The escrow account referred to above shall consist of

Cash deposited with a scheduled commercial bank, OR	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The company shall, while opening the account empower the merchant banker to instruct the bank to make payment the amount lying to the credit of the escrow account, as provided in the regulations.
Bank guarantee in favour of the merchant banker, OR	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Such bank guarantee shall be in favour of the merchant banker and shall be valid until thirty days after the expiry of buyback period.
Deposit of acceptable securities with appropriate margin, with the merchant banker, OR	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Company shall empower the merchant banker to realise the value of such escrow account by sale or otherwise and if there is any deficit on realisation of the value of the securities, the merchant banker shall be liable to make good any such deficit.
A combination of all ABOVE	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> In case the escrow account consists of bank guarantee or approved securities, these shall not be returned by the merchant banker till completion of all obligations under the regulations. Where the escrow account consists of bank guarantee or deposit of approved securities, the company shall also deposit with the bank in cash a sum of at least one per cent of the total consideration payable, as and by way of security for fulfillment of the obligations under the regulations by the company.

Note: The cash component of the escrow account may be maintained in an interest bearing account. However, the merchant banker shall ensure that the funds should be available at the time of making payment to shareholders.

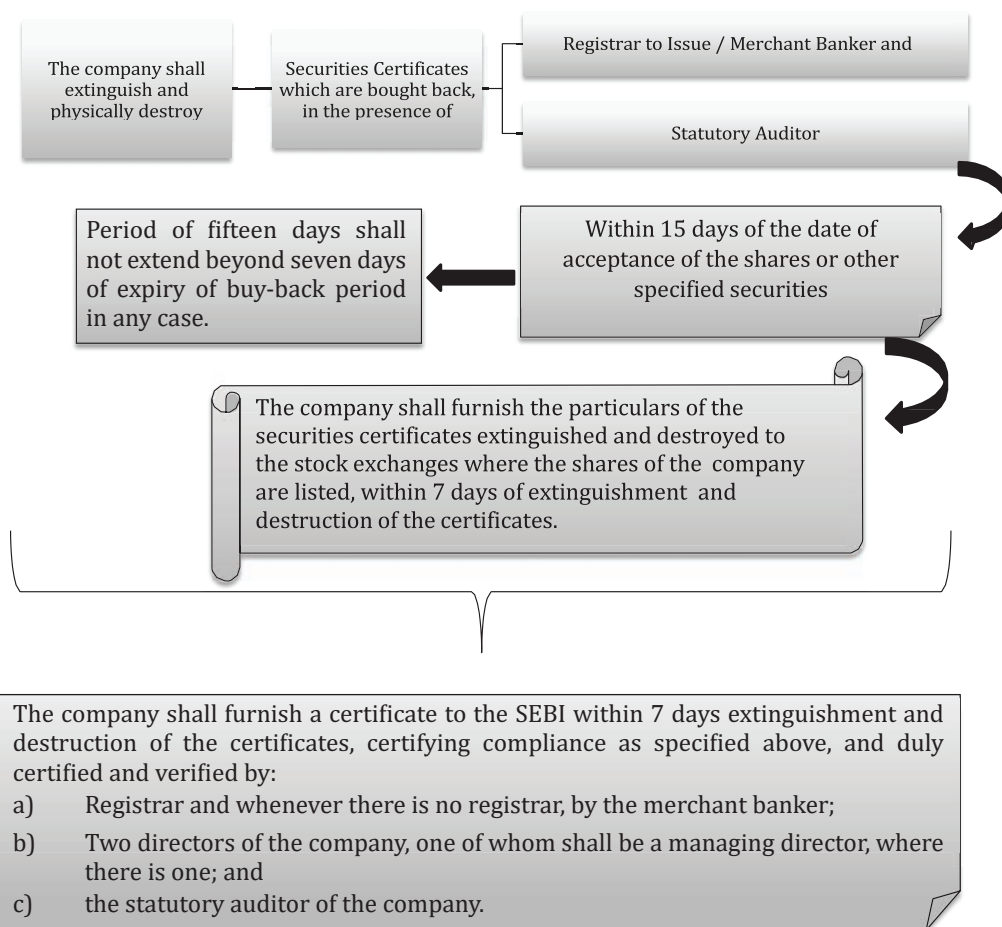
After the payment of consideration to all the securities holders who have accepted the offer and after completion of all formalities of buy-back, the amount, guarantee and securities in the escrow, if any, shall be released to the company.

In case of non-fulfilment of obligations under the regulations, SEBI in the interest of the securities holders may forfeit the escrow account either in full or in part. Such forfeited amount may be distributed amongst the securities holders who accepted the offer and balance, if any, on pro rata which shall be utilised for investor protection.

Closure and Payment to Securities Holders

- The company shall open a special account with a banker to an issue, registered with the SEBI immediately after the date of closure of the offer, and deposit therein, such sum as would, together with ninety percent of the amount lying in the escrow account, make-up the entire sum due and payable as consideration for buy-back in terms of these regulations and for this purpose, may transfer the funds from the escrow account.
- The company shall complete the verification of offers received and make payment of consideration to those holders of securities whose offer has been accepted and return the remaining shares or other specified securities to the securities holders within seven working days of the closure of the offer.

Extinguishment of Certificate and other Closure Compliances



Note:

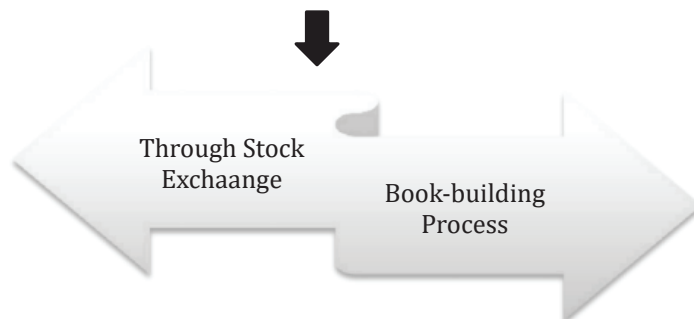
- The company shall ensure that all the securities bought-back are extinguished within seven days of expiry of buy-back period.
- If the shares or other specified securities offered for buy-back is already dematerialised, then it shall be extinguished and destroyed in the manner specified under SEBI (Depositories and Participants) Regulations, 1996, and the bye-laws, the circulars and guidelines framed thereunder.
- Where a company buys-back its shares or other specified securities under these regulations, it shall maintain a register of the shares or securities so bought, in Form SH. 10 in pursuance of section 68(9) of the Companies Act, 2013.

ODD-LOT BUY-BACK

The provisions pertaining to buy-back through tender offer as specified above shall be apply mutatis mutandis to odd-lot shares or other specified securities.

BUY-BACK FROM THE OPEN MARKET

The company may buy-back of shares or other specified securities from the Open Market may be in any of the following methods:



The company shall ensure that at least 50% of the amount earmarked for buy-back, as specified in the resolution of the board of directors or the special resolution, as the case may be, is utilized for buying-back shares or other specified securities.

Buy-back of Shares Through Stock Exchange

1.	Pre-conditions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The company may buy-back only on stock exchanges having nationwide trading terminals. The buy-back of the shares or other specified securities through the stock exchange shall not be made from the promoters or persons in control of the company The buy-back of shares or other specified securities shall be made only through the order matching mechanism except 'all or none' order matching system.
2.	Disclosures, filing requirements and timelines of public announcement	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The company shall appoint a merchant banker and make a public announcement in manner as specified in buy-back of shares through tender offer. The public announcement shall be made within two working days from the date of passing the board of director's resolution or date of declaration of results of the postal ballot for special resolution, as relevant and shall contain disclosures as specified in these regulations. Simultaneously with the issue of such public announcement, the company shall file a copy of the public announcement with SEBI along with the prescribed fees. The public announcement shall also contain disclosures regarding details of the brokers and stock exchanges through which the buy-back of shares or other specified securities would be made. <p>Note: In case of the buy-back from open market, no draft letter of offer/ letter of offer is required to be filed with SEBI.</p>
3.	Opening of the offer on stock exchange	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The identity of the company as a purchaser shall be appeared on the electronic screen when the order is placed. The buy-back offer shall be opened not later than seven working days from the date of public announcement and shall be closed within six months from the date of opening of the offer.

4.	Subsequent compliances	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The company shall submit the information regarding the shares or other specified securities bought-back, to the stock exchange on a daily basis in such form as may be specified by SEBI and the same shall be uploaded immediately on the official website stock exchange and on Company's website.
5.	Procedure for buy-back shares or other specified securities in Physical form	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A separate window shall be created by the stock exchange, which shall remain open during the period of buy-back, for buy-back of shares or other specified securities in physical form. The Company shall buyback shares or other securities holding physical shares only through this separate window after verification of identity and address of eligible shareholders by broker. The price at which the shares or other specified securities are bought back shall be the volume weighted average price of the shares or other specified securities bought-back, other than in the physical form, during the calendar week in which such shares or other specified securities were received by the broker. <p>However, the price of shares or other specified securities tendered during the first calendar week of the buy-back shall be the volume weighted average market price of the shares or other specified securities of the company during the preceding calendar week.</p> <p><i>Note: In case no shares or other specified securities were bought back in the normal market during calendar week, the preceding week when the company has last bought back the shares or other specified securities may be considered.</i></p>
6.	Escrow Account	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The company shall, before opening of the offer, create an escrow account towards security for performance of its obligations under these regulations, and deposit in escrow account 25 per cent of the amount earmarked for the buy-back as specified in the resolution of the board of directors or the special resolution, as the case may be. The escrow account may be in the form of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) cash deposited with any scheduled commercial bank; or b) bank guarantee issued in favour of the merchant banker by any scheduled commercial bank. For such part of the escrow account as is in the form of a cash deposit with a scheduled commercial bank, the company shall while opening the account, empower the merchant banker to instruct the bank to make payment of the amounts lying to the credit of the escrow account, to meet the obligations arising out of the buy-back. For such part of the escrow account as is in the form of a bank guarantee; <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) the same shall be in favour of the merchant banker and shall be kept valid for a period of thirty days after the expiry of buy-back period of the offer or till the completion of all obligations under these regulations, whichever is later. b) the same shall not be returned by the merchant banker till completion of all obligations under the regulations. Where part of the escrow account is in the form of a bank guarantee, the company shall deposit with a scheduled commercial bank, in cash, a sum of at least 2.5 per cent of the total amount earmarked for buy-back as specified in the resolution of the board of directors or the special resolution, as the case may be, as and by way of security for fulfillment of the obligations under the regulations by the company.

		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The amount may be released from escrow account for making of payment to the shareholders subject to at least 2.5 per cent of the amount earmarked for buy-back as specified in the resolution of the board of directors or the special resolution, as the case may be, remaining in the escrow account at all points of time. After utilisation of at least 50 % of the amount earmarked for buy-back as specified in the resolution of the Board of Directors or Special Resolution, as case may be, the amount and the guarantee remaining in the escrow account, if any, shall be released to the company. In the event of non-compliance as specified above, SEBI may direct the merchant banker to forfeit the escrow account, subject to a maximum of 2.5 percent of the amount earmarked for buy-back as specified in the resolution of the board of directors or the special resolution, as the case may be, except in cases where,- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) volume weighted average market price (VWAMP) of the shares or other specified securities of the company during the buy-back period was higher than the buy-back price as certified by the merchant banker based on the inputs provided by the Stock exchanges. b) sell orders were inadequate despite the buy orders placed by the company as certified by the merchant banker based on the inputs provided by the stock exchanges. c) such circumstances existed which were beyond the control of the company and in the opinion of SEBI merit consideration. d) In the event of forfeiture for non-fulfilment of obligations as specified in these regulation, the amount forfeited shall be deposited in the Investor Protection and Education Fund of Securities and Exchange Board of India.
7.	Extinguishment of certificates	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The provisions pertaining to the extinguishment of certificates for tender offers specified above shall apply for extinguishment of certificates for buy-back from open market. The verification of acceptances shall be completed by the company within fifteen days of the payout. The company shall extinguish and physically destroy the securities certificates so bought back during the month in the presence of a Merchant Banker and the Statutory Auditor, on or before the fifteenth day of the succeeding month. <p>However, the company shall ensure that all the securities bought-back are extinguished within seven days of expiry of buy-back period.</p>

Buy-back through Book Building

1.	Pre-conditions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Special resolution or Board Resolution, as the case may be, shall be passed for authorisation of Buy-back of shares or other specified securities in the manner as specified under these regulations.
2.	Disclosures, filing requirements and timelines for public announcement	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The company shall appoint a merchant banker and make a public announcement and made disclosures in public announcement under these regulations. The public announcement shall be made at least 7 days prior to the commencement of buy-back. The public announcement shall also contain the detailed methodology of the book-building process, the manner of acceptance, the format of acceptance to be sent by the securities holders pursuant to the public announcement and the details of bidding centres.

3.	Escrow Account	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The provisions with respect to deposit of amount in escrow account as specified in buy-back through tenders offers shall also apply to buy back of shares or other specified securities through book building process. The deposit in the escrow account shall be made before the date of the public announcement. The amount to be deposited in the escrow account shall be determined with reference to the maximum price as specified in the public announcement. <p><i>The cash component of the escrow account may be maintained in an interest bearing account. However, the merchant banker shall ensure that the funds should be available at the time of making payment to shareholders.</i></p>
4.	Filing with SEBI	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A copy of the public announcement shall be filed with SEBI within two days of such announcement along with the prescribed fees.
5.	Offer Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The book-building process shall be made through an electronically linked transparent facility. The number of bidding centers shall not be less than thirty and there shall be at least one electronically linked computer terminal at all the bidding centers. The offer for buy-back shall remain open to the securities holders for a period not less than fifteen days and not exceeding thirty days. The merchant banker and the company shall determine the buy-back price based on the acceptances received. The final buy-back price, which shall be the highest price accepted shall be paid to all holders whose shares or other specified securities have been accepted for buy-back. The provisions pertaining to verification of acceptances and the provisions pertaining to opening of special account and payment of consideration for tender offer shall be applicable mutatis mutandis to the buy-back through book building.
6.	Extinguishment of certificates	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The provisions pertaining to extinguishment of certificates for tender offer shall be applicable mutatis mutandis to the buy-back through book building.

OBLIGATIONS FOR ALL BUY-BACK OF SHARES OR OTHER SPECIFIED SECURITIES



Obligations of the Company	Obligations of the Merchant Banker
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The company shall ensure that, – <ul style="list-style-type: none"> » the letter of offer, the public announcement of the offer or any other advertisement, circular, brochure, publicity material shall contain true, factual and material information and shall not contain any misleading information and must state that the directors of the company accept the responsibility for the information contained in such documents; » the company shall not issue any shares or other specified securities including by way of bonus till the date of expiry of buy-back period for the offer made under these regulations; » the company shall pay the consideration only by way of cash; » the company shall not withdraw the offer to buy-back after the draft letter of offer is filed with SEBI or public announcement of the offer to buy-back is made; » the promoter(s) or his/their associates shall not deal in the shares or other specified securities of the company in the stock exchange or off-market, including inter-se transfer of shares among the promoters during the period from the date of passing the resolution of the board of directors or the special resolution, as the case may be, till the closing of the offer. » the company shall not raise further capital for a period of one year from the expiry of buy-back period, except in discharge of its subsisting obligations. • No public announcement of buy-back shall be made during the pendency of any scheme of amalgamation or compromise or arrangement pursuant to the provisions of the Companies Act, 2013. • The company shall nominate a compliance officer and investors service centre for compliance with the buy-back regulations and to redress the grievances of the investors. • particulars of the security certificate extinguished and destroyed shall be furnished by the company to the stock exchanges where the shares or other specified securities of the company are listed within seven days of extinguishment and destruction of the certificates. • The company shall not buy-back the locked-in shares or other specified securities and non-transferable shares or other specified securities till the pendency of the lock-in or till the shares or other specified securities become transferable. • The company shall within two days of expiry of buy-back period issue a public advertisement in a national daily, inter alia, disclosing: 	<p>The merchant banker shall ensure that –</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • the company is able to implement the offer; • the provision relating to escrow account has been complied with; • firm arrangements for monies for payment to fulfill the obligations under the offer are in place; • the public announcement of buy-back is made in terms of the regulations; • the letter of offer has been filed in terms of the regulations; • a due diligence certificate along with the draft letter of offer has been furnished to SEBI; • the contents of the public announcement of offer as well as the letter of offer are true, fair and adequate and quoting the source wherever necessary; • due compliance of sections 68, 69 and 70 of the Companies Act and any other laws or rules as may be applicable in this regard has been made; • the bank with whom the escrow or special amount has been deposited releases the balance amount to the company only upon fulfilment of all obligations by the company under the regulations;

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) number of shares or other specified securities bought; b) price at which the shares or other specified securities bought; c) total amount invested in the buy-back; d) details of the securities holders from whom shares or other specified securities exceeding one percent of total shares or other specified securities are bought back; and e) the consequent changes in the capital structure and the shareholding pattern after and before the buy-back. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The company in addition to these regulations shall comply with the provisions of buy-back as contained in the Companies Act and other applicable laws. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • a final report is submitted to SEBI in the form specified within fifteen days from the date of expiry of buy-back period.
---	---

POWER OF SEBI TO RELAX STRICT ENFORCEMENT OF THE REGULATIONS

1. SEBI may, in the interest of investors and the securities market, relax the strict enforcement of any requirement of these regulations except the provisions incorporated from the Companies Act, if the SEBI is satisfied that:

- (a) the requirement is procedural in nature; or
- (b) the requirement may cause undue hardship to investors;

For seeking relaxation as above, the company shall file an application with the SEBI, supported by a duly sworn affidavit, giving details and the grounds on which such relaxation has been sought.

2. The SEBI may, exempt any person or class of persons from -

- the operation of all or
- any of the provisions of these regulations

for a period as may be specified but not exceeding twelve months, for furthering innovation relating to testing new products, processes, services, business models, etc. in live environment of regulatory sandbox in the securities markets.

Any exemption granted by the SEBI shall be subject to the applicant satisfying such conditions as may be specified by the SEBI including conditions to be complied with on a continuous basis.

"regulatory sandbox" means a live testing environment where new products, processes, services, business models, etc. may be deployed on a limited set of eligible customers for a specified period of time, for furthering innovation in the securities market, subject to such conditions as may be specified by the SEBI.

BUY-BACK *VIS-A-VIS* COMPLIANCE UNDER SEBI (SUBSTANTIAL ACQUISITION OF SHARES AND TAKEOVERS) REGULATIONS, 2011

- An increase in voting rights in a target company of any shareholder beyond 25%, pursuant to buy-back of shares by the target company shall be exempt from the obligation to make an open offer provided such shareholder reduces his shareholding such that his voting rights fall to below the threshold within ninety days from the date of the closure of the said buy-back offer.

- In case the acquirer's initial shareholding was more than 25% and the increase in shareholding due to buy-back is beyond the permissible creeping acquisition limit of 5% per financial year, the acquirer can get an exemption from making an open offer, subject to the following:
 - (i) such shareholder has not voted in favour of the resolution authorising the buy-back of securities under section 68 of the Companies Act, 2013;
 - (ii) in the case of a shareholder resolution, voting is by way of postal ballot;
 - (iii) where a resolution of shareholders is not required for the buy-back, such shareholder, in his capacity as a director, or any other interested director has not voted in favour of the resolution of the board of directors of the target company authorising the buy-back of securities under section 68 of the Companies Act, 2013; and
 - (iv) the increase in voting rights does not result in an acquisition of control by such shareholder over the target company. However where the aforesaid conditions are not met, in the event such shareholder reduces his shareholding such that his voting rights fall below the level at which the obligation to make an open offer would be attracted, within ninety days from the date of closure of the buy-back offer by the target company, the shareholder shall be exempt from the obligation to make an open offer.

Note:

It is important to note that while the above key considerations are to be kept in mind while undertaking a buy-back under various methods, the listed company is also required to comply with the requirements specified under the Companies Act, 2013, the Securities and Exchange Board of India (Listing Obligations and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2015, the Foreign Exchange Management Act, 1999, the Securities and Exchange Board of India (Prohibition of Insider Trading) Regulations, 2015, the Securities and Exchange Board of India (SAST) Regulations, 2011 and other applicable securities laws including other jurisdictions. Additionally, listed company specific issues such as employee stock option schemes, share based schemes or depository receipts may also have an impact on buy-backs undertaken by a listed company.

ROLE OF COMPANY SECRETARY

Being a Company Secretary of a company it is very important to know about the various procedural requirements of Buy-back by a Company because a Company Secretary can only then be able to make the directors understand the real effects of buy back when deciding to return cash to shareholders or to pursue other investment options. A buy-back's impact on share price comes from changes in a company's capital structure and, more critically, from the signals a buy-back sends. Investors are generally relieved to learn that companies don't intend to do something wasteful such as make an unwise acquisition or a poor capital expenditure with the excess cash.

LESSON ROUND-UP

- "Buy-back" means the purchase of its own shares or other specified securities by a company.
- Buy-back of securities is a corporate financial strategy which involves capital restructuring and is prevalent globally with the underlying objectives of increasing earnings per share, averting hostile takeovers, improving returns to the stakeholders and realigning the capital structure.
- Buy-back of securities is regulated by the SEBI (Buy-Back of Securities) Regulations, 2018 in case of listed companies.
- The main objective of buy-back may be to improve earnings per share; to improve return on capital, return on net worth and to enhance the long-term shareholder value; to provide an additional exit route to shareholders when shares are undervalued or are thinly traded; to enhance consolidation of stake in the company; to prevent unwelcome takeover bids; to return surplus cash to shareholders; to achieve optimum capital structure; to support share price during periods of sluggish market conditions and to service the equity more efficiently.

- Buy-back of securities may be made :
 - a) from the existing shareholders or other specified securities holders on a proportionate basis through the tender offer; or
 - b) from the open market through book-building and Stock exchange ; or
 - c) from odd lots holders.
- A company may undertake a buy-back of its own shares or other specified securities out of its free reserves or the securities premium account; or the proceeds of the issue of any shares or other specified securities.
- The company shall not make any buy-back unless it is authorised by the company's articles. In case of no authorisation, the company may authorise the articles by passing of special resolution in the General Meeting.
- Every buy-back shall be completed within a period of one year from the date of passing of the special resolution at general meeting, or the resolution passed by the board of directors of the company, as the case may be.
- The company shall, after expiry of the buy-back period, file with the Registrar of Companies and SEBI, a return containing such particulars relating to the buy-back within thirty days of such expiry, in the format as specified in the Companies (Share Capital and Debentures) Rules, 2014.

GLOSSARY

Bid	An offer of a price to buy as in an auction. Business on the Stock Exchange is done through bids. Bid also refers to the price one is willing to pay for a security.
Company	A company as defined under the Companies Act, 1956 or 2013 as the case may be, whose shares or other specified securities are listed on a Stock Exchange and which buys or intends to buy such shares or other specified securities in accordance with these regulations;
Earnings per share (EPS)	It is the portion of a company's profit allocated to each outstanding share of common stock and it serves as an indicator of a company's profitability.
Odd Lots	The lots of shares or other specified securities of a company, whose shares are listed on a recognised stock exchange, which are smaller than such marketable lots, as may be specified by the stock exchange;
Open Market	Purchase or sale of government securities by the monetary authorities (RBI in India to increase or decrease the domestic money supply.
Stakeholder	Any individual or group who has an interest in a firm; in addition to shareholders and bondholders, includes labour, consumers, suppliers, the local community and so on.
Working Day	It means any working day of the SEBI.

TEST YOURSELF

(These are meant for recapitulation only. Answer to these questions are not to be submitted for evaluation.)

1. What do you mean by buy-back of Securities? Can a company buy-back its own shares or any specified securities through negotiated deals or through any private arrangements? Comment with methods allowed for buy-back.
2. XYZ Ltd., has equity share capital of Rs. 20,00,000 of face value of Rs. 10 each, listed in BSE Ltd. The company has proposed for buy-back of its shares up to 25%. As a Company Secretary explain the conditions for buy-back of shares.
3. Explain the provisions for opening of Escrow Account with respect to buy-back of shares through Tender Offer?
4. Can a company buy-back its shares without passing shareholders' resolution?
5. What are the sources available for buy-back of shares or other specified securities under the SEBI (Buy-back of securities) Regulations, 2018?
6. Elucidate the provisions with respect to Buy-back of physical shares under the SEBI (Buy-back of Securities) Regulations, 2018?
7. Explain the obligations of a company under the SEBI (Buy-back of Securities) Regulations, 2018?
8. The financial data of a listed company as on 31st March, 2018 are as follows :
 Authorized equity share capital Rs. 10 crore (1 crore shares of Rs.10 each)
 Paid-up equity share capital Rs. 5 crore
 General reserve Rs. 3 crore
 Debenture redemption reserve Rs. 2 crore
 The Board of directors of the company passed resolution by circulation for buy-back of shares to the extent of 9% of the company's paid-up share capital and free reserves. You are required to examine the validity of the proposal with reference to the provisions of the SEBI Regulations.
9. The following is an extract of Balance Sheet of ABC Ltd. :
 Equity Shares Capital — 50,000 Equity Share of Rs. 10 each.
 10% Debenture Capital — 20,000 Debenture of Rs. 10 each.
 On 21st April, 2018, the Board of Directors decided to buy-back 5,000 equity shares for which they would call Extra-ordinary General Meeting. In the year 2016, the company has defaulted in payment of interest on secured loan to Bank amounted to Rs. 25 crore, which was remedied in the year 2017. Comment on the above situation.

LIST OF FURTHER READINGS

- SEBI Circulars
- SEBI Notifications
- SEBI FAQs

OTHER REFERENCES (Including Websites/Video Links)

- <https://www.sebi.gov.in/index.html>
- <https://www.nseindia.com/>
- <https://www.bseindia.com/>
- https://www.sebi.gov.in/reports/reports/mar-2018/discussion-paper-on-review-of-buy-back-regulations-1998-and-takeover-regulations-2011_38479.html

Lesson 8

SEBI (Delisting of Equity Shares) Regulations, 2021

Key Concepts One Should Know

- Bidding Mechanism
- Reverse Book Building
- Exit Opportunity
- Discovered Price
- Escrow Account
- Counter Offer
- Initial Public Announcement
- Detailed Public Announcement
- Floor Price
- Innovators Growth Platform
- Small Company

Learning Objectives

To understand:

- Meaning of Delisting
- Types of Delisting
- Delisting Regulations at various points of time in 2003, 2009 and the latest amendment in 2021.
- Various requirements to be complied for delisting.
- Various provisions of delisting.
- Conditions and procedure for delisting where exit opportunity is required and not required.
- Consequences of delisting in case of compulsory delisting.
- Special powers of SEBI.

Regulatory Framework

- SEBI (Delisting of Equity Shares) Regulations, 2021

Lesson Outline

- Introduction
- Genesis
- Regulatory Framework of SEBI (Delisting of Equity Shares) Regulations, 2021
- Applicability
- Non-Applicability
- Conditions for delisting
- Voluntary delisting
- Conditions and Procedure for delisting where exit opportunity is not required
- Conditions and Procedure for delisting where exit opportunity is required
- Compulsory Delisting
- Special provisions for Small Companies
- Special provisions for companies listed on Innovators Growth Platform
- Powers of SEBI
- Role of Company Secretary in delisting
- LESSON ROUND-UP
- GLOSSARY
- TEST YOURSELF
- LIST OF FURTHER READINGS
- OTHER REFERENCES

INTRODUCTION

Listing means admission of a Company's securities to the trading platform of a Stock Exchange, so as to provide marketability and liquidity to the security holders.

"Delisting" which is totally the reverse of listing denotes removal of the securities of a listed company from the platform of Stock Exchange. Delisting is different from suspension or withdrawal of admission to dealings of listed securities, which is for a limited period.

The Companies choose to list themselves to grab the advantages of listing viz; lower cost of capital, greater shareholder base, liquidity in trading of shares, prestige etc. But the companies need to be contended that the benefits of listing outweigh the listing costs, the compliance requirements do not overburden the companies and do not expose them to disciplinary actions.

Whereas, 'Suspension' of trading in securities means that no trade can take place in the securities of the company suspended for a temporary period. Suspension is not done at the instance of company but it is action taken by the Stock Exchanges against the company, generally for non-compliance of listing conditions as stipulated under the SEBI (Listing Obligations and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2015 (LODR Regulations) for which the Stock exchanges may impose fines or freeze promoter/promoter group holding of designated securities, as may be applicable in coordination with depositories. Once, the company makes good the compliance of the listing conditions under the LODR Regulations, stock exchange withdraws the suspension and permits trading.

On the other hand, 'delisting' of securities means removal of the name of the company from the stock exchange and no trade can take place in the securities of the company delisted. Delisting of securities can be done either by company voluntarily or by the stock exchange, compulsorily. Generally, stock exchange, in order to impose severe punishment on companies compulsorily delists securities of a company, as a last resort. Compulsory delisting affects reputation of company and the extent of liquidity in trading those shares.

Company ceasing to carry on the business, bankruptcy, merger are also some of the reasons behind delisting of a company. Delisting curbs the securities of the delisted company from being traded on the stock exchange. It can be done either on voluntary decision of the company or forcibly done by SEBI on account of some wrong doing by the company. There are certain norms which a company needs to follow while listing on the stock exchange.

In case the company fails to do so, then SEBI takes the action which generally leads to delisting of the company from the stock exchange. Whenever there is transfer of Business or Regulators demands or there is lack of trading volume in regional exchanges the need of Delisting arises. At times change in Investors Profile and funding patterns may also trigger Delisting.

GENESIS

In its continuous endeavor to ease the process of delisting, SEBI in the year 2002 constituted a committee on delisting of shares to *inter alia* examine and review the conditions for delisting of securities of companies listed on recognized stock exchanges and suggest norms and procedures in connection therewith. The Report of the Committee was considered and accepted by SEBI. Pursuant to the same, SEBI issued the SEBI (Delisting of Securities) Guidelines, 2003.

The said Guidelines, although to a great extent, covered the issues involved in Delisting of Securities. Various representations and views, from intermediaries, stock exchanges, shareholders' associations, chambers of commerce, etc., were given to the Regulators on the operational issues and procedural complications in the guidelines.

SEBI circulated Concept Paper on the proposed SEBI (Delisting of Securities) Regulations, 2006, asking for public comments on the proposed Regulations. SEBI received various comments, opinions and suggestions on the subject and finally, by its publication dated June 10, 2009 in the Official Gazette, the SEBI notified the SEBI (Delisting of Equity Shares) Regulations, 2009, thereby superseding the earlier SEBI (Delisting of Securities) Guidelines, 2003.

Since then, several amendments have been carried out in the Delisting Regulations according to the changing needs and developments in the securities market.

To further streamline and strengthen the delisting process / regulations, a comprehensive review of the delisting regulations is proposed with the following key objectives:

- Enhance disclosures to help investors to take informed investment decisions
- Refine process
- Rationalize the existing timelines, so as to complete the delisting in time bound manner
- Streamline the delisting regulations to make it robust, efficient, transparent and investor's friendly
- Plug gaps
- Update references to the Companies Act, 2013 and other securities laws.

Taking note of the above objectives, SEBI vide its notification dated June 10, 2021 had notified the SEBI (Delisting of Equity Shares) Regulations, 2021 which have now completely replaced the SEBI (Delisting of Equity Shares) Regulations, 2009.

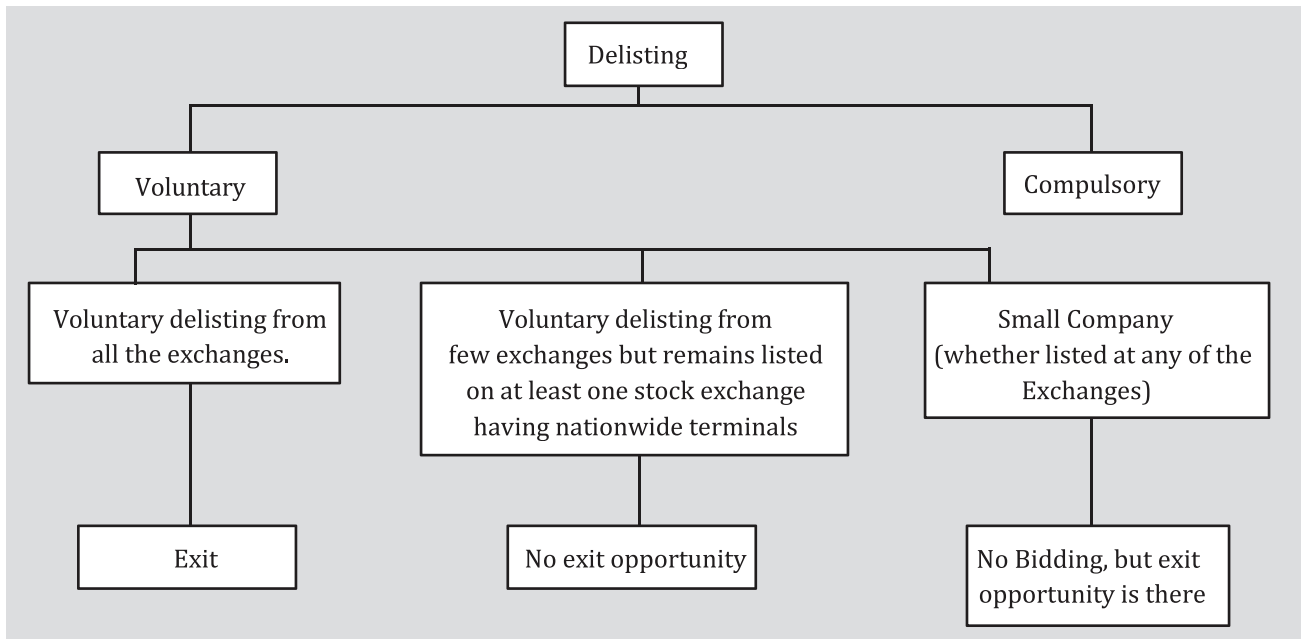
REGULATORY FRAMEWORK OF SEBI (DELISTING OF EQUITY SHARES) REGULATIONS, 2021

These regulations contain 8 chapters and 4 schedules dealing with the following:

1.	Chapter I	Preliminary (Definitions)
2.	Chapter II	Delisting of Equity Shares
3.	Chapter III	Voluntary Delisting
4.	Chapter IV	Exit Opportunity
5.	Chapter V	Compulsory Delisting
6.	Chapter VI	Special Provisions for Small Companies
7.	Chapter VII	Miscellaneous
8.	Chapter VIII	Powers of Board, Directions by the Board, Repeal and Savings
9.	Schedule I	Contents of the detailed Public Announcement
10.	Schedule II	The Reverse Book Building Process
11.	Schedule III	Guidelines for Compulsory Delisting
12.	Schedule IV	Timelines for Counter Offer

APPLICABILITY (REGULATION 3)

These regulations shall be applicable to delisting of equity shares of a company including equity shares having superior voting rights from all or any of the recognized stock exchanges where such shares are listed.



NON-APPLICABILITY

These regulation shall not be applicable to :-

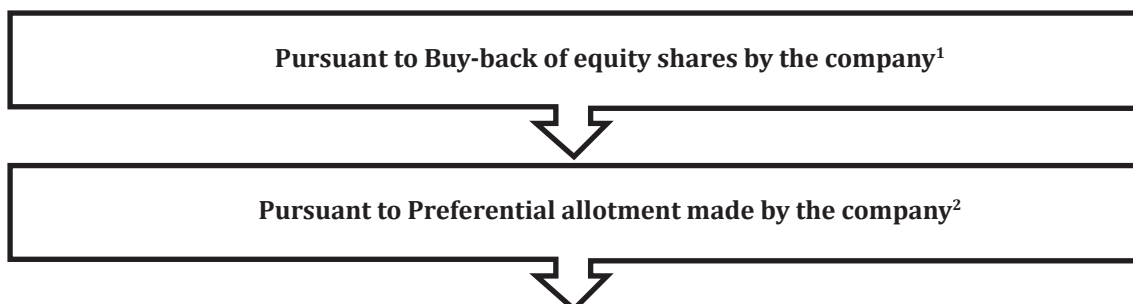
- securities listed and traded on the innovators growth platform of a recognised stock exchange, without making a public issue;
- any delisting of equity shares of a listed entity made pursuant to a resolution plan approved under section 31 of the Insolvency Code, if such plan, –
 - (a) provides for delisting of such share; or
 - (b) provides an exit opportunity to the existing public shareholders at a specified price.

However, the existing public shareholders shall be provided an exit opportunity at a price which shall not be less than the price, by whatever name called, at which a promoter or any entity belonging to the promoter group or any other shareholder, directly or indirectly, is provided an exit opportunity:

Provided also that, the details of delisting of such shares along with the justification for exit price in respect of delisting proposed shall be disclosed to the recognized stock exchanges within one day of resolution plan being approved under section 31 of the Insolvency Code.

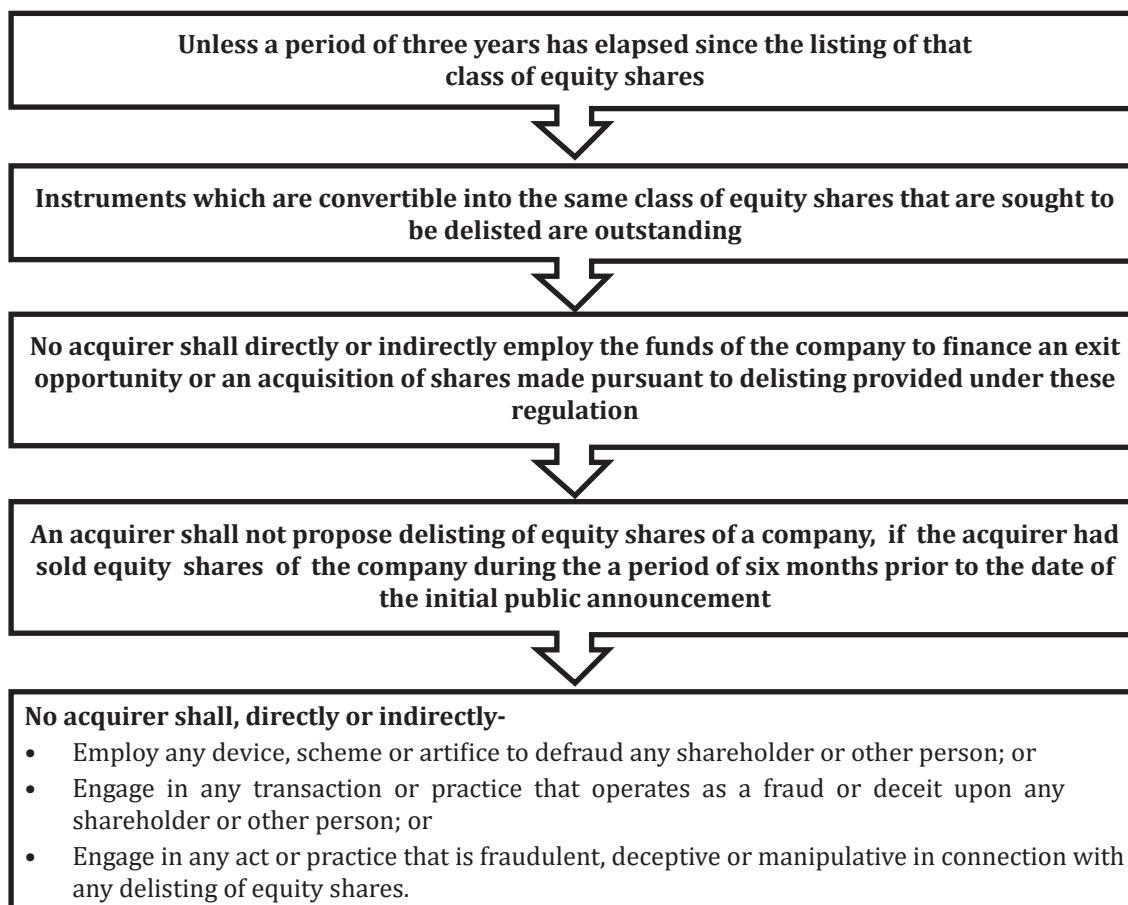
CONDITIONS FOR DELISTING

Regulation 4 provides that neither any company shall apply for nor any recognised stock exchange shall permit delisting of equity shares of a company-



1. Unless a period of 6 months has lapsed from the date of completion of such buyback.

2. Unless a period of 6 months has lapsed from the date of completion of such allotment.

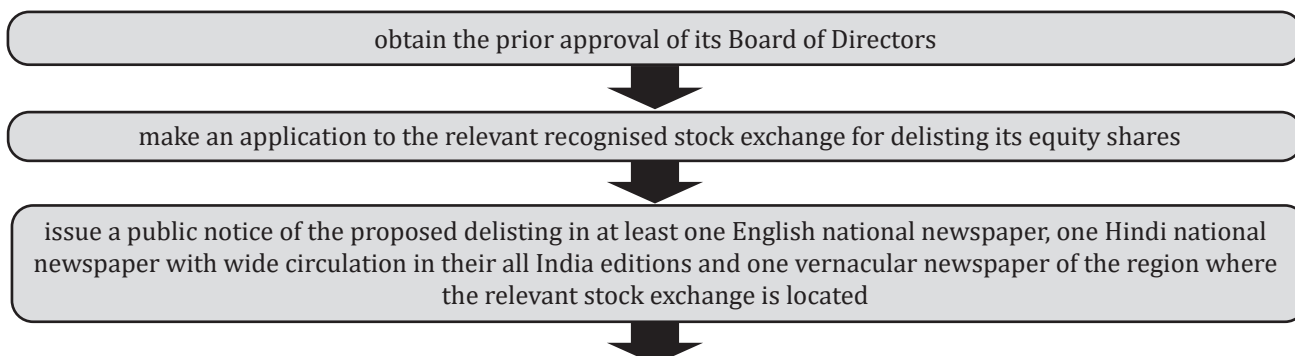


VOLUNTARY DELISTING

“Voluntary Delisting” means the delisting of equity shares of a company voluntarily on an application made by the company under Chapter III of these regulations. In voluntary delisting, the promoters of the listed company decides on their own to permanently remove its securities from a stock exchange.

Conditions and procedure for delisting where exit opportunity is not required

Regulation 5 of SEBI (Delisting of Equity Shares) Regulations, 2021 provides that a company may delist its equity shares from one or more of the recognised stock exchanges on which it is listed without providing an exit opportunity to the public shareholders, if after the proposed delisting, the equity shares remain listed on any recognised stock exchange that has nationwide trading terminals. Any company desirous of delisting its equity shares where no exit opportunity is required shall-



disclose the fact of delisting in its first annual report post delisting



an application for delisting shall be disposed of by the recognised stock exchange within a period not exceeding thirty working days from the date of receipt of such application that is complete in all respects

The following details shall be provided in the above mentioned Public notice:

- (a) The names of the recognized stock exchanges from where the equity shares of the company are intended to be delisted.
- (b) The reasons for such delisting.
- (c) The fact of continuation of listing of equity shares on recognized stock exchange having nationwide trading terminals.

Conditions and procedure for delisting where exit opportunity is required

Regulation 7 provides that the equity shares of a company may be delisted from all the recognised stock exchanges having nationwide trading terminals on which they are listed, after an exit opportunity has been provided by the acquirer to all the public shareholders holding the equity shares sought to be delisted, in accordance with Chapter IV of these regulations.

Initial public announcement (Regulation 8)

On the date when the acquirer decides to voluntarily delist the equity shares of the company, it shall make an initial public announcement to all the stock exchanges on which the shares of the company are listed and the stock exchanges shall forthwith disseminate the same to the public.

A copy of the initial public announcement shall also be sent to the company at its registered office not later than one working day from the date of the initial public announcement.

The initial public announcement shall contain:—

- (a) the reasons for delisting;
- (b) an undertaking with respect to compliance with regulations 4(2) and 4(5) of these regulations;
- (4) the initial public announcement shall not omit any relevant information or contain any misleading information.

Appointment of the manager to the offer (Regulation 9)

Prior to making an initial public announcement, the acquirer shall appoint a merchant banker registered with the SEBI as the Manager to the offer. The Manager to the offer shall not be an associate of the acquirer.

The initial public announcement and the subsequent activities as required under these regulations shall be undertaken by the acquirer through the Manager to the offer.

Obligation of the manager to the offer (Regulation 29)

Before making the detailed public announcement, the Manager to the offer for delisting of equity shares shall ensure that, —

- the acquirer is able to implement the delisting offer.
- firm arrangements for funds through verifiable means have been made by the acquirer to meet the payment obligations under the delisting offer.
- the contents of the initial public announcement, the detailed public announcement, the letter of offer and the post-bidding advertisement(s) are complete, true, fair and adequate in all material aspects, based on reliable sources and are in compliance with the requirements under these regulations and other applicable securities laws.

- market intermediaries engaged for the purpose of the delisting of equity shares are registered with the SEBI.
- the Manager to the offer shall exercise due diligence, care and professional judgment to ensure compliance with these regulations.
- the Manager to the offer shall not, either directly or indirectly through its associates, deal in its own account in the shares of the company after its appointment as Manager to the offer till the conclusion of the delisting offer.
- the Manager to the offer to ensure that the acquirer complies with the provisions of these regulations.

Approval by the Board of Directors (Regulation 10)

The company shall obtain the approval of its Board of Directors in respect of the proposal, not later than twenty one days from the date of the initial public announcement.

The Board of Directors of the company, while considering the proposal for delisting, shall certify that—

- the company is in compliance with the applicable provisions of securities laws;
- the acquirer and its related entities are in compliance with the applicable provisions of securities laws in terms of the Company Secretary including compliance with sub-regulation (5) of regulation 4 of these regulations;
- the delisting, in their opinion, is in the interest of the shareholders of the company.

While communicating the decision of the Board of Directors on the proposal for delisting of equity shares, the company shall also submit to the recognized stock exchanges on which the equity shares of the company are listed, the due - diligence report of the Company Secretary and the audit report as per regulation 76 of the SEBI (Depositories and Participants) Regulations, 2018.

Upon receipt of the above mentioned communication from the company, the stock exchanges shall forthwith disseminate the same to the public.

Appointment of peer reviewer Company Secretary to carry out the Due-Diligence

The Board of Directors of the company, before considering the proposal of delisting, shall appoint a Peer Reviewer Company Secretary and provide the following information to such Company Secretary for carrying out due-diligence: -

- the details of buying, selling and dealing in the equity shares of the company by the acquirer or its related entities during the period of two years prior to the date of board meeting held to consider the proposal for delisting, including the details of the top twenty five shareholders, for the said period;
- the details of off-market transactions of all the shareholders mentioned in clause (a) for a period of two years;
- any additional information if the Company Secretary is of the opinion that the information provided under clauses (a) and (b) is not sufficient for providing the certification.

After obtaining the information from the Board of Directors of the company, the Company Secretary shall carry out the due-diligence and submit a report to the Board of Directors of the company certifying that the buying, selling and dealing in the equity shares of the company carried out by the acquirer or its related entities and the top twenty five shareholders is in compliance with the applicable provisions of securities laws including these regulations.

Approval by shareholders (Regulation 11)

The company shall obtain the approval of the shareholders through a special resolution, not later than forty five days from the date of obtaining the approval of Board of Directors. The special resolution shall be passed through postal ballot and / or e-voting as per the applicable provisions of the Companies Act, 2013 and the rules made thereunder. The company shall disclose all material facts in the explanatory statement sent to the shareholders in relation to such a resolution.

The special resolution shall be acted upon only if the votes cast by the public shareholders in favour of the proposal are at least two times the number of votes cast by the public shareholders against it.

In-principle approval of the stock exchange (Regulation 12)

The company shall make an application to the relevant recognised stock exchange for in-principle approval of the proposed delisting of its equity shares in the Form specified, not later than fifteen working days from the date of passing of the special resolution or receipt of any other statutory or regulatory approval, whichever is later.

The application seeking in-principle approval for the delisting of equity shares shall be accompanied by an audit report as required under regulation 76 of the SEBI (Depositories and Participants) Regulations, 2018 in respect of the equity shares sought to be delisted, covering a period of six months prior to the date of the application.

Such application seeking in-principle approval for the delisting of the equity shares shall be disposed of by the recognised stock exchange within a period not exceeding, fifteen working days from the date of receipt of such application that is complete in all respects.

Escrow account (Regulation 14)

The acquirer shall open an interest bearing escrow account with a Scheduled Commercial Bank, not later than seven working days from the date of obtaining the shareholders' approval, and deposit therein an amount equivalent to twenty five percent of the total consideration, calculated on the basis of the number of equity shares outstanding with the public shareholders multiplied with the floor price or the indicative price, if any given by the acquirer in terms of these regulations, whichever is higher.

The acquirer shall enter into a tripartite agreement with the Manager to the offer and the Bank for the purpose of opening the escrow account and shall authorize the Manager to the offer to operate such account as per the provisions of these regulations.

Before making the detailed public announcement, the acquirer shall deposit in the escrow account, the remaining consideration amount being seventy five percent calculated on the basis of the number of equity shares outstanding with the public shareholders multiplied with the floor price or the indicative price, if any given by the acquirer in terms of these regulations, whichever is higher.

On determination of the discovered price and making of the public announcement accepting the discovered price, the acquirer shall forthwith deposit in the escrow account such additional sum as may be sufficient to make up the entire sum due and payable as consideration in respect of equity shares outstanding with the public shareholders.

The escrow account shall consist of either the cash deposited with a Scheduled Commercial Bank or a bank guarantee in favour of the Manager to the offer or a combination of both.

In case of failure of the delisting offer, ninety nine percent of the amount lying in the escrow account shall be released to the acquirer within one working day from the date of public announcement of such failure. The remaining one percent amount lying in the escrow account shall be released post return of the shares to the public shareholders or confirmation of revocation of lien marked on their shares by the Manager to the offer as per the timelines provided in these regulations.

Detailed public announcement (Regulation 15)

The acquirer shall, within one working day from the date of receipt of in-principle approval for delisting of equity shares from the recognised stock exchange, make a detailed public announcement in at least one English national newspaper with wide circulation, one Hindi national newspaper with wide circulation in their all India editions and one vernacular newspaper of the region where the relevant recognised stock exchange is located.

The detailed public announcement shall contain all material information including the information specified in Schedule I of these regulations and shall not contain any false or misleading statement.

The detailed public announcement shall also specify a date, being a day not later than one working day from the date of the detailed public announcement, which shall be the 'specified date' for determining the names of the shareholders to whom the letter of offer shall be sent. The detailed public announcement shall be dated and signed by the acquirer.

Letter of offer (Regulation 16)

The acquirer shall dispatch the letter of offer to the public shareholders not later than two working days from the date of the detailed public announcement made. The letter of offer shall be sent to all public shareholders, holding equity shares of the class sought to be delisted, whose names appear on the register of the company or depository as on the date specified in the detailed public announcement.

A copy of the letter of offer shall also be made available on the websites of the company and the Manager to the offer for the benefit of the public shareholders. The letter of offer shall contain all the disclosures made in the detailed public announcement and such other disclosures as may be necessary for the shareholders to take an informed decision.

Bidding mechanism (Regulation 17)

The bidding period shall start not later than seven working days from the date of the detailed public announcement and shall remain open for five working days. The acquirer shall facilitate tendering of shares by the shareholders and settlement of the same, through the stock exchange mechanism as specified by the SEBI.

The Manager to the offer shall ensure that the outcome of the reverse book building process is announced within two hours of the closure of the bidding period. Within two working days from the closure of the bidding period, the acquirer shall, through the Manager to the offer, make a public announcement in the same newspapers in which the detailed public announcement was made, disclosing the success or failure of the reverse book building process, along with the discovered price accepted by the acquirer in the event of success of the said process.

Manner of tendering shares (Regulation 18)

The equity shares shall be tendered/offered by the public shareholders, including by way of marking a lien through the stock exchange mechanism, in the manner specified by the SEBI.

Right of shareholders to participate in the reverse book building process (Regulation 19)

Public shareholders holding the equity shares of the company, which are sought to be delisted, shall be entitled to participate in the reverse book building process in the manner specified in Schedule II of these regulations. The Manager to the issue shall take necessary steps to ensure compliance with the same.

Any holder of depository receipts issued on the basis of underlying equity shares and a custodian keeping custody of such equity shares shall not be entitled to participate in the reverse book building process.

However, any holder of depository receipts may participate in the reverse book building process after converting such depository receipts into equity shares of the company that are proposed to be delisted.

Discovered price (Regulation 20)

The floor price shall be determined in terms of regulation 8 of Takeover Regulations as may be applicable.

After fixation of the floor price, the discovered price shall be determined through the reverse book building process in the manner specified in Schedule II of these regulations, and the Manager to the offer shall disclose the same in the detailed public announcement and the letter of offer.

The acquirer shall have the option to provide an indicative price in respect of the delisting offer, which shall be higher than the floor price. The acquirer shall also have the option to revise the indicative price upwards before the start of the bidding period and the same shall be duly disclosed to the shareholders.

The acquirer may, if it deems fit, pay a price higher than the discovered price.

In case the discovered price is not acceptable to the acquirer, a counter offer may be made by the acquirer to the public shareholders within two working days of the closure of bidding period

Minimum number of equity shares to be acquired (Regulation 21)

An offer made or a counter offer made by the acquirer, as the case may be, shall be deemed to be successful if,-

- (a) the post offer promoter shareholding (along with the persons acting in concert with the promoter) taken together with the shares accepted through eligible bids at the final price determined, reaches 90% of the total issued shares of that class excluding the following:
 - (i) shares which are held by a custodian and against which depository receipts have been issued overseas; and
 - (ii) shares held by a Trust set up for implementing an Employee Benefit scheme under the Securities and Exchange Board of India (Share Based Employee Benefits) Regulations, 2014;
 - (iii) shares held by inactive shareholders such as vanishing companies and struck off companies, shares transferred to the Investor Education and Protection Fund's account and shares held in terms of sub-regulation (4) of regulation 39 read with Schedule VI of the Securities and Exchange Board of India (Listing Obligations and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations 2015.

However, such shareholders shall be certified by the Peer Review Company Secretary appointed by the Board of Directors of the company for due-diligence.

Explanation,— The cut-off date for determination of inactive shareholders shall be the date on which the in-principle approval of the Stock Exchange is received, which shall be adequately disclosed in the public announcement.

An illustration for arriving at the discovered price is given as under:

Bid Price (Rs.)	Number of investors	Demand (Number of shares)	Cumulative demand (Number of shares)	
550	5	2,50,000	2,50,000	
565	8	4,00,000	6,50,000	
575	10	2,00,000	8,50,000	
585	4	4,00,000	12,50,000	
595	6	1,20,000	13,70,000	
600	5	1,30,000	15,00,000	Final Offer Price
605	3	2,10,000	17,10,000	
610	3	1,40,000	18,50,000	
615	3	1,50,000	20,00,000	
620	1	5,00,000	25,00,000	
Total	48	25,00,000		

In the given illustration, assuming floor price of Rs.550/- per share, promoter/ acquirer shareholding at 75% and number of shares required for successful delisting as 15,00,000, the final price would be the price at which the promoter reaches the threshold of 90%, i.e., it would be Rs.600/- per share.

Option to accept or reject the discovered price or counter offer (Regulation 22)

The acquirer shall be bound to accept the equity shares tendered or offered in the delisting offer, if the discovered price determined through the reverse book building process is equal to the floor price or the indicative price, if any, offered by the acquirer.

The acquirer shall be bound to accept the equity shares, at the indicative price, if any offered by the acquirer, even if the price determined through the reverse book building process is higher than the floor price but less than the indicative price.

However, the abovementioned provisions shall not apply if the discovered price is higher than the indicative price.

In case the discovered price is not acceptable to the acquirer, a counter offer may be made by the acquirer to the public shareholders within two working days of the closure of bidding period and thereafter, the acquirer shall ensure compliance with the provisions of these regulations in accordance with the timelines provided in Schedule IV.

The counter offer price shall not be less than the book value of the company as certified by the Manager to the offer.

Timelines for counter offer (Schedule IV)

Sr. No.	Activity	Timelines
1.	Public announcement of counter offer by the acquirer through stock exchange mechanism	Within 2 working days from the date of closure of reverse book building bidding process
2.	Publication of counter offer public announcement in the same newspapers where the detailed public announcement was made	Within 4 working days from the closure of the reverse book building bidding process
3.	Option to withdraw the shares tendered during the reverse book building process	Within 10 working days from the counter offer public announcement
4.	Dispatch of "Letter of offer for counter offer"	Within 4 working days from the closure of the reverse book building bidding process
5.	Opening of counter offer bidding process	Not later than 7 working days from the date of public announcement
6.	Closing of counter offer bidding process	Not later than 5 working days from the opening of counter offer bidding process
7.	Public announcement of success/failure of counter offer in the same newspaper in which detailed public announcement was made	Not later than 5 working days of the closing of the counter offer bidding process
8.	Payment of consideration	Not later than 10 working days from the closing of counter offer or through the secondary market settlement mechanism, as the case may be
9.	Release of equity shares	On the date of making public announcement of the success or failure of the counter offer

Failure of offer (Regulation 23)

The delisting offer shall be considered to have failed

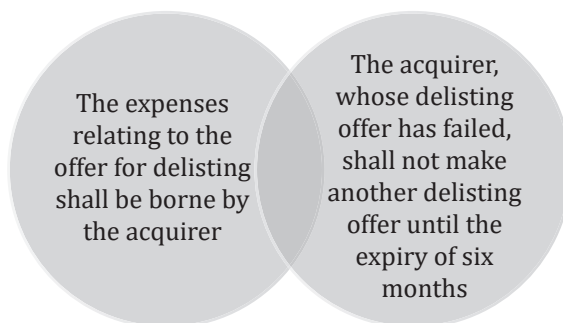
if the minimum number of shares are not tendered/offered

if the price discovered through the reverse book building process is rejected by the acquirer

- 1) Where the delisting offer fails the equity shares tendered / offered as the case may be, shall be released-
- on the date of disclosure of the outcome of the reverse book building process if the minimum number of shares are not tendered / offered;
 - on the date of making public announcement for the failure of the delisting offer if the price discovered through the reverse book building process is rejected by the acquirer;
 - in accordance with Schedule IV of these regulations if a counter offer has been made by the acquirer.

However, the acquirer shall not be required to return the shares if the offer is made pursuant to regulation 5A of the SEBI (Substantial Acquisition of Shares and Takeovers) Regulations, 2011.

- 2) Where the delisting offer fails-



Payment upon success of the offer (Regulation 24)

All the public shareholders, whose bids are accepted, shall be paid the discovered price or a higher price, if any, offered by the acquirer, as stated in the public announcement in the following manner -

- In case the discovered price is equal to the floor price or the indicative price or in case the acquirer is bound to accept the equity shares in the delisting offer, the payment shall be made through the secondary market settlement mechanism;
- In case the discovered price or the price, if any, offered by the acquirer, is higher than the floor price or the indicative price, as the case may be, the payment shall be made within five working days from the date of the public announcement.

The acquirer shall be liable to pay interest at the rate of ten percent per annum to all the shareholders, whose bids have been accepted in the delisting offer, if the price payable is not paid to all the shareholders within the time specified thereunder.

However, in case the delay was not attributable to any act or omission of the acquirer or was caused due to the circumstances beyond the control of the acquirer, the SEBI may grant waiver from the payment of such interest.

Final application to the stock exchange after successful delisting (Regulation 25)

Within 5 working days from the date of making the payment to the public shareholders, the acquirer shall make the final application for delisting to the relevant recognised stock exchange in the Form specified by such stock exchange from time to time.

The final application for delisting shall be accompanied with necessary details / information, as the recognised stock exchange may require, of having provided the exit opportunity.

The final application for delisting shall be disposed of by the recognised stock exchange within 15 working days from the date of receipt of such application that is complete in all respects. Upon disposal of the final application for delisting by the stock exchange, the equity shares of the company shall be permanently delisted from the stock exchange.

Right of the remaining public shareholders to tender equity shares (Regulation 26)

The remaining public shareholders, whose shares were either not accepted or were not tendered at all during the bidding period, shall have a right to tender their equity shares for a minimum period of 1 year from the date of delisting.

The acquirer shall be under an obligation during such period to accept the shares of the remaining public shareholders, at the same price at which the equity shares had been delisted. The payment of consideration for equity shares accepted shall be made out of the balance amount lying in the escrow account.

The Manager to the offer shall ensure that the amount lying in the escrow account or the bank guarantee shall not be released to the acquirer for a minimum period of one year or till the time payment has been made to the remaining public shareholders, whichever is earlier.

Cancellation of outstanding depository receipts (Regulation 31)

After delisting of equity shares from all the recognized stock exchanges having nationwide trading terminals, the company shall be required to compulsorily cancel all the outstanding depository receipts issued overseas and change them into the underlying equity shares in the home jurisdiction after termination of the depository receipts program(s), within 1 year of such delisting.

OBLIGATIONS OF THE COMPANY (REGULATION 28)

Upon receipt of the detailed public announcement, the Board of Directors of the company shall constitute a Committee of independent directors to provide reasoned recommendations on the delisting offer.

The Committee of independent directors shall provide its written reasoned recommendations on the proposal for delisting of equity shares to the Board of Directors of the company and in relation thereto, the Committee may also seek external professional advice at the expense of the company.

The Committee of independent directors, while providing reasoned recommendations on the delisting proposal, shall disclose the voting pattern of the meeting in which the said proposal was discussed.

The company shall publish such recommendations of the Committee of independent directors, along with the details of the voting pattern, at least 2 working days before the commencement of the bidding period, in the same newspapers in which the detailed public announcement of the offer for delisting of equity shares was published, and simultaneously, a copy of the same shall be sent to the stock exchange(s) and the Manager to the offer.

OBLIGATIONS OF THE ACQUIRER (REGULATION 30)

Prior to making the initial public announcement of the offer for the delisting of equity shares, the acquirer shall ensure that firm financial arrangements have been made for fulfilling the payment obligations under the delisting offer and that the acquirer is able to implement the delisting offer, subject to any statutory approvals for the delisting offer that may be necessary.

The acquirer shall ensure that the contents of the initial public announcement, the detailed public announcement, the letter of offer and announcement about success or failure of the offer for delisting are true, fair and adequate in all material aspects, not misleading and based on reliable sources that shall be mentioned wherever necessary.

The acquirer and the persons acting in concert with it shall be jointly and severally responsible for the fulfilment of the applicable obligations under these regulations.

The acquirer shall ensure to acquire the shares offered by the remaining public shareholders at the same price at which the equity shares had been delisted for a minimum period of one year.

No acquirer or persons acting in concert with it shall sell shares of the company during the delisting period.

Procedure for Voluntary delisting from all the stock exchanges

COMPULSORY DELISTING

Compulsory delisting refers to permanent removal of securities of a listed company from a stock exchange as a penalizing measure at the behest of the stock exchange for not making submissions/comply with various requirements set out in the Listing agreement within the time frames prescribed.

As per Regulation 32(1) a recognized stock exchange may, by a reasoned order, delist any equity shares of a company on any ground prescribed in the rules made under the Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, 1956.

However, no order of compulsory delisting shall be issued unless the company has been given a reasonable opportunity of being heard.

Constitution of Panel [Regulation 32(2)]

The decision regarding compulsory delisting shall be taken by a panel to be constituted by the recognized stock exchange consisting of -

- Two Directors of the recognized stock exchange (one of whom shall be a public representative);
- One representative of an investor association recognised by the SEBI;
- One representative of the Ministry of Corporate Affairs or Registrar of Companies; and
- The Executive Director or Secretary of the recognized stock exchange.

Public notice before delisting order [Regulation 32(3)]

Before passing an order, the recognised stock exchange shall give a notice in at least one English national newspaper with wide circulation, one Hindi national newspaper with wide circulation in their all India editions and one vernacular newspaper of the region where the relevant recognised stock exchange is located, of the proposed delisting, giving a time period of not less than fifteen working days from the date of such notice, within which representations, if any, may be made to the recognised stock exchange by any person aggrieved by the proposed delisting and shall also display such notice on its trading systems and website.

Time period of making representation [Regulation 32(3)]

Time period of not less than fifteen working days from the date of such notice, within which representations, if any, may be made to the recognised stock exchange by any person aggrieved by the proposed delisting and shall also display such notice on its trading systems and website.

Delisting Order by the Recognised Stock Exchange [Regulation 32 (4)]

The recognised stock exchange shall, while passing any order of compulsory delisting, consider the representation, if any, made by the company and also any representation received in response to the notice, and shall comply with the guidelines provided in these regulations.

GUIDELINES FOR COMPULSORY DELISTING

The recognised stock exchange shall take into account the grounds prescribed in the rules made under the Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, 1956 while compulsorily delisting the equity shares of the company.

The recognised stock exchange shall take all reasonable steps to trace the promoters of a company whose equity shares are proposed to be delisted.

The recognised stock exchange shall consider the nature and extent of the alleged noncompliance by the company and the number and percentage of public shareholders who may be affected by such non-compliance.

The recognised stock exchange shall take reasonable efforts to verify the status of compliance with the provisions of the Companies Act, 2013 and the rules and regulations made thereunder, by the company with the office of the concerned Registrar of Companies.

The names of the companies whose equity shares are proposed to be delisted and their promoters shall be displayed in a separate section on the website of the recognised stock exchange. If delisted, the names shall be shifted to another separate section on the website.

The recognised stock exchange shall in appropriate cases file prosecutions under relevant provisions of the Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, 1956 or any other law for the time being in force against identifiable promoters and directors of the company for the alleged non-compliances.

The recognised stock exchange shall, in appropriate cases, under the applicable provisions of the Companies Act, 2013, file a petition for winding up the company or make a request to the Registrar of Companies to strike off the name of the company from the register.

Public notice after Delisting Order [Regulation 32 (5)]

Where the recognized stock exchange passes the delisting order, it shall, -

- (a) forthwith publish a notice in one English national newspaper with wide circulation, one Hindi national newspaper with wide circulation in their all India editions and one vernacular newspaper of the region where the relevant recognised stock exchange is located.

The following disclosures are to be made in the notice -

- The fact of such delisting;
- The name and address of the company;
- The fair value of the delisted equity shares; and
- The names and addresses of the promoters of the company who would be liable under sub-regulation (4) of regulation 33 of these regulations.

- (b) inform all other stock exchanges where the equity shares of the company are listed, about such delisting; and
- (c) upload a copy of the said order on its website.

Rights of public shareholders in case of compulsory delisting (Regulation 33)

Where the equity shares of a company are compulsorily delisted by a recognised stock exchange, the recognised stock exchange shall appoint an independent valuer who shall determine the fair value of the delisted equity shares.

The recognised stock exchange shall form a Panel of expert valuers and from the said Panel, the valuer shall be appointed. The value of the delisted equity shares shall be determined by the valuer as prescribed.

The promoter of the company shall acquire the delisted equity shares from the public shareholders by paying them the value determined by the valuer, within three months of the date of delisting from the recognised stock exchange, subject to the option of the public shareholders to retain their shares.

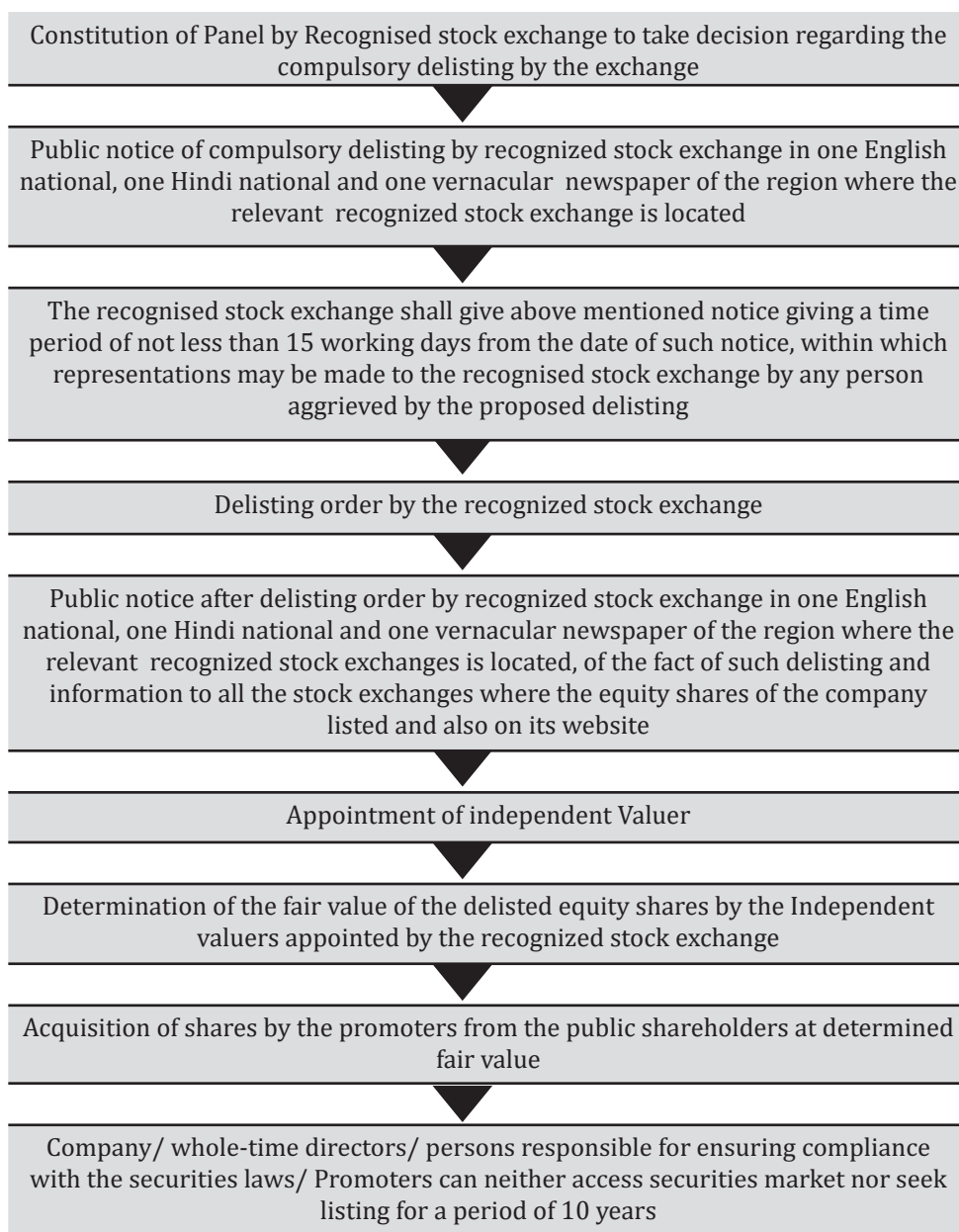
The promoter shall be liable to pay interest at the rate of ten percent per annum to all the shareholders, who offer their shares under the compulsory delisting offer, if the price payable is not paid to all the shareholders within the time specified.

However, in case the delay was not attributable to any act or omission of the acquirer or was caused due to the circumstances beyond the control of the acquirer, the SEBI may grant waiver from the payment of such interest.

CONSEQUENCES OF COMPULSORY DELISTING

Where a company has been compulsorily delisted, the company, its whole-time directors, persons responsible for ensuring compliance with the securities laws, its promoters and the companies which are promoted by any of them shall not directly or indirectly access the securities market or seek listing of any equity shares or act as an intermediary in the securities market for a period of 10 years from the date of such delisting.

Procedure for Compulsory Delisting



SPECIAL PROVISIONS FOR DELISTING

Delisting of equity shares of small Companies (Regulation 35)

Equity shares of a company may be delisted from all the recognised stock exchanges where they are listed, without following the procedure in Chapter IV (Exit Opportunity) of these regulations, if,-

the company has a paid up capital not exceeding 10 crore rupees and net worth not exceeding 25 crore rupees as on the last date of preceding financial year

the number of equity shares of the company traded on each such recognised stock exchange during the 12 calendar months immediately preceding the date of board meeting held for consideration of the proposal of delisting, is less than 10% of the total number of shares of the company

the company has not been suspended by any of the recognised stock exchanges having nationwide trading terminals for any non-compliance in the preceding one year

Delisting of equity shares may be made if, in addition to fulfilment of the requirements of regulation 10 (Approval by the Board of Directors) and regulation 11 (Approval by shareholders), the following conditions are fulfilled:-

- (a) acquirer appoints a Manager to the offer and decides an exit price after consultation;
- (b) the exit price offered to the public shareholders shall not be less than the floor price determined in terms of clause (e) of sub-regulation (2) of regulation 8 of the Takeover Regulations;
- (c) the acquirer writes individually to all the public shareholders of the company informing them of its intention to get the equity shares delisted, the exit price together with the justification therefor and seeking their consent for the proposal for delisting;
- (d) the public shareholders, irrespective of their numbers, holding ninety percent or more of the public shareholding give their consent in writing to the proposal for delisting, and consent either to sell their equity shares at the price offered by the acquirer or to continue to hold the equity shares even if they are delisted;
- (e) the acquirer completes the process of inviting the positive consent and finalisation of the proposal for delisting of equity shares within seventy five working days of the first communication made under clause (c);
- (f) the acquirer makes payment of consideration in cash within fifteen working days from the date of expiry of seventy five working days mentioned in clause (e).

The communication made to the public shareholders under clause (c) shall contain justification for the offer price and specifically mention that consent for the proposal would include consent for dispensing with the exit price discovery through reverse book building method.

The acquirer shall be liable to pay interest at the rate of ten percent per annum to all the shareholders, whose bids have been accepted in the delisting offer, is not paid to all the shareholders within the time specified thereunder. However, in case the delay was not attributable to any act or omission of the acquirer or was caused due to the circumstances beyond the control of the acquirer, the SEBI may grant waiver from the payment of such interest.

The relevant recognised stock exchange may delist such equity shares upon satisfying itself of compliance with this regulation.

Delisting of Equity Shares of Companies Listed on Innovators Growth Platform after making an Initial Public Offer (Regulation 36)

A company whose equity shares are listed and traded on the innovators growth platform pursuant to an initial public offer may be delisted from the innovators growth platform, if –

- (a) such delisting is approved by the Board of Directors of the company;
- (b) such delisting is approved by the shareholders of the company by a special resolution passed through postal ballot or e-voting, after disclosure of all material facts in the explanatory statement sent to the shareholders in relation to such resolution. However, the special resolution shall be acted upon only if the votes cast by the majority of public shareholders are in favour of such exit proposal;
- (c) delisting price is based on a floor price determined in terms of regulation 8 of Takeover Regulations, as may be applicable, and an additional delisting premium justified by the acquirer;
- (d) the post offer shareholding of the acquirer along with the persons acting in concert with it, taken together with the shares tendered reaches seventy five per cent of the total issued shares of that class and at least fifty per cent shares of the public shareholders as on date of the board meeting are tendered and accepted; and
- (e) the recognised stock exchange, on which its shares are listed, approves of such delisting.

Delisting in case of winding up of a company and de-recognition of a stock exchange

In case of winding up proceedings of a company whose equity shares are listed on a recognised stock exchange, the rights, if any, of the shareholders of such company shall be in accordance with the laws applicable to those proceedings. Where the SEBI withdraws recognition granted to a stock exchange or refuses renewal of recognition to it, the SEBI may, in the interest of investors pass appropriate order in respect of the status of equity shares of the companies listed on that stock exchange.

Question:

The equity Shares of XYZ limited have been delisted from the stock exchange. When can an application be made for listing of equity shares of XYZ limited?

Answer:

No application for listing shall be made in respect of equity shares of a company which have been delisted under Chapter III (Voluntary Delisting) or under Chapter VI (Exit Opportunity in case delisting of equity shares of a company from all the recognised stock exchanges), for a period of 3 years from the delisting and which have been delisted under Chapter V (Compulsory Delisting), for a period of 10 years from the delisting, except the following:

- (a) whose equity shares have been delisted pursuant to a resolution plan under section 31 of the Insolvency Code;
- (b) whose equity shares are listed and traded on the innovators growth platform pursuant to an initial public offer and which is delisted from the said platform;
- (c) whose equity shares have been delisted in terms of regulation 35 (Delisting of equity shares of small companies).

POWER OF SEBI TO RELAX STRICT ENFORCEMENT OF THE REGULATIONS (REGULATION 42)

The SEBI may, in the interest of investors or for the development of the securities market, relax the strict enforcement of any requirement of these regulations, if the SEBI is satisfied that–

- a) the requirement is procedural in nature; or
- b) any disclosure requirement is not relevant for a particular class of industry or company; or

- c) the non-compliance was caused due to factors beyond the control of the acquirer.

For seeking above mentioned relaxation, the acquirer or the company shall file an application with the SEBI, supported by a duly sworn affidavit, providing details of such relaxation of the regulations and the grounds on which the relaxation has been sought and pay a non-refundable fee of rupees one lakh along with the application.

Further, the SEBI may also exempt any person or class of persons from the operation of all or any of the provisions of these regulations for a period as may be specified but not exceeding twelve months, for furthering innovation relating to testing new products, processes, services, business models, etc. in live environment of regulatory sandbox in the securities markets.

Explanation,- For the purposes of these regulations, “regulatory sandbox” means a live testing environment where new products, processes, services, business models, etc. may be deployed on a limited set of eligible customers for a specified period of time, for furthering innovation in the securities market, subject to such conditions as may be specified by the Board.

ROLE OF COMPANY SECRETARY IN DELISTING

The Board of Directors of the company, before considering the proposal of delisting, shall appoint a **Peer Review Company Secretary**, who shall carry out the due-diligence and submit a report to the Board of Directors of the company certifying that the buying, selling and dealing in the equity shares of the company carried out by the acquirer or its related entities and the top twenty five shareholders is in compliance with the applicable provisions of securities laws including compliance with these regulations.

The SEBI has widen the area of responsibilities of a Company Secretary by mandating a listed company to appoint Company Secretary to act as compliance officer under the SEBI (LODR) Regulations. Being a compliance officer, it is the responsibility of a Company Secretary to look after and ensure timely compliances of various SEBI regulations. In case of non-compliance with the listing regulation a stock exchange may delist the securities of a company.

Apart from this, a Company Secretary has to appoint and co-ordinate with various intermediaries, regulators, etc. and advise the Board of Directors, the various requirements of Delisting.

LESSON ROUND-UP

- Delisting of securities means permanent removal of securities of a listed company from a stock exchange. As a consequence of delisting, the securities of that company would no longer be traded at that stock exchange.
- Delisting can be voluntary or compulsory.
- SEBI has notified the SEBI (Delisting of Equity Shares) Regulations, 2021 by its notification dated June 10, 2021.
- The delisting regulations are applicable to delisting of equity shares of a company from all or any of the recognised stock exchanges where such shares are listed.
- SEBI (Delisting of Equity Shares) Regulations, 2021 provides the special provisions for small companies, companies listed on innovators growth platform and for delisting by operation of law.
- There are certain circumstances as prescribed by the SEBI where delisting is not permissible.
- In voluntary delisting, a company decides its own to permanently remove its securities from stock exchange.
- A recognised stock exchange may by order delist any equity shares of a company on any grounds prescribed under the Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, 1956.
- When a company has been compulsorily delisted the company, its whole-time directors, persons responsible for ensuring compliance with the securities laws, its promoters and the companies which are promoted by any of them shall not directly or indirectly access the securities market or seek listing of any equity shares or act as an intermediary in the securities market for a period of ten years from the date of such delisting.

GLOSSARY

Bid	An offer of a price to buy it as an auction. Business on the stock exchange is done through bids. Bid also refers to the price one is willing to pay.
Delisting Exchange	The exchange from which securities of a company are proposed to be delisted.
Offer Price	Price at which units in trust can be bought it often includes an entry fee. It also refers to the price at which securities are offered to the public.
Public	Public means persons other than, the promoter and promoter group; subsidiaries and associates of the company.
Public Shareholding	Means equity shares of the company held by public including shares underlying the depository receipts if the holder of such depository receipts has the right to issue voting instruction and such depository receipts are listed on an international exchange in accordance with the Depository Receipts Scheme, 2014.
Working Days	It means the working days of the SEBI.

TEST YOURSELF

(These are meant for recapitulation only. Answer to these questions are not to be submitted for evaluation)

1. Discuss the conditions and procedure for delisting where exit opportunity is required.
2. Explain the conditions for delisting under SEBI (Delisting of Equity Shares) Regulations, 2021.
3. Can cash component of the escrow account in the delisting offer process be maintained in an interest bearing account?
4. What are the rights of public shareholders in case of compulsory delisting of securities?
5. Write a note on the following-
 - a. Obligations of the Manager to the offer
 - b. Discovered Price
 - c. Counter Offer
 - d. Public announcement in Voluntary Delisting from all the Stock Exchanges
6. Hawaii Ltd. is public company with a paid-up share capital of Rs.8 crores as per the latest audited balance sheet. The net worth of the company for the year 2020-21 was 22 crores. The company is listed on Bombay Stock Exchange (BSE). The Board plans for the delisting of its Equity Shares from the exchange. As a Company Secretary, advice the Board.

LIST OF FURTHER READINGS

- SEBI Notifications
- SEBI Circulars

OTHER REFERENCES (Including Websites/Video Links)

- <https://www.sebi.gov.in/>
- <https://www.nseindia.com/>
- <https://www.bseindia.com/>

SEBI (Share Based Employee Benefits) Regulations, 2014 – An Overview

Lesson 9

Key Concepts One Should Know

- Appreciation
- Employee
- Employee Stock Option Scheme
- Employee Stock Purchase Scheme
- General Employee Benefits Scheme
- Exercise
- Exercise Period
- Exercise Price
- Grant
- Grant Date
- Option
- Option Grantee
- Relevant Date
- Retirement Benefit Scheme
- Stock Appreciation Right or SAR
- Stock Appreciation Right Scheme
- Vesting
- Vesting period

Learning Objectives

To understand the:

- Various provisions of SEBI (Share Based Employee Benefits) Regulations, 2014 in respect of various types of Schemes and its applicability
- Provisions covered under Companies Act, 2013
- Scheme implementation and process
- Administration of Specific Scheme
- Powers of SEBI
- Direction of SEBI
- Provisions related to stock options under SEBI (Listing Obligations & Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2015 and SEBI (Prohibition of Insider Trading) Regulations, 2015

Lesson Outline

- Introduction
- Genesis
- Provisions under Companies Act, 2013
- SEBI (Share Based Employee Benefits) Regulations, 2014
- Applicability & Non-Applicability
- Important Definitions
- Schemes – Implementation & Process
- Eligibility Criteria
- Compensation Committee
- Shareholders approval
- Variations of terms of the schemes
- Winding up of the schemes
- Non-Transferability
- Listing
- Schemes implemented by unlisted companies
- Compliances and conditions
- Administration of Specific Schemes
- Power of SEBI to Relax Strict Enforcement of the Regulations
- Directions by SEBI & Action in case of Default
- Provisions under SEBI (Listing Obligations & Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2015 for ESOP/ ESPS
- Provisions under SEBI (Prohibition of Insider Trading) Regulations, 2015 for ESOP/ESPS
- Procedure for issuing ESOP by a Listed Company
- Role of Company Secretary
- LESSON ROUND-UP
- GLOSSARY
- TEST YOURSELF
- LIST OF FURTHER READINGS
- OTHER REFERENCES

Regulatory Framework

Section 1- Applicability of the Companies Act, 2013

Section-2 Key Definitions

Section 3-Formation of Company

Section 406- Nidhi Companies

Section 455- Dormant Company

INTRODUCTION

A company always wants to retain the top talent in the company those working for the future success of the organization. Further, the human capital or the work force is always the vital component of a business organization and those executives who possess the potential to take the organization to newer height need to be remunerated suitably. One of the key non-financial remuneration or incentive may be issued to the employee in form of Employee Stock Option.

SEBI (Share Based Employee Benefits) Regulations, 2014 provide for regulation of all schemes by companies for the benefit of their employees involving dealing in shares, directly or indirectly, with a view to facilitate smooth operation of such schemes while preventing any possible manipulation and matters connected therewith or incidental thereto.

Employee stock option plan (ESOP) is an employee-ownership plan that provides an option with an opportunity to company's workforce to gain ownership interest in the company. It develops the sense of belongingness between the workforce and company. In an ESOP, companies provide their employees with stock options, often at no up-front cost to the employees. ESOP shares, however, are part of employees' remuneration for work performed. Shares are allocated to employees and may be held in an ESOP trust until the employee retires or leaves the company. This can be one of the retirement plans created by the companies for their work force.

GENESIS

SEBI had (i) issued the SEBI (ESOS & ESPS) Guidelines, 1999 ("ESOS Guidelines") to enable listed companies to reward their employees through stock option schemes and stock purchase schemes; and (ii) notified the SEBI (Issue of Sweat Equity) Regulations, 2002 ("Sweat Equity Regulations") to regulate issuance of sweat equity shares by listed companies in accordance with Section 54 of the Companies Act, 2013.

Under the ESOS Guidelines, an ESOS/ESPS trust can only distribute options/shares to its employees issued by the company. However, ESOS Guidelines, till recently, were silent regarding acquisition of shares from secondary market. It came to the notice of SEBI that some listed companies were framing their own employees benefit schemes wherein trusts were set up to deal in their own securities in the secondary market, which was not envisaged within the purview of the ESOS Guidelines.

Therefore, to regulate the listed companies from framing any employee benefit scheme involving acquisition of own securities from the secondary market, it was felt that secondary market acquisitions by trusts being an internationally accepted practice should be considered subject to necessary safeguards to prevent misuse. It was also recognized that there are many kinds of employee benefit schemes involving own securities which being outside the purview of extant ESOS Guidelines are unregulated.

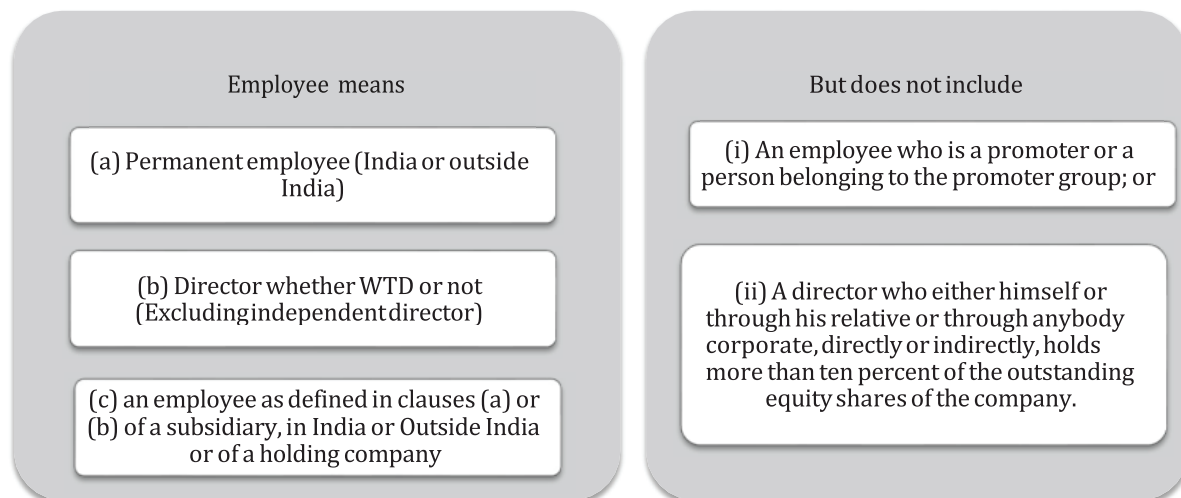
Accordingly, taking into account the wider perspective of employee benefit scheme in India as well as overseas and with the intent to align the provisions of the extant regulations with the Companies Act, 2013, the SEBI notified the SEBI (Share Based Employee Benefits) Regulations, 2014.

PROVISIONS UNDER COMPANIES ACT, 2013

Section 2(37) of the Companies Act, 2013 defines “employees’ stock option” as the option given to the directors, officers or employees of a company or of its holding company or subsidiary company or companies, if any, which gives such directors, officers or employees, the benefit or right to purchase, or to subscribe for, the shares of the company at a future date at a pre-determined price.

As per Section 62(1) (b) of Companies Act 2013, a Company can offer shares through employee stock option to their employees through special resolution subject to the conditions specified under Rule 12 and Rule 16 of Companies (Share Capital and Debentures) Rules 2014. However, pursuant to notification dated 5th June, 2015, the private company can issue said shares to its employee by passing ordinary resolution in the General Meeting.

For the purposes of clause (b) of sub-section (1) of section 62 and this rule “Employee” means –



However, in case of Startup Company, as defined in notification number G.S.R. 127(E), dated 19th February, 2019 issued by the Department for Promotion of Industry and Internal Trade, Ministry of Commerce and Industry, Government of India, the conditions mentioned in table point (i) and (ii) shall not apply upto ten years from the date of its incorporation or registration.

Question: *In terms of the provisions of the SEBI (Share Based Employee Benefits) Regulations, 2014 and the Companies Act, 2013, independent directors are not entitled to ESOPs. However, prior to commencement of these provisions, independent directors were eligible to receive ESOPs. In light of this, if an independent director has been granted ESOPs before commencement of the said provisions and such options remains to be exercised, can he/she still exercise such ESOPs?*

Answer: Yes, the restriction on grant of ESOPs to independent director applies only on fresh grants of ESOPs after commencement of the aforesaid provisions. Any grant already made prior to commencement of these provision shall remain valid, i.e., an independent director can exercise such ESOPs subject of fulfil of terms and conditions of the ESOPs schemes framed by the Companies in terms of the relevant regulations.

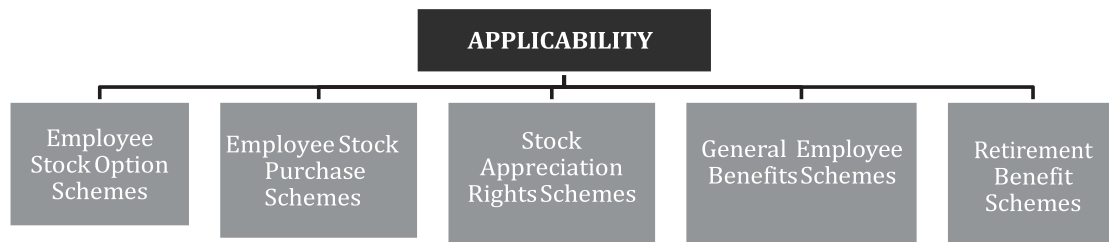
SEBI (SHARE BASED EMPLOYEE BENEFITS) REGULATIONS, 2014

The SEBI (Share Based Employee Benefits) Regulations, 2014 provides for regulation of all schemes by companies for the benefit of their employees involving dealing in shares, directly or indirectly, with a view to facilitate smooth operation of such schemes while preventing any possible manipulation and matters connected therewith or incidental thereto.

Regulatory Framework

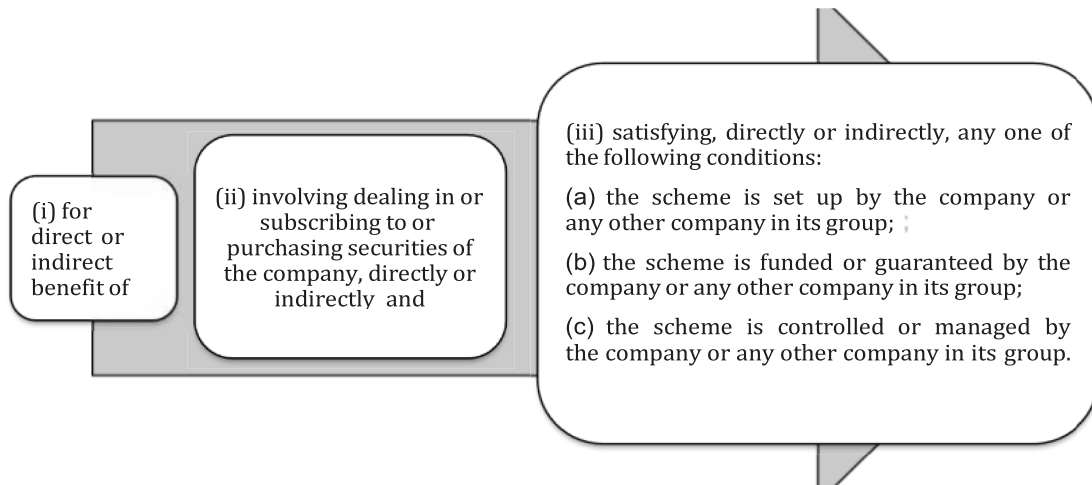
Chapter	Deals with
I	Definitions
II	Schemes – Implementation and Process
III	Administration of Specific Schemes
III-A	Power to Relax Strict Enforcement of the Regulations
IV	Miscellaneous Provisions

APPLICABILITY



COMPANIES COVERED

The provisions of these regulations shall apply to any company whose shares are listed on a recognised stock exchange in India, and has a scheme:



NON- APPLICABILITY

- Shares issued to employees in compliance with the provisions pertaining to preferential allotment as specified in the SEBI (Issue of Capital and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2018.
- The provisions pertaining to preferential allotment as specified in SEBI (Issue of Capital and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2018 shall not be applicable in case of a company issuing new shares in pursuance and compliance of these regulations.

IMPORTANT DEFINITIONS

“Appreciation” means the difference between the market price of the share of a company on the date of exercise of stock appreciation right (SAR) or vesting of SAR, as the case may be, and the SAR price.

“Employee”

- (i) a permanent employee of the company who has been working in India or outside India; or
- (ii) a director of the company, whether a whole time director or not but excluding an independent director; or
- (iii) an employee as defined in clause (i) or (ii) of a subsidiary, in India or outside India, or of a holding company of the company

but does not include—

- (a) an employee who is a promoter or a person belonging to the promoter group; or
- (b) a director who either himself or through his relative or through any body corporate, directly or indirectly, holds more than ten per cent of the outstanding equity shares of the company.

“Employee Stock Option Scheme or ESOS” means a scheme under which a company grants employee stock option directly or through a trust.

“Employee Stock Purchase Scheme or ESPS” means a scheme under which a company offers shares to employees, as part of public issue or otherwise, or through a trust where the trust may undertake secondary acquisition for the purposes of the scheme.

“General Employee Benefits Scheme or GEBS” means any scheme of a company framed in accordance with these regulations, dealing in shares of the company or the shares of its listed holding company, for the purpose of employee welfare including healthcare benefits, hospital care or benefits, or benefits in the event of sickness, accident, disability, death or scholarship funds, or such other benefit as specified by such company.

“Exercise” means making of an application by an employee to the company or to the trust for issue of shares or appreciation in form of cash, as the case may be, against vested options or vested SARs in pursuance of the schemes covered under Part A or Part C of Chapter III of these regulations, as applicable.

“Exercise period” means the time period after vesting within which an employee should exercise his right to apply for shares against the vested option or appreciation against vested SAR in pursuance of the schemes covered under Part A or Part C of Chapter III of these regulations, as applicable.

“Exercise price” means the price, if any, payable by the employee for exercising the option or SAR granted to him in pursuance of the schemes covered under Part A or Part C of Chapter III of these regulations, as the case may be.

“Grant” means the process by which the company issues options, SARs, shares, or any other benefits under any of the schemes.

“Grant Date” means the date on which the compensation committee approves the grant.

“Option” means the option given to an employee which gives him a right to purchase or subscribe at a future date, the shares offered by the company, directly or indirectly, at a pre-determined price.

“Option Grantee” means an employee having a right but not an obligation to exercise an option in pursuance of ESOS.

“Relevant Date” means,-

- (i) in the case of grant, the date of the meeting of the compensation committee on which the grant is made; or
- (ii) in the case of exercise, the date on which the notice of exercise is given to the company or to the trust by the employee.

“Retirement Benefit Scheme or RBS” means a scheme of a company, framed in accordance with these regulations, dealing in shares of the company or the shares of its listed holding company, for providing retirement benefits to the employees subject to compliance with existing rules and regulations as applicable under laws relevant to retirement benefits in India.

“Stock Appreciation Right or SAR” means a right given to a SAR grantee entitling him to receive appreciation for a specified number of shares of the company where the settlement of such appreciation may be made by way of cash payment or shares of the company.

Explanation – An SAR settled by way of shares of the company shall be referred to as equity settled SAR.

“Stock Appreciation Right Scheme” means a scheme under which a company grants SAR to employees.

“Vesting” means the process by which the employee becomes entitled to receive the benefit of a grant made to him under any of the schemes.

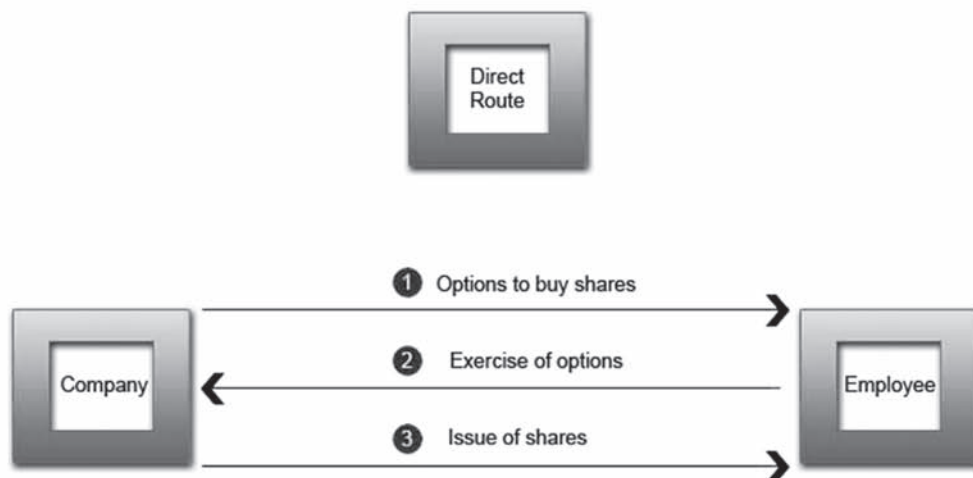
“Vesting period” means the period during which the vesting of option, SAR or a benefit granted under any of the schemes takes place.

SCHEMES - IMPLEMENTATION AND PROCESS

A company may implement schemes either :-

- (a) directly or
- (b) by setting up an irrevocable trust(s).

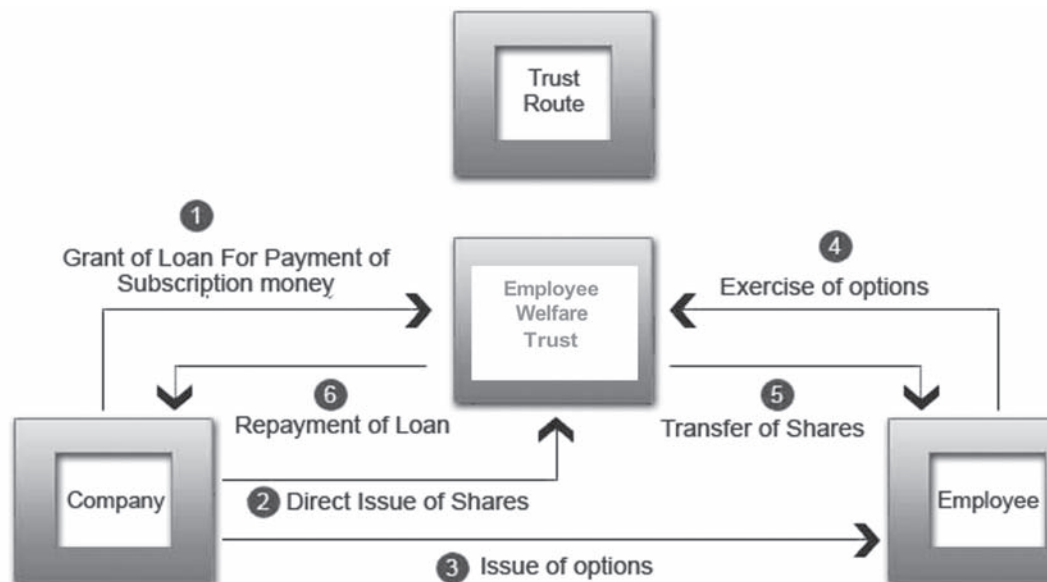
Direct Route



Direct Rout For esop's

- Company forms an Compensation commitee and define the eligibility criteria of ESOPs
- Issue fresh shares for ESOPs.
- After vesting period employees can exercise the option.
- On exercise of an option company issue the shares to the employees.

Trust Route



TRUST ROUTE FOR ESOP's

- Company forms an Employee Welfare Trust.
- Company grants Loan to the trust for subscribing shares.
- Company issues fresh shares to the Trust and options to the Employees.
- Employees exercise the options.
- Trust Transfers the Shares to the employee upon receipt of exercise price.
- Trust repays the loan to the company.

IMPLEMENTATION OF SCHEMES THROUGH TRUST

1. If a company has implemented the scheme through a trust and the same has to be decided upfront at the time of taking approval of the shareholders for setting up the schemes.
However, if the scheme involves secondary acquisition or gift or both, then it is mandatory for the company to implement such scheme(s) through a trust(s).
2. A company may implement several schemes as permitted under these regulations through a single trust.
However, such single trust shall keep and maintain-
 - proper books of account;
 - records and documents;
 for each such scheme so as to explain its transactions and to disclose at any point of time the financial position of each scheme and in particular give a true and fair view of the state of affairs of each scheme.
3. SEBI may specify the minimum provisions to be included in the trust deed under which the trust is formed, and such trust deed and any modifications thereto shall be mandatorily filed with the stock exchange in India where the shares of the company are listed.

4. A person shall not be appointed as a trustee, if he-
- (I) is a director, key managerial personnel or promoter of the company or its holding, subsidiary or associate company or any relative of such director, key managerial personnel or promoter; or
 - (ii) beneficially holds ten percent or more of the paid-up share capital of the company;

However, where individuals or 'one person companies' as defined under the Companies Act, 2013 are appointed as trustees, there shall be a minimum of two such trustees, and in case a corporate entity is appointed as a trustee, then it may be the sole trustee.

5. The trustees of a trust, which is governed under these regulations, shall not vote in respect of the shares held by such trust, so as to avoid any misuse arising out of exercising such voting rights.
6. The trustee should ensure that appropriate approval from the shareholders has been obtained by the company in order to enable the trust to implement the scheme(s) and undertake secondary acquisition for the purposes of the scheme(s).
7. The trust shall not deal in derivatives, and shall undertake only delivery based transactions for the purposes of secondary acquisition as permitted by these regulations.
8. The company may lend monies to the trust on appropriate terms and conditions to acquire the shares either through new issue or secondary acquisition, for the purposes of implementation of the scheme(s).
9. For the purposes of disclosures to the stock exchange, the shareholding of the trust shall be shown as 'non-promoter and non-public' shareholding.

Explanation: Shares held by the trust shall not form part of the public shareholding which needs to be maintained at a minimum of twenty five percent as prescribed under the Securities Contracts (Regulations) Rules, 1957

10. Secondary acquisition in a financial year by the trust shall not exceed two percent of the paid up equity capital as at the end of the previous financial year.
11. The total number of shares under secondary acquisition held by the trust shall at no time exceed the below mentioned prescribed limits as a percentage of the paid up equity capital as at the end of the financial year immediately prior to the year in which the shareholder approval is obtained for such secondary acquisition:

Sl. No.	Particulars	Limit
A	For the schemes enumerated in Part A, Part B or Part C of Chapter III of these regulations	5%
B	For the schemes enumerated in Part D, or Part E of Chapter III of these regulations	2%
C	For all the schemes in aggregate	5%

Explanation 1.- The above limits shall automatically include within their ambit the expanded capital of the company where such expansion has taken place on account of corporate action including issue of bonus shares, split or rights issue.

Explanation 2.- If a company has multiple trusts and schemes, the aforesaid ceiling limit shall be applicable for all such trusts and schemes taken together at the company level and not at the level of individual trust or scheme.

Explanation 3.- The above ceiling limit will not be applicable where shares are allotted to the trust by way of new issue or gift from promoter or promoter group or other shareholders.

Explanation 4.- In the event that the options, shares or SAR granted under any of the schemes exceeds the number of shares that the trust may acquire through secondary acquisition, then such shortfall of shares shall be made up by the company through new issue of shares to the trust in accordance with the provisions of new issue of shares under the applicable laws.

12. The un-appropriated inventory of shares which are not backed by grants, acquired through secondary acquisition by the trust under Part A, Part B or Part C of these regulations, shall be appropriated within a reasonable period which shall not extend beyond the end of the subsequent financial year.

However, if such trust (s) existing as on the date of notification of these regulations are not able to appropriate the un-appropriated inventory within one year of such notification, the same shall be disclosed to the stock exchange(s) at the end of such period and then the same shall be sold on the recognized stock exchange(s) where shares of the company are listed, within a period of five years from the date of notification of these regulations.

Keeping in view point No. 12, for the purpose of clarifying the inventory as un-appropriated, whether the appropriation made to scheme can be considered as compliance?

Appropriation towards ESPS/ESOP/SAR General Employee Benefit Scheme/Retirement Benefit Scheme by October 27, 2015 would be considered as compliance with proviso to regulation 3(12). The company may appropriate towards individual employees or sell in the market during next four years so that no un-appropriated inventory remains thereafter.

13. The trust shall be required to hold the shares acquired through secondary acquisition for a minimum period of six months except where they are required to be transferred in the circumstances enumerated in this regulation, whether off market or on the platform of stock exchange.

Shares have been acquired by the trust from secondary market and held for the minimum period of six months in terms of regulation 3(13) of SEBI (SBEB) Regulations, 2014 pursuant to which the same are transferred to employees under ESPS. Whether the requirement of Lock- in, in terms of regulation 22(2) of these regulations, shall be applicable to shares received by employees?

No, lock-in shall not be applicable to the shares received by employees.

14. The trust shall be permitted to undertake off-market transfer of shares only under the following circumstances:
- transfer to the employees pursuant to scheme(s);
 - when participating in open offer under the SEBI (Substantial Acquisition of Shares and Takeovers) Regulations, 2011, or when participating in buy-back, delisting or any other exit offered by the company generally to its shareholders.
15. The trust shall not become a mechanism for trading in shares and hence shall not sell the shares in secondary market except under the following circumstances:
- cashless exercise of options under ESOS as prescribed in these regulations;
 - on vesting or exercise, as the case may be, of SAR under ESPS as prescribed in these regulations;
 - in case of emergency for implementing the General Employee Benefits Scheme (GEBS) and Retirement Benefit Scheme (RBS) as mentioned in these regulations, and for this purpose -
 - the trustee shall record the reasons for such sale; and
 - money so realised on sale of shares shall be utilised within a definite time period as stipulated under the scheme or trust deed.
 - participation in buy-back or open offers or delisting offers or any other exit offered by the company generally to its shareholders, if required;
 - for repaying the loan, if the un-appropriated inventory of shares held by the trust is not appropriated within the timeline as provided above.
 - winding up of the scheme(s); and
 - based on approval granted by the SEBI to an applicant, for the reasons recorded in writing in respect of the schemes covered in these regulations, upon payment of a non-refundable fee of rupees one lakh along with the application by way of direct credit in the bank account through NEFT/RTGS/IMPS or

any other mode allowed by RBI or by way of a banker's cheque or demand draft payable at Mumbai in favour of SEBI.

16. The trust shall be required to make disclosures and comply with the other requirements applicable to insiders or promoters under the SEBI (Prohibition of Insider Trading) Regulations, 2015 or any modification or re-enactment thereto.

ELIGIBILITY CRITERIA

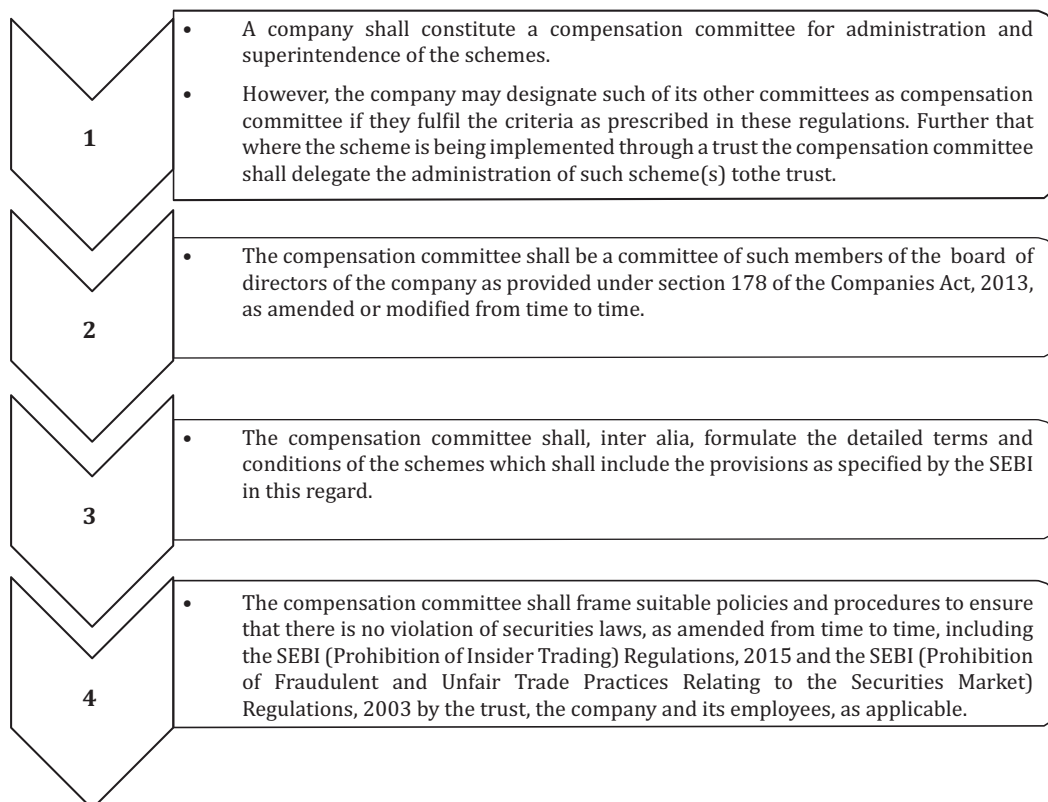
An employee shall be eligible to participate in the schemes of the company as determined by the compensation committee.

"Employee" means –

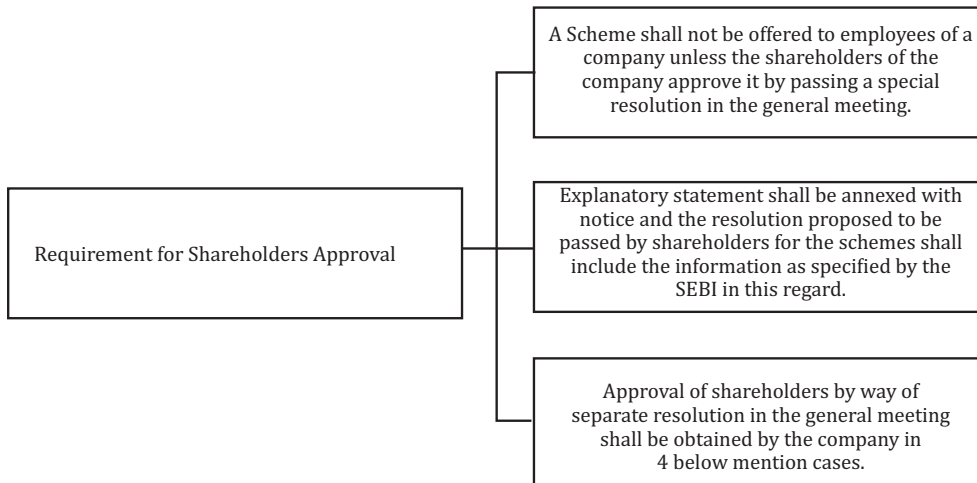
Explanation - Where such employee is a director nominated by an institution as its representative on the board of directors of the company –

- (i) The contract or agreement entered into between the institution nominating its employee as the director of a company, and the director so appointed shall, inter alia, specify the following:-
 - a. whether the grants by the company under its scheme(s) can be accepted by the said employee in his capacity as director of the company;
 - b. that grant if made to the director; shall not be renounced in favour of the nominating institution; and
 - c. the conditions subject to which fees, commissions, other incentives, etc. can be accepted by the director from the company.
- (ii) The institution nominating its employee as a director of a company shall file a copy of the contract or agreement with the said company, which shall, in turn file the copy with all the stock exchanges on which its shares are listed.
- (iii) The director so appointed shall furnish a copy of the contract or agreement at the first board meeting of the company attended by him after his nomination.

COMPENSATION COMMITTEE

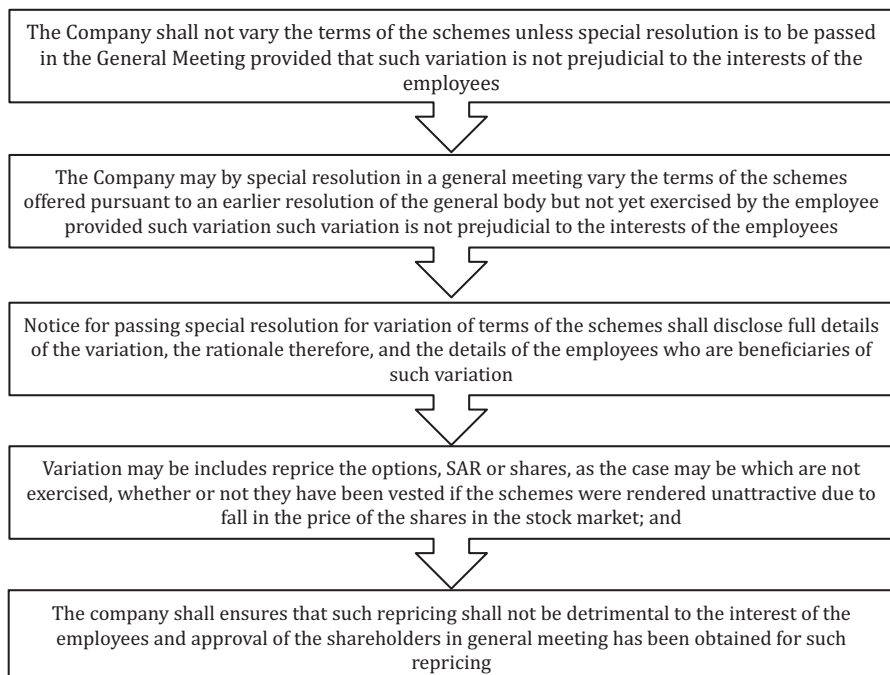


SHAREHOLDERS APPROVAL



- a) Secondary acquisition for implementation of the schemes.
Such approval shall mention the percentage of secondary acquisition (subject to limits specified under these regulations) that could be undertaken;
- b) Secondary acquisition by the trust in case the share capital expands due to capital expansion undertaken by the company including preferential allotment of shares or qualified institutions placement, to maintain the five percent cap as prescribed in these regulations of such increased capital of the company;
- c) Grant of option, SAR, shares or other benefits, as the case may be, to employees of subsidiary or holding company;
- d) Grant of option, SAR, shares or benefits, as the case may be, to identified employees, during any one year, equal to or exceeding one percent of the issued capital (excluding outstanding warrants and conversions) of the company at the time of grant of option, SAR, shares or incentive, as the case may be.

VARIATION OF TERMS OF THE SCHEMES



Note : The provisions of shareholders' approval shall apply to such variation of terms as they apply to the original grant of option, SAR, shares or other benefits, as the case may be.

WINDING UP OF THE SCHEMES

In case of winding up of the schemes being implemented by a company through trust, the excess monies or shares remaining with the trust after meeting all the obligations, if any, shall be utilised for repayment of loan or by way of distribution to employees as recommended by the compensation committee.

NON-TRANSFERABILITY

- Option, SAR or any other benefit granted to an employee under the regulations shall not be transferable to any person.
- No person other than the employee to whom the option, SAR or other benefit is granted shall be entitled to the benefit arising out of such option, SAR, benefit etc.
- However, in case of ESOS or SAR, under cashless exercise, the company may itself fund or permit the empanelled stock brokers to fund the payment of exercise price which shall be adjusted against the sale proceeds of some or all the shares, subject to the provisions of the applicable law or regulations.
- The option, SAR, or any other benefit granted to the employee shall not be pledged, hypothecated, mortgaged or otherwise alienated in any other manner.
- In the event of death of the employee while in employment, all the options, SAR or any other benefit granted to him under a scheme till such date shall vest in the legal heirs or nominees of the deceased employee.
- In case the employee suffers a permanent incapacity while in employment, all the options, SAR or any other benefit granted to him under a scheme as on the date of permanent incapacitation, shall vest in him on that day.
- In the event of resignation or termination of the employee, all the options, SAR, or any other benefit which are granted and yet not vested as on that day shall expire.
- However, an employee shall, subject to the terms and conditions formulated by the compensation committee, be entitled to retain all the vested options, SAR, or any other benefit covered by these regulations.
- In the event that an employee who has been granted benefits under a scheme is transferred or deputed to an associate company prior to vesting or exercise, the vesting and exercise as per the terms of grant shall continue in case of such transferred or deputed employee even after the transfer or deputation.

LISTING

In case new issue of shares is made under any scheme, shares so issued shall be listed immediately in any recognised stock exchange.

In case of the existing shares are listed, following conditions need to be fulfilled :-

Scheme is in compliance with these regulations	A statement specified by the SEBI in this regard, is filed and the company has obtained an in-principle approval from the stock exchanges	As and when an exercise is made, the company notifies the concerned stock exchange as per the statement as specified by the SEBI in this regard
--	---	---

SCHEMES IMPLEMENTED BY UNLISTED COMPANIES

The shares arising after the initial public offering ("IPO") of an unlisted company, out of options or SAR granted under any scheme prior to its IPO to the employees shall be listed immediately upon exercise in all the recognised stock exchanges where the shares of the company are listed subject to compliance with the SEBI (Issue of Capital and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2018.

COMPLIANCES AND CONDITIONS

1. The company shall not make any fresh grant which involves allotment or transfer of shares to its employees under any schemes formulated prior to its IPO and prior to the listing of its equity shares ('pre-IPO scheme') unless:
 - Such pre-IPO scheme is in conformity with these regulations; and
 - Such pre-IPO scheme is ratified by its shareholders subsequent to the IPO. However, the ratification under clause (ii) may be done at any time prior to grant of new options or shares or SAR under such pre-IPO scheme.
2. No change shall be made in the terms of options or shares or SAR issued under such pre-IPO schemes, whether by repricing, change in vesting period or maturity or otherwise unless prior approval of the shareholders is taken for such a change, except for any adjustments for corporate actions made in accordance with these regulations.
3. For listing of shares issued pursuant to ESOS, ESPS or SAR, the company shall obtain the in-principle approval of the stock exchanges where it proposes to list the said shares.
4. When holding company issues option, share, SAR or benefits to the employee of its subsidiary, the cost incurred by the holding company for issuing such option, share, SAR or benefits shall be disclosed in the 'notes to accounts' of the financial statements of the subsidiary company.
5. In a case, if the subsidiary reimburses the cost incurred by the holding company in granting option, share, SAR or benefits to the employees of the subsidiary, both the subsidiary as well as the holding company shall disclose the payment or receipt, as the case may be, in the 'notes to accounts' to their financial statements.
6. The company shall appoint a registered merchant banker for the implementation of schemes covered by these regulations till the stage of obtaining in-principle approval from the stock exchanges in accordance with clause (b) of regulation 10.

CERTIFICATE FROM AUDITORS

In case of company which has passed a resolution for the schemes under these regulations, the board of directors shall at each annual general meeting place before the shareholders a certificate from the auditors of the company that the scheme(s) has been implemented in accordance with these regulations and in accordance with the resolution of the company in the general meeting.

DISCLOSURES

In addition to the information that a company is required to disclose, in relation to employee benefits under the Companies Act, 2013, the board of directors of such a company shall also disclose the details of the scheme(s) being implemented, as specified by the SEBI in this regard.

ACCOUNTING POLICIES

Any company implementing any of the share based schemes shall follow the requirements of the 'Guidance Note on Accounting for employee share-based Payments' (Guidance Note) or Accounting Standards as may be prescribed by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India (ICAI) from time to time, including the disclosure requirements prescribed therein.

Where the existing Guidance Note or Accounting Standard do not prescribe accounting treatment or disclosure requirements for any of the schemes covered under these regulations, then the company shall comply with the relevant Accounting Standard as may be prescribed by the ICAI from time to time.

ADMINISTRATION OF SPECIFIC SCHEMES

Employee Stock Option Scheme (ESOS)

Administration and Implementation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The ESOS shall contain the details of the manner in which the scheme will be implemented and operated. ESOS shall not be offered unless the disclosures, as specified by SEBI in this regard, are made by the company to the prospective option grantees.
Pricing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The company granting option to its employees pursuant to ESOS will have the freedom to determine the exercise price subject to conforming to the accounting policies as specified in these regulation.
Vesting Period	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> There shall be a minimum vesting period of one year in case of ESOS. The company may specify the lock-in period for the shares issued pursuant to exercise of option.
Rights of the option holder	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The employee shall not have right to receive any dividend or to vote or in any manner enjoy the benefits of a shareholder in respect of option granted to him, till shares are issued upon exercise of option.
Consequence of failure to exercise option	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The amount payable by the employee, if any, at the time of grant of option, - <ul style="list-style-type: none"> » may be forfeited by the company if the option is not exercised by the employee within the exercise period; or » may be refunded to the employee if the options are not vested due to non- fulfilment of conditions relating to vesting of option as per the ESOS.

Note : In regards to Vesting period, where options are granted by a company under an ESOS in lieu of options held by a person under an ESOS in another company which has merged or amalgamated with that company, the period during which the options granted by the transferor company were held by him shall be adjusted against the minimum vesting period.

EMPLOYEE STOCK PURCHASE SCHEME (ESPS)

Administration and Implementation	Pricing and Lock-In
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The ESPS scheme shall contain the details of the manner in which the scheme will be implemented and operated. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The company may determine the price of shares to be issued under an ESPS, provided they conform to the provisions of accounting policies under these regulations. Shares issued under an ESPS shall be locked-in for a minimum period of one year from the date of allotment. If ESPS is part of a public issue and the shares are issued to employees at the same price as in the public issue, the shares issued to employees pursuant to ESPS shall not be subject to lock-in.

Note : In regards to pricing and Lock-in, where shares are allotted by a company under an ESPS in lieu of shares acquired by the same person under an ESPS in another company which has merged or amalgamated with the first mentioned company, the lock-in period already under gone in respect of shares of the transferor company shall be adjusted against the lock-in period.

Regulation 22(2) of the SEBI (SBEB) Regulations, 2014 prescribes lock-in of shares issued under ESPS for a minimum period of one year from the date of allotment. Whether the said lock-in is applicable to the Trust, if an ESPS scheme is implemented through Trust Route?

No, the Lock-in requirement is applicable at the level of employee and not at the level of trust. Lock-in in terms of regulation 22(2) shall be applicable from the day shares are received by the employees.

STOCK APPRECIATION RIGHTS SCHEME (SARS)

Administration and Implementation

- The SAR scheme shall contain the details of the manner in which the scheme will be implemented and operated;
- A company shall have the freedom to implement cash settled or equity settled SAR scheme;
- No SAR shall be offered unless the disclosures, as specified by Board in this regard, are made by the company to the prospective SAR grantees.

Vesting

- There shall be a minimum vesting period of one year in case of SAR scheme.

Rights of the SAR holder

- The employee shall not have right to receive dividend or to vote or in any manner enjoy the benefits of a shareholder in respect of SAR granted to him.

Note :

- In Point No. 1, in case of equity settled SAR scheme, if the settlement results in fractional shares, then the consideration for fractional shares should be settled in cash.
- In Point No. 2, in a case where SAR is granted by a company under a SAR scheme in lieu of SAR held by the same person under a SAR scheme in another company which has merged or amalgamated with the first mentioned company, the period during which the SAR granted by the transferor company were held by the employee shall be adjusted against the minimum vesting period.

GENERAL EMPLOYEE BENEFITS SCHEME (GEBS)

General Employee Benefits scheme or GEBS has been defined as any scheme of a company framed in accordance with SBEB regulations, dealing in shares of the company or the shares of its listed holding company, for the purpose of employee welfare including healthcare benefits, hospital care or benefits, or benefits in the event of sickness, accident, disability, death or scholarship funds, or such other benefit as specified by such company. Therefore, any employee welfare scheme holding / dealing in shares of the company or the shares of its listed holding company is covered under the scope of SEBI (Share Based Employee Benefits) Regulations, 2014, including the timelines prescribed thereunder.

Administration and Implementation

GEBS shall contain the details of the scheme and the manner in which the scheme shall be implemented and operated. At no point in time, the shares of the company or shares of its listed holding company shall exceed ten percent of the book value or market value or fair value of the total assets of the scheme, whichever is lower, as appearing in its latest balance sheet for the purposes of GEBS.

RETIREMENT BENEFIT SCHEME (RBS)

Administration and Implementation

Retirement benefit scheme may be implemented by a company provided it is in compliance with these regulations, and provisions of any other law in force in relation to retirement benefits. The retirement benefit scheme shall contain the details of the benefits under the scheme and the manner in which the scheme shall be implemented and operated.

At no point in time, the shares of the company or shares of its listed holding company shall exceed ten per cent of the book value or market value or fair value of the total assets of the scheme, whichever is lower, as appearing in its latest balance sheet for the purposes of RBS.

POWER OF SEBI TO RELAX STRICT ENFORCEMENT OF THE REGULATIONS

Exemption from enforcement of the regulations in special cases.

SEBI may, exempt any person or class of persons from the operation of all or any of the provisions of these regulations for a period as may be specified but not exceeding twelve months, for furthering innovation relating to testing new products, processes, services, business models, etc. in live environment of regulatory sandbox in the securities markets.

Any exemption granted by the Board under sub-regulation (1) shall be subject to the applicant satisfying such conditions as may be specified by the Board including conditions to be complied with on a continuous basis.

Explanation. — For the purposes of these regulations, “regulatory sandbox” means a live testing environment where new products, processes, services, business models, etc. may be deployed on a limited set of eligible customers for a specified period of time, for furthering innovation in the securities market, subject to such conditions as may be specified by the Board.

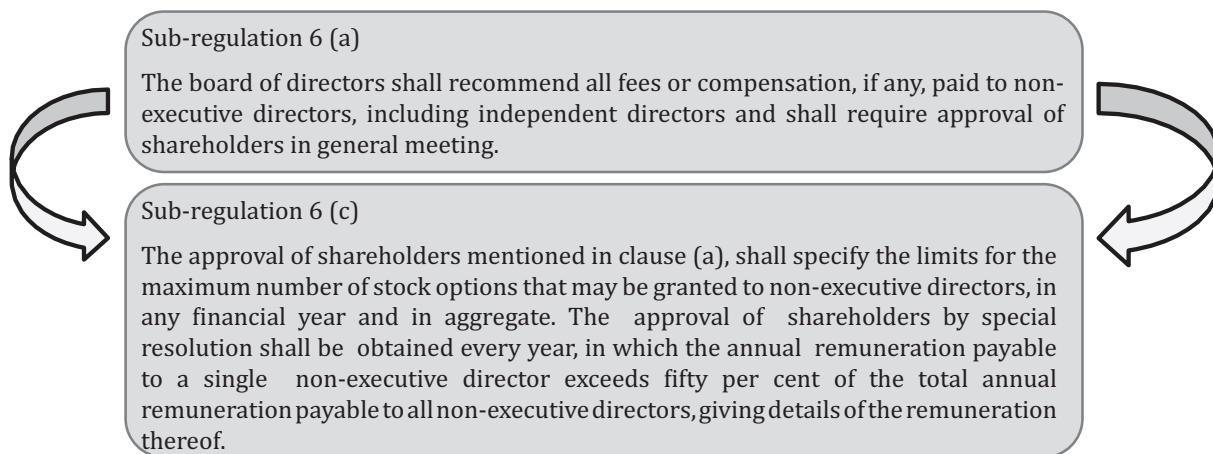
Power to Relax Strict Enforcement of the Regulations

SEBI may suo motu or on an application made by a company, for reasons recorded in writing, grant relaxation from strict compliance with any of these regulations subject to such conditions as the SEBI deems fit to impose in the interests of investors in securities and the securities market.

A company making an application, shall pay a non-refundable fee of rupees one lakh by way of direct credit in the bank account through NEFT/RTGS/IMPS or any other mode allowed by RBI or by way of a banker's cheque or demand draft payable at Mumbai in favour of the Board.

DIRECTIONS BY THE SEBI AND ACTION IN CASE OF DEFAULT

The SEBI may issue any direction or order or undertake any measure in the interests of the investors or the securities market, and deal with any contravention of these regulations, in exercise of its powers under the SEBI Act, 1992, the Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, 1956 or the Companies Act, 2013 and any statutory modification or re-enactment thereto.

SEBI (LISTING OBLIGATIONS & DISCLOSURE REQUIREMENTS) REGULATIONS, 2015 FOR ESOP/ESPS**Regulation 17: Board of Directors****Regulation 30: Disclosure of events or information**

- Every listed entity shall make disclosures of any events or information which, in the opinion of the board of directors of the listed company, is material, based on application of the guidelines for materiality. A listed company shall disclose the following to stock exchange regarding options to purchase securities (including any Share Based Employee Benefit (SBEB) Scheme) at the time of instituting the scheme and vesting or exercise of options:
 - a) brief details of options granted;
 - b) whether the scheme is in terms of SEBI (SBEB) Regulations, 2014 (if applicable);
 - c) total number of shares covered by these options;
 - d) pricing formula;
 - e) options vested;
 - f) time within which option may be exercised;
 - g) options exercised;
 - h) money realized by exercise of options;
 - i) the total number of shares arising as a result of exercise of option;
 - j) options lapsed;
 - k) variation of terms of options;
 - l) brief details of significant terms;
 - m) subsequent changes or cancellation or exercise of such options;
 - n) diluted earnings per share pursuant to issue of equity shares on exercise of options.

SEBI (PROHIBITION OF INSIDER TRADING) REGULATIONS, 2015 FOR ESOP/ESPS

No insider shall trade in securities that are listed or proposed to be listed on a stock exchange when in possession of unpublished price sensitive information. However the insider may prove his innocence by demonstrating the circumstances that the transaction in question was undertaken pursuant to the exercise of stock options in respect of which the exercise price was pre-determined in compliance with applicable regulations.

Does the contra trade restriction (for a period not less than six months) under clause 10 of Schedule B of the SEBI (Prohibition of Insider Trading) Regulation, 2015 also apply to the exercise of ESOPs and the sale of shares so acquired?

Exercise of ESOPs shall not be considered to be “trading” except for the purposes of Chapter III of the SEBI (Prohibition of Insider Trading) Regulations, 2015 (“the Regulations”) . However, other provisions of the Regulations shall apply to the sale of shares so acquired.

For Example:

- (i) If a designated person has sold/ purchased shares, he can subscribe and exercise ESOPs at any time after such sale/purchase, without attracting contra trade restrictions.
- (ii) Where a designated person acquires shares under an ESOP and subsequently sells/pledges those shares, such sale shall not be considered as contra trade, with respect to exercise of ESOPs.
- (iii) Where a designated person purchases some shares (say on August 01, 2015), acquires shares later under an ESOP (say on September 01, 2015) and subsequently sells/pledges (say on October 01, 2015) shares so acquired under ESOP. The sale will not be a contra trade but will be subject other provisions of the Regulations, however, he will not be able to sell the shares purchased on August 01, 2015 during the period of six months from August 01, 2015.
- (iv) Where a designated person sells shares (say on August 01, 2015), acquires shares later under an ESOP (say on September 01, 2015) the acquisition under ESOP shall not be a contra trade. Further, he can sell/pledge shares so acquired at any time thereafter without attracting contra trade restrictions. He, however, will not be able to purchase further shares during the period of six months from August 01, 2015 when he had sold shares.

PROCEDURE FOR ISSUING ESOP BY A LISTED COMPANY

- An advance notice of the Board Meeting at least two working days before to the stock exchange where securities of the company are listed and formation of Compensation Committee;
- Compensation committee shall plan draft the scheme of ESOP;
- Hold Board meeting to adopt the final scheme, appoint the Merchant banker and approve the notice of the General meeting for shareholders approval by passing special resolution;
- Outcome of the Board Meeting is also to be notified within twenty-four hours of the conclusion of the Board meeting.
- An advance notice of the General meeting at least two working days before to the Stock Exchanges where securities of the Company are listed.
- Hold General Meeting for approval of shareholders;
- Outcome of the General Meeting is also to be notified within twenty-four hours of the conclusion of the meeting to the Stock exchange.
- File e-form MGT-14 within 30 days of passing the special resolution with ROC.
- For listing of shares issued pursuant to ESOS, the company shall obtain the in-principle approval of the stock exchanges before issuing shares as per Regulation 28 of LODR where it proposes to list the said shares.
- Issue of letter of grant of option to the eligible employees along with the letter of acceptance of option;
- On receipt of letter of acceptance of option along with upfront payment (if any), from the employee issue the option certificates;
- After expiry of vesting period, not less than one year the options shall vest in the employee. At that time,
- the Company shall issue a letter of vesting along with the letter of exercise of options;
- Receipt to letter of exercise from the employee;

- Hold a Board Meeting at the suitable Interval during the exercise period for allotment of shares on options exercised by the optioness;
- Dispatch of letter of allotment along with the share certificates or credit the shares so allotted with the Depositories;
- Make an application to the Stock exchange for listing of the Shares so allotted; and
- Receipt of Listing of the shares from the Stock exchange.
- File a return of allotment in form PAS 3 with the ROC within 30 days from the date of allotment.

ROLE OF COMPANY SECRETARY

For listing of equity shares issued pursuant to exercise of options granted under ESPS/ESOS/SARS/ GEBS/RBS basis- Post issue

- A Certificate from Company Secretary for receipt of money.
- A quarterly certificate from the practising Company Secretary specifically certifying that the company has received the application/allotment monies from the applicants of these shares. [Source: www.bseindia.com]

LESSON ROUND-UP

- As per Section 62(1) (b) of Companies Act 2013, a Company can offer shares through employee stock option to their employees through special resolution subject to the conditions specified under Rule 12 of Companies (Share Capital and Debentures) Rules 2014.
- Issue of Employee Stock option by a listed entity is regulated by the SEBI (Share Based Employee Benefits) Regulations, 2014.
- SEBI has, on October 28, 2014 notified the SEBI (Share Based Employee Benefits) Regulations 2014, for regulation of all schemes by companies for the benefit of their employees involving dealing in shares, directly or indirectly, with a view to facilitate smooth operation of such schemes while preventing any possible manipulation and matters connected therewith or incidental thereto.
- A company may implement schemes either directly; or by setting up an irrevocable trust(s).
- An employee shall be eligible to participate in the schemes of the company as determined by the compensation committee.
- In case of winding up of the schemes being implemented by a company through trust, the excess monies or shares remaining with the trust after meeting all the obligations, if any, shall be utilised for repayment of loan or by way of distribution to employees as recommended by the compensation committee.
- A listed company shall disclose to stock exchange “the options to purchase securities including any ESOP/ ESPS Scheme” upon application of the guidelines for materiality.
- No insider shall trade in securities that are listed or proposed to be listed on a stock exchange when in possession of unpublished price sensitive information. However, the insider may prove his innocence by demonstrating the circumstances that the transaction in question was undertaken pursuant to the exercise of stock options in respect of which the exercise price was pre-determined in compliance with applicable regulations.

GLOSSARY

Grant	It means issue of option to employees under the scheme.
Option grantee	It means an employee having a right but not an obligation to exercise an option in pursuance of ESOS.
Secondary Market	The market for previously issued securities or financial instruments.
Trustee	Legal Custodian who looks after all the monies invested in a unit trust or mutual fund.
Vesting	The process by which the employee is given the right to apply for shares of the company against the option granted to him in pursuance of ESOS.
Vesting Period	It means the period during which the vesting of option, SAR or a benefit granted under any of the schemes takes place.

TEST YOURSELF

(These are meant for recapitulation only. Answer to these questions are not to be submitted for evaluation.)

- What are applicability and non-applicability of the SEBI (Share Based Employee Benefits) Regulations, 2014?
- ABC Ltd. is a public company which has its equity shares listed on NSE. The Company wants to implement Employee Stock Option Plan (ESOP) for its employees. ESOP Plan will be operated through a trust in accordance with the SEBI (Share Based Employee Benefits) Regulations, 2014. The company is willing to issue shares under ESOP scheme to one of its whole time director, Mr. X. Mr. X holds 12% of the outstanding equity shares of the company. In view of the above facts, answer the following questions :
 - Can the company issue shares to its director, Mr. X under ESOP scheme ?
 - Prepare a brief note on the process of implementation of ESOP scheme through Trust route.
- Whether registered stock broker under SEBI (Stock Broker) Regulations, 1992 is permitted to fund the securities to be issued under the SEBI (Share Based Employee Benefits) Regulations 2014 by a listed company, to its employees who propose to avail cashless option?
- A company has implemented Employee Stock Option Scheme to retain the best talent in the company. After one year of implementation of the scheme, the company desires to increase the vesting period from 2 year to 3 year. Is it possible for the company to vary the terms and condition of the option after implementation of the scheme under SEBI regulation?
- State briefly the provisions of pricing and lock-in period under ESOS.
- Your Board of directors is contemplating to take-up the agenda to issue ESOS in next meeting. Being a Company Secretary, advise your Board of directors about brief procedure for issuing of securities under SEBI Employees Stock Option Scheme (ESOS) by a listed Company.

LIST OF FURTHER READINGS

- SEBI Circulars / Notifications
- SEBI FAQs

OTHER REFERENCES (Including Websites and Video Links)

- <https://www.sebi.gov.in/index.html>
- <https://www.nseindia.com/>
- <https://www.bseindia.com/>

This image shows a full page of blank white paper with horizontal ruling lines. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page, providing a template for writing or drawing. There are no margins, text, or other markings present.

SEBI (Issue of Sweat Equity) Regulations, 2002 – An Overview

Lesson 10

Key Concepts One Should Know

- Sweat Equity Shares
- Employee
- Value Additions
- Intellectual Property
- Relevant Date
- Accounting Treatment

Learning Objectives

To understand:

- Issuance of Sweat Equity Shares in accordance with the SEBI (Issue of Sweat Equity) Regulations, 2002
- Issuance of Sweat Equity Shares in accordance with the Companies Act, 2013
- Applicability & non- applicability of SEBI (Issue of Sweat Equity) Regulations, 2002
- Issuance of Sweat Equity Shares to employee, directors & promoters
- The requirement of Special Resolution
- Pricing of Sweat Equity Shares
- Accounting Treatment of Sweat Equity Shares
- Lock-In and listing requirements

Regulatory Framework

- SEBI (Issue of Sweat Equity) Regulations, 2002
- Companies Act, 2013

Lesson Outline

- | | |
|---|--|
| • Introduction | • Accounting Treatment |
| • Sweat Equity Shares provisions under Companies Act, 2013 | • Placing of Auditors before Annual General Meeting |
| • SEBI (Issue of Sweat Equity) Regulations, 2002 | • Ceiling on Managerial Remuneration |
| • Applicability | • Lock-in |
| • Sweat equity shares may be issued to employee and directors | • Listing |
| • Special Resolution | • Applicability of Takeover |
| • Issue of Sweat Equity Shares to Promoters | • Power to relax strict enforcement of the regulations |
| • Pricing of Sweat Equity Shares | • LESSON ROUND-UP |
| • Valuation of Intellectual Property | • GLOSSARY |
| | • TEST YOURSELF |
| | • LIST OF FURTHER READINGS |
| | • OTHER REFERENCES |

INTRODUCTION

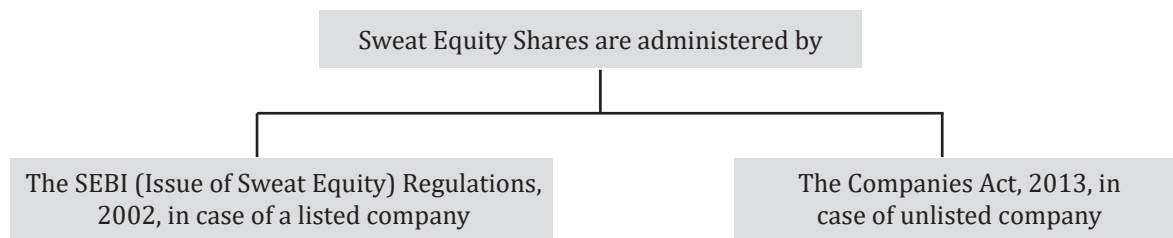
Factors behind the success of any company is its ability to attract top talent while retaining those already working within the company. One of the ways in which companies attract and retain key employees is by rewarding them with equity shares.

‘Sweat equity shares’ are such equity shares, which are issued by a Company to its directors or employees at a discount or for consideration, other than cash, for providing their know-how or making available rights in the nature of intellectual property rights or value additions, by whatever name called.

Sweat equity shares refers to equity shares given to the company’s employees on favourable terms, in recognition of their work. Sweat equity shares is one of the modes of making share based payments to employees of the company. The issue of sweat equity shares allows the company to retain the employees by rewarding them for their services. Sweat equity shares rewards the beneficiaries by giving them incentives in lieu of their contribution towards the development of the company.

Further, Sweat equity shares enables greater employee stake and interest in the growth of an organization as it encourages the employees to contribute more towards the company in which they feel they have a stake.

Companies Act, 2013 empowers companies to issue sweat equity shares to its employees and directors, subject to the conditions stated therein. In case of a company whose equity shares are listed on a recognized stock exchange, the issuer company is required to conform to the Regulations made by SEBI.



Question: Which companies can issue sweat equity shares?

Answer: Any company can issue like:-

- One person Company
- Private Company
- Public Company
- Section 8 Company
- Listed/unlisted Company

SWEAT EQUITY SHARES PROVISIONS AS UNDER COMPANIES ACT, 2013

Section 2 (88) of the Companies Act, 2013 defines “sweat equity shares” which means such equity shares as are issued by a company to its directors or employees at a discount or for consideration, other than cash, for providing their know-how or making available rights in the nature of intellectual property rights or value additions, by whatever name called.

In accordance with Rule 8 of Companies (Share Capital and Debenture) Rules, 2014 the “Employee” means-

- (a) a permanent employee of the company who has been working in India or outside India; or
- (b) a director of the company, whether a whole time director or not; or
- (c) an employee or a director as defined in sub-clauses (a) or (b) above of a subsidiary, in India or outside India, or of a holding company of the company.

According to Section 54 of the Companies Act, 2013 a company may issue sweat equity shares of a class of shares already issued, if the following conditions are fulfilled:

- The issue is authorized by a special resolution passed by the company in the general meeting.
- The resolution specifies the number of shares, current market price, consideration if any and the class or classes of directors or employees to whom such equity shares are to be issued.
- The sweat equity shares of a company whose equity shares are listed on a recognised stock exchange are issued in accordance with the regulations made by SEBI in this regard and if they are not listed the sweat equity shares are to be issued in accordance with Companies Act, 2013.
- The rights, limitations, restrictions and provisions as are for the time being applicable to equity shares shall be applicable to the sweat equity shares issued and the holders of such shares shall rank pari passu with other equity shareholders.

The Companies (Share Capital and Debentures) Rules, 2014 have defined 'value additions' to mean actual or anticipated economic benefits derived or to be derived by the company from an expert and/or a professional for providing know-how or making available rights in the nature of intellectual property rights, by such person to whom sweat equity is being issued for which the consideration is not paid or included in the normal remuneration payable under the contract of employment, in the case of an employee.

Question: Whether Issue of sweat equity shares can be in the form of preferential Issue?

Answer: Issue of Sweat Equity Shares is not a 'preferential issue' as per regulation 2(1) (nn) of SEBI (Issue of Capital and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2018 which gives the meaning of a preferential issue excludes an issue of sweat equity shares there from, which means issue of sweat equity shares is not a preferential issue within the meaning of preferential issue.

Further Rule 13 of The Companies (Share Capital and Debentures) Rules, 2014, clearly excludes issue of sweat equity shares from the definition of preferential offer.

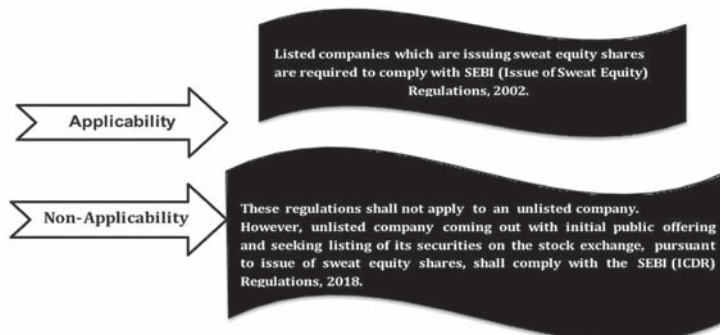
SEBI (ISSUE OF SWEAT EQUITY) REGULATIONS, 2002

SEBI (Issue of Sweat Equity) Regulations, 2002 have been notified on September 24, 2002 in order to streamline the process of issue of sweat equity shares.

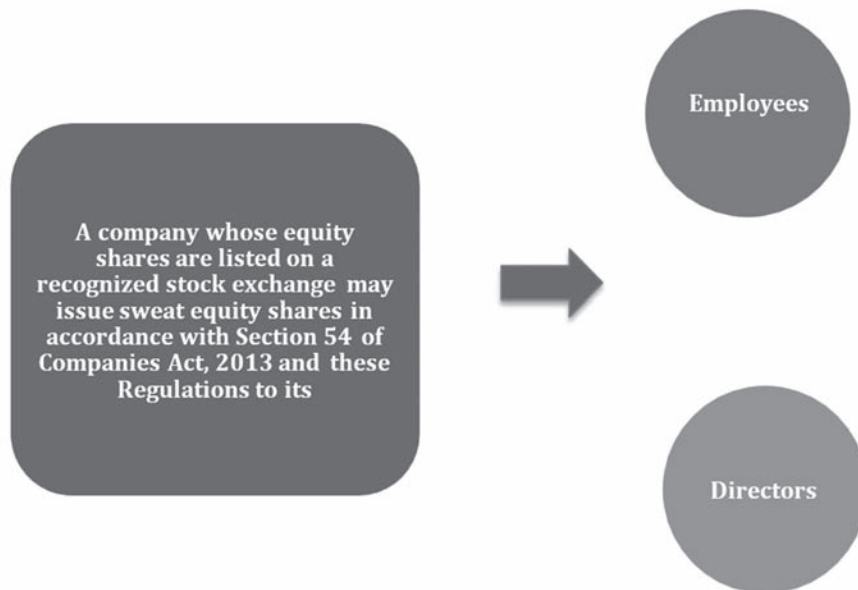
Regulatory Framework

Chapter	Deals with
I.	Definitions of various terms
II.	Issue of sweat equity by a Listed company
III.	General Obligations
IV.	Penalties and Procedure
V.	Power to relax strict enforcement of the Regulations.

APPLICABILITY



SWEAT EQUITY SHARES MAY BE ISSUED TO EMPLOYEE AND DIRECTORS



SPECIAL RESOLUTION

For the purposes of passing a special resolution under clause (a) of sub section (1) of Section 54 of the Companies Act, 2013, the Board of Directors at the time of sending notice to the shareholders shall send additional information for approving the issuance of sweat equity shall, *inter alia*, contain the following information:

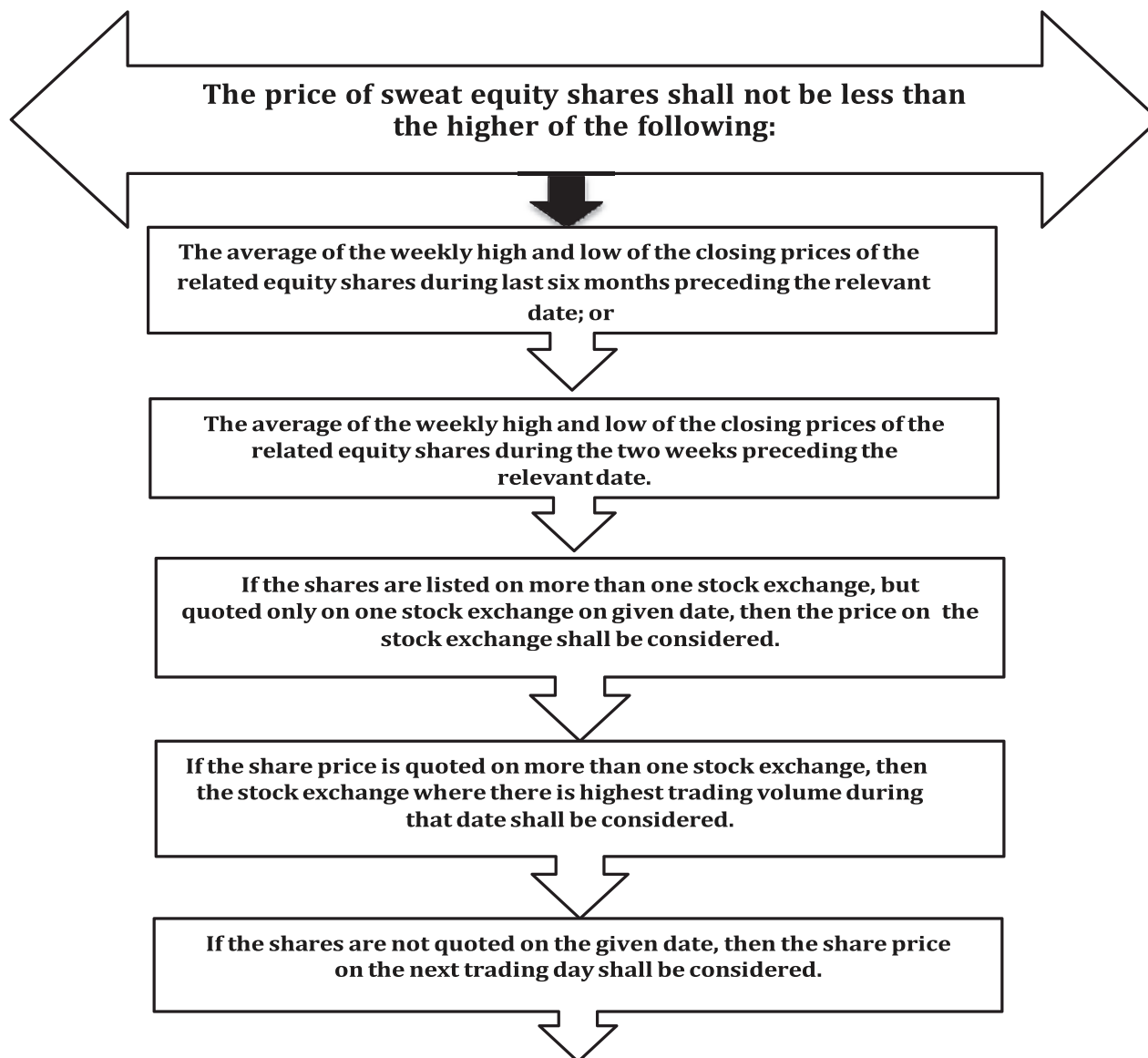
- a) The total number of shares to be issued as sweat equity.
- b) The current market price of the shares of the company.
- c) The value of the intellectual property rights or technical know how or other value addition to be received from the employee or director along with the valuation report / basis of valuation.
- d) The names of the employees or directors or promoters to whom the sweat equity shares shall be issued and their relationship with the company.
- e) The consideration to be paid for the sweat equity.
- f) The price at which the sweat equity shares shall be issued.
- g) Ceiling on managerial remuneration, if any, which will be affected by issuance of such sweat equity.
- h) A statement to the effect that the company shall conform to the accounting policies as specified by SEBI.
- i) Diluted Earning Per Share pursuant to the issue of securities to be calculated in accordance with International Accounting Standards / standards specified by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India.

ISSUE OF SWEAT EQUITY SHARES TO PROMOTERS

In case of Issue of sweat equity shares to promoters, the same shall also be approved by simple majority of the shareholders in General Meeting.

Further, the promoters to whom such Sweat Equity Shares are proposed to be issued shall not participate in such resolution and separate resolution shall be passed for each transaction of issue of Sweat Equity. Such resolution shall be valid for a period of not more than twelve months from the date of passing of the resolution. For the purposes of passing the resolution, the explanatory statement shall contain the disclosures as specified in the Schedule (given in above para).

PRICING OF SWEAT EQUITY SHARES



“Relevant date” for this purpose means the date which is thirty days prior to the date on which the meeting of the General Body of the shareholders is convened, in terms of clause (a) of sub section (1) of section 54 of the Companies Act, 2013.

VALUATION OF INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY

- The valuation of the intellectual property rights or of the know how provided or other value addition mentioned in Explanation II of sub-rule (1) of Rule (8) of the Companies (Share Capital and Debentures) Rules, 2014 shall be carried out by a merchant banker.
- The merchant banker may consult such experts and valuers, as he may deem fit having regard to the nature of the industry and the nature of the property or other value addition.
- The merchant banker shall obtain a certificate from an independent Chartered Accountant that the valuation of the intellectual property or other value addition is in accordance with the relevant accounting standards.

ACCOUNTING TREATMENT

Where the sweat equity shares are issued for a non-cash consideration, such non cash consideration shall be treated in the following manner in the books of account of the company:-

1. where the non-cash consideration takes the form of a depreciable or amortizable asset, it shall be carried to the balance sheet of the company in accordance with the relevant accounting standards; or
2. where the above clause is not applicable, it shall be expensed as provided in the relevant accounting standards.

LACING OF AUDITORS BEFORE ANNUAL GENERAL MEETING

In the General meeting subsequent to the issue of sweat equity, the Board of Directors shall place before the shareholders, a certificate from the auditors of the company that the issue of sweat equity shares has been made in accordance with the Regulations and in accordance with the resolution passed by the company authorizing the issue of such Sweat Equity Shares.

CEILING ON MANAGERIAL REMUNERATION

The amount of Sweat Equity shares issued shall be treated as part of managerial remuneration for the purpose of sections 197 of the Companies Act, 2013, if the following conditions are fulfilled:

- (i) the Sweat Equity shares are issued to any director or manager; and
- (ii) they are issued for non-cash consideration, which does not take the form of an asset which can be carried to the balance sheet of the company in accordance with the relevant accounting standards.

LOCK-IN

The Sweat Equity shares shall be locked in for a period of three years from the date of allotment. The SEBI (Issue of Capital and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2018 on public issue in terms of lock-in and computation of promoters' contribution shall apply if a company makes a public issue after it has issued sweat equity.

LISTING

The Sweat Equity issued by a listed company shall be eligible for listing only if such issues are in accordance with these regulations.

APPLICABILITY OF TAKEOVER

Any acquisition of Sweat Equity Shares shall be subject to the provision of the SEBI (Substantial Acquisition of Shares and Takeovers) Regulations, 2011.

POWER TO RELAX STRICT ENFORCEMENT OF THE REGULATIONS

Exemption from enforcement of the regulations in special cases.

SEBI may, exempt any person or class of persons from the operation of all or any of the provisions of these regulations for a period as may be specified but not exceeding twelve months, for furthering innovation relating to testing new products, processes, services, business models, etc. in live environment of regulatory sandbox in the securities markets.

Any exemption granted by the SEBI as mentioned above shall be subject to the applicant satisfying such conditions as may be specified by the SEBI including conditions to be complied with on a continuous basis.

Explanation — For the purposes of these regulations, “regulatory sandbox” means a live testing environment where new products, processes, services, business models, etc. may be deployed on a limited set of eligible customers for a specified period of time, for furthering innovation in the securities market, subject to such conditions as may be specified by the Board.

LESSON ROUND-UP

- Section 2 (88) of the Companies Act, 2013 defines “sweat equity shares” which means such equity shares as are issued by a company to its directors or employees at a discount or for consideration, other than cash, for providing their know-how or making available rights in the nature of intellectual property rights or value additions, by whatever name called.
- Where the equity shares of the company are listed on a recognized stock exchange, sweat equity shares should be issued in accordance with regulations made by the Securities and Exchange Board of India in this regard.
- These regulations shall not apply to an unlisted company. However, unlisted company coming out with initial public offering and seeking listing of its securities on the stock exchange, pursuant to issue of sweat equity shares, shall comply with the SEBI (ICDR) Regulations, 2009.
- In case of Issue of sweat equity shares to promoters, the same shall also be approved by simple majority of the shareholders in General Meeting.
- The Sweat Equity shares shall be locked in for a period of three years from the date of allotment.
- The Sweat Equity issued by a listed company shall be eligible for listing only if such issues are in accordance with these regulations.

GLOSSARY

Accounting Standard	Accounting Standards are codified or written statements of accounting rules and guidelines for preparation and presentation of financial statements. They are policy documents issued by an expert accounting body or by the Government or other regulatory body.
Diluted Earning Per Shares	EPS is which accrues to the shareholder of the company. Dilution is a reduction in Shares EPS or an increase in loss per share resulting from the assumption, that convertible instruments are converted, that options or warrants are exercised or the ordinary shares are issued.
Intellectual Property	It is a category of property that includes intangible creations of the human intellect, and primarily encompasses copyrights, patents, and trademarks. It also includes other types of rights, such as trade secrets, publicity rights, moral rights, and rights against unfair competition.
Special Resolution	A special resolution is a resolution of a company’s shareholders which requires at least 75% of the votes cast by the shareholders in favour of it in order to pass.
Valuer	It means a Chartered Accountant or a merchant banker appointed to determine the value of the intellectual property rights or other value addition.

TEST YOURSELF

(These are meant for recapitulation only. Answer to these questions are not to be submitted for evaluation)

1. What are applicability and non-applicability of the SEBI (Issue of Sweat Equity) Regulations, 2002?
2. Which employees are covered under the sweat equity allotment scheme?
3. Explain the requirements for issue of Sweat Equity shares to promoters.
4. ABC Ltd. has issued Sweat Equity Shares for a non-cash consideration. What are the possible accounting treatments in the books of ABC Ltd. ?
5. A listed NBFC has been granted licence to run as small finance bank by the Reserve Bank of India under recently announced policy to improve the financial inclusion of the country. During the last three years, the attrition rate for top level management employees was not too high As, RBI has granted licences to many small banks, therefore, the promoters of the Bank feels that attrition rate will be high in coming period. The Board of directors wishes to allot Sweat Equity shares to employees. You, being compliance officer of the Bank, advise the Board about pricing of the Sweat Equity shares.

LIST OF FURTHER READINGS

- SEBI Circulars
- SEBI Notofications

OTHER REFERENCES (Including Websites/Video Links)

- <https://www.sebi.gov.in/index.html>
- <https://www.nseindia.com/>
- <https://www.bseindia.com/>

Lesson 11

SEBI (Prohibition of Insider Trading) Regulations, 2015

Key Concepts One Should Know

- Unpublished price sensitive information
- Insider
- Connected Person
- Designated Person
- Insider Trading
- Trading Window
- Pre clearance
- Compliance Officer

Learning Objectives

To understand:

- Meaning insider trading
- Legislative history of insider trading
- Conceptual Understanding on Important Terminologies
- Meaning of important terminologies under SEBI(Prohibition of Insider Trading) Regulations and its application through case laws
- Regulatory prescriptions on communication of unpublished price sensitive information
- Regulatory mandates on trading by insiders/designated persons
- Disclosure requirements by certain persons

Regulatory Framework

- Section 12 A and 15 G of SEBI Act,1992
- SEBI (Prohibition of Insider Trading) Regulations, 2015

Lesson Outline

- Introduction
- Genesis
- Regulatory Framework
 - o Provisions of SEBI Act, 1992
 - o SEBI (Prohibition of Insider Trading) Regulations, 2015 – An overview
- Restrictions
 - o Communication or Procurement of Unpublished Price Sensitive Information (UPSI)
 - o Restrictions on Trading when in possession of UPSI
- Approval of Trading Plans
- Mandatory Disclosures
- Informant Incentives and Rewards
- Codes of Fair Disclosure and Conduct
- Penalty Provisions for violations of the Regulations
- Appeal to Securities Appellate Tribunal
- Role of Company Secretary as Compliance Officer
- Checklists under SEBI (Prohibition of Insider Trading) Regulations 2015
- LESSON ROUND-UP
- GLOSSARY
- TEST YOURSELF
- LIST OF FURTHER READINGS
- OTHER REFERENCES

INTRODUCTION

Insider trading essentially denotes dealing in a company's securities on the basis of confidential information, relating to the company, which is not published or not known to the public (known as 'unpublished price-sensitive information'), used to make personal profits or avoid loss.

The practice of Insider Trading came into existence ever since the very concept of trading of securities of a company became prevalent among the investors worldwide and has now become a formidable challenge for investors all over the world. The growing magnitude of the world's securities markets in the past decades has further raised the concerns of the securities market regulators across the globe.

Genesis

The United States of America was the first country to formally enact a legislation to effectively tackle the menace of insider trading. Over the years, most of the jurisdictions around the world have recognized the requirement to restrict insider trading in one form or other and accordingly put in place legal restrictions to this effect so as to maintain investors' confidence in the capital market.

India was not late in recognizing the detrimental impact of insider trading. The history of Insider Trading in India dates back to the 1940's with the formulation of government committees such as the Thomas Committee under the chairmanship of Mr. P.J. Thomas, to evaluate restrictions that can be imposed on short swing profit of 1948, which evaluated *inter alia*, the regulations in the US on short swing profits (profits made by the purchase and sale both, of the company's securities simultaneously within a prescribed time frame) under Section 16 of the Securities Exchange Act, 1934..

The history of Insider Trading in India dates back to the 1940's with the formulation of government committees such as the Thomas Committee under the chairmanship of Mr. P.J. Thomas, to evaluate restrictions that can be imposed on short swing profit.

Committees Recommending Prohibition of Insider Trading

1948 Thomas Committee

- Under the chairmanship of P.J. Thomas, the then Economic Adviser to the Finance Ministry. On the basis of Recommendations of the Committee Section 307 and 308 of Companies Act 1956 dealing is disclosure of shareholdings of directors/managers introduced.

1950 Bhabha Committee

- The Bhabha Committee report made a distinction between the directors who buy or sell shares while in possession of general information and those who buy or sell shares based on the specific information, such as the conclusion of a favourable contract or the intention a company's board to recommend an increased dividend.

1977 Sachar Committee

- Recommended comprehensive amendments to sections 307 and 308 with a view to strengthening the provisions thereof. The Committee made two-fold recommendations - one relating to fuller disclosure of transactions by those who have price-sensitive information and another prohibition of transactions by such persons during certain specified period unless there are exceptional circumstances.

1984 Patel Committee

- Recommended measures to prohibit the practice of insider trading and suggested draft legislation by way of amendments to the Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act.

JJ Irani Committee

- The Companies Act should facilitate disclosure of actual control structures and prohibition of insider trading as well as management entrenchment. We feel that international best practices should be adapted to the Indian situation while enabling a framework that ensures credibility of corporate operations in the minds of the stakeholders.

1989 - Abid Hussain

- The committee proposed that insider trading should be regarded as a major offence, punishable with civil as well as criminal penalties. The committee recommended that the SEBI should be asked to formulate the necessary legislation, empowering itself with the authority to enforce the provisions.

**2014
Sodhi Committee**

- The Committee has made a range of recommendations to the legal framework for prohibition of insider trading in India and has focused on making this area of regulation more predictable, precise and clear by suggesting a combination of principles-based regulations and rules that are backed by principles.

**2018
Vishwanathan
Committee**

- The committee various recommendations including compliance officer to be financially literate, insertion of structured digital data base containing names of persons with whom information is shared.

REGULATORY FRAMEWORK**SEBI ACT 1992**

Section 12A.

No person shall directly or indirectly—

- d) engage in insider trading;
- e) deal in securities while in possession of material or non-public information or communicate such material or non-public information to any other person, in a manner which is in contravention of the provisions of this Act or the rules or the regulations made thereunder;

Section 15 G**Penalty for insider trading.**

If any insider who,—

- either on his own behalf or on behalf of any other person, deals in securities of a body
- corporate listed on any stock exchange on the basis of any unpublished price-sensitive information; or
- communicates any unpublished price-sensitive information to any person, with or without his request for such information except as required in the ordinary course of business or under any law; or
- counsels, or procures for any other person to deal in any securities of any body corporate on the basis of unpublished price-sensitive information, shall be liable to a penalty [which shall not be less than ten lakh rupees but which may extend to twenty-five crore rupees or three times the amount of profits made out of insider trading, whichever is higher.

SEBI (PROHIBITION OF INSIDER TRADING) REGULATIONS, 2015 – REGULATORY FRAMEWORK



KEY DEFINITIONS

Compliance officer

Compliance Officer means:

any senior officer, designated so and reporting to the board of directors or head of the organization in case board is not there, **who is financially literate** and is capable of appreciating requirements for legal and regulatory compliance under these regulations, and *who shall be responsible for*:

- compliance of policies, procedures, maintenance of records, monitoring adherence to the rules for the preservation of unpublished price sensitive information;

Extracts from interpretive letter dated 21st October, 2015 issued under the SEBI (Informal Guidance) Scheme, 2003 in the matter of Mindtree Ltd.

Question: Can a senior person, say a Chief Financial Officer (CFO) or a Company Secretary (CS), who is not reporting to the Board, act as compliance officer and update the Board on the transactions related to Insider Trading Quarterly. Can the company appoint more than one person as the Compliance Officer under the Code?

Answer: In the current scenario, can CS as well as CFO be appointed as a Compliance Officer, so that one can sign and

- (b) monitoring of trades and the implementation of the codes specified in these regulations under the overall supervision of the board of directors of the listed company or the head of an organization, as the case may be.

Connected person

Connected person means:

- any person who is or has during six months prior to the concerned Act has been associated with a company, directly or indirectly;
- in any capacity (including by reason of frequent communication with its officers or by being in any contractual, fiduciary or employment relation); or
- is a director, officer or an employee of the company or holds any position including a professional or business relationship between himself and the company, whether temporary or permanent; or

that allows such person, directly or indirectly, access to unpublished price-sensitive information or reasonably expected to allow such access.

submit the documents if the other person is on travel? Guidance from SEBI: Regulation 2(1)(c) of SEBI (PIT) Regulations, 2015 defines Compliance Officer as any senior officer, designated so and reporting to the board of directors or head of the organisation in case board is not there, who is financially literate and is capable of appreciating requirements for legal and regulatory compliance under these regulations and who shall be responsible for compliance of policies, procedures, maintenance of records, monitoring adherence to the rules for the preservation of UPSI, monitoring of trades and the implementation of the codes specified in these regulations under the overall supervision of the board of directors of the listed company or the head of the organisation, as the case may be. The functions and responsibility of the Compliance Officer are specified in Regulation 2(1)(c) of the SEBI (PIT) Regulations, 2015. The company may at its discretion appoint any senior officer as the Compliance Officer, necessarily report to the Board of directors or head of the organization as the case may be. Appointing any other person shall not be in accordance with the Regulations. In case of appointing more than one person as Compliance Officer they shall be held jointly and severally responsible.

It is important to note here that SEBI has in its recent judgments considered nexus and relationship of various persons through social media networking websites to identify the Connected Persons.

Insider

“Insider” means any person who is:

- (i) a connected person; or
- (ii) in possession of or having access to unpublished price sensitive information.

Person deemed to be connected person

“Person is deemed to be a connected person” unless the contrary is established, if such person is –

- (a) an immediate relative of connected person(s); or
- (b) a holding company or associate company or subsidiary company; or
- (c) an intermediary as specified in Section 12 of the SEBI Act or an employee or director thereof; or
- (d) an investment company, trustee company, asset management company or an employee or director thereof; or
- (e) an official of a stock exchange or of clearing house or corporation; or
- (f) a member of board of trustees of a mutual fund or a member of the board of directors of the asset management company of a mutual fund or is an employee thereof; or
- (g) a member of the board of directors or an employee, of a public financial institution as defined in Section 2(72) of the Companies Act, 2013; or
- (h) an official or an employee of a self-regulatory organization recognised or authorized by the SEBI; or
- (i) a banker of the company; or

- (j) a concern, firm, trust, Hindu undivided family, company or association of persons wherein a director of a company or his immediate relative or banker of the company, has more than ten percent of the holding or interest.

It is to be noted that the above definition intends to bring into its ambit persons who may not seemingly occupy any position in a company but are in regular touch with the company and its officers and are involved in the know of the company's operations.

Immediate Relative

"Immediate Relative" means

- spouse of a person,
- parents,
- sibling, and
- child of such person or of the spouse,
- any of whom is either dependent financially on such person,
- or consults such person in taking decisions relating to trading in securities.

Question: If a spouse is financially independent and does not consult an insider while taking trading decisions is that spouse exempted from the definition of 'immediate relative'?

Answer: A spouse is presumed to be an 'immediate relative', unless rebutted so.

"Proposed to be listed" shall include securities of an unlisted company:

- (i) if such unlisted company has filed offer documents or other documents, as the case may be, with the SEBI, stock exchange(s) or registrar of companies in connection with the listing; or
- (ii) if such unlisted company is getting listed pursuant to any merger or amalgamation and has filed a copy of such scheme of merger or amalgamation under the Companies Act, 2013.

Trading

"Trading" means and includes subscribing, buying, selling, dealing, or agreeing to subscribe, buy, sell, deal in any securities, and "trade" shall be construed accordingly.

Unpublished price sensitive information

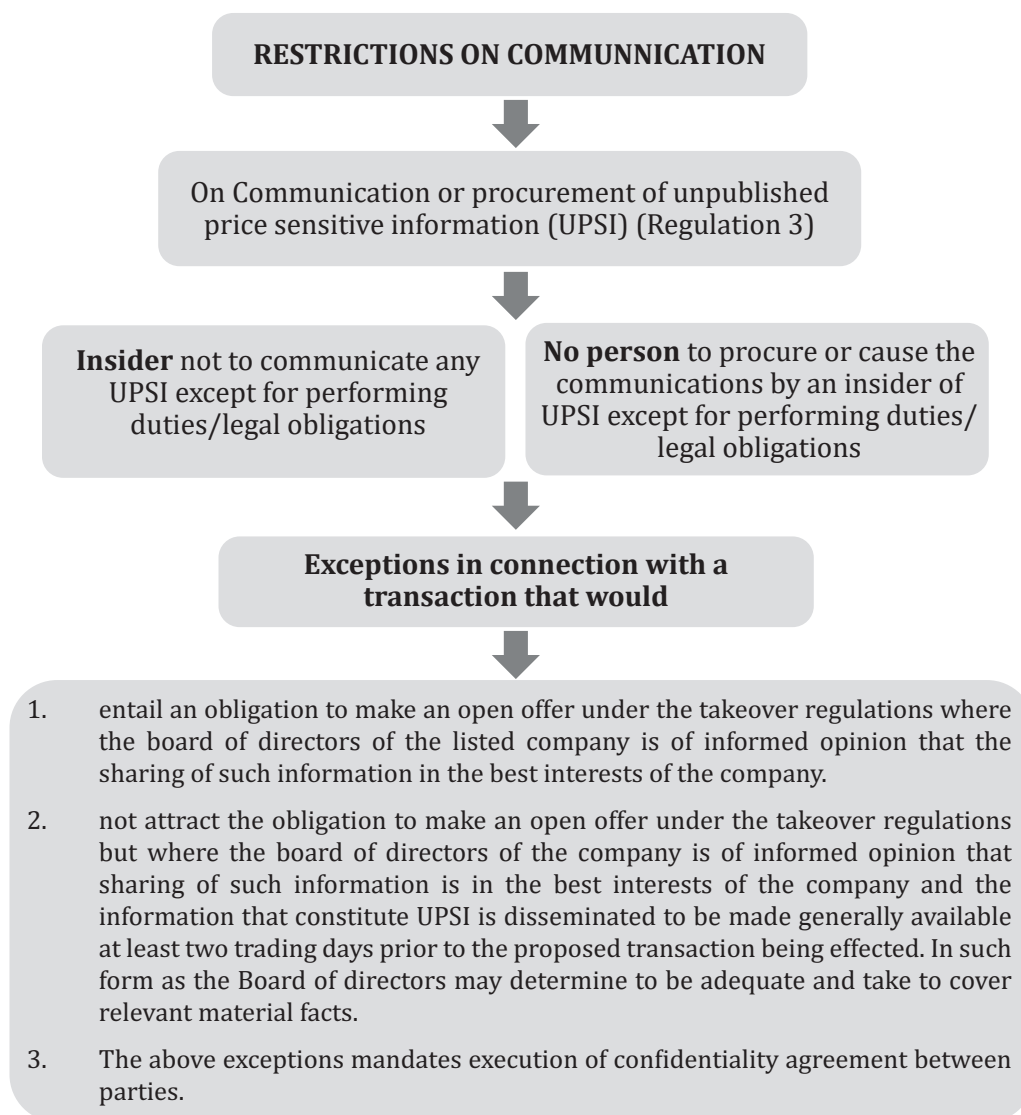
"Unpublished price sensitive information" means any information, relating to a company or its securities, directly or indirectly, that is not generally available which upon becoming generally available, is likely to materially affect the price of the securities and shall, ordinarily including but not restricted to, information relating to the following–

- (i) Financial results;
- (ii) Dividends;
- (iii) Change in capital structure;
- (iv) Mergers, de-mergers, acquisitions, delisting, disposals and expansion of business and such other transactions;
- (v) Changes in key managerial personnel.

Extracts from SAT Order dated 12th July 2019 in the matter of Mr. G. Bala Reddy v/s SEBI [Appeal No. 509 of 2015]

In this case a Company had secured work orders but the same were not disclosed to stock exchange as the contract was not yet issued to the Company and the Company was only found to be the lowest price bidder. During this period, certain entities had dealt in the shares of this Company with a contention that being the lowest bidder of a contract is a usual course of business and hence, does not amount to UPSI. SAT held that considering that the promoter was aware that the Company was L1 (lowest bidder), this information was UPSI and hence it was incumbent upon Promoters not to deal in the scrips of the Company directly or indirectly.

RESTRICTION ON COMMUNICATION OR PROCUREMENT OF UNPUBLISHED PRICE SENSITIVE INFORMATION (UPSI) (REGULATIONS 3)



Restriction on Communication

No insider to communicate UPSI (Regulation 3)

- (1) No insider shall communicate, provide, or allow access to any unpublished price sensitive information, relating to a company or securities listed or proposed to be listed, to any person including other insiders *except where such communication is in furtherance of legitimate purposes*, performance of duties or discharge of legal obligations.

Policy for determination of Legitimate Purposes [Regulation 3(2A)]

The board of directors of a listed company shall make a policy for determination of “legitimate purposes” as a part of “Codes of Fair Disclosure and Conduct” formulated under regulation 8. Explanation – For the purpose of illustration, the term “legitimate purpose” shall include sharing of unpublished price sensitive information in the ordinary course of business by an insider with partners, collaborators, lenders, customers, suppliers, merchant bankers, legal advisors, auditors, insolvency professionals or other advisors or consultants, provided that such sharing has not been carried out to evade or circumvent the prohibitions of these regulations.

Recipient of UPSI received on legitimate purpose is also an insider (Regulation 32B)

- (2B) Any person in receipt of unpublished price sensitive information pursuant to a “legitimate purpose” shall be considered an “insider” for purposes of these regulations and due notice shall be given to such persons to maintain confidentiality of such unpublished price sensitive information in compliance with these regulations.

No person shall procure from or cause the communication by any insider of unpublished price sensitive information (Regulation 3(2))

- (2) No person shall procure from or cause the communication by any insider of unpublished price sensitive information, relating to a company or securities listed or proposed to be listed, except in furtherance of legitimate purposes, performance of duties or discharge of legal obligations.

Note: This provision is intended to impose a prohibition on unlawfully procuring possession of unpublished price sensitive information. Inducement and procurement of unpublished price sensitive information not in furtherance of one’s legitimate duties and discharge of obligations would be illegal under this provision.

Exceptions:

- (3) Notwithstanding anything contained in this regulation, an unpublished price sensitive information may be communicated, provided, allowed access to or procured, in connection with a transaction that would:-
- (i) entail an obligation to make an open offer under the takeover regulations where the board of directors of the listed company is of informed opinion that sharing of such information is in the best interests of the company; .
 - (ii) not attract the obligation to make an open offer under the takeover regulations but where the board of directors of the listed company is of informed opinion that sharing of such information is in the best interests of the company and the information that constitute unpublished price sensitive information is disseminated to be made generally available at least two trading days prior to the proposed transaction being effected in such form as the board of directors may determine to be adequate and fair to cover all relevant and material facts.

Note: It is intended to permit communicating, providing, allowing access to or procuring UPSI also in transactions that do not entail an open offer obligation under the takeover regulations when authorised by the board of directors if sharing of such information is in the best interests of the company. The board of directors, however, would cause public disclosures of such unpublished price sensitive information well before the proposed transaction to rule out any information asymmetry in the market.

Execution of confidentiality agreement - A mandate

- (4) For purposes of sub-regulation (3), the board of directors shall require the parties to execute agreements to contract confidentiality and non-disclosure obligations on the part of such parties and such parties shall keep information so received confidential, except for the purpose of sub-regulation (3), and shall not otherwise trade in securities of the company when in possession of unpublished price sensitive information.

Maintenance of structured database with names of persons with whom UPSI is shared and names of persons who shared the same

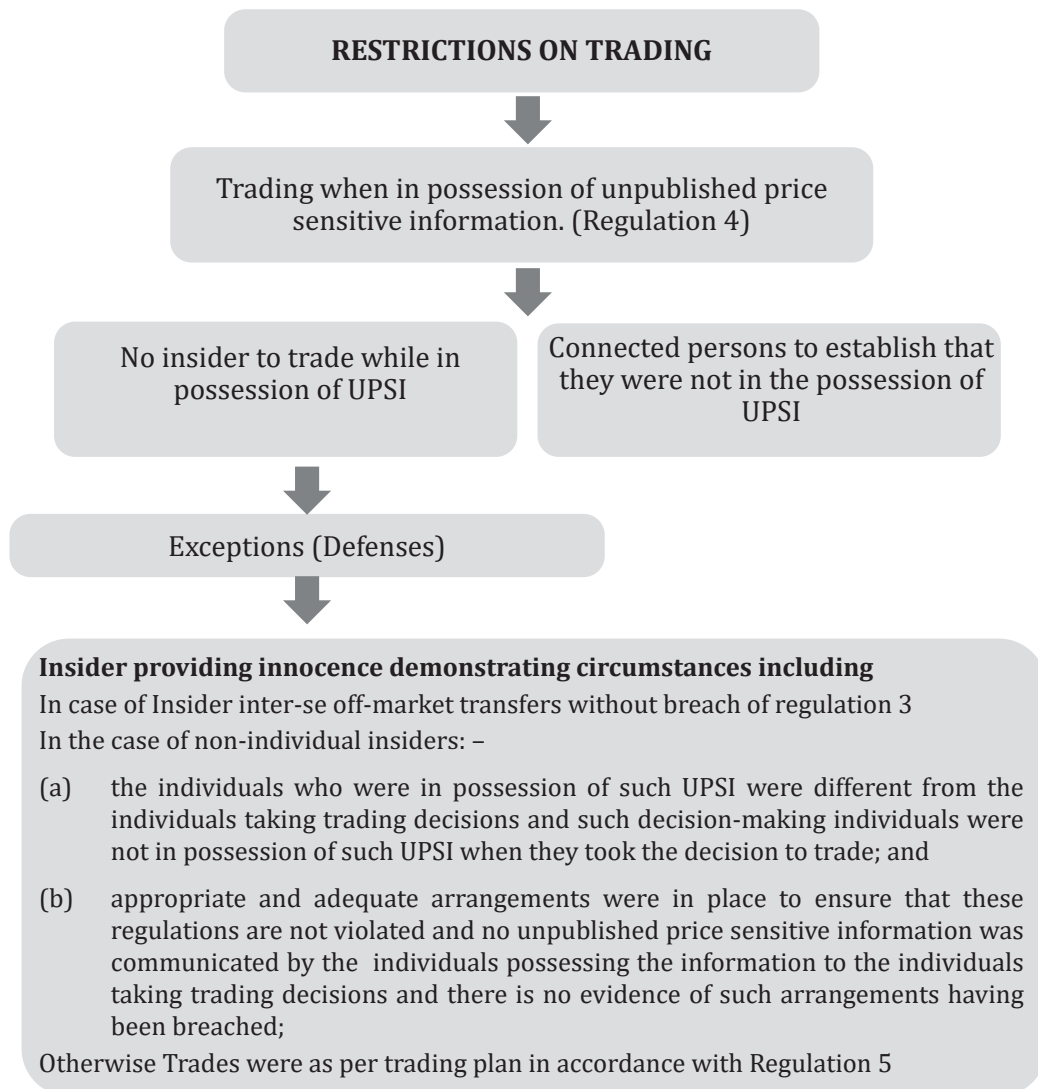
Question: What information should a listed Company maintain in its structured digital database under Regulation 3(5), in case the designated person is a fiduciary or intermediary?

Answer: The listed company should maintain the names of the fiduciary or intermediary with whom they have shared information along with the Permanent Account Number (PAN) or other unique identifier authorized by law, in case PAN is not available. The fiduciary / intermediary, shall at their end, be required to maintain details as required under the Schedule C in respect of persons having access to UPSI.

For example: If the listed company has appointed a law firm or Merchant Banker in respect of fund raising activity, it should obtain the name of the entity, so appointed, along with the PAN or other identifier, in case PAN is not available. The law firm or the Merchant Banker would in turn maintain its list of persons along with PAN or other unique identifier (in case PAN is not available), in accordance with Regulation 9A(2)(d) and as required under Schedule C, with whom they have shared the unpublished price sensitive information.

- (5) The Board of Directors or head(s) of the organisation of every person required to handle unpublished price sensitive information shall ensure that a structured digital database is maintained containing the nature of unpublished price sensitive information and the names of such persons who have shared the information and also the names of such persons with whom information is shared under this regulation along with the Permanent Account Number or any other identifier authorized by law where Permanent Account Number is not available. Such database shall not be outsourced and shall be maintained internally with adequate internal controls and checks such as time stamping and audit trails to ensure non-tampering of the database.
- (6) The board of directors or head(s) of the organisation of every person required to handle unpublished price sensitive information shall ensure that the structured digital database is preserved for a period of not less than eight years after completion of the relevant transactions and in the event of receipt of any information from the Board regarding any investigation or enforcement proceedings, the relevant information in the structured digital database shall be preserved till the completion of such proceedings.

TRADING WHEN IN POSSESSION OF UNPUBLISHED PRICE SENSITIVE INFORMATION (UPSI): PERMISSION & LIMITATION:



Insider not to trade in securities while in possession of unpublished price sensitive information

- **Regulation 4** prescribes that an insider shall not trade in securities, which are listed or proposed to be listed on stock exchange, when in possession of unpublished price sensitive information, except in the following situations:

- where there is an **off-market inter-se transfer** between insiders who were in possession of the same UPSI, or
- the transaction was carried through the **block deal window mechanism** between persons who were in the possession of the UPSI.

Block deal is a trade, with a minimum quantity of 5 lakh shares or minimum value of Rs. 5 crore, executed through a single transaction, on the special "Block Deal window".

Provided that:

- there should be no breach of Regulation 3;
- both the parties had made a conscious and informed trade decision;
- UPSI should not have been obtained under Regulation (3).

Provided further that, off-market trades shall be reported by the insiders to the Company within two working days which shall further notify the particulars of these trades to the stock exchange(s) where the securities are listed within two working days of receipt of such disclosure or from becoming aware of such information.

- the transaction in question, was carried out pursuant to a statutory or regulatory obligation to carry out a **bona-fide transaction**,
- the transaction in question, was undertaken pursuant to the **exercise of stock options** in respect of which the exercise price was pre-determined in compliance of with applicable regulations,
- in case of **non-individual insiders**, individuals taking the trade decision & individuals possessing the UPSI are different from each other **and** while taking the trade decision the individuals were not in possession of such UPSI **and** appropriate & adequate precautionary arrangements were made to ensure that these regulations are not violated **and** there are no evidence also of such arrangements having been breached,
- the trades were in accordance to **trading plan** set up in accordance with Regulation 5.

Explanation, for the purpose of above Regulation:

Question: Whether creation of a pledge or invocation of pledge is allowed when trading window is closed?

Answer: Yes, however, the pledgor or pledgee may demonstrate that the creation of the pledge or invocation of pledge was bona-fide and prove this innocence under proviso to sub-regulation (1) of Regulation 4.

- When a person who has traded in securities has been in possession of unpublished price sensitive information, his trades would be presumed to have been motivated by the knowledge and awareness of such information in his possession.
- In the case of connected persons the onus of establishing, that they were not in possession of unpublished price sensitive information, shall be on such connected persons and in other cases, the onus would be on the SEBI.
- The SEBI may specify such standards and requirements, from time to time, as it may deem necessary for the purpose of these regulations.

TRADING PLANS

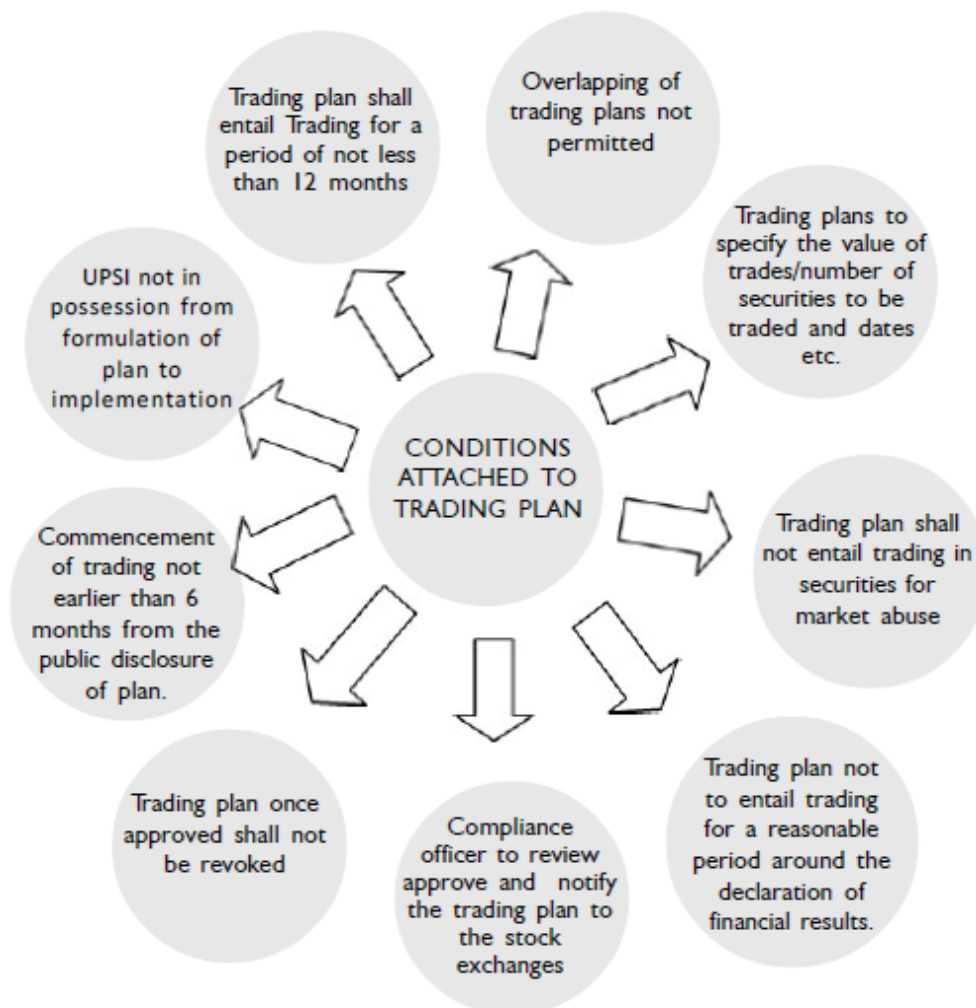
As per **Regulation 5**, an insider shall be entitled to formulate a trading plan in advance and present it to the compliance officer for approval and public disclosure pursuant to which trades may be carried out on his behalf in accordance with such plan.

The compliance officer shall review the trading plan to assess whether the plan would have any potential for violation of these regulations and shall be entitled to seek such express undertakings as may be necessary to enable such assessment and to approve and monitor the implementation of the plan.

However, pre-clearance of trades shall not be required for a trade executed as per an approved trading plan.

Mr. X traded in shares of company as per trading plan approved by the compliance officer. If at a later stage any unpublished price sensitive information comes to his knowledge, it will not affect the transaction, since Mr. X has already determined to make such transaction as per trading plan.

Further, trading window norms and restrictions on contra trade shall not be applicable for trades carried out in accordance with an approved trading plan.



- The trading plan once approved shall be irrevocable and the insider shall mandatorily have to implement the plan, without being entitled to either deviate from it or to execute any trade in the securities outside the scope of the trading plan.

However, the implementation of the trading plan shall not be commenced if any unpublished price sensitive information in possession of the insider at the time of formulation of the plan has not become generally available at the time of the commencement of implementation and in such event the compliance officer shall confirm that the commencement ought to be deferred until such unpublished price sensitive information becomes generally available information so as to avoid a violation of sub-regulation (1) of Regulation 4.

Upon approval of the trading plan, the compliance officer shall notify the plan to the stock exchanges on which the securities are listed.

Mr. A submitted his trading plan for approval after declaring the UPSI in his possession. The trading plan was approved subject to the condition that the UPSI in his possession would become generally available before commencement of trading. If due to some reasons, the said UPSI has not become generally available till the date of trade indicated in the approved trading plan, the commencement of trading by Mr. A should be deferred until such UPSI becomes generally available information.

Question: *Whether contra trade is allowed within the duration of the trading plan?*

Answer: Any trading plan opted by a person under trading plan can be done only to the extent and in the manner disclosed in the plan, save and except for pledging of securities.

Guidance from SEBI (dated 24th August 2015)

Question: *Who will be approving authority for trades done by the Compliance Officer or his immediate relatives, as Insiders?*

Guidance: The Board of Directors of the company shall be the approving authority in such cases and may stipulate such procedures as are deemed necessary to ensure compliance with these regulations.

Extracts from SEBI's Interpretive Letter dated 19th July, 2018 issued under the SEBI (Informal Guidance) Scheme, 2003 in the matter of Hawkins Cookers Ltd. (HCL) regarding sale of shares by an Independent Director.

Facts of the case:

- a) One of the company's independent directors wants to sell his equity shares of the company.
- b) The sale shall be done as per a trading plan in accordance with regulation 4(iii) of the SEBI (PIT) Regulations, 2015.
- c) As per para 8 of Schedule B to the PIT Regulations, while applying for preclearance, the said director will have to submit an undertaking to the company to the effect that he is not in possession of any Unpublished Price Sensitive Information (UPSI).
- d) By virtue of participation in the Board meetings and access to the information that is shared at such meetings, the said director is deemed to be perpetually in possession of UPSI. Therefore, the said undertaking is not possible.

Question: a) Whether the said director may submit a trading plan as required for a plan to trade shares above INR 20 lakh in value and proceed with executing the same without giving the said undertaking.

b) What procedure should be followed by the company and/ or the said director such that the said director may lawfully execute the trade?

Guidance from SEBI: a) Regulation 5 of the PIT Regulations provides exception to the general rule that prohibits trading by insiders when in possession of UPSI. Further, regulation 5, inter alia, states that the trading plan shall be approved by the compliance officer and shall not entail trading in securities for market abuse. In this regard, regulation 5 (3) especially states that the compliance officer shall review the trading plan to assess whether the plan would have any potential for violation of PIT Regulations and shall be entitled to seek such express undertakings as may be necessary to enable such assessment and to approve and monitor the implementation of the plan.

b) In the absence of an approved trading plan, designated persons are subject to the requirements of code of conduct formulated by the company in terms of regulation 9 read with schedule B to the PIT Regulations.

DISCLOSURE REQUIREMENTS

A pictorial representation of disclosure requirements under Regulation 7, covering initial, continual disclosures and disclosures by connected persons are given below.

INITIAL DISCLOSURES	CONTINUED DISCLOSURES	DISCLOSURES BY OTHER CONNECTED PERSONS
<p>Promoter / Member of Promoter Group / Director / Key Managerial personnel to disclose holding of their securities to the company</p> <p>Within 7 days from the date of their appointment/ becoming promoter or member of promoter group.</p>	<p>Every promoter/ Member of Promoter Group/Designated Person / director to disclose to the company the number of such securities acquired or disposed of within two trading days of such transaction if the value of the securities traded, whether in one transaction or a series of transactions over any calendar quarter, aggregates to a traded value in excess of ten lakh rupees or such other value as may be specified</p> <p>Company to notify to the exchange within 2 trading days of receipt of intimation.</p>	<p>Any other connected person or class of connected persons to make disclosures of holdings and trading in listed securities as prescribed.</p>

Initial Disclosures [Regulation 7(1)]

- (a) Every promoter, member of the promoter group, key managerial personnel and director of every company whose securities are listed on any recognised stock exchange shall disclose his holding of securities of the company as on the date of these regulations taking effect, to the company within thirty days of these regulations taking effect;
- (b) Every person on appointment as a key managerial personnel or a director of the company or upon becoming a promoter or member of the promoter group shall disclose his holding of securities of the company as on the date of appointment or becoming a promoter, to the company within seven days of such appointment or becoming a promoter.

Continual Disclosures [Regulation 7(2)]

- (a) Every promoter, member of the promoter group, designated person and director of every company shall disclose to the company the number of such securities acquired or disposed of within two trading days of such transaction if the value of the securities traded, whether in one transaction or a series of transactions over any calendar quarter, aggregates to a traded value in excess of ten lakh rupees or such other value as may be specified;
- (b) Every company shall notify the particulars of such trading to the stock exchange on which the securities are listed within two trading days of receipt of the disclosure or from becoming aware of such information.

Explanation. — It is clarified for the avoidance of doubts that the disclosure of the incremental transactions after any disclosure under this sub-regulation, shall be made when the transactions effected after the prior disclosure cross the threshold specified in clause (a) of sub-regulation (2).

Disclosures by other connected persons [Regulation 7(3)]

Any company whose securities are listed on a stock exchange may, at its discretion require any other connected person or class of connected persons to make disclosures of holdings and trading in securities of the company in such form and at such frequency as may be determined by the company in order to monitor compliance with these regulations.

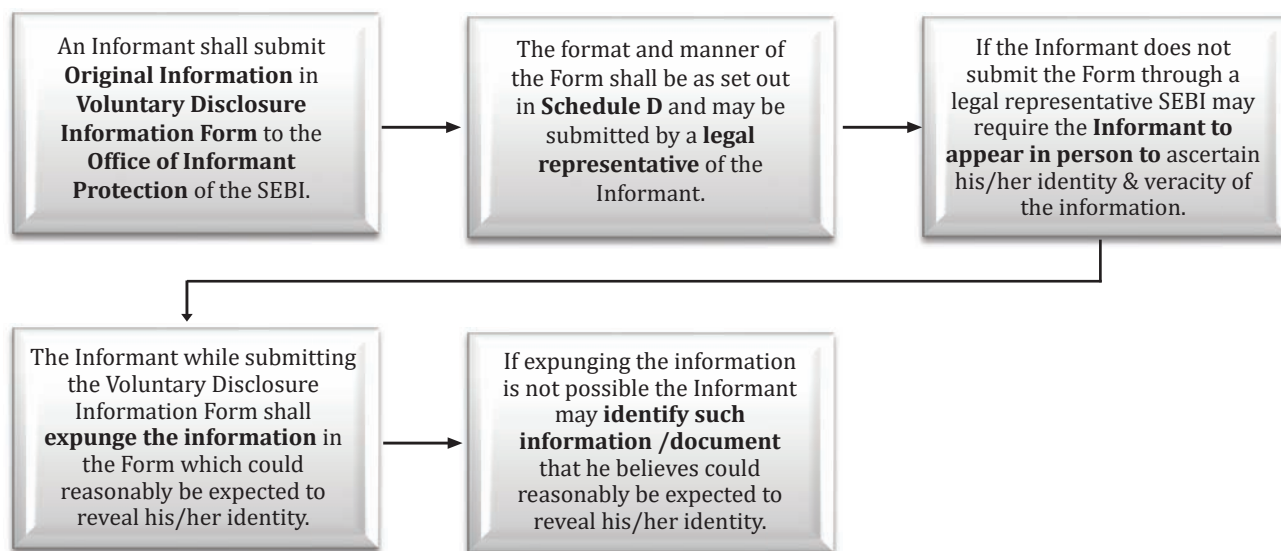
This is an enabling provision for listed companies to seek information from those to whom it has to provide unpublished price sensitive information. This provision confers discretion on any company to seek such information. For example, a listed company may ask that a management consultant who would advise it on corporate strategy and would need to review unpublished price sensitive information, should make disclosures of his trades to the company.

Disclosures - Who, what and when?

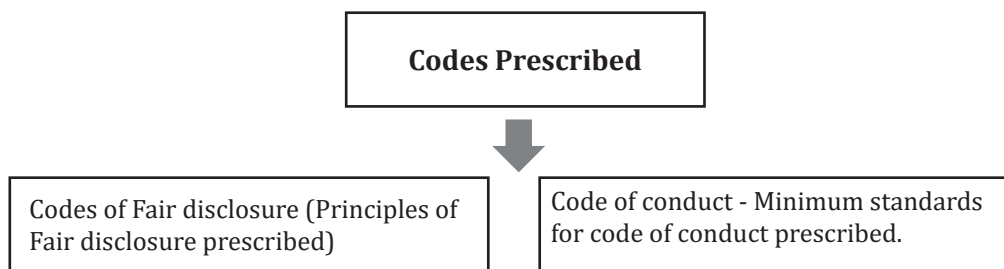
Who	What	When
Promoter/member of Promoter Group	Initial disclosure	Within 7 days from the date of their appointment/becoming promoter or member of promoter Group
	Continual Disclosure	the number of such securities acquired or disposed of within two trading days of such transaction if the value of the securities traded, whether in one transaction or a series of transactions over any calendar quarter, aggregates to a traded value in excess of ten lakh rupees or such other value as may be specified
Director	Initial disclosure	Within 7 days from the date of their appointment
	Continual Disclosure	the number of such securities acquired or disposed of within two trading days of such transaction if the value of the securities traded, whether in one transaction or a series of transactions over any calendar quarter, aggregates to a traded value in excess of ten lakh rupees or such other value as may be specified
Key Managerial personnel	Initial disclosure	Within 7 days from the date of their appointment
	Continual Disclosure(as Designated Person)	the number of such securities acquired or disposed of within two trading days of such transaction if the value of the securities traded, whether in one transaction or a series of transactions over any calendar quarter, aggregates to a traded value in excess of ten lakh rupees or such other value as may be specified
Designated Person	Continual Disclosure	the number of such securities acquired or disposed of within two trading days of such transaction if the value of the securities traded, whether in one transaction or a series of transactions over any calendar quarter, aggregates to a traded value in excess of ten lakh rupees or such other value as may be specified
Other Connected persons	Any company whose securities are listed on a stock exchange may, at its discretion require any other connected person or class of connected persons to make disclosures of holdings and trading in securities of the company in such form and at such frequency as may be determined by the company in order to monitor compliance with these regulations.	
Company	Company to notify to the exchange within 2 trading days of receipt of disclosure.	

INFORMANT INCENTIVES AND REWARDS

Chapter IIIA has been added to SEBI (Prohibition of Insider Trading) Regulations 2015 vide SEBI (Prohibition of Insider Trading (Thrid Amendment) Regulations, 2019 w.e.f December 26, 2019, prescribing for incentive and reward for the informants who submits to the SEBI a Voluntary Information Disclosure relating to any alleged violation of insider trading laws that has occurred, in occurring or has a reasonable belief that it is about to occur. The new provisions prescribe the manner of submitting information, various forms and procedure for determination of rewards and confidentiality of informants.

Brief process flow of submission to the SEBI [Regulation 7 (B)]**CODES OF FAIR DISCLOSURE AND CONDUCT****A. Code of Fair Disclosure [Regulation 8]**

Chapter IV of SEBI (Prohibition of Insider Trading) Regulations 2015 deals with codes to be documented and followed by listed companies/market intermediaries.

**SCHEDULE A- Principles for fair disclosure shall be as follows:**

- Prompt public disclosure** of unpublished price sensitive information that would impact price discovery no sooner than credible and concrete information comes into being in order to make such information generally available.
- Uniform and universal dissemination** of unpublished price sensitive information to avoid selective disclosure.
- Designation of a senior officer as a **chief investor relations officer** to deal with dissemination of information and disclosure of unpublished price sensitive information.
- Prompt dissemination** of unpublished price sensitive information that gets disclosed selectively, inadvertently or otherwise to make such information generally available.

Question: Whether Chief Investor Relations Officer (CIRO) will also be responsible along with Compliance Officer for not disseminating information or non-disclosure of UPSI?

Answer: Regulation 2(c) clearly provides the functions and responsibilities of the compliance officer. Specific responsibilities to deal with dissemination of information and disclosure of UPSI are given to CIRO under clause 30 of Schedule A. It is company's discretion to designate two separate persons as CIRO and compliance officer, respectively for fulfilling specified responsibilities in cases where CIRO and compliance officer have been designated for overlapping functions, they shall be jointly and severally responsible.

5. **Appropriate and fair response to queries** on news reports and requests for verification of market rumours by regulatory authorities.
6. Ensuring that information shared with **analysts and research personnel** is not unpublished price sensitive information.
7. Developing **best practices to make transcripts or records of proceedings of meetings** with analysts and other investor relations conferences on the official website to ensure official confirmation and documentation of disclosures made.
8. Handling of all unpublished price sensitive information on a **need-to-know basis**.

CODE OF FAIR DISCLOSURE

Board of directors of listed company to formulate and publish a code of practices and procedures for fair disclosure of UPSI on the official website of the company.

Regulatory intent

This provision intends to require every company whose securities are listed on stock exchanges to formulate a stated framework and policy for fair disclosure of events and occurrences that could impact price discovery in the market for its securities. Principles such as, equality of access to information, publication of policies such as those on dividend, inorganic growth pursuits, calls and meetings with analysts, publication of transcripts of such calls and meetings, and the like are set out in the schedule.

The Regulation

Regulation 8 (1) states that the board of directors of every company, whose securities are listed on a stock exchange, shall formulate and publish on its official website, a code of practices and procedures for fair disclosure of unpublished price sensitive information that it would follow in order to adhere to each of the principles set out in Schedule A to these regulations, without diluting the provisions of these regulations in any manner.

To notify the code of fair disclosure/amendment thereof to the stock exchanges.

Regulation 8(2) states that every such code of practices and procedures for fair disclosure of unpublished price sensitive information and every amendment thereto shall be promptly intimated to the stock exchanges where the securities are listed.

The board of directors of a listed company shall make a policy for determination of “legitimate purposes” as a part of “Codes of Fair Disclosure and Conduct” formulated under regulation 8.

The term “legitimate purpose” shall include sharing of unpublished price sensitive information in the ordinary course of business by an insider with partners, collaborators, lenders, customers, suppliers, merchant bankers, legal advisors, auditors, insolvency professionals or other advisors or consultants, provided that such sharing has not been carried out to evade or circumvent the prohibitions of these regulations.

CODE OF CONDUCT

Board of Directors of every listed company and the board of directors or head(s) of the organisation of every intermediary ensure that the chief executive officer or managing director formulate code of conduct with their approval to regulate, monitor and report trading by its designated persons and immediate relatives of designated persons.

Regulatory intent

It is intended that every company whose securities are listed on stock exchanges and every intermediary registered with SEBI is mandatorily required to formulate a code of conduct governing trading by designated persons and their immediate relatives. The standards set out in the schedules are required to be addressed by such code of conduct.

The Regulation

Regulation 9 (1) states that the board of directors of every listed company and the board of directors or head(s) of the organisation of every intermediary shall ensure that the chief executive officer or managing director shall formulate a code of conduct with their approval to regulate, monitor and report trading by its designated persons

and immediate relatives of designated persons towards achieving compliance with these regulations, adopting the minimum standards set out in Schedule B (in case of a listed company) and Schedule C (in case of an intermediary) to these regulations, without diluting the provisions of these regulations in any manner.

Explanation – For the avoidance of doubt it is clarified that intermediaries, which are listed, would be required to formulate a code of conduct to regulate, monitor and report trading by their designated persons, by adopting the minimum standards set out in Schedule B with respect to trading in their own securities and in Schedule C with respect to trading in other securities.

The board of directors or head(s) of the organisation, of every other person who is required to handle unpublished price sensitive information in the course of business operations shall formulate a code of conduct.

Regulatory intent

It is intended to mandate persons other than listed companies and intermediaries that are required to handle unpublished price sensitive information to formulate a code of conduct governing trading in securities by their designated persons. These entities include professional firms such as auditors, accountancy firms, law firms, analysts, insolvency professional entities, consultants, banks etc., assisting or advising listed companies. Even entities that normally operate outside the capital market may handle unpublished price sensitive information. This provision would mandate all of them to formulate a code of conduct.

The Regulation

Regulation 9 (2) states the board of directors or head(s) of the organisation, of every other person who is required to handle unpublished price sensitive information in the course of business operations shall formulate a code of conduct to regulate, monitor and report trading by their designated persons and immediate relative of designated persons towards achieving compliance with these regulations, adopting the minimum standards set out in Schedule C to these regulations, without diluting the provisions of these regulations in any manner.

Explanation - Professional firms such as auditors, accountancy firms, law firms, analysts, insolvency professional entities, consultants, banks etc., assisting or advising listed companies shall be collectively referred to as fiduciaries for the purpose of these regulations.

B. Code of Conduct [Regulation 9]

- The board of directors or head(s) of the organisation, of **every other person** who is required to handle unpublished price sensitive information in the course of business operations shall mandatorily formulate a code of conduct to regulate, monitor and report trading by their designated persons and immediate relative of designated persons towards achieving compliance with these regulations, adopting the minimum standards set out in **Schedule C** to these regulations, without diluting the provisions of these regulations in any manner.

Explanation - Professional firms such as auditors, accountancy firms, law firms, analysts, insolvency professional entities, consultants, banks etc., assisting or advising listed companies shall be collectively referred to as fiduciaries for the purpose of these regulations. Even entities that normally operate outside the capital market may handle unpublished price sensitive information. This provision would mandate all of them to formulate a code of conduct.

- Every listed company, intermediary and other persons formulating a code of conduct shall identify and designate a compliance officer to administer the code of conduct and other requirements under these regulations.
- The board of directors or such other analogous authority shall in consultation with the compliance officer specify the **designated persons** to be covered by the code of conduct on the basis of their role and function in the organisation and the access that such role and function would provide to unpublished price sensitive information in addition to seniority and professional designation and **shall include:-**
 - (i) Employees of such listed company, intermediary or fiduciary designated on the basis of their functional role or access to unpublished price sensitive information in the organization by their board of directors or analogous body;

- (ii) Employees of material subsidiaries of such listed companies designated on the basis of their functional role or access to unpublished price sensitive information in the organization by their board of directors;
- (iii) All promoters of listed companies and promoters who are individuals or investment companies for intermediaries or fiduciaries;
- (iv) Chief Executive Officer and employees upto two levels below Chief Executive Officer of such listed company, intermediary, fiduciary and its material subsidiaries irrespective of their functional role in the company or ability to have access to unpublished price sensitive information;
- (v) Any support staff of listed company, intermediary or fiduciary such as IT staff or secretarial staff who have access to unpublished price sensitive information.

Minimum Standards for Code of Conduct

Schedule B of these regulations lays down the following minimum standards for Code of Conduct for listed companies to regulate, monitor and report trading by designated persons:-

1. The **Compliance Officer shall report** to the board of directors and in particular, shall provide reports to the Chairman of the Audit Committee, if any, or to the Chairman of the board of directors at such frequency as may be stipulated by the board of directors but not less than once in a year.
2. All information shall be handled within the organisation on a **need-to-know** basis and no unpublished price sensitive information shall be communicated to any person except in furtherance of legitimate purposes, performance of duties or discharge of legal obligations.
3. The code of conduct shall contain norms for appropriate **Chinese Walls** procedures, and processes for permitting any designated person to “cross the wall”.
4. **Designated persons and immediate relatives** of designated persons in the organisation shall be governed by an internal code of conduct governing dealing in securities.
5. Designated persons may **execute trades** subject to compliance with these regulations. Towards this end, a **notional trading window** shall be used as an instrument of monitoring trading by the designated persons.
6. The **trading window shall be closed** when the compliance officer determines that a designated person or class of designated persons can reasonably be expected to have possession of unpublished price sensitive information. Such closure shall be imposed in relation to such securities to which such unpublished price sensitive information relates.
7. Designated persons and their immediate relatives **shall not trade** in securities when the trading window is closed.
8. **Trading restriction period** shall be made applicable from the end of every quarter till 48 hours after the declaration of financial results. The gap between clearance of accounts by audit committee and board meeting should be as narrow as possible and preferably on the same day to avoid leakage of material information.

CHINESE WALL POLICY:

Price sensitive information(s) in a company are required to be disseminated to the stock exchanges on continuous basis & so as to prevent the misuse of such price-sensitive information the organization adopts such policy which separates those areas (internal) of the organization which routinely have access to confidential/price-sensitive information from external areas such as sales, marketing, investment advisers & all other public departments providing support services to the organization.

Failure to close trading window by the Compliance Officer, during the occurring of an event that generates price-sensitive information is a violation of the said Code of Conduct which holds the Compliance Officer liable for adjudicating proceedings.

[Edelweiss Financial Services Ltd.]

When the trading window is open, trading by designated persons shall be subject to pre-clearance by the compliance officer, if the value of the proposed trades is above such thresholds as the board of directors may stipulate

9. The trading window restrictions mentioned above **shall not apply** in respect of –
- (a) transactions specified in clauses (i) to (iv) and (vi) of the proviso to sub-regulation (1) of regulation 4 and in respect of a pledge of shares for a bonafide purpose such as raising of funds, subject to pre-clearance by the compliance officer and compliance with the respective regulations made by the Board;
 - (b) transactions which are undertaken in accordance with respective regulations made by the SEBI such as acquisition by conversion of warrants or debentures, subscribing to rights issue, further public issue, preferential allotment or tendering of shares in a buy-back offer, open offer, delisting offer or transactions which are undertaken through such other mechanism as may be specified by the SEBI from time to time.
10. The timing for **re-opening of the trading window** shall be determined by the compliance officer taking into account various factors including the unpublished price sensitive information in question becoming generally available and being capable of assimilation by the market, which in any event shall not be earlier than forty-eight hours after the information becomes generally available.
11. When the trading window is open, trading by designated persons shall be subject to **pre-clearance by the compliance officer**, if the value of the proposed trades is above such thresholds as the board of directors may stipulate.
12. Prior to approving any trades, the compliance officer shall be entitled to seek **declarations** to the effect that the applicant for pre-clearance is not in possession of any unpublished price sensitive information.
13. He shall also have regard to whether any such **declaration is reasonably capable of being rendered inaccurate**.
14. The code of conduct shall specify any reasonable timeframe, which in any event shall not be more than seven trading days, within which **trades** that have been **pre-cleared have to be executed** by the designated person, failing which fresh pre-clearance would be needed for the trades to be executed.
15. The code of conduct shall specify the period, which in any event shall not be less than six months, within which a designated person who is permitted to trade **shall not execute a contra trade**. The compliance officer may be empowered to grant relaxation from strict application of such restriction for reasons to be recorded in writing provided that such relaxation does not violate these regulations. Should a contra trade be executed, inadvertently or otherwise, in violation of such a restriction, the profits from such trade shall be liable to be disgorged for remittance to SEBI for credit to the Investor Protection and Education Fund administered by the SEBI under the Act.
- However, this shall not be applicable for trades pursuant to exercise of stock options.
16. The code of conduct shall stipulate such **formats** as the board of directors deems necessary for making applications for pre-clearance, reporting of trades executed, reporting of decisions not to trade after securing pre-clearance, and for reporting level of holdings in securities at such intervals as may be determined as being necessary to monitor compliance with these regulations.
17. Without prejudice to the power of the SEBI under the Act, the code of conduct shall stipulate the sanctions and disciplinary actions, including wage freeze, suspension, recovery, etc., that may be imposed, by the listed company required to formulate a code of conduct under subregulation (1) of regulation 9, for the contravention of the code of conduct. Any amount collected under this clause shall be remitted to the Board for credit to the Investor Protection and Education Fund administered by the SEBI under the Act.
18. The code of conduct shall specify that in case it is observed by the listed company required to formulate a code of conduct, that there has been a **violation of these regulations, it shall inform the SEBI promptly**.
19. Designated persons shall be required to **disclose names and Permanent Account Number** or any other identifier authorized by law of the following persons to the company on an annual basis and as and when the information changes:
- (a) immediate relatives,
 - (b) persons with whom such designated person(s) shares a material financial relationship,
 - (c) phone, mobile and cell numbers which are used by them.

In addition, the names of educational institutions from which designated persons have graduated and names of their past employers shall also be disclosed on a one time basis.

Explanation – The term “**material financial relationship**” shall mean a relationship in which one person is a recipient of any kind of payment such as by way of a loan or gift from a designated person during the immediately preceding twelve months, equivalent to at least 25% of the annual income of such designated person but shall exclude relationships in which the payment is based on arm’s length transactions.

20. Listed entities shall have a process for how and when people are brought ‘**inside**’ on **sensitive transactions**. Individuals should be made aware of the duties and responsibilities attached to the receipt of Inside Information, and the liability that attaches to misuse or unwarranted use of such information.
- When trading window should be closed? How long it should be closed?
 - What is the time limit to execute the trade once that have been pre-cleared?

Institutional Mechanism for Prevention of Insider trading [Regulation 9A]

- The Chief Executive Officer, Managing Director or such other analogous person of a listed company, intermediary or fiduciary shall put in place adequate and effective system of internal controls to ensure compliance with the requirements given in these regulations to prevent insider trading.

The internal controls shall include the following:

- (a) all employees who have access to unpublished price sensitive information are identified as designated person;
- (b) all the unpublished price sensitive information shall be identified and its confidentiality shall be maintained as per the requirements of these regulations;
- (c) adequate restrictions shall be placed on communication or procurement of unpublished price sensitive information as required by these regulations;
- (d) lists of all employees and other persons with whom unpublished price sensitive information is shared shall be maintained and confidentiality agreements shall be signed or notice shall be served to all such employees and persons;
- (e) all other relevant requirements specified under these regulations shall be complied with;
- (f) periodic process review to evaluate effectiveness of such internal controls.

- The board of directors of every listed company and the board of directors or head(s) of the organisation of intermediaries and fiduciaries shall ensure that the Chief Executive Officer or the Managing Director or such other analogous person ensures compliance with these regulations.

Every listed company shall formulate written policies and procedures for inquiry in case of leak of unpublished price sensitive information or suspected leak of unpublished price sensitive information, which shall be approved by board of directors of the company
- The Audit Committee of a listed company or other analogous body for intermediary or fiduciary shall review compliance with the provisions of these regulations at least once in a financial year and shall verify that the systems for internal control are adequate and are operating effectively.

The listed company shall have a whistle-blower policy and make employees aware of such policy to enable employees to report instances of leak of unpublished price sensitive information.
- Every listed company **shall formulate written policies and procedures for inquiry in case of leak of unpublished price sensitive information or suspected leak of unpublished price sensitive information**, which shall be approved by board of directors of the company and accordingly initiate appropriate inquiries on becoming aware of leak of unpublished price sensitive information or suspected leak of unpublished price sensitive information and inform the Board promptly of such leaks, inquiries and results of such inquiries.
- The listed company shall have a **whistle-blower policy** and make employees aware of such policy to enable employees to report instances of leak of unpublished price sensitive information.

- If an inquiry has been initiated by a listed company in case of leak of unpublished price sensitive information or suspected leak of unpublished price sensitive information, the relevant intermediaries and fiduciaries shall co-operate with the listed company in connection with such inquiry conducted by listed company.

PENALTY PROVISIONS FOR VIOLATIONS OF THE REGULATIONS

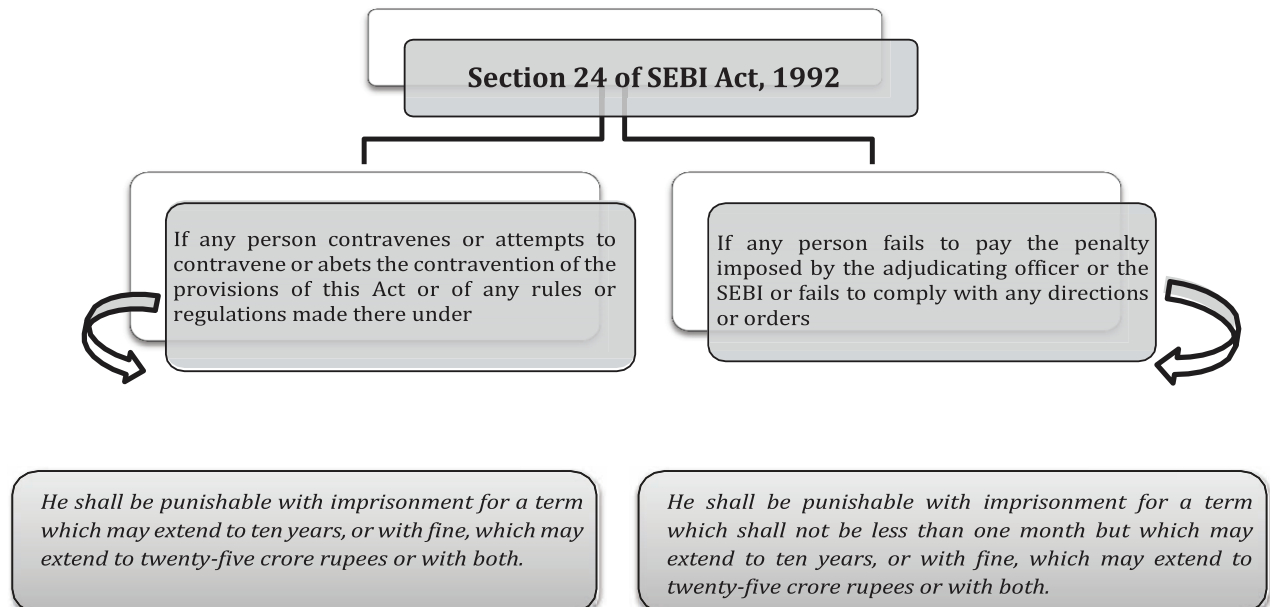
If any person violates provisions of these regulations, he shall be liable for appropriate action under Sections 11, 11B, 11D, Chapter VIA and Section 24 of the SEBI Act.

Penalty for insider trading under section 15G of the SEBI Act, 1992

If any insider who, –

- either on his own behalf or on behalf of any other person, deals in securities of a body corporate listed on any stock exchange on the basis of any unpublished price sensitive information; or
- communicates any unpublished price sensitive information to any person, with or without his request for such information except as required in the ordinary course of business or under any law; or
- counsels, or procures for any other person to deal in any securities of any body corporate on the basis of unpublished price sensitive information.

shall be liable to a penalty which shall not be less than ten lakh rupees but which may extend to twenty-five crore rupees or three times the amount of profits made out of insider trading, whichever is higher.



APPEAL TO SECURITIES APPELLATE TRIBUNAL

Violation of the provisions of these regulations attract huge monetary penalty and may lead to criminal prosecution. However those aggrieved by an order of SEBI, may prefer an appeal to the Securities Appellate Tribunal **within a period of forty-five days of the order.**

ROLE OF COMPANY SECRETARY AS COMPLIANCE OFFICER

The obligations cast upon the Company Secretary in relation to insider trading regulations can be summarized as under. The Company Secretary shall:

1. Ensure compliance with SEBI (Prohibition of insider Trading) Regulations, 2015 including maintenance of various documents.
2. Frame a Code of Fair Disclosure in line with the model code specified in the Schedule A of the regulations, get the same approved by the board of directors of the company and submit to the stock exchanges
3. Frame Code of Conduct for the listed company to regulate, monitor and report trading by designated persons in accordance with the minimum standards as enumerated in the Schedule B to these regulations.
4. Receive initial disclosure from every Promoter, KMP and director or every person on appointment as KMP or director or becoming a Promoter shall disclose its shareholding in the prescribed form within :
 - 30 days from these regulations taking effect, or
 - 7 days of such appointment or becoming a promoter
5. Receive from every Promoter, designated persons and director, continual disclosures of the number of securities acquired or disposed of and changes therein, even if the value of the securities traded, exceeds Rs. 10 lakh with single or series of transaction in any calendar quarter in prescribed form within two trading days of :
 - receipt of the disclosure, or
 - from becoming aware of such information

Submit the disclosures received as above to the stock exchanges as applicable.

6. Pre Clear the trade pursuant to the requests received from the designated persons and also monitor trading in accordance with the regulations.
7. Ensure that no trading shall between 20th day prior to closure of financial period and 2nd trading day after disclosure of financial results.
8. Approve the trading plan and after the approval of the trading plan, as compliance officer shall notify the plan to the stock exchanges on which the securities are listed.
9. Maintain records, as a Compliance Officer, of all the declarations given by the directors/designated employees/partners in the appropriate form for a minimum period of three years.
10. Take additional undertakings, as a compliance officer, from the insiders for approval of the trading plan. Such trading plan on approval will also be disclosed to the Stock Exchanges, where the securities of the company are listed.
11. Monitor trades and the implementation of the code of conduct under the overall supervision of the Board of Directors of the listed company.
12. Frame and then monitor adherence to the rules for the preservation of “Price sensitive information”.
13. Ensure that proper internal control system is in place and continuously monitor and review of its functioning.
14. Suggest any improvements required in the policies, procedures, etc. to ensure effective implementation of the code.
15. Assist in addressing any clarifications regarding the SEBI (Prohibition of Insider Trading) Regulations, 2015 and the company’s code of conduct.
16. Maintain a list of all information termed as ‘price sensitive information’.
17. Maintain a record of names of files containing confidential information deemed to be price sensitive information and persons in charge of the same.

18. Ensure that files containing confidential information are kept secured.
19. Keep records of periods specified as 'Close period' and the 'Trading window'.
20. Ensure that the trading restrictions are strictly observed and all directors/officers/designated employees conduct all their dealings in the securities of the company only in a valid trading window and do not deal in the company's securities during the period when the trading window is closed.
21. Receive and maintain records of periodic and annual statement of holdings from directors/officers/designated employees and their dependent family members.
22. Ensure that the "Trading Window" is closed at the time of :
 - a) Declaration of financial results (quarterly, half-yearly and annual).
 - b) Declaration of dividends (interim and final).
 - c) Issue of securities by way of public/right/bonus etc.
 - d) Any Major expansion plans or execution of new projects.
 - e) Amalgamation, mergers, takeovers and buy-back.
 - f) Disposal of whole or substantially whole of the undertaking.
 - g) Any change in policies, plans or operations of the company.
23. Maintain a structured digital database of name(s) of persons and entities with whom unpublished price sensitive information are shared along with their PAN and other details.
24. Serve due notices to maintain confidentiality for every such person(s) with whom information are shared for legitimate purposes.
25. Educate the employees, board of directors regarding the provisions of the regulations and amendments from time to time for their better understanding and compliances.
26. Assist the board of directors to undertake enquiry or investigation in case of any suspected violation of the regulation and advising on taking appropriate disciplinary actions including transfer of all unlawful gain to the SEBI Investor Protection and Education Fund.
27. Place before the Chief Executive Officer/Partner or a committee notified by the organization/firm, as a Compliance Officer; on a monthly basis all the details of the dealing in the securities by designated employees/directors/partners of the organization/firm.

CHECKLISTS UNDER SEBI (PROHIBITION OF INSIDER TRADING) REGULATIONS 2015

- Checklists for KMP and other employees(including Company Secretary)
- Checklists for Board of Directors
- Checklists for PCS firms, advocates, auditors and practicing professionals.

A. CHECKLIST FOR COMPLAINEE OFFICER

As per Regulation 2(c) "compliance officer" means any senior officer, designated so and reporting to the board of directors or head of the organization in case board is not there, who is financially literate and is capable of appreciating requirements for legal and regulatory compliance under these regulations and **who shall be responsible for-**

- compliance of policies, procedures,
- maintenance of records,
- monitoring adherence to the rules for the preservation of unpublished price sensitive information,
- monitoring of trades, and

"financially literate" shall mean a person who has the ability to read and understand basic financial statements i.e. balance sheet, profit and loss account, and statement of cash flows.

- the implementation of the codes specified in these regulations.

under the overall supervision of the board of directors of the listed company or the head of an organization, as the case may be;

I. Compliance of polices and procedures

- (a) Whether the Company has formulated code of practices and procedures for fair disclosure of UPSI as per the principles set out in the regulations.
- (b) Whether the code of fair disclosure is published on the website of the company.
- (c) Whether the code of fair disclosure and amendments thereof has been intimated to the stock exchanges.
- (d) Whether the company has formulated code of conduct to regulate, monitor and report trading by its designated persons and immediate relatives of designated persons.
- (e) Whether the Board has designated the chief executive officer or managing director to formulate the code of conduct with their approval.
- (f) Whether the company has designated a compliance office to administer the code of conduct and other requirements.
- (g) It is advisable to train the employees on principles of fair disclosure and code of conduct.

II. Maintenance of records

- (a) Ensure that disclosures of trades by insiders are maintained for a minimum period of five years.

III. Monitoring UPSI

- (a) Identify the nature of information, whether it is an Unpublished Price Sensitive Information or Generally available information.
- (b) Designate a senior officer as Chief investor relations officer to deal with dissemination of information and disclosure of UPSI.
- (c) Ensure to handle the UPSI on need to know basis.
- (d) Do not share UPSI with analysts and research personnel.
- (e) Disseminate UPSI uniformly to avoid selective disclosure.
- (f) Identify the designated persons (Employees designated on the basis of their functional role) to monitor the use of UPSI.
- (g) Declaration from persons seeking pre-clearance that they are not in possession of UPSI.

IV. To Advise the Board on Minimum Standards for Code of Conduct.

V. To advise on designated persons who shall be governed by the code of conduct. Employees designated on the basis of their functional role (“designated persons**”) in the organisation shall be governed by an internal code of conduct governing dealing in securities.**

VI. To advise on mechanism for dissemination of information on need-to-know basis.

VII. To advise on the closure of trading window.

VIII. To advise on the format of applications of pre-clearance, reporting of trades etc.

IX. To maintain restricted list of securities which shall be used as the basis for approving/rejecting applications for pre-clearance.

X. To prescribe norms for Chinese wall procedures.

XI. To prescribe the time limit within which the trades are to be executed from the date of pre-clearance which should not be more than seven days.

XII. Trading plans.

- (a) Monitoring of Trading Plans.
- (b) Approval of Trading plans.

XIII. Intimation to stock exchanges

- (a) Intimation of Initial disclosures by Directors/KMP/Promoters/member of promoter group.
- (b) Intimation of continual disclosures by Promoter/member of promoter group/directors/designated persons (including KMP as designated person).
- (c) Intimation of disclosures by other connected persons.

B. CHECKLISTS FOR KMP AND OTHER EMPLOYEES (INCLUDING COMPANY SECRETARY)

- To make initial and continual disclosures as prescribed.

C. CHECKLISTS FOR BOARD OF DIRECTORS

- (a) To formulate Code of Fair disclosure.
- (b) To formulate Code of Conduct.
- (c) Communication of UPSI in the best interest of the Company relating to transaction as given in Regulation 3(3).
- (d) Obtaining non-disclosure agreement from parties to whom the UPSI is communicated as given in Regulation 3(4).
- (e) in consultation with the compliance officer, to specify the designated persons to be covered by such code on the basis of their role and function in the organisation.
- (f) To fix thresholds for pre-clearance.
- (g) To prescribe format for application for pre-clearance, reporting of trades executed, reporting of decisions not to trade after securing pre-clearance, recording of reasons for such decisions and for reporting level of holdings in securities at such intervals as may be determined as being necessary to monitor compliance with these regulations.

RECENT JUDGEMENTS AND DEVELOPMENTS

- During the year 2018 it came to the knowledge of the SEBI that several unpublished price sensitive information were circulated in private social media networking groups about certain companies ahead of their official announcements to the respective stock exchanges. This calls for immediate change in ongoing PIT Regulations with newer requirements like Policy for leak of unpublished price sensitive information, maintaining structure digital database of persons with whom information are shared, reward and incentive system for informants etc.
- In the matter of Insider Trading in the Scrip of **Deep Industries Ltd.**, the SEBI during the investigation goes beyond the prescribed definition of Connected Persons under the regulation and establishes relationships and nexus of persons, leak of information on the basis of social media network websites and KYC documents with intermediaries of suspected persons and entities involved in the insider trading.

MAJOR CASE STUDIES ON INSIDER TRADING**A Hindustan Lever Ltd. Vs. SEBI****Facts of the Case:**

- **Hindustan Lever Ltd. (HLL) purchased 8 lakh shares of Brooke Bond India Ltd. (BBIL) from UTI** two weeks prior to the public announcement of the merger of the two companies,
- SEBI, suspecting insider trading, conducted inquiries & issued a show cause notice against HLL's Chairman, all executive directors & company secretary alleging them with the charge of insider trading,

- SEBI also awarded compensation to be paid by HLL to UTI,
- HLL files an appeal to the appellate authority against SEBI order of imposition of penalty, pleading that an information to be UPSI should fulfill two major criteria as per the definition provided in the Insider Trading Regulations which are:
 - (a) information must not be generally known or published by the company, and
 - (b) if published or known, is likely to materially affect the price of securities of that company in the market (i.e. it should be a price sensitive information).
- (HLL further adds that since the possibility of merger of the two companies appeared to have been generally speculated about & was probably already discounted by the market, this information (purchase of 8 lakh shares of BBIL) was not likely to have significantly impacted on the price at which the transaction between HLL & UTI concluded which was further strongly evidenced by the fact that UTI continued to sell the shares of BBIL in the market, after the merger, at prices close to the price at which they had sold shares to HLL.

Decision of the Case:

In its judgment, Appellate Authority decided that on the basis of above facts, it is not a sufficient ground to impose penalty on HLL as the information about the merger of two companies was a generally known (speculated about) information & further also did not affected the prices of securities of BBIL, materially (i.e. **it was not a price sensitive information**).

B. Dilip Pendse vs. SEBI

Facts of the Case:

- Tata Finance Ltd. (TFL), a listed public company had a wholly owned subsidiary “Nishkalpa”,
- Nishkalpa incurred huge losses which was bound to affect the balance sheet of TFL, significantly,
- Well being aware of this fact, Mr.Dilip Phendse, MD of the company passed this information to his wife, who in turn sold off all her & her father-in-law’s holdings in TFL, including all other shares held by them in other group companies, at a significant gain, before this information became public,
- Post disclosure of financial statements & the above information becoming public, there was a considerable fall in the market price of shares of TFL because of which the general investors of TFL suffered losses.

Decision of the Case:

SEBI found Mr. Dilip Phendse guilty of offence of Insider Trading in the above case.

LESSON ROUND-UP

- To curb insider trading SEBI formulated SEBI (Prohibition of Insider Trading) Regulations, 2015 and which prescribes code of fair disclosure and conduct to be followed by listed companies and entities connected with them.
- The Insider Trading Regulations comprises of five chapters and five schedules encompassing the various regulations relating to Insider Trading.
- Insider means and includes deemed to be a connected person. The definition of deemed to be a connected person is inclusive and very elaborate.
- The regulations not only seeks to curb dealing in securities, they also seek to curb communicating or counseling about securities by the insiders.
- The regulations provide for initial as well as continual disclosures by members of the company by the directors/ employees/ designated employees/promoter/promoter group at regular interval.

GLOSSARY

Book Closure

The periodic closure of the Register of Members and Transfer Books of the company, to take a record of the shareholders to determine their entitlement to dividends or to bonus or right shares or any other rights pertaining to shares.

Chinese Walls

Artificial barriers to the flow of information set up in large firms to prevent the movement of sensitive information between departments.

Contra Trade

Contra trading involves buying and selling the same shares without paying for them.

Interim

A dividend payment made during the course of a company's financial year.

Dividend

Dividend, unlike the final dividend, does not have to be agreed in a general meeting.

Punitive

It implies involving or inflicting punishment.

TEST YOURSELF

(These are meant for recapitulation only. Answer to these questions are not to be submitted for evaluation.)

1. All designated persons are insiders, but all insiders are not designated persons. Do you agree ?
2. The compliance officer wants to get his trading plans approved. What is the process of getting the approval?
3. Pre-approved trading plans does not require pre-clearance. Elucidate the statement. .
4. The onus is on the insider to prove the innocence of use of unpublished price sensitive information. Explain the statement.
5. Attempt the following:
 - a. Insider Trading normally means trading in shares of a company by the persons who are in the management of the company or close to them on the basis of price sensitive information which they possess but not others. In light of this, state whether the following information is price sensitive:
 - i. The CEO of the company met with an accident and has been hospitalized,
 - ii. Intended declaration of bonus issue,
 - iii. Increase in Repo rate by RBI by 15 basis point,
 - iv. Company is planning for diversification through opening of another plant.
 - b. Sandy was the Finance Manager of Quick Works Ltd. a public listed company. He was alleged in the case of insider trading though however he left the company 110 days prior to the allegation imposed on him. He contended that he cannot be treated as the "connected person" as he has left the organization prior to the act of insider trading. Was his contention valid? Answer with reasons, in brief.

(Practical Questions can be picked from last three years question papers)

LIST OF FURTHER READINGS

- SEBI Manual
- SEBI Circulars
- SEBI Notifications
- SEBI Orders

OTHER REFERENCES (Including Websites/Video Links)

www.sebi.gov.in
www.icsi.edu
www.nseindia.com
www.bseindia.com
www.nsdl.co.in
www.cdslindia.com
www.sat.gov.in

Lesson 12

Mutual Funds

Key Concepts One Should Know

- Mutual Fund
- Asset Management Company
- Sponsor
- Trustees
- Close-Ended Scheme
- Open-Ended Scheme
- Exchange Traded Fund
- Fund of Funds Scheme
- Money Market Mutual Fund
- Real Estate Mutual Fund Scheme
- Unit
- Unit Holder
- Offer Document

Learning Objectives

To understand:

- Meaning of Mutual Fund
- The trend of mutual funds in India over a period of time
- Structure of a Mutual Fund
- Various schemes of mutual funds
- Advantages and risk involved in Mutual Fund
- SEBI laws governing mutual

Regulatory Framework

- SEBI (Mutual Funds) Regulations, 1996

Lesson Outline

- Introduction
- Structure of a Mutual Fund
- Overview of Mutual Funds Industry in India
- Types of Mutual Funds
- Schemes according to Investment Objective
- Advantages of Mutual Funds
- Risks involved in Mutual Funds
- Key Players in Mutual Fund
- Mutual Fund Terminology
- Net Asset Value
- Expense Ratio
- Holding Period Return
- Evaluating Performance of Mutual Fund
- SEBI (Mutual Fund) Regulations, 1996 – Overview
- Registration of Mutual Funds
- Constitution and Management of Asset Management Company and Custodian
- Schemes of Mutual Fund
- Code of Conduct of Mutual Funds
- Advertisement Code
- Restriction on Investment by Mutual Fund
- Pricing of Units of Mutual Fund
- Facilitating Transaction in Mutual Fund Schemes through the Stock Exchange Infrastructure
- Power to relax strict enforcement of the Regulations
- SEBI (Listing Obligations & Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2015
- LESSON ROUND-UP
- GLOSSARY
- TEST YOURSELF
- LIST OF FURTHER READINGS
- OTHER REFERENCES

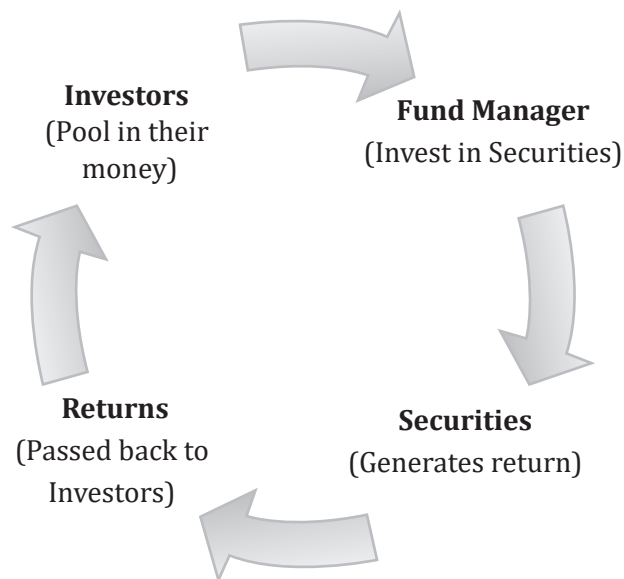
INTRODUCTION

As our Economy continues to grow there is a huge amount of wealth creating opportunities surfacing everywhere. A Mutual fund is a professionally managed form of collective investment that pools money from many investors and invest in stocks, bonds, short-term money market instruments and other securities.

The major reason investor chooses mutual funds are professional and management diversification. The investors should compare the risks and expected yields after adjustment of tax on various instruments while taking investment decisions.

SEBI (Mutual Fund) Regulations, 1996, define “**mutual fund**” as a fund established in the form of a trust to raise monies through the sale of units to the public or a section of the public under one or more schemes for investing in securities, money market instruments, gold or gold related instruments, real estate assets and such other assets as specified by the SEBI.

Mutual Funds are a vehicle that collects money from investors to buy securities. These investors have a common objective, and this pool of money is advised by the fund manager who decides how to invest the money. With good fund management, the Mutual Fund Manager (or Portfolio Manager) generates returns for the investors, which are passed back to investors. Diversification reduces the risk because all stocks may not move in the same direction in the same proportion at the same time. The mutual funds normally come out with a number of schemes with different investment objectives which are launched from time to time. A mutual fund is required to be registered with SEBI before it can collect funds from public.



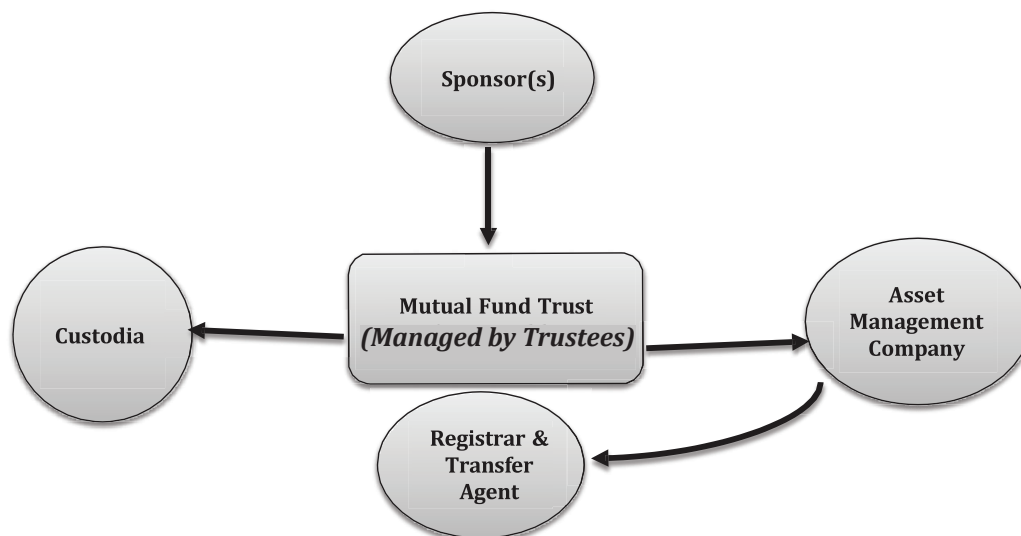
What is a mutual fund?

As the two words, Mutual connotes getting together and Fund connotes money. Hence by definition, a Mutual Fund is a vehicle for investing money for investors with a common objective.

A Mutual Fund is a trust that collects money from investors who share a common financial goal, and invest the proceeds in different asset classes, as defined by the investment objective. Simply put, mutual fund is a financial intermediary, set up with an objective to professionally manage the money pooled from the investors at large. By pooling money together in a mutual fund, investors can enjoy economies of scale and can purchase stocks or bonds at a much lower trading costs compared to direct investing in capital markets. The other advantages are diversification, stock and bond selection by experts, low costs, convenience and flexibility.

1. **Sponsor** - Sponsor is the principal body, who brings the capital as per the guideline issued by SEBI to start a mutual fund
2. **Trust & Trustee** - Trust is created by sponsor and trustees are appointed to manage the operations of a trust. The trustees' job is to ensure that all the funds are managed as per the defined objective and investors' interest is protected.
3. **Asset Management Company (AMC)** - Trustee appoints AMC to manage the funds of the investors and, in return, get the fee to manage the fund.
4. **Custodian** - Custodian job is to the safekeeping of the investors' fund and securities and to ensure that it would be used for intended purpose only.
5. **Registrar and Transfer Agent (RTA)** - RTAs job is to manage the backend operation of the mutual fund and managing investors' transaction request and other related services.

Mutual Fund Structure



Mutual Fund Structure - Example

Description	Entity
Mutual Fund Trust	IDBI Mutual Fund
Sponsor	IDBI Bank Limited
Trustee	IDBI MF Trustee Company Limited
Asset Management Company	IDBI Asset Management Limited
Registrar	Karvy Computershare Private Limited
Custodian	Stock Holding Corporation of India Limited The Bank of Nova Scotia

Regulator & Industry Body

Regulator: Securities and Exchange Board of India (SEBI)

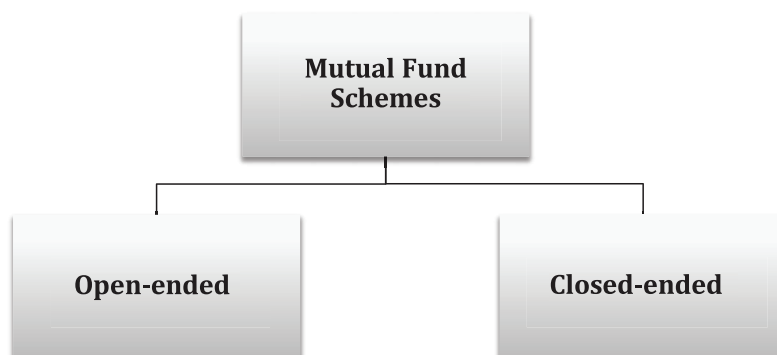
- Regulates mutual funds, custodians and registrars & transfer agents
- The applicable guidelines for mutual funds are set out in SEBI (Mutual Funds) Regulations, 1996; updated periodically

Industry Body: Association of Mutual Funds in India (AMFI)

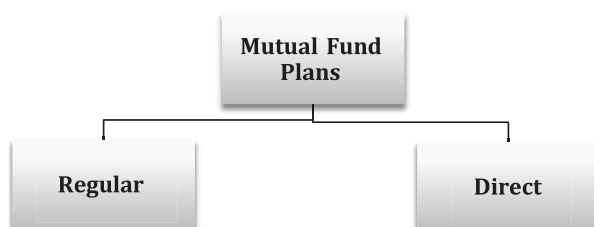
- As of now, all 45 AMCs are members of AMFI (Source: www.amfiindia.com)
- Recommends and promotes best business practices and code of conduct
- Disseminates information and carries out studies/research on mutual fund industry

OVERVIEW OF MUTUAL FUNDS INDUSTRY IN INDIA

- The mutual fund industry in India began in 1963 with the formation of the Unit Trust of India (UTI) as an initiative of the Government of India and the Reserve Bank of India.
- Much later, in 1987, SBI Mutual Fund became the first non-UTI mutual fund in India.
- Subsequently, the year 1993 heralded a new era in the mutual fund industry. This was marked by the entry of private companies in the sector. Franklin Templeton (erstwhile Kothari Pioneer) was the first of its kind.
- After the Securities and Exchange Board of India (SEBI) Act was passed in 1992, the SEBI Mutual Fund Regulations came into being in 1996.
- As the industry expanded, a non-profit organization, the Association of Mutual Funds in India (AMFI), was established on 1995. Its objective is to promote healthy and ethical marketing practices in the Indian mutual fund Industry. SEBI has made AMFI certification mandatory for all those engaged in selling or marketing mutual fund products.

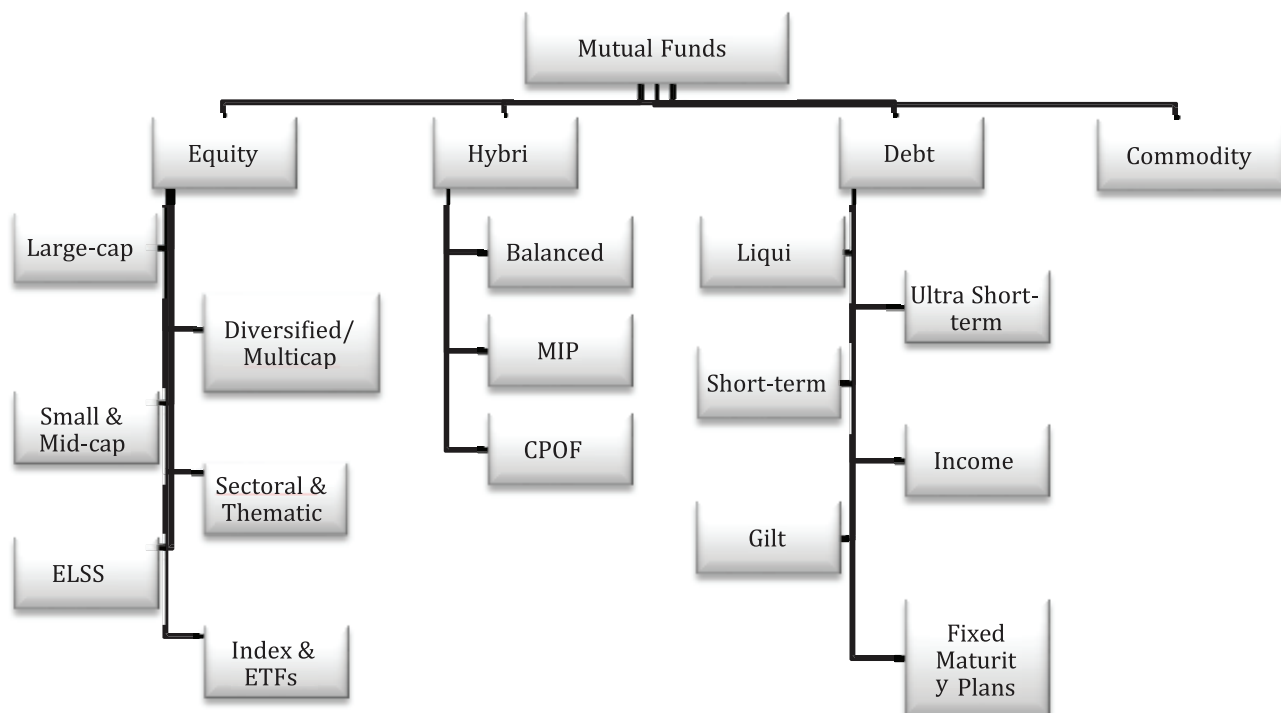
TYPES OF MUTUAL FUNDS**Types of Mutual Funds**

Open Ended	Close Ended
• Can be purchased on any transaction day	• Can be purchased only during NFO
• Can be redeemed on any transaction day [Except when units are locked-in in the case of Equity-Linked Savings Scheme (ELSS) funds]	• Can be redeemed only at maturity
• High liquidity	• Low on liquidity

Types of Mutual Fund Plans

Regular Plans	Direct Plans
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Sold through a distributor 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Sold directly by the Asset Management Company (AMC)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Higher Expense Ratio (Due to commissions paid to distributor) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Lower Expense Ratio (No commission paid to distributor)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Potentially lower returns to the investor (Due to higher expenses) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Potentially higher returns (Due to lower expenses)

Categories of Mutual Funds



SCHEMES ACCORDING TO INVESTMENT OBJECTIVE

Besides these, there are other types of mutual funds also to meet the investment needs of several groups of investors. Some of them include the following:

- Income Oriented Schemes:** The fund primarily offer fixed income to investors. Naturally enough, the main securities in which investments are made by such funds are the fixed income yielding ones like bonds, corporate debentures, Government securities and money market instruments, etc.
- Growth Oriented Schemes:** These funds offer growth potentialities associated with investment in capital market namely: (i) high source of income by way of dividend and (ii) rapid capital appreciation, both from holding of good quality scrips. These funds, with a view to satisfying the growth needs of investors, primarily concentrate on the low risk and high yielding spectrum of equity scrips of the corporate sector.
- Hybrid Schemes:** These funds cater to both the investment needs of the prospective investors – namely fixed income as well as growth orientation. Therefore, investment targets of these mutual funds are judicious mix of both the fixed income securities like bonds and debentures and also sound equity scrips. In fact, these funds utilise the concept of balanced investment management. These funds are, thus, also known as “balanced funds”.
- High Growth Schemes:** As the nomenclature depicts, these funds primarily invest in high risk and high return volatile securities in the market and induce the investors with a high degree of capital appreciation.

- (e) **Capital Protection Oriented Scheme:** It is a scheme which protects the capital invested in the mutual fund through suitable orientation of its portfolio structure.
- (f) **Tax Saving Schemes:** These schemes offer tax rebates to the investors under tax laws as prescribed from time to time. This is made possible because the Government offers tax incentive for investment in specified avenues. For example, Equity Linked Saving Schemes (ELSS) and pensions schemes.
- (g) **Special Schemes:** This category includes index schemes that attempt to replicate the performance of particular index such as the BSE, Sensex or the NSE-50 or industry specific schemes (which invest in specific industries) or sectoral schemes (which invest exclusively in segment such as 'A' Group or initial public offering). Index fund schemes are ideal for investors who are satisfied with a return approximately equal to that of an index. Sectoral fund schemes are ideal for investors who have already decided to invest in particular sector or segment.
- (h) **Real Estate Funds:** These are close ended mutual funds which invest predominantly in real estate and properties.
- (i) **Off-shore Funds:** Such funds invest in securities of foreign companies with RBI permission.
- (j) **Leverage Funds:** Such funds, also known as borrowed funds, increase the size and value of portfolio and offer benefits to members from out of the excess of gains over cost of borrowed funds. They tend to indulge in speculative trading and risky investments.
- (k) **Hedge Funds:** They employ their funds for speculative trading, i.e. for buying shares whose prices are likely to rise and for selling shares whose prices are likely to fall.
- (l) **Fund of Funds:** They invest only in units of other mutual funds. Such funds do not operate at present in India.
- (m) **New Direction Funds:** They invest in companies engaged in scientific and technological research such as birth control, anti-pollution, oceanography etc.
- (n) **Exchange Trade Funds (ETFs)** are a new variety of mutual funds that first introduced in 1993. ETFs are sometimes described as mere "tax efficient" than traditional equity mutual funds, since in recent years, some large ETFs have made smaller distribution of realized and taxable capital gains than most mutual funds.
- (o) **Money Market Mutual Funds:** These funds invest in short- term debt securities in the money market like certificates of deposits, commercial papers, government treasury bills etc. Owing to their large size, the funds normally get a higher yield on such short term investments than an individual investor.
- (p) **Infrastructure Debt Fund:** They invest primarily in the debt securities or securitized debt investment of infrastructure companies.

ADVANTAGES OF MUTUAL FUNDS

The advantages of investing in a mutual fund are:

1. **Professional Management:** Investors avail the services of experienced and skilled professionals who are backed by a dedicated investment research team which analyses the performance and prospects of companies and selects suitable investments to achieve the objectives of the scheme.
2. **Diversification:** Mutual funds invest in a number of companies across a broad cross-section of industries and sectors. This diversification reduces the risk because seldom do all stocks decline at the same time and in the same proportion. Investors achieve this diversification through a Mutual Fund with far less money than one can do on his own.
3. **Convenient Administration:** Investing in a mutual fund reduces paper work and helps investors to avoid many problems such as bad deliveries, delayed payments and unnecessary follow up with brokers and companies. Mutual funds save investors time and make investing easy and convenient.
4. **Return Potential:** Over a medium to long term, Mutual funds have the potential to provide a higher return as they invest in a diversified basket of selected securities.
5. **Low Costs:** Mutual funds are a relatively less expensive way to invest compared to directly investing in the capital markets because the benefits of scale in brokerage, custodial and other fees translate into lower costs for investors.

6. **Liquidity:** In open ended schemes, investors can get their money back promptly at net asset value related prices from the mutual fund itself. With close ended schemes, investors can sell their units on a stock exchange at the prevailing market price or avail of the facility of direct repurchase at net asset value (NAV) related prices which some close ended and interval schemes offer periodically or offer it for redemption to the fund on the date of maturity.
7. **Transparency:** Investors get regular information on the value of their investment in addition to disclosure on the specific investments made by scheme, the proportion invested in each class of assets and the fund manager's investment strategy and outlook.

RISKS INVOLVED IN MUTUAL FUNDS

The fundamental reason which makes mutual fund risky lies in the fact that it puts money in a variety of investment instruments – debt, equity and corporate bonds, among others. Since the prices of these investment instruments tend to fluctuate in response to several factors, investors may be subjected to loss. In a broader sense, mutual fund risk can be categorized as – systematic risk and unsystematic risk

Types of Risks	Cause of Risk
Volatility risk	Typically, equity-based funds invest in the shares of companies that are listed on stock exchanges. The value of such funds is based on companies' performance, which often gets affected due to the prevalent microeconomic factors.
Credit risk	Credit risk in mutual fund investment often results from a situation, wherein, the issuer of the scheme fails to pay the promised interest. In case of debt funds, typically, fund managers include investment-grade securities with high credit ratings.
Liquidity risk	Mutual funds with a long-term and rigid lock-in period like ELSS often come with liquidity risk. Such a risk signifies that investors often find it challenging to redeem their investments without incurring a loss.
Concentrated risk	This mutual fund risk is also prevalent among investors. It can be described as the situation when investors tend to put all their money into a single investment scheme or in one sector. For instance, investing entirely in just one company's stocks often bears a substantial risk of losing capital if caught amidst bad market situations.
Inflation risk	It can be best described as the risk of losing one's purchasing power, mainly due to the rising inflation rate. Typically, investors are exposed to the impact of this risk when the rate of returns earned on investments fails to keep up with the increasing inflationary rate.

Also, Mutual funds may face the following risks, leading to non-satisfactory performance:

1. Excessive diversification of portfolio, losing focus on the securities of the key segments.
2. Too much concentration on blue-chip securities.
3. Necessity to effect high turnover through liquidation of portfolio resulting in large payments of brokerage and commission.
4. Poor planning of investment returns.
5. Unresearched forecast on income, profits and Government policies.
6. Fund managers being unaccountable for poor results.
7. Failure to identify clearly the risk of the scheme as distinct from risk of the market.
8. Under performance in comparison to peers.

KEY PLAYERS IN MUTUAL FUND

A mutual fund is a professionally-managed investment scheme, usually run by an asset management company that brings together a group of people and invests their money in stocks, bonds and other securities. It is formed by trust body.

There are five principal constituents and three market intermediaries in the formation and functioning of mutual fund:

Five principal constituents

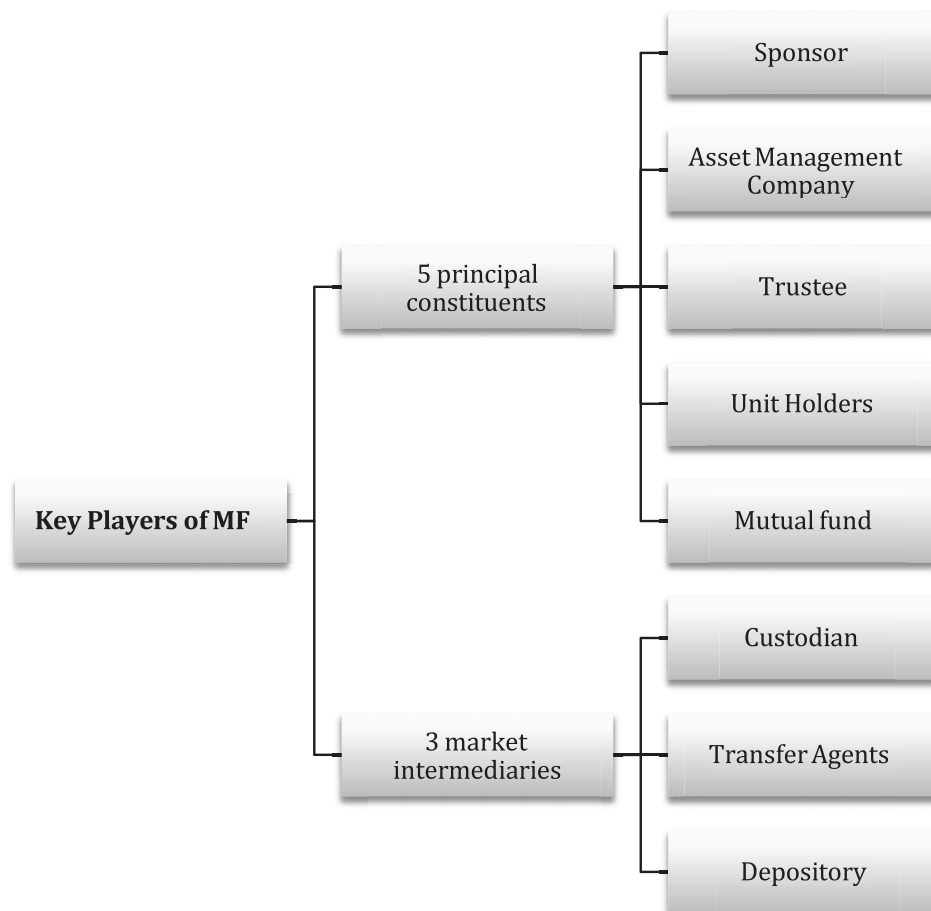
- **Sponsor**

A sponsor is an *influential investor* who creates demand for a security because of their positive outlook on it. The sponsor brings in capital and creates a mutual fund trust and sets up the AMC. The sponsor makes an application for registration of the mutual fund and contributes at least 40% of the **net worth** of the AMC.

- **Asset Management Company**

An asset management company (AMC) is a company that invests its *clients' pooled funds* into securities that match declared *financial objectives*. Asset management companies provide investors with more *diversification* and *investing options* than they would have themselves. AMCs manage mutual funds, hedge funds and pension plans, these companies earn income by charging *service fees* or commissions to their clients.

The sponsor or, if so authorised by the trust deed, the trustee, shall appoint an asset management company, which has been approved by the SEBI. The appointment of an asset management company can be terminated by majority of the trustees or by seventy-five per cent of the unit holders of the scheme. Any change in the appointment of the asset management company shall be subject to prior approval of the SEBI and the unitholders.



- **Trustee**

A trustee is a person or firm that holds and administers property or assets for the benefit of a **third party**. A trustee may be appointed for a wide variety of purposes, such as in case of bankruptcy, for a charity, for a trust fund or for certain types of retirement plans or pensions.

- **Unit Holders**

A unitholder is an investor who owns the **units issued** by a trust, like a real estate investment trust or a master limited partnership (MLP). The securities issued by trusts/MF are called **units**, and investors in units are called unitholders. The unit in turn reflect share of the investor in the Net Assets of the fund.

- **Mutual fund**

A mutual fund established under the Indian Trust Act to raise money through, the **sale of units** to the public for investing in the **capital market**. The funds thus collected as per the directions of asset management company for invested. The mutual fund has to be SEBI registered.

Three market intermediaries are:

- **Custodian**

A custodian is a person who carries on the business of providing custodial services to the client. The custodian keeps the custody of the securities of the client. The custodian also provides incidental services such as maintaining the accounts of securities of the client, collecting the benefits or rights accruing to the client in respect of securities.

Every custodian should have adequate facilities, sufficient capital and financial strength to manage the custodial services. The SEBI (Custodian of Securities) Regulations, 1996 prescribe the roles and responsibilities of the custodians.

According to the SEBI the roles and responsibilities of the custodians are to Administrate and protect the assets of the clients; Open a separate custody account and deposit account in the name of each client; Record assets; and Conduct registration of securities.

- **Transfer Agents**

A transfer agent is a person who has been granted a Certificate of Registration to conduct the business of transfer agent under the SEBI (Registrars to an Issue and Share Transfer Agents) Regulations, 1993. Transfer agents' services include issue and redemption of mutual fund units, preparation of transfer documents and maintenance of updated investment records. They also record transfer of units between investors where depository does not function. They also facilitate investors to get customized reports.

- **Depository**

A depository facilitates the smooth **flow of trading** and ensure the investor's about their investment in securities.

Mutual Fund Terminology

A . Offer Document

- AMC raises money in new schemes through New Fund Offer (NFO)
- Offer document contains key details about the NFO – open and close dates, scheme objective, nature of the scheme, etc.
- Filed with SEBI

Two parts:

1. **Scheme Information Document (SID)** - A document that contains the details of the scheme. SID has to be updated every year

Key Contents:

- Scheme name on the cover page, along with scheme structure (open / closed-ended) and expected scheme nature (equity / debt / balanced / liquid / ETF)
 - Highlights of the scheme
 - Risk factors
 - o Standard
 - o Scheme specific
 - Due diligence certificate issued by the AMC
 - Fees and expenses
 - Rights of unit holders
 - Penalties, litigations, etc.
2. **Statement of Additional Information** - A document that contains statutory information about the fund house offering the scheme. SAI has to be updated the end of every quarter

Key Contents:

- Information about sponsor, mutual fund, trustees, custodian and registrar & transfer agents
- Condensed financial information for schemes launched in the last three financial years
- Information on how to apply
- Rights of unit holders
- Details of the fund managers
- Tax, legal and other general information

B. Key Information Memorandum (KIM)

- Essentially a summary of SID & SAI
- As per SEBI regulations, every application form should be accompanied by the KIM
- The KIM has to be updated at least once a year

Contents

- Name of the AMC, Mutual Fund Trust, Trustee, Fund Manager(s) and Scheme details
- Open and close dates of the issue
- Issue price of the scheme
- Plans and options available in the scheme
- Risk profile of the scheme
- Benchmark
- Dividend policy
- Performance of the scheme and benchmark over last 1, 3, 5 years and since inception
- Loads and expenses
- Contact information and registrars

C. Fact Sheets

Usually provided on a monthly basis by AMCs

Contains the following:

- NAV and AUM
- Expense ratio, exit loads, average maturity, YTM, modified duration
- Benchmark & Fund manager details
- Past performance
- Scheme's allocation & portfolios
- Style box
- Other scheme attributes – like risk category, minimum investment amount, scheme objective, etc.

D. Assets under Management (AUM)**What is AUM?**

It is the total market value of the assets managed by a mutual fund scheme as on a particular date

Periodic AUM Available

- Month-end
- Quarterly average

E. Know Your Client (KYC)**What is KYC?**

- A one-time process made mandatory to invest in mutual funds
- Key details required: PAN, Address proof, contact details, occupation and income details

Where can it be done?

- CDSL Ventures Limited KRA
- CAMS KRA
- Karvy KRA
- NDML KRA (wholly owned subsidiary of NSDL)
- DOTEX KRA (wholly owned subsidiary of NSE)

F. Foreign Account Tax Compliance Act (FATCA)**What is FATCA?**

- Requires that all financial institutions (including Indian mutual funds) need to report financial transactions of US persons and entities in which US persons hold a substantial ownership.
- Enacted to prevent tax evasion through foreign investments.
- Key details required: Country of birth, Country of citizenship, country of tax residence, TIN from such country.
- Currently made mandatory for all investors (existing and new) in Indian mutual funds.
- For non-individual investors, Ultimate Beneficial Ownership (UBO) details have to be provided.

G. Modes of Holding

- Single
- Either or Survivor
 - o Signature of any of the applicants is sufficient for making transactions

- Joint
 - o Signature of all the applicants is required for making transactions

H. Nomination

- Up to 3 nominees can be registered for a folio.
- Units get transferred to the nominees (in the proportion specified) in case of the investor's demise.
- Nomination can be updated as and when required by the investor.
- A minor can also be nominated, provided the guardian is specified.
- If nomination is not registered, in case of death of the investor, the legal heir has to produce documents such as Will, Legal Heir Certificate, No-Objection Certificate from other legal heirs, etc.

Systematic Investment Plan (SIP) in Mutual Fund

An SIP allows an investor to invest a fixed amount regularly in a mutual fund scheme, typically an equity mutual fund scheme. An SIP helps investor to stagger the investments in equity mutual fund schemes over a period. Most mutual fund advisors do not recommend investing a lumpsum in equity mutual funds.

NET ASSET VALUE

The performance of a particular scheme of a mutual fund is denoted by Net Asset Value (NAV). In simple words, NAV is the market value of the securities held by the scheme.

Mutual funds invest the money collected from investors in securities markets. Since market value of securities changes every day, NAV of a scheme also varies on day to day basis.

The NAV per unit is the market value of securities of a scheme divided by the total number of units of the scheme on any particular date.

For example, if the market value of securities of a mutual fund scheme is INR 200 lakh and the mutual fund has issued 10 lakh units of INR 10 each to the investors, then the NAV per unit of the fund is INR 20 (i.e. 200 lakh/10 lakh). NAV is required to be disclosed by the mutual funds on a daily basis.

Unlike stocks (where the price is driven by the market and changes from minute-to-minute), mutual funds don't declare NAVs through the day. Instead, NAVs of all mutual fund schemes are declared at the end of the trading day after markets are closed, in accordance with SEBI Mutual Fund Regulations. Further, as per SEBI Mutual Fund Regulations, for all mutual fund schemes, other than liquid fund schemes, the mutual fund Units are allotted only at prospective NAV, i.e., the NAV that would be declared at the end of the day, based on the closing market value of the securities held in the respective schemes.

How is it calculated?

$$\text{Net Asset Value} = \frac{\text{Net Asset of the Scheme}}{\text{Number of units outstanding}}$$

Net Asset of the Scheme = Market value of investments + Receivables + other accrued income + other assets – Accrued Expenses – Other Payables – Other Liabilities

Net Asset Value (NAV) – Cut-off Timeline

Type of Transaction	Before/ After	Cut-off Time	Applicable NAV
Equity-oriented & Debt funds (except liquid funds)			
Purchase & Switch-in (value < Rs.2 lakhs)	3 pm	Before After	Same day NAV Next business day NAV
Purchase & Switch-in (value > Rs.2 lakhs)	3 pm	Before After	NAV of the business day on which funds are available for utilization

Redemption & Switch-out	3 pm	Before After	Same day NAV Next business day NAV
Liquid Funds			
Purchase & Switch-in	2 pm	Before After	Previous day NAV if funds are realized NAV of the day previous to the funds realized
Redemption & Switch-out	3 pm	Before After	NAV of the day immediately preceding the next business day NAV of the day preceding the second business day from submission

Illustration:

1. Name of the Scheme	XYZ
Size of the Scheme	Rs.100 Lacs
Face Value of the Share	Rs.10
Number of the outstanding shares	10 Lacs
Market value of the fund's investments Receivables	Rs.180 Lacs
Accrued Income	Rs.1 lakhs
Receivables	Rs.1 lakhs
Liabilities	Rs.50,000
Accrued expenses	Rs.50,000
Find NAV per unit?	

Solution

NAV per unit = (Investment + Recoverable + Accrued Income – Liabilities – Accrued exp)/No of units (mutual fund)

$$= (180 \text{ lacs} + 1 \text{ lacs} + 1 - 0.50 \text{ lacs} - 0.50 \text{ lacs})/10 \text{ Lacs}$$

NAV = Rs.18.10 per unit

2. ABC mutual Fund has the following assets in scheme XYZ at the close business on 31st March, 2021.

Company	No. of Shares	Market Price Per Share
N Ltd	25000	Rs 20
D Ltd	35000	Rs 300
S Ltd	29000	Rs 380
C Ltd	40000	Rs 500

The total number of units of scheme XYZ are 10 Lakh. The Scheme XYZ has accrued expenses of Rs. 2,50,000 and other Liabilities of Rs 2,00,000. Calculate the NAV per unit of the scheme XYZ

Solution

Company	No. of Shares	Market Price Per Share	Value of Assets/ Liabilities
N Ltd	25000	Rs. 20	500000
D Ltd	35000	Rs. 300	10500000

S Ltd	29000	Rs. 380	11020000
C Ltd	40000	Rs. 500	20000000

Accrued Expenses	(250000)
Liabilities	(200000)
Net Assets	41570000
No. of Units	1000000
NAV	41.57

3. The redemption price of mutual fund unit is ₹ 48 while the front end load and back end load charges are 2% and 3% respectively. Compute:

- NAV per unit
- Public offer price of the unit.

Solution:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Redemption Price} &= \text{NAV} \\
 &\quad (1 + \text{Back End Load}) \\
 48 &= \text{NAV} \\
 &\quad (1 + 0.03) \\
 &= 48 \times 1.03 \\
 \text{NAV} &= ₹ 49.44
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Public Offer Price} &= \text{NAV} \\
 &\quad (1 - \text{Front End Load}) \\
 &= 49.44 \\
 &\quad (1 - 0.02) \\
 &= 49.44 \\
 &\quad 0.98 \\
 \text{Public Offer Price} &= ₹ 50.45
 \end{aligned}$$

EXPENSE RATIO

- The fees charged by the scheme to manage investors' money.

What does it contain?

- Fees paid to service providers like trustees, Registrar & Transfer Agents, Custodian, Auditor, etc.
- Asset management expenses
- Commissions paid to distributors
- Other selling expenses including advertising expenses
- Expenses on investor communication, account statements, dividend / redemption cheques / warrants
- Listing fees and Depository fees
- Service tax

Under SEBI (Mutual Funds) Regulations, 1996, Mutual Funds are permitted to incur / charge certain operating expenses for managing a mutual fund scheme – such as sales & marketing / advertising expenses, administrative expenses, transaction costs, investment management fees, registrar fees, custodian fees, audit fees – as a percentage of the fund's daily net assets.

This is commonly referred to as 'Expense Ratio'. In short, Expense ratio is the cost of running and managing a mutual fund which is charged to the scheme. All expenses incurred by a Mutual Fund, AMC will have to be managed within the limits specified under Regulation 52(6) & (6A) of the SEBI Mutual Funds Regulations.

The expense ratio is calculated as a percentage of the Scheme's average Net Asset Value (NAV). The daily NAV of a mutual fund is disclosed after deducting the expenses. Thus, the expense ratio has a direct bearing on a scheme's NAV – the lower the expense ratio of a scheme, the higher the NAV.

HOLDING PERIOD RETURN

Holding period return is the total return received from holding an asset or portfolio of assets over a period of time, generally expressed as a percentage. Holding period return is calculated on the basis of total returns from the asset or portfolio – i.e. income plus changes in value. It is particularly useful for comparing returns between investments held for different periods of time.

Calculation of HPR

$$\text{HPR} = \frac{(\text{Income} + (\text{end of period value} - \text{original value}))}{\text{Original Value}} \times 100$$

Illustration : 2 Calculate HPR for a unit holder who bought a unit at ₹ 17.60 and received a dividend of ₹ 2 per unit during the period. Face value of the unit is ₹ 10 and current unit price is ₹ 19.875

$$\text{HPR} = \frac{\text{Dividend} + (\text{NAV at present} - \text{NAV at purchase})}{\text{NAV at purchase}} \times 100$$

$$= \frac{2 + (19.875 - 17.60)}{17.60} \times 100$$

$$\text{HPR} = 24.29\%$$

EVALUATING PERFORMANCE OF MUTUAL FUND

While looking at a mutual fund scheme's performance, one must not be led by the scheme's return in isolation. A scheme may have generated 10% annualised return in the last couple of years. But then, even the market indices would have gone up in similar way during the same period. Under-performance in a falling market, i.e. when the NAV of the scheme falls more than its benchmark (or the market), is the time when one must review his/her investment.

One must compare the scheme's return as against its benchmark return. It is better to be rid of investment in a scheme that consistently under-performs as compared to its benchmark over a period of time, from one's portfolio. It is important to identify under-performers over the longer time horizon (as also out-performers).

In addition, one may also consider evaluating the 'category average returns' as well. Even if a scheme has outperformed its benchmark by a decent margin, there could be better performers in the peer group. The category average returns will reveal how good (or bad) is one's investment is against its peers which help in deciding whether it is time shift the investment to better performers.

One may be holding a too little or too much-diversified portfolio. Even the expense ratio of some of the schemes that one could be holding may be high compared to others within the same category.

SEBI (MUTUAL FUNDS) REGULATIONS, 1996 – OVERVIEW

SEBI (Mutual Fund) Regulations, 1996 has been notified on December 09, 1996 with objective to improve the working and regulation of the mutual fund industry, so that mutual funds could provide a better performance and service to all categories of investors and offer a range of innovative products in a competitive manner to match investor needs and preferences across various investor segments. SEBI (Mutual Funds) Regulations, 1996 deals with 10 Chapters and 12 schedules.

Important Definitions

"Mutual Fund" means a fund established in the form of a trust to raise monies through the sale of units to the public or a section of the public under one or more schemes for investing in securities, money market instruments, gold or gold related instruments, real estate assets and such other assets and instruments as may be specified by the Board from time to time:

Provided that infrastructure debt fund schemes may raise monies through private placement of units, subject to conditions specified in these regulations;

Provided further that mutual fund schemes investing in exchange traded commodity derivatives may hold the underlying goods in case of physical settlement of such contracts.

“Unit” means the interest of the unit holders in a scheme, which consists of each unit representing one undivided share in the assets of a scheme.

“Unit Holder” means a person holding unit in a scheme of a mutual fund.

“Asset Management Company” means a company formed and registered under the Companies Act, 1956 and approved as such by the Board under sub-regulation (2) of regulation 21.

“Close-ended scheme” means any scheme of a mutual fund in which the period of maturity of the scheme is specified.

“Open-ended scheme” means a scheme of a mutual fund which offers units for sale without specifying any duration for redemption.

“Money Market Instruments” includes commercial papers, commercial bills, treasury bills, Government securities having an unexpired maturity up to one year, call or notice money, certificate of deposit, usance bills, and any other like instruments as specified by the Reserve Bank of India from time to time.

“Sponsor” means any person who, acting alone or in combination with another body corporate, establishes a mutual fund.

“Trustees” mean the Board of Trustees or the Trustee Company who hold the property of the Mutual Fund in trust for the benefit of the unit holders.

“Offer document” means any document by which a mutual fund invites public for subscription of units of a scheme.

REGISTRATION OF MUTUAL FUNDS

Eligibility Criteria for Registration of Mutual Funds

For the purpose of grant of a certificate of registration, the applicant has to fulfill the following, namely –

- The sponsor should have a sound track record and general reputation of fairness and integrity in all his business transactions.
Explanation: For the purposes of this clause “sound track record” shall mean the sponsor should –
 - (i) be carrying on business in financial services for a period of not less than five years; and
 - (ii) the networth is positive in all the immediately preceding five years; and
 - (iii) the networth in the immediately preceding year is more than the capital contribution of the sponsor in the asset management company; and
 - (iv) the sponsor has profits after providing for depreciation, interest and tax in three out of the immediately preceding five years, including the fifth year.
- The applicant is a fit and proper person
- In the case of an existing mutual fund, such fund is in the form of a trust and the trust deed has been approved by the Board the sponsor has contributed or contributes at least 40% to the net worth of the asset management company.
 However, any person who holds 40% or more of the net worth of an asset management company shall be deemed to be a sponsor and will be required to fulfill the eligibility criteria specified in these regulations.
- The sponsor or any of its directors or the principal officer to be employed by the mutual fund should not have been guilty of fraud or has not been convicted of an offence involving moral turpitude or has not been found guilty of any economic offence.
- Appointment of trustees to act as trustees for the mutual fund in accordance with the provisions of the regulations appointment of asset management company to manage the mutual fund and operate the scheme

of such funds in accordance with the provisions of these regulations appointment of custodian in order to keep custody of the securities or goods or gold and gold related instrument or other assets of the mutual fund held in terms of these regulations, and provide such other custodial services as may be authorised by the trustees.

Norms for Shareholding & Governance in Mutual Funds

- (1) No sponsor of a mutual fund, its associate or group company including the asset management company of the fund, through the schemes of the mutual fund or otherwise, individually or collectively, directly or indirectly, have –
 - (a) 10% or more of the share-holding or voting rights in the asset management company or the trustee company of any other mutual fund; or
 - (b) representation on the board of the asset management company or the trustee company of any other mutual fund.
- (2) Any shareholder holding 10% or more of the share-holding or voting rights in the asset management company or the trustee company of a mutual fund, shall not have, directly or indirectly, -
 - (a) 10% or more of the share-holding or voting rights in the asset management company or the trustee company of any other mutual fund; or
 - (b) representation on the board of the asset management company or the trustee company of any other mutual fund.

However in the event of a merger, acquisition, scheme of arrangement or any other arrangement involving the sponsors of the mutual funds, shareholders of the asset management companies or trustee companies, their associates or group companies which results in the incidental acquisition of shares, voting rights or representation on the board of the asset management companies or trustee companies, this regulation shall be complied with within a period of one year of coming into force of such an arrangement.

Terms and Conditions of Registration

- the trustees, the sponsor, the asset management company and the custodian shall comply with the provisions of SEBI (Mutual Fund) Regulations, 1996
- the mutual fund shall forthwith inform the SEBI, if any information or particulars previously submitted to the SEBI was misleading or false in any material respect
- the mutual fund shall forthwith inform the SEBI, of any material change in the information or particulars previously furnished, which have a bearing on the registration granted by it payment of fees as specified in the SEBI (Mutual Fund) Regulations, 1996

Constitution and Management of Mutual Funds and Operation of Trustees

- (i) A mutual fund shall be constituted in the form of a trust and the instrument shall be in the form of a deed duly registered under the Registration Act.
- (ii) The trust deed shall not contain any clause which has the effect of limiting or extinguishing the obligations and liabilities of the trusts or indemnifying the trustees/ asset management company for loss or damage caused to the unitholders by their acts of negligence or acts of commission or omission.

Disqualification from Being Appointed as Trustees

A mutual fund shall appoint trustees in accordance with these regulations. A person shall not be eligible to be appointed as a trustee unless—

- (a) he is a person of ability, integrity and standing; and
- (b) has not been found guilty of moral turpitude; and

- (c) has not been convicted of any economic offence or violation of any securities laws; and
- (d) has furnished particulars as specified in Form C.
- No asset management company and no director (including independent director), officer or employee of an asset management company shall be eligible to be appointed as a trustee of any mutual fund.
- No person who is appointed as a trustee of a mutual fund shall be eligible to be appointed as a trustee of any other mutual fund.
- Two-thirds of the trustees shall be independent persons and shall not be associated with the sponsors or be associated with them in any manner whatsoever.
- In case a company is appointed as a trustee then its directors can act as trustees of any other trust provided that the object of the trust is not in conflict with the object of the mutual fund.

APPROVAL OF THE SEBI FOR APPOINTMENT OF TRUSTEE

- No trustee shall initially or any time thereafter be appointed without prior approval of the SEBI

CONSTITUTION AND MANAGEMENT OF ASSET MANAGEMENT COMPANY AND CUSTODIAN

Appointment of an Asset Management Company

- The sponsor or, if so authorised by the trust deed, the trustee, shall appoint an asset management company, which has been approved by the SEBI.
- The appointment of an asset management company can be terminated by majority of the trustees or by seventy-five per cent of the unitholders of the scheme.
- Any change in the appointment of the asset management company shall be subject to prior approval of the SEBI and the unitholders.

Eligibility Criteria for Appointment of Asset Management Company

- in case the asset management company is an existing asset management company it has a sound track record, general reputation and fairness in transactions;
- the asset management company is a fit and proper person;
- the directors of the asset management company are persons having adequate professional experience in finance and financial services related field and not found guilty of moral turpitude or convicted of any economic offence or violation of any securities laws;
- the key personnel of the asset management company have not been found guilty of moral turpitude or convicted of economic offence or violation of securities laws or worked for any asset management company or mutual fund or any intermediary during the period when its registration has been suspended or cancelled at any time by the Board;
- the board of directors of such asset management company has at least fifty per cent directors, who are not associate of, or associated in any manner with, the sponsor or any of its subsidiaries or the trustees;
- the Chairman of the asset management company is not a trustee of any mutual fund;
- the asset management company has a net worth of not less than rupees fifty crore;

Appointment of Custodian

- The mutual fund shall appoint a Custodian to carry out the custodial services for the schemes of the fund and sent intimation of the same to the Board within fifteen days of the appointment of the Custodian.
- However in case of a gold exchange traded fund scheme, the assets of the scheme being gold or gold related instruments may be kept in the custody of a custodian registered with the SEBI.

Agreement with Custodian

- However in case of a real estate mutual fund scheme, the title deed of real estate assets held by it may be kept in the custody of a custodian registered with the SEBI.
- The mutual fund shall enter into a custodian agreement with the custodian, which shall contain the clauses which are necessary for the efficient and orderly conduct of the affairs of the custodian.
- However the agreement, the service contract, terms and appointment of the custodian shall be entered into with the prior approval of the trustees.

SCHEMES OF MUTUAL FUND

Procedure for Launching of Schemes

- No scheme shall be launched by the asset management company unless such scheme is approved by the trustees and a copy of the offer document has been filed with the SEBI.
- The offer documents shall contain adequate disclosures to enable the investors to make informed decisions.
- The mutual fund shall pay the minimum filing fee to the SEBI while filing the offer document and the balance filing fee within such time as may be specified by the SEBI.
- The sponsor or asset management company shall invest not less than one percent of the amount which would be raised in the new fund offer or fifty lakh rupees, whichever is less, and such investment shall not be redeemed unless the scheme is wound up. However the investment by the sponsor or asset management company shall be made in such option of the scheme, as may be specified by the SEBI. The mutual fund, which intends to list units of its scheme on the recognised stock exchange(s), shall obtain 'in-principle' approval from recognised stock exchange(s) in the manner as specified by the recognised stock exchange(s) from time to time.
- Every mutual fund desirous of listing units of its schemes on a recognised stock exchange shall execute an agreement with such stock exchange.
- The listing of close-ended schemes is mandatory and these should be listed on a recognised stock exchange within such time period and subject to such conditions as specified by the SEBI.
- Units of a close-ended scheme can be opened for sale or redemption at a predetermined fixed interval if the minimum and maximum amount of sale, redemption and periodicity is disclosed in the offer document.
- Units of a close-ended scheme can be converted into an open-ended scheme if the offer document of such scheme discloses the option and the period of such conversion or the unitholders are provided with an option to redeem their units in full.
- Units of close-ended scheme may be rolled over in the case of those unitholders who express their consent in writing and the unitholders who do not opt for the roll over or have not given written consent shall be allowed to redeem their holdings in full at net asset value based price.
- No scheme other than equity-linked saving scheme can be opened for subscription for more than 15 days. Further, the minimum subscription and the extent of over subscription that is intended to be retained should be specified in the offer document. In the case of over-subscription, all applicants applying up to 5,000 units must be given full allotment subject to over subscription.
- The AMC is required to refund the application money if minimum subscription is not received, and also the excess over subscription within five working days of closure of subscription.
- A close-ended scheme shall be wound up on redemption date, unless it is rolled over; or if 75% of the unitholders of a scheme pass a resolution for winding up of the scheme; if the trustees on the happening of any event require the scheme to be wound up; or if SEBI, so directs in the interest of investors.

CODE OF CONDUCT OF MUTUAL FUNDS

- (i) The schemes should not be organized, operated and managed in the interest of sponsors or the directors of AMC or special class of unit holders;
- (ii) It shall ensure the adequate dissemination of adequate, fair, accurate and timely information of all the stake holders;
- (iii) The excessive concentration of business with the broking firm or associates should be avoided;
- (iv) The scheme - wise segregation of bank accounts and securities accounts must be ensured;
- (v) The investment should be made in accordance with the investment objectives stated on the offer documents;
- (vi) It must not use any unethical means to sell, market or induce any investor to buy their schemes.
- (vii) The high standards of integrity and fairness in all the dealings should be maintained by the trustees and AMCs;
- (viii) The AMCs shall not make any exaggerated statements.

ADVERTISEMENT CODE

- (i) Advertisement shall be accurate, true, fair, clear, complete, unambiguous and concise.
- (ii) Advertisement shall not contain statement which are false, misleading, biased or deceptive, based on assumptions and shall not contain any testimonials or any ranking based on any criteria.
- (iii) No celebrities shall form part of advertisement.
- (iv) No advertisement shall directly or indirectly discredit other advertisements or make unfair comparisons.
- (v) Advertisements shall be accompanied by a standard warning in legible fonts which states "Mutual fund investments are subject to market risks, read all schemes related document carefully." No addition or deletion of words shall be made to the standard warning.
- (vi) In audio visual media based advertisements, the standard warning in visual and accompanying voice over reiteration shall be audible in a clear and understandable manner. For example, in standard warning both the visual and the voice over reiteration containing 14 words running for at least 5 seconds may be considered as clear and understandable.
- (vii) Advertisement shall not be so designed as likely to be misunderstood or likely to be disguise the significance of any statement.

RESTRICTION ON INVESTMENT BY MUTUAL FUNDS

- (i) The schemes shall not invest more than 10% of its NAV in debt instruments issued by a single issuer which are rated not below investment grade by a CRA.
However, such limit can be increased to 12% of its NAV with prior approval of Board of Trustee and Board of Directors of AMC.
- (ii) A mutual fund scheme shall not invest in unlisted debt instruments including commercial papers, except Government Securities and other money market instruments.
However, Mutual Fund Schemes may invest in unlisted non- convertible debentures up to a maximum of 10% of the debt portfolio of the scheme subject to such conditions as may be specified by the SEBI.
- (iii) Mutual fund shall not own more than 10% of company's paid - up capital carrying voting rights.
- (iv) The transfer of investments from one scheme to another shall be done only at the prevailing market price & the securities so transferred shall be in conformity with the investment objective of the scheme to which such transfer has been made;

- (v) A scheme may invest in another scheme under the same asset management company or any other mutual fund without charging any fees. However, the aggregate inter-scheme investments made by all schemes shall not exceed 5% of the NAV of the mutual fund. (This shall not apply to funds of funds scheme)
- (vi) The buy and sell by all the mutual funds shall be made on the basis of the deliveries.
- (vii) All securities shall be purchase or transferred in the name of the mutual fund scheme.
- (viii) No mutual fund scheme shall make any investment in:
 - (a) any unlisted security of an Associate or Group Company of the Sponsor;
 - (b) any security issued by way of private placement by an associate or group company of the sponsor;
 - (c) the listed securities of group companies of the sponsor which is in excess of 25 per cent of the net Assets.
- (ix) No mutual fund shall make any investment in the funds of fund scheme.
- (x) No mutual fund shall invest more than 10% of its NAV in the equity shares or equity related instruments of any company.
- (xi) All investments by a mutual fund scheme in equity shares and equity related instruments shall only be made provided such securities are listed or to be listed
- (xii) A fund of funds scheme shall be subject to the following investment restrictions:
 - (a) A fund of funds scheme shall not invest in any other fund of funds scheme;
 - (b) A fund of funds scheme shall not invest its assets other than in schemes of mutual funds, except to the extent of funds required for meeting the liquidity requirements for the purpose of repurchases or redemptions, as disclosed in the offer document of fund of funds scheme.

Question: What are the avenues available to Indian Mutual Funds for investment abroad?

Answer: Indian Mutual Funds registered with SEBI are permitted to invest in the following:

- (i) ADRs and GDRs;
- (ii) Equity of overseas company;
- (iii) Foreign debt securities;
- (iv) Money market instruments;
- (v) Government securities;
- (vi) Derivative;
- (vii) Short - term deposits;
- (viii) Units issued by overseas mutual funds.

PRICING OF UNITS OF MUTUAL FUND

- (1) The price at which the units may be subscribed or sold and the price at which such units may at any time be repurchased by the mutual fund shall be made available to the investors in the manner specified by the SEBI.
- (2) The mutual fund shall provide the methodology of calculating the sale and repurchase price of units in the manner specified by the SEBI.
- (3) While determining the prices of the units, the mutual fund shall ensure that the repurchase price is not lower than 95% of the Net Asset Value.

FACILITATING TRANSACTION IN MUTUAL FUND SCHEMES THROUGH THE STOCK EXCHANGE INFRASTRUCTURE

SEBI vide its Circulars dated October 04, 2013, and dated December 09, 2014 had permitted mutual fund distributors to use recognised stock exchanges' infrastructure to purchase and redeem mutual fund units directly from Mutual Fund / Asset Management Companies.

In order to further increase the reach of this platform, SEBI vide its Circular dated February 26, 2020 had decided to allow investors to directly access infrastructure of the recognised stock exchanges to purchase and redeem mutual fund units directly from Mutual Fund/ Asset Management Companies.

POWER TO RELAX STRICT ENFORCEMENT OF THE REGULATIONS

Exemption from enforcement of the regulations in special cases.

- (1) SEBI may, exempt any person or class of persons from the operation of all or any of the provisions of these regulations for a period as may be specified but not exceeding twelve months, for furthering innovation relating to testing new products, processes, services, business models, etc. in live environment of regulatory sandbox in the securities markets.
- (2) Any exemption granted by the SEBI as above shall be subject to the applicant satisfying such conditions as may be specified by the SEBI.

Explanation. – For the purposes of these regulations, “regulatory sandbox” means alive testing environment where new products, processes, services, business models, etc. maybe deployed on a limited set of eligible customers for a specified period of time, for furthering innovation in the securities market, subject to such conditions as may be specified by the SEBI.

SEBI (LISTING OBLIGATIONS AND DISCLOSURE REQUIREMENTS) REGULATIONS, 2015

The provisions of chapter IX of the SEBI LODR Regulations, 2015 applies to the asset management company managing the mutual fund scheme whose units are listed on the recognised stock exchange(s).

Notwithstanding anything contained in this chapter, the provisions of the Securities and Exchange Board of India (Mutual Funds) Regulations, 1996 and directions issued thereunder shall apply on the listed entity and to the schemes whose units are listed on the recognised stock exchange(s).

Submission of Documents

The listed entity shall intimate to the recognised stock exchange(s), the information relating to daily Net Asset Value, monthly portfolio, half yearly portfolio of those schemes whose units are listed on the recognised stock exchange(s) in the format as specified under SEBI (Mutual Funds) Regulations, 1996 and directions issued there under.

The listed entity shall intimate to the recognised stock exchange(s) in the manner specified by the recognized stock exchange(s) of:

- (a) movement in unit capital of those schemes whose units are listed on the recognised stock exchange(s);
- (b) rating of the scheme whose units are listed on the recognised stock exchange(s) and any changes in the rating thereof (wherever applicable);
- (c) imposition of penalties and material litigations against the listed entity and Mutual Fund; and
- (d) any prohibitory orders restraining the listed entity from transferring units registered in the name of the unit holders.

Dissemination on the website of stock exchange(s)

The listed entity shall submit such information and documents, which are required to be disseminated on the listed entity's website in terms of SEBI (Mutual Funds) Regulations, 1996 and directions issued thereunder, to the recognized stock exchange for dissemination.

CASE LAW

1	09.07.2020	<i>Mr. Mayank Prakash</i> <i>In the matter of Fixed Maturity Plans Series 127 & 183 of Kotak Mahindra Mutual Fund</i>	Adjudicating Order, Securities and Exchange Board of India
----------	-------------------	--	---

Facts of the case

Securities and Exchange Board of India (hereinafter be referred to as, the “SEBI”), initiated adjudication proceedings under Section 15HB of the Securities and Exchange Board of India Act, 1992 (hereinafter be referred to as, the “SEBI Act”) for the violations of various provisions of SEBI (Mutual Funds) Regulations, 1996 (hereinafter be referred to as, the “MF Regulations”) and various Circulars issued thereunder, alleged to have been committed by Mr. Mayank Prakash (hereinafter be referred to as, the “Noticee”).

Kotak Mahindra Mutual Fund (hereinafter be referred to as, the “Kotak MF”) is a mutual fund having a certificate of registration granted by SEBI, which offered certain Fixed Maturity Plans (hereinafter be referred to as, the “FMP”) viz. FMP Series 127 and Series 183 inter alia.

Kotak Mahindra Asset Management Company Limited (hereinafter be referred to as, the “Kotak AMC”) is the asset management company of Kotak MF. Noticee was fund managers of the two Fixed Maturity Plans (hereinafter be referred to as, the “FMP”) schemes, i.e. FMP Series 127 & 183 who decided to invest in securities.

Regulation 25(6B) of the MF Regulations provide that, “The fund managers (whatever the designation may be) shall ensure that the funds of the schemes are invested to achieve the objectives of the scheme and in the interest of the unit holders.”

In the context of investments made by FMP 127 and FMP 183, Mr. Mayank Prakash, being fund manager of the aforesaid schemes of Kotak AMC, was alleged to have –

- (i) failed to ensure that the funds of the FMPs were invested to achieve the objectives of the FMPs and in the interest of the unit holders with the high standards of service and due diligence required of them, thus violating Regulation 25(6B) of the MF Regulations.
- (ii) failed to ensure that the basis for taking individual scrip-wise investment decisions were recorded or that detailed research reports for each investment decision for initial and subsequent investments were prepared, and that the funds of the schemes were invested to achieve the objectives of the scheme and in the interest of the unit holders, thus violating Regulation 25(6B) of the MF Regulations read with SEBI Circular: MFD/CIR/6/73/2000 dated July 27, 2000.

In response to the SCN, Noticee replied vide letter dated August 21, 2019 that he had resigned as an employee of Kotak AMC effective close of business hours on August 12, 2015. Since August 13, 2015 till date, Noticee is employed with BNP Paribas Asset Management India Private Limited.

Kotak AMC also confirmed the in its letter dated October 23, 2016 that the Noticee resigned from the services of the AMC with effect from August 12, 2015 and hence was not involved as Fund Manager of the referred FMP schemes. As such, he was neither involved in the decision to invest nor at the time of the said investment.

Order of SEBI

SEBI note from the reply of the Noticee that he had resigned from the services of the Kotak AMC with effect from August 12, 2015. As Noticee was not the fund manager in respect of relevant transaction, Noticee cannot be held responsible under Regulation 25(6B) of the MF Regulations for ensuring that the funds of the schemes are invested to achieve the objectives of the scheme and in the interest of the unit holders.

In view of the above, SEBI find that the Noticee cannot be held to have violated Regulation 25(6B) of the MF Regulations read with SEBI Circular: MFD/CIR/6/73/2000 dated July 27, 2000.

In light of the findings noted hereinabove, the adjudication proceedings initiated against the Noticee vide SCN dated May 16, 2019 were disposed of.

LESSON ROUND-UP

- Mutual fund is a trust that collects money from a number of investors who share a common investment objective and invests the same in equities, bonds, money market instruments and/or other securities.
- Mutual funds are regulated by the SEBI (Mutual Fund) Regulations, 1996.
- Mutual Fund schemes could be 'open ended' or close-ended' and actively managed or passively managed.
- There are five principal constituents and three market intermediaries in the formation and functioning of mutual fund.
- A mutual fund shall be constituted in the form of a trust and the instrument shall be in the form of a deed duly registered under the Registration Act.
- The mutual fund shall enter into a custodian agreement with the custodian, which shall contain the clauses which are necessary for the efficient and orderly conduct of the affairs of the custodian.
- No scheme shall be launched by the asset management company unless such scheme is approved by the trustees and a copy of the offer document has been filed with the SEBI.
- The SEBI LODR Regulations, 2015 is applicable to the AMC managing the mutual fund scheme whose units are listed on the recognised stock exchange.

GLOSSARY

Annual Return	The change in percentage in the Net Asset Value (NAV) of a fund over one year based on the assumption that distributions such as dividend payment and bonuses have been reinvested.
Diversification	The process of investing across different asset classes (equity, debt, property, etc.) and across different investments within each asset class (for instance, investing across equity shares of various companies in case of equity) to reduce risk.
Investment objective	Every mutual fund scheme has an investment objective according to which the fund manager has to make investments for the scheme. For example, in case of an equity fund, the investment objective may be to invest in large cap companies across a range of sectors in order to give investors capital appreciation.
Maturity	Some investments such as close-ended funds have a maturity date, which is the date on which the investor is paid back his principal amount as well as all income due to him on that investment.
Repurchase/ Redemption	When a mutual fund investor wants to exit from his mutual fund investment, he can sell back the units to the mutual fund and receive cash. The mutual fund 'repurchases' his units and the investor is said to 'redeem' his units.

TEST YOURSELF

(These are meant for recapitulation only. Answer to these questions are not to be submitted for evaluation.)

1. Elucidate the key players of Mutual funds in the formation and functioning of mutual fund.
2. What do you mean by Net Asset Value? How to calculate NAV?
3. Distinguish between Open ended Mutual Funds and Close ended Mutual funds.
4. What is the Eligibility Criteria for Registration of Mutual Funds?
5. What is the Procedure for Launching of Mutual Funds Schemes?
6. Write short notes on the followings:
 - a) Asset Management Company
 - b) Holding Period Return
 - c) Expense Ratio
 - d) Code of Conduct of Mutual Fund
7. S is holding 2000 units of a equity-oriented scheme of a mutual fund and 1000 units of a debt scheme of a mutual fund. On 7th June, 2020 he is interested to redeem these units. Prevailing net asset value (NAV) of these units are as under :

Date	Net Asset Value (NAV)	
	Equity-oriented scheme (in ₹)	Debt scheme (in ₹)
6th June	45	35
7th June	46	34
8th June	47	33

He makes an application for redemption of above units on 7th June, 2020 at 2:30 pm. Based on given information answer the following :

- (i) What do you mean by cut-off time ? What are the cut-off time for equity-oriented & Debt funds (except liquid funds) ?
- (ii) What will be the applicable NAV in his case ?
- (iii) What will be applicable NAV if application for redemption is made at 3:15 pm ?

LIST OF FURTHER READINGS

- SEBI Circulars
- SEBI Notifications
- SEBI Orders
- SEBI FAQs

OTHER REFERENCES (Including Websites/Video Links)

- <https://www.sebi.gov.in/>
- <https://www.amfiindia.com/>

Lesson 13

Collective Investment Schemes

Key Concepts One Should Know

- Collective Investment Scheme
- Collective Investment Management Company
- Closed-ended Collective Investment Scheme
- Collective Investment Scheme Property
- Appraising Agency
- Unit
- Unit Holder

Learning Objectives

To understand:

- Meaning of Collective Investment Scheme
- Genesis of SEBI (Collective Investment Schemes) Regulations, 1999
- Conceptual Understanding on Important Terminologies
- Regulatory prescriptions on Collective Investment Scheme and how they are regulated
- Business Activities and Obligations of Collective Investment Management Company
- Trustees and their obligations
- Collective Investment Schemes of Collective Investment Management Company
- Penal provisions for violations

Regulatory Framework

- SEBI Act, 1992
- SEBI (Collective Investment Schemes) Regulations, 1999

Lesson Outline

- | | |
|---|---|
| • Introduction | • General Obligations of Collective Investment Management Company |
| • Genesis | • Procedure for action in case of default |
| • SEBI (Collective Investment Schemes) Regulations, 1999 – An Overview | • Penal Provisions |
| • Important Definitions | • Key Aspects for launching collective Investment Scheme |
| • Registration of Collective Investment Management Company | • Role of Company Secretary |
| • Business Activities and Obligations of Collective Investment Management Company | • Case Laws |
| • Trustees and their obligations | • LESSON ROUND-UP |
| • Collective Investment Schemes of Collective Investment Management Company | • GLOSSARY |
| | • TEST YOURSELF |
| | • OTHER REFERENCES |
| | • LIST OF FURTHER READINGS |

MEANING OF COLLECTIVE INVESTMENT SCHEME (CIS)

The increasing complexity of the financial markets witnessed unravelled financial schemes that defrauded investors by promising exorbitantly high returns on their principal investment. It was in response to these Ponzi Schemes that the SEBI formulated regulations encompassing Collective Investment Schemes (CIS) that specifically characterized a unique manner of financial manipulations.

A collective investment scheme is a scheme that comprises a pool of assets that is managed by a collective investment scheme manager and is governed by the Collective Investment Schemes Regulations given by SEBI. Section 11AA of the SEBI Act was amended to include a new proviso which gave SEBI the power to regulate all pooling of funds under any scheme or arrangement in excess of Rs. 100 crores not regulated by any other law, thus slipping into the net of a CIS.

GENESIS

The Last many years have witnessed initiative by private entrepreneurs to undertake plantation activities on a commercial scale. The effort per se commendable as it supplements the Government's efforts to prevent erosion of forest base and also channelizes private instruments towards agro plantation activity. However, it was noticed that the promoters themselves invested a minimal amount in such venture and sourced a majority of the funds from ordinary investors. The high returns promised by these schemes coupled with questionable claims of fiscal incentives and effective rural marketing helped many of these companies to mobilize large amounts over a period of time. The initial succession mobilizing funds by some of these companies led to a mushrooming of such schemes through the country.

The Government, after detailed consultations with the regulatory bodies, decided that the appropriate regulatory framework for regulating entities which issue instruments like Agro Bonds, Plantation Bonds, etc. has to be put in place. A press release was issued by the Government on November, 18, 1997, conveying that such schemes should be treated as Collective Investment Scheme coming under the SEBI Act, 1992. In order to regulate such Collective Investment Schemes, both from the point of view of investor protection as well as promotion of legitimate investment activity, SEBI was asked to formulate the draft regulations for them. The Press release further states that once these regulations come into force, it is expected that they will promote legitimate investment activity in plantation and other agriculture based business, while at the same time giving investors an adequate degree of protection for their investments.

In order to examine and finalize the draft regulation for collective investment schemes, SEBI appointed a committee under the Chairmanship of Dr. S.A.Dave. The committee contained representations from the Government Ministries, Regulatory Bodies, Consumer Forum, Professional Bodies and Plantation Industries. The Committee held its first meeting on January 28, 1998 and began its task by reviewing the information submitted by the existing schemes to gather an insight into the structuring of the offerings by some of the large collective investment schemes. The data submitted by the existing schemes and its analysis provided by the SEBI helped the committee in analysing the aspects relating to schemes features, disclosures, background of promoters etc. The members of the committee were also conducted the site visits of some of the plantations.

As per the data available it was noticed that large sums of monies had been collected by entities which did not necessarily have sufficient experience in agro based activities. The schemes were typically open ended and the disclosure made to the investors was not adequate to enable informed decisions. There were high risks associated with these ventures due to the long gestation period involved coupled with crop risks. The committee members felt that some interim majors of investor's protection must be notified pending finalisation of regulations.

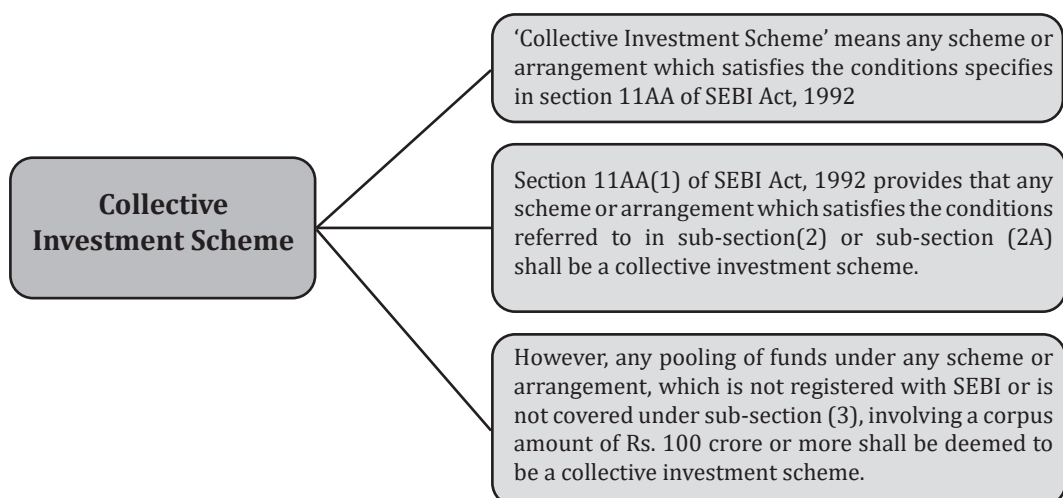
Considering the huge risk associated with such schemes, the Government of India felt that it was necessary to regulate such financial schemes and set up an appropriate regulatory framework and therefore government amended various laws such as SEBI Act and also framed SEBI (Collective Investment Schemes) Regulations 1999 ("CIS Regulations") for regulating such entities. The committee made a recommendation for mandatory credit rating for existing schemes desiring to mobilize further funds. This provision was expected to provide a degree of risk assessment of the future cash flows by the independent and accredited agencies.

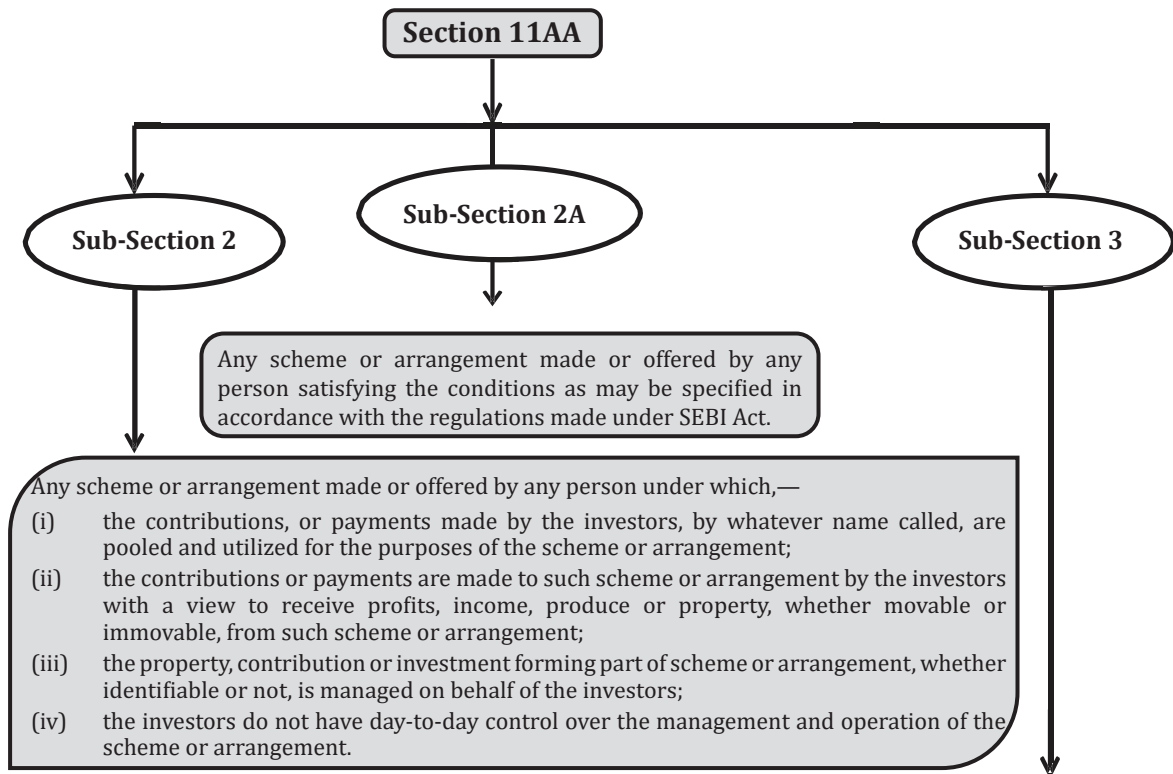
SEBI (COLLECTIVE INVESTMENT SCHEMES) REGULATIONS, 1999 – AN OVERVIEW

Regulatory Framework

1.	Chapter I	Preliminary (Important Definitions)
2.	Chapter II	Registration of Collective Investment Management Company
3.	Chapter III	Business Activities and Obligations of Collective Investment Management Company
4.	Chapter IV	Trustees and their Obligations
5.	Chapter V	Collective Investment Schemes of Collective Investment Management Company
6.	Chapter VI	General Obligations
7.	Chapter VII	Inspection and Audit
8.	Chapter VIII	Procedure for Action in case of Default
9.	Chapter IX	Existing Collective Investment Schemes
10.	Chapter IX-A	Existing Schemes or Arrangements deemed to be a Collective Investment Scheme
11.	Chapter IX-B	Power to relax strict enforcement of the Regulations
12.	Chapter X	Miscellaneous

Important Definitions





The following shall not be Collective Investment Scheme (CIS):

- (i) made or offered by a co-operative society registered under the Co-operative Societies Act, 1912 or a society being a society registered or deemed to be registered under any law relating to co-operative societies for the time being in force in any State;
- (ii) under which deposits are accepted by non-banking financial companies as defined in clause (f) of section 45-I of the Reserve Bank of India Act, 1934;
- (iii) being a contract of insurance to which the Insurance Act, 1938, applies;
- (iv) providing for any Scheme, Pension Scheme or the Insurance Scheme framed under the Employees Provident Fund and Miscellaneous Provisions Act, 1952;
- (v) under which deposits are accepted under section 74 of the Companies Act, 2013;
- (vi) under which deposits are accepted by a company declared as a Nidhi or a mutual benefit society under section 406 of the Companies Act, 2013;
- (vii) falling within the meaning of Chit business as defined in clause (d) of section 2 of the Chit Fund Act, 1982;
- (viii) under which contributions made are in the nature of subscription to a mutual fund;
- (ix) such other scheme or arrangement which the Central Government may, in consultation with SEBI, notify, shall not be a collective investment scheme.

Other Important Definitions

- **Collective Investment Management Company**

Collective Investment Management Company means a company incorporated under the Companies Act, 1956 (now Companies Act, 2013) and registered with SEBI under these regulations, whose object is to organize, operate and manage a collective investment.

- **Closed-ended Collective Investment Scheme**

Closed-ended collective investment scheme means any collective investment scheme launched by a Collective Investment Management Company, in which the period of maturity of the collective investment scheme is specified and there is no provision for re-purchase before the expiry of the maturity of the collective investment scheme.

- **Collective Investment Scheme Property**

Collective investment scheme property includes:

- (i) subscription of money, or money's worth (including bank deposits) to the collective investment scheme;
- (ii) property acquired, directly or indirectly, with, or with the proceeds of, subscription of money referred to in item (i); or
- (iii) income arising, directly or indirectly from, subscription money or property referred to in item (i) or (ii).

- **Appraising Agency**

Appraising Agency means an agency empanelled with the Board for the purpose of conducting technical or financial appraisal of the collective investment scheme.

- **Unit**

Unit includes any instrument issued under a collective investment scheme, by whatever name called, denoting the value of the subscription of a unit holder.

- **Unit Holder**

Unit holder means a person holding a unit in a collective investment scheme.

REGISTRATION OF COLLECTIVE INVESTMENT MANAGEMENT COMPANY

No person other than Collective Investment Management Company to launch Collective Investment Scheme

No person other than a Collective Investment Management Company which has obtained a certificate under these regulations shall carry on or sponsor or launch a collective investment scheme.

Registration Provisions under SEBI Act, 1992

Section 12 (1B) of the SEBI Act states that-

"No person shall sponsor or cause to be sponsored or carry on or caused to be carried on any venture capital funds or collective investment schemes including mutual funds, unless he obtains a certificate of registration from the SEBI in accordance with the regulations"

With this provision, a ban was imposed on a person carrying on any CIS, unless a certificate of registration is obtained in accordance with the regulations framed by SEBI.

Application for Grant of Certificate

Regulation 4 provides that any person proposing to carry any activity as a Collective Investment Management Company on or after the commencement of these regulations shall make an application to the SEBI for the grant of registration as specified under these regulations.

Application by a Scheme or Arrangement Deemed to be a Collective Investment Scheme

Regulation 4A provides that-

- (1) Any person proposing to carry on or sponsor or launch any scheme or arrangement which would be deemed to be a collective investment scheme shall make an application for grant of registration as a Collective Investment Management Company as specified under these regulations. However, any scheme or arrangement which is otherwise regulated or prohibited under any other law shall not be deemed to be a collective investment scheme.
- (2) All other provisions of these regulations and the guidelines and circulars issued there under, shall apply to any scheme or arrangement deemed to be a collective investment scheme.

APPLICATION BY EXISTING COLLECTIVE INVESTMENT SCHEMES

Any person who immediately prior to the commencement of these regulations was operating a collective investment scheme, shall make an application to the SEBI for the grant of a certificate within a period of two months from such date.

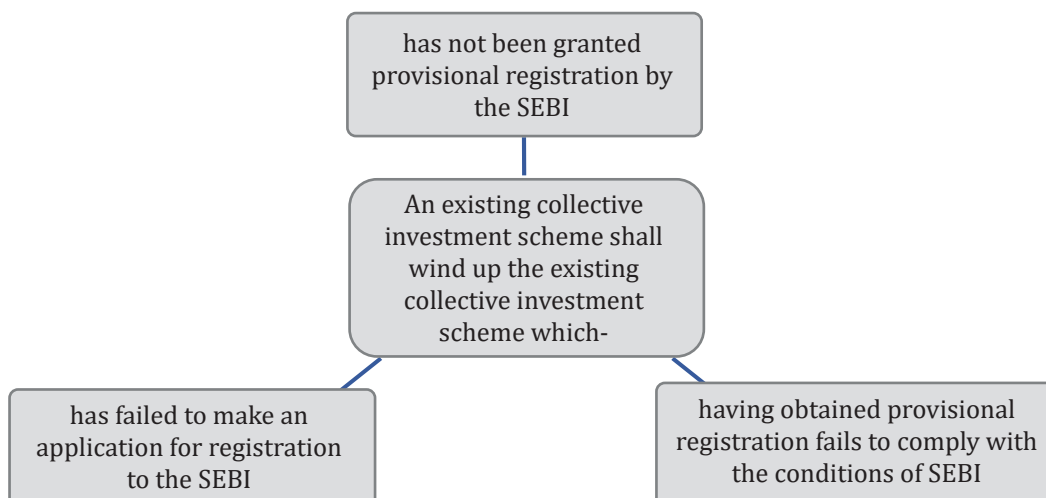
Any person who has been operating a collective investment scheme at the time of commencement of these regulations shall be deemed to be an existing collective investment scheme and shall also comply with the provisions of these regulations.

Explanation: The expression 'operating a collective investment scheme' shall include carrying out the obligations undertaken in the various documents entered into with the investors who have subscribed to the collective investment scheme.

An existing collective investment scheme shall make an application to the SEBI in the manner specified In these regulations. The application made shall be dealt with in any of the following manner:

- (a) by grant of provisional registration by SEBI ;
- (b) by grant of a certificate of registration by the SEBI ;
- (c) by rejection of the application for registration by the SEBI .

Winding up of Existing Collective Investment Scheme (CIS)



Grand of Certificate

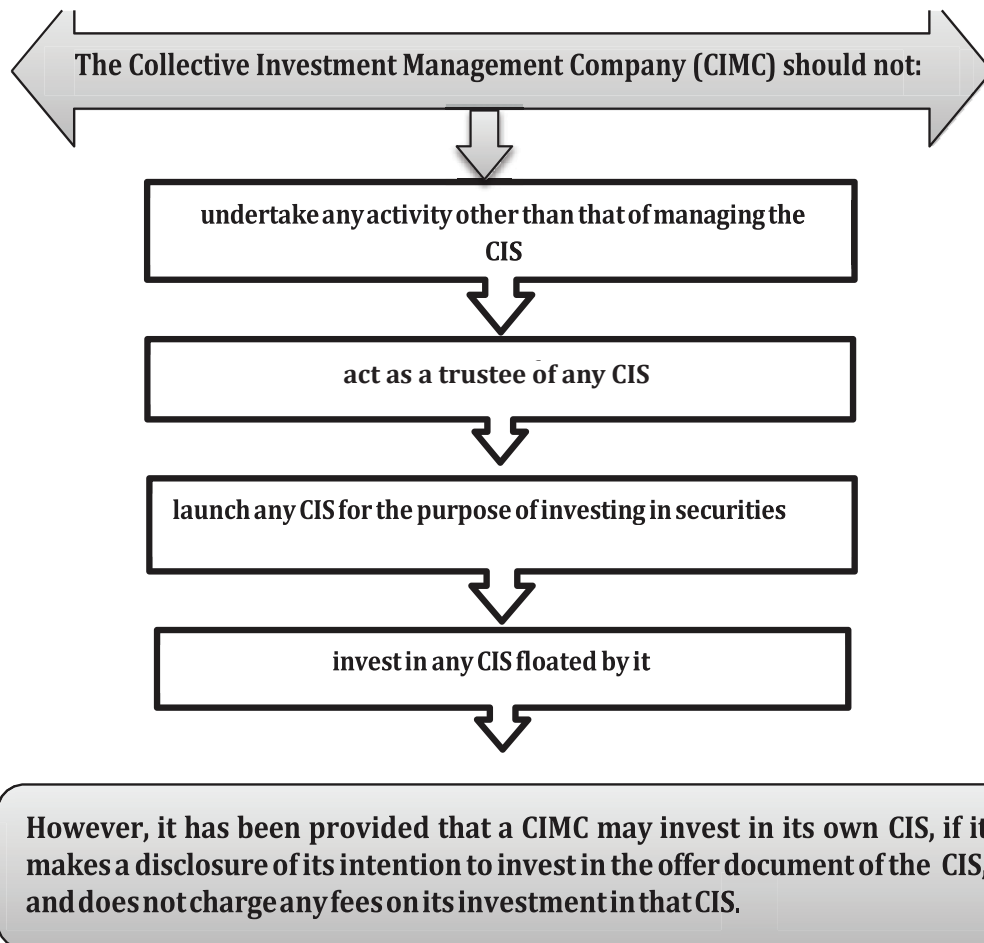
Regulation 10 provides that the SEBI may on receipt of an application and on being satisfied that the applicant complies with the eligibility conditions shall grant a certificate on such terms and conditions as are in the interest of investors.

Procedure where Registration is not Granted

Where an application made under regulation 4 for grant of registration does not satisfy the conditions specified under these regulations, the SEBI may reject the application after giving the applicant a reasonable opportunity of being heard and inform the applicant of the same. The decision shall be communicated to the applicant by the SEBI within 30 days of such decision stating therein the grounds on which the application has been rejected.

BUSINESS ACTIVITIES AND OBLIGATIONS OF COLLECTIVE INVESTMENT MANAGEMENT COMPANY

Restrictions on Business Activities



Obligations of Collective Investment Management Company

Every Collective Investment Management Company should:

be responsible for managing the funds or properties of the CIS on behalf of the unit holders and take all reasonable steps and exercise due diligence to ensure that the CIS is managed in accordance with the provisions of these regulations, the offer document and the trust deed.

exercise due diligence and care in managing assets and funds of the CIS and also be responsible for the acts of commissions and omissions by its employees or the persons whose services have been availed by it

remain liable to the unit holders for its acts of commission or omissions.

be incompetent to enter into any transaction with or through its associates, or their relatives relating to the CIS. However, in case the CIMC enters into any transactions relating to the CIS with any of its associates, a report to that effect shall immediately be sent to the trustee and to SEBI.

appoint registrar and share transfer agents and should also abide by their respective Code of Conducts.

give receipts for all monies received and report of the receipts and payments to SEBI, on monthly basis.

hold a meeting of Board of Directors to consider the affairs of CIS, at least twice in every three months and also ensures that its officers or employees do not make improper use of their position or information to gain, directly or indirectly, an advantage for themselves or for any other person or to cause detriment to the CIS.

obtain adequate insurance against the properties of the CIS and comply with such guidelines, directives, circulars and instructions as may be issued by SEBI from time to time on the subject of Collective Investment Scheme.

Submission of Information and Documents

- The Collective Investment Management Company should prepare quarterly reports of its activities and the status of compliance of SEBI regulations and submit the same to the trustees within one month of the expiry of each quarter.
- The Collective Investment Management Company should file with the trustees and the SEBI, particulars of all its directors along with their interest in other companies within fifteen days of their appointment.
- It should furnish a copy of the Balance Sheet, Profit and Loss Account and a copy of the summary of the yearly appraisal report to the unit holders within 2 months from the closure of financial year.
- The Collective Investment Management Company shall furnish to the SEBI and the trustee such information and documents to the SEBI and the trustee as may be required by them concerning the affairs of the collective investment scheme.

TRUSTEES AND THEIR OBLIGATIONS

A Collective Investment Scheme (CIS) should be constituted in the form of a trust and the instrument of trust should be framed in the form of a deed duly registered under the provisions of the Indian Registration Act, 1908 executed by the CIMC in favour of the trustees named in such an instrument. CIMC can appoint a trustee under the deed to hold the assets of the scheme for the benefit of unit holders.

Trustee means a person who holds the property of the collective investment scheme in trust for the benefit of the unit holders, in accordance with these regulations.

Contents of Trust Deed

The trust deed should contain such clauses as are specified and other clauses as are necessary for safeguarding the interests of the unit holders.

Eligibility for Appointment as Trustee

No trust deed should contain a clause which has the effect of limiting or extinguishing the obligations and liabilities of the Collective Investment Management Company in relation to any scheme or the unit holders; or indemnifying the trustee or the Collective Investment Management Company for loss or damage caused to the unit holders by their acts of negligence or acts of commissions or omissions.

Eligibility for appointment as trustee

The persons registered with the SEBI as Debenture Trustee under SEBI (Debenture Trustee) Regulations, 1993 are only eligible to be appointed as trustees of collective investment schemes. However, no person is eligible to be appointed as trustee, if he is directly or indirectly associated with the persons who have control over the CIMC. The CIMC shall furnish to SEBI particulars in respect of trustees appointed in the prescribed form.

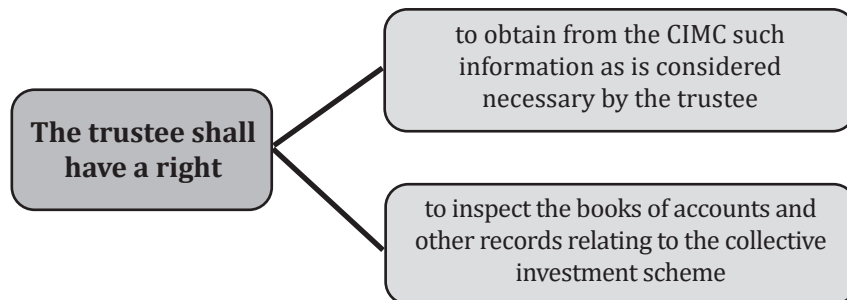
Appointment of Trustee not Found Guilty

No person should be appointed as trustee of a collective investment scheme, if he has been found guilty of an offence under the securities laws or the SEBI or any authority to which the SEBI has delegated its power has passed against such person, an order under the Act for violation of any provision of the Act or of regulations made hereunder.

Agreement with Collective Investment Management Company

The trustee and the Collective Investment Management Company should enter into an agreement for managing the collective investment schemes' property. The agreement for managing the collective investment scheme property should contain clauses as specified and such other clauses as are necessary for the purpose of fulfilling the objectives of the collective investment scheme.

Rights and Obligations of The Trustee



- The trustee should ensure that the CIMC has:
 - (i) the necessary office infrastructure;
 - (ii) appointed all key personnel including managers for the collective investment schemes and submitted their bio-data which shall contain the educational qualifications and past experience in the areas relevant for fulfilling the objectives of the collective investment schemes;
 - (iii) appointed auditors from the list of auditors approved by SEBI to audit the accounts of the CIS;
 - (iv) appointed a compliance officer to comply with the provisions of the Act and these regulations and to redress investor grievances;
 - (v) appointed registrars to an issue and share transfer agent;
 - (vi) prepared a compliance manual and designed internal control mechanisms including internal audit systems;
 - (vii) taken adequate insurance for the assets of the collective investment scheme;
 - (viii) not given any undue or unfair advantage to any associates of the company or dealt with any of the associates in any manner detrimental to the interest of the unit holders;
 - (ix) operated the collective investment scheme in accordance with the provisions of the trust deed, these regulations and the offer document of the collective investment scheme(s);

- (x) undertaken the activity of managing collective investment schemes only;
- (xi) taken adequate steps to ensure that the interest of investors of one collective investment scheme are not compromised with the object of promoting the interest of investors of any other collective investment scheme;
- (xii) minimum networth on a continuous basis and shall inform the SEBI immediately of any shortfall;
- (xiii) been diligent in empanelling the marketing agents and in monitoring their activities.
- The trustee should forthwith take such remedial steps as are necessary and immediately inform the SEBI of the action taken where the trustee believes that the conduct of business of the collective investment scheme is not in accordance with these regulations.
- The trustee should be accountable for, and act as the custodian of the funds and property of the respective collective investment schemes and should hold the same in trust for the benefit of the unit holders in accordance with these regulations and the provisions of trust deed.
- The trustee should be responsible for the calculation of any income due to be paid to the collective investment scheme and also for any income received in the Collective Investment Scheme to the unit holders.
- The trustee shall convene a meeting of the unit holders -
 - (a) whenever required to do so by the SEBI in the interest of the unit holders; or
 - (b) whenever required to do so on the requisition made by unitholders holding at least one-tenth of nominal value of the unit capital of any collective investment scheme; or
 - (c) when any change in the fundamental attributes of any collective investment scheme.

However no such change shall be carried out unless the consent of unit holders holding at least three - fourths of nominal value of the unit capital of the collective investment scheme is obtained.

Explanation:- For the purposes of this clause “fundamental attributes” means the investment objective and terms of a collective investment scheme.

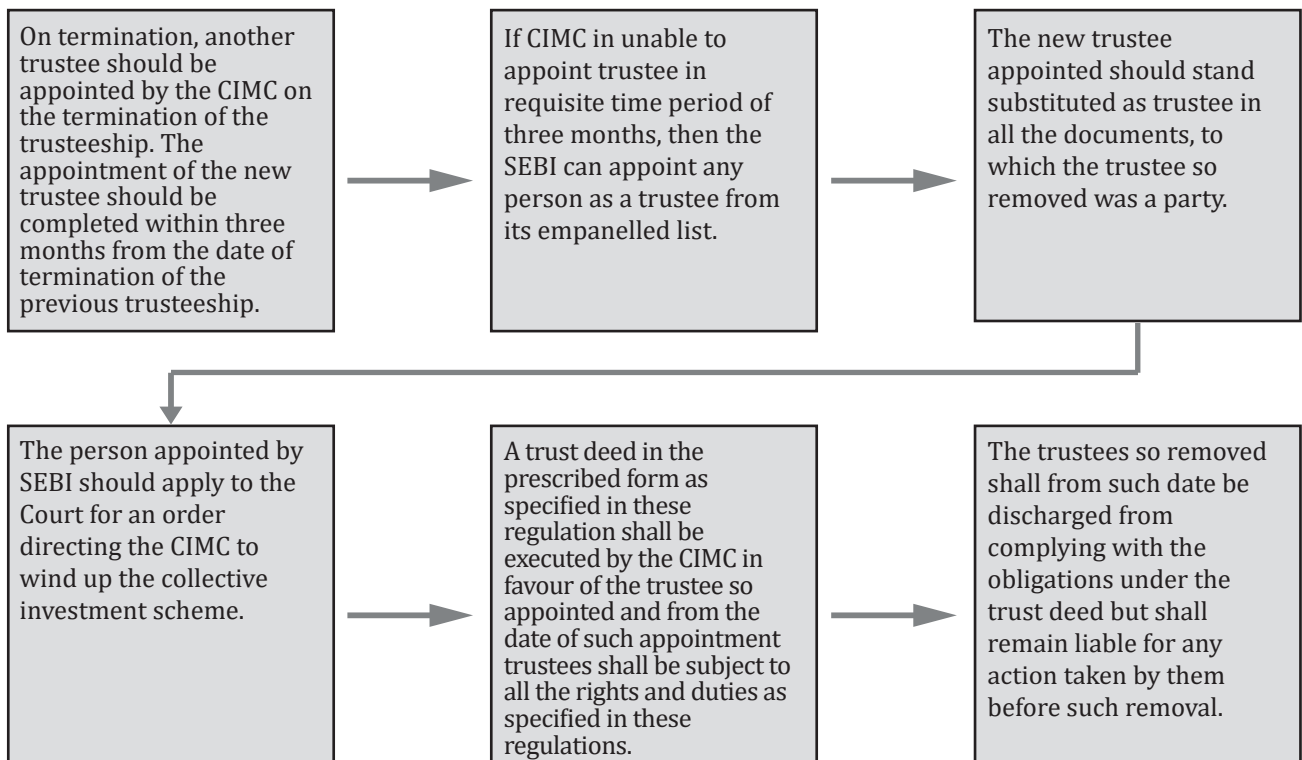
- The trustee shall review -
 - (a) on a quarterly basis (i.e., by the end of March, June, September and December) every year all activities carried out by the Collective Investment Management Company;
 - (b) periodically all service contracts relating to registrars to an issue and share transfer agents and satisfy itself that such contracts are fair and reasonable in the interest of the unit holders;
 - (c) investor complaints received and the redressal of the same by the Collective Investment Management Company.
- The trustee should ensure that -
 - a) net worth of CIMC is not deployed in a manner which is detrimental to interest of unit holders;
 - b) the property of each collective investment scheme is clearly identifiable as collective investment scheme property and held separately from property of the CIMC;
 - c) Clearances or no objection certificate should be obtained, in respect of transactions relating to property of the scheme from such authority as is competent to grant such clearance or no objection certificate.
- The trustee should abide by the Code of Conduct as specified in the Third Schedule.
- The trustee is required to furnish to SEBI on a quarterly basis every year -
 - a) a report on the activities of the collective investment scheme;
 - b) a certificate stating that the trustee has satisfied himself that affairs of the Collective Investment Management Company and of the various collective investment schemes are conducted in accordance with these regulations and investment objective of each collective investment scheme.
- The trustee should cause:
 - (a) The profit and loss accounts and balance sheet of the collective investment schemes to be audited at the end of each financial year by an auditor empanelled with the SEBI.

- (b) Each collective investment scheme to be appraised at the end of each financial year by an appraising agency.
- (c) Collective investment scheme to be rated by a credit rating agency.
- A meeting of the trustees to discuss the affairs of the collective investment scheme should be held at least twice in every three months in a financial year.
- The trustee should report to SEBI any breach of these regulations that has, or is likely to have, made materially adverse effect on the interests of unit holders, as soon as they become aware of the breach.
- The trustee should ensure that –
 - a) the fees and expenses of the collective investment scheme are within the limits as specified;
 - b) accounts of the collective investment schemes are drawn up in accordance with the accounting norms as specified;
 - c) accounts of the collective investment scheme and the format of the balance sheet and the profit and loss account as specified under these regulation.

Termination of Trusteeship

The trusteeship of a trustee should come to an end –

- (a) If the trustee ceases to be trustee under SEBI (Debentures Trustees) Regulations, 1993; or
- (b) if the trustee is in the course of being wound up; or
- (c) if unit holders holding at least three-fourths of the nominal value of the unit capital of the collective investment scheme pass a resolution for removing the trustee and SEBI approves such resolution; or
- (d) if in the interest of the unit holders, SEBI, for reasons to be recorded in writing decides to remove the trustee for any violation of the Act or these regulations committed by them or the trustee should be afforded reasonable opportunity of being heard before action is taken under this clause;
- (e) if the trustee serves on the Collective Investment Management Company, a notice of not less than three months expressing intention of not to continue as trustee.



Termination of the Agreement with the Collective Investment Management Company

The agreement entered into by the trustee with the Collective Investment Management Company may be terminated –

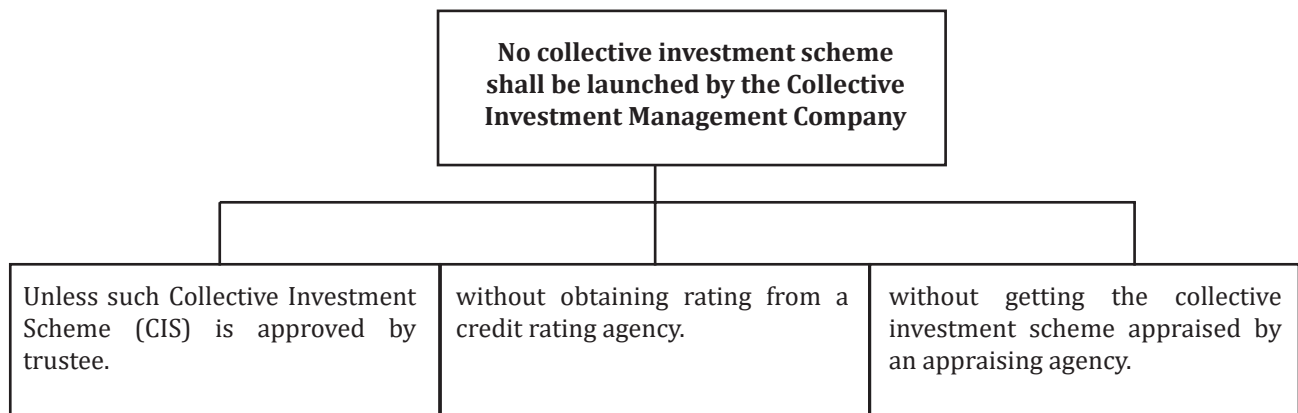
- (a) if the CIMC is in the course of being wound up as per the provisions of the Companies Act, 2013 or
- (b) if unit holders holding at least three-fourth of the nominal value of the unit capital of the collective investment scheme pass a resolution for terminating the agreement with the CIMC and the prior approval of SEBI has been obtained, or
- (c) if in the interest of the unit holders, SEBI or the trustee after obtaining prior approval of SEBI, and after giving an opportunity of being heard to the Collective Investment Management Company, decide to terminate the agreement with the CIMC.

Another CIMC registered with SEBI, should be appointed upon the termination of agreement by the trustee within three months from the date of such termination. The CIMC so removed continues to act as such at the discretion of trustee or the trustee itself may act as CIMC till such time as new CIMC is appointed.

The CIMC appointed should stand substituted as a party in all the documents to which the CIMC so removed was a party. The CIMC so removed should continue to be liable for all acts of omission and commissions notwithstanding such termination. If, none of the CIMC, registered under the regulations, consent to be appointed as CIMC within a further period of three months, then the trustee may wind up the collective investment scheme. An agreement for managing collective investment scheme property should be executed in favour of the new CIMC subject to all the rights and duties as specified in the regulations.

COLLECTIVE INVESTMENT SCHEMES OF COLLECTIVE INVESTMENT MANAGEMENT COMPANY

Procedure for launching of collective investment schemes



Close ended collective investment scheme and collective investment scheme duration

Collective Investment Management Company shall:-

- (a) launch only close ended collective investment schemes;
- (b) the duration of the collective investment schemes shall not be of less than three calendar years.

Insurance

Collective Investment Management Company shall obtain adequate insurance policy for protection of the collective investment scheme property.

No guaranteed returns

No collective investment scheme shall provide guaranteed or assured returns. However indicative return may be indicated in the offer document only, if the same is assessed by the appraising agency and expressed in monetary terms.

Disclosures in the offer Document

- The CIMC shall before launching any collective investment scheme file a copy of the offer document of the collective investment scheme with the SEBI and pay filing fees as specified. The offer document should contain such information as specified in the Sixth Schedule.
- The offer document should also contain true and fair view of the collective investment scheme and adequate disclosures to enable the investors to make informed decision.
- SEBI may in the interest of investors require the CIMC to carryout such modifications in the offer document as it deems fit.
- In case no modifications are suggested by SEBI in the offer document within 21 days from the date of filing, the Collective Investment Management Company may issue the offer document to the public.

Advertisement material

Advertisements in respect of every collective investment scheme shall be in conformity with the Advertisement Code as specified in the Seventh Schedule. The advertisement for each collective investment scheme shall disclose in addition to the investment objectives, the method and periodicity of valuation of collective investment scheme property.

Appraising Agency

The appraising agency whose appraisal report forms part of the offer document and has given a written consent for the inclusion of the appraisal report in the offer document shall be liable for any statement in the appraisal report which is misleading, incorrect or false.

Misleading Statements

The offer document and advertisement materials shall not be misleading or contain any statement or opinion which are incorrect or false. Where an offer document or advertisement includes any statement or opinions which are incorrect or false or misleading, every person -

- (i) who is a director of the Collective Investment Management Company at the time of the issue of the offer document;
- (ii) who has issued the offer document and shall be punishable under the Act unless he proves either that the statement or opinion was immaterial or that he had reasonable ground to believe at the time of the issue of the offer document or advertisement that the statement was true.

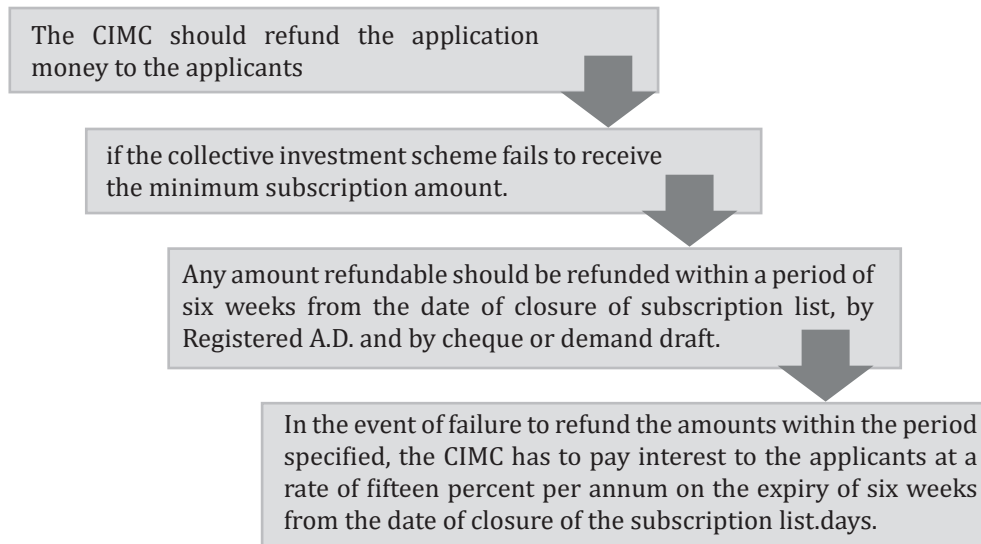
Offer period

No collective investment scheme shall be open for subscription for more than 90 days.

Allotment of units and Refunds of Moneys

The Collective Investment Management Company should specify in the offer document –

- a) the minimum and the maximum subscription amount it seeks to raise under the collective investment scheme; and
- b) in case of oversubscription, the process of allotment of the amount oversubscribed.



Unit Certificates

The Collective Investment Management Company should issue to the applicant whose application has been accepted, unit certificates as soon as possible but not later than six weeks from the date of closure of the subscription list. However, if the units are issued through a depository, a receipt in lieu of unit certificate will be issued as per provisions of SEBI (Depositories and Participants) Regulations, 1996 and bye-laws of the depository.

Transfer of Units

A unit certificate issued under the collective investment scheme should be freely transferable. The CIMC on production of instrument of transfer together with relevant unit certificates, register the transfer and return the unit certificate to the transferee within thirty days from the date of such production. However, if the units are held in a depository such units shall be transferable in accordance with the provisions of the SEBI (Depositories and Participants) Regulations, 1996 and bye-laws of the depository.

Money to be kept in separate account and utilisation of money

- (1) The subscription amount received should be kept in a separate bank account in the name of the collective investment scheme and utilised for –
 - (a) adjustment against allotment of units only after the trustee has received a statement from the registrars to the issue and share transfer agent regarding minimum subscription amount, as stated in the offer document, having been received from the public, or
 - (b) for refund of money in case minimum subscription amount, as stated in the offer document, has not been received or in case of over-subscription.
- (2) The minimum subscription amount as specified in the offer document couldn't be less than the minimum amount, as specified by the appraising agency, needed for completion of the project for which the collective investment scheme is being launched.
- (3) The moneys credited to the account of the collective investment scheme should be utilised for the purposes of the scheme and as specified in the offer document.
- (4) Any unutilised amount lying in the account of the collective investment scheme should be invested in the manner as disclosed in the offer document.

Investments and Segregation of Funds

The Collective Investment Management Company should:

- (a) not invest the funds of the collective investment scheme for purposes other than the objective of the collective investment scheme as disclosed in the offer document.
- (b) segregate the assets of different collective investment schemes.
- (c) not invest corpus of a collective investment scheme in other collective investment schemes.
- (d) not transfer funds from one collective investment scheme to another collective investment scheme.

However, it has been provided that inter-scheme transfer of collective investment scheme property may be permitted at the time of termination of the collective investment scheme with prior approval of the trustee and the SEBI.

Listing of Collective Investment Schemes

The units of every scheme shall be listed immediately after the date of allotment of units and not later than six weeks from the date of closure of the scheme on each of the stock exchanges as mentioned in the offer document.

Winding up of Collective Investment Scheme

A scheme should be wound up on the expiry of duration specified in the collective investment scheme or on the accomplishment of the objective of the collective investment scheme as specified in the offer document.

A collective investment scheme may be wound up :

- (a) on the happening of any event which, in the opinion of the trustee, requires the collective investment scheme to be wound up and the prior approval of the SEBI is obtained; or
- (b) if unit holders of a collective investment scheme holding at least three-fourth of the nominal value of the unit capital of the collective investment scheme, pass a resolution that the scheme be wound up and the approval of SEBI is obtained thereto; or
- (c) if in the opinion of SEBI, the continuance of the collective investment scheme is prejudicial to the interests of the unit-holders; or
- (d) if in the opinion of the CIMC, the purpose of the collective investment scheme cannot be accomplished and it obtains the approval of the trustees and that of the unit holders of the collective investment scheme holding at least three-fourth of the nominal value of the unit capital of the collective investment scheme with a resolution that the collective investment scheme be wound up and the approval of SEBI is obtained thereto.

Where a collective investment scheme is to be wound up, the trustee shall give notice disclosing the circumstances leading the winding up of the collective investment scheme in a daily newspaper having nationwide circulation and in the newspaper published in the language of the region where the CIMC is registered.

The trustee should dispose of the assets of the collective investment scheme concerned in the best interest of the unit holders of that collective investment scheme. The proceeds of sale realised, should be first utilised towards the discharge of such liabilities as are due and payable under the collective investment scheme and after making appropriate provision for meeting the expenses connected with such winding up, the balance shall be paid to the unit holders in proportion to their unit holding.

After the completion of the winding up, the trustee should forward to SEBI and the unit holders –

- (a) a report on the steps taken for realisation of assets of the collective investment scheme, expenses for winding up and net assets available for distribution to the unit holders, and
- (b) a certificate from the auditors of the collective investment scheme to the effect that all the assets of the collective investment scheme are realised and the details of the distribution of the proceeds.

The unclaimed money, if any at the time of winding up, should be kept separately in a bank account by the trustee for a period of three years for the purpose of meeting investors' claims and thereafter, should be transferred to investor protection fund, as may be specified by the SEBI.

Effect of commencement of winding up proceedings

On and from the date of the publication of notice, the trustee or the CIMC as the case may be, shall cease to carry on any business activities in respect of the collective investment scheme so wound up.

Cessation of the collective investment scheme

If SEBI is satisfied that all the measures for winding up of the collective investment scheme have been complied with, the collective investment scheme shall cease to exist.

GENERAL OBLIGATIONS OF COLLECTIVE INVESTMENT MANAGEMENT COMPANY

Maintain proper books of account and records, etc.

- (1) Every Collective Investment Management Company shall-
 - (a) keep and maintain proper books of account, records and documents, for each collective investment scheme so as to explain its transactions and to disclose any point of time the financial position of each collective investment scheme and in particular give a true and fair view of the state of affairs of the collective investment scheme, and
 - (b) intimate to the SEBI and the trustees the place where such books of account, records and documents including computer records are maintained.
- (2) Every Collective Investment Management Company shall continue to maintain and preserve, for a period of five years after the close of each collective investment scheme, its books of account, records, computer data and documents.

Financial year

The financial year for all the collective investment schemes shall end as on March 31 of each year.

Dispatch of warrants and proceeds

The Collective Investment Management Company shall-

- (a) Dispatch to the unit holders the warrants within 42 days of the declaration of the interim returns.
- (b) Dispatch the redemption proceeds within 30 days of the closure or the winding up of the collective investment scheme.

Statement of Accounts and Annual Report

The Collective Investment Management Company shall:

- (a) not exceed the ceilings on expenses or fees in respect of the collective investment scheme as specified;
- (b) prepare the accounts of the collective investment scheme in accordance with accounting norms as specified;
- (c) comply with format of balance sheet and profit and loss accounts as specified.

An annual report and annual statement of accounts of each collective investment scheme shall be prepared in respect of each financial year. Every Collective Investment Management Company shall within two months from the date of closure of each financial year forward to the SEBI a copy of the Annual Report.

Auditor's Report

Every collective investment scheme shall have the annual statement of accounts audited by an auditor who is empanelled with the SEBI and who is not in any way associated with the auditor of the Collective Investment Management Company. The auditor shall be appointed by the trustee. The auditor shall forward his report to the trustee and such report shall form part of the Annual Report.

Publication of Annual Report and summary thereof

The collective investment scheme wise annual report or an abridged form thereof shall be published in a national daily as soon as possible but not later than two calendar months from the date of finalisation of accounts. The annual report shall contain details as specified and such other details as are necessary for the purpose of providing a true and fair view of the operations of the collective investment scheme.

The report if published in abridged form shall carry a note that full annual report shall be available for inspection at the Head Office and all branch offices of the Collective Investment Management Company.

Periodic and continual disclosures

The Collective Investment Management Company and the trustee, shall make such disclosures or submit such documents as they may be called upon by the SEBI to make or submit.

The Collective Investment Management Company on behalf of the collective investment scheme shall furnish the following periodic reports to the SEBI, namely:

- (a) copies of the duly audited annual statements of account including the balance sheet and the profit and loss account in respect of each collective investment scheme, once a year;
- (b) a copy of quarterly unaudited accounts;
- (c) a quarterly statement of changes in net assets for each of the collective investment schemes.

Quarterly disclosures

A Collective Investment Management Company, on behalf of the collective investment scheme shall before the expiry of one month from the close of each quarter that is 31st March, 30th June, 30th September and 31st December publish its unaudited financial results in one daily newspaper having nationwide circulation and in a newspaper published in the language of the region where the Head Office of the Collective Investment Management Company is situated.

However, the quarterly unaudited report shall contain details as specified in the regulations and such other details as are necessary for the purpose of providing a true and fair view of the operations of the collective investment scheme.

Disclosures to the investors

The trustee shall ensure that the Collective Investment Management Company shall make such disclosures to the unit holders as are essential in order to keep them informed about any matter which may have an adverse bearing on their investments.

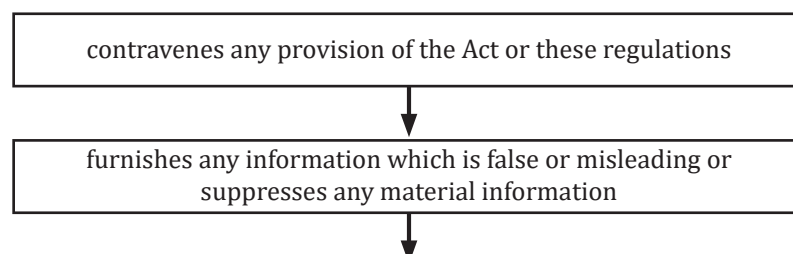
Calling of meeting of unit holders, transfer and transmission of units

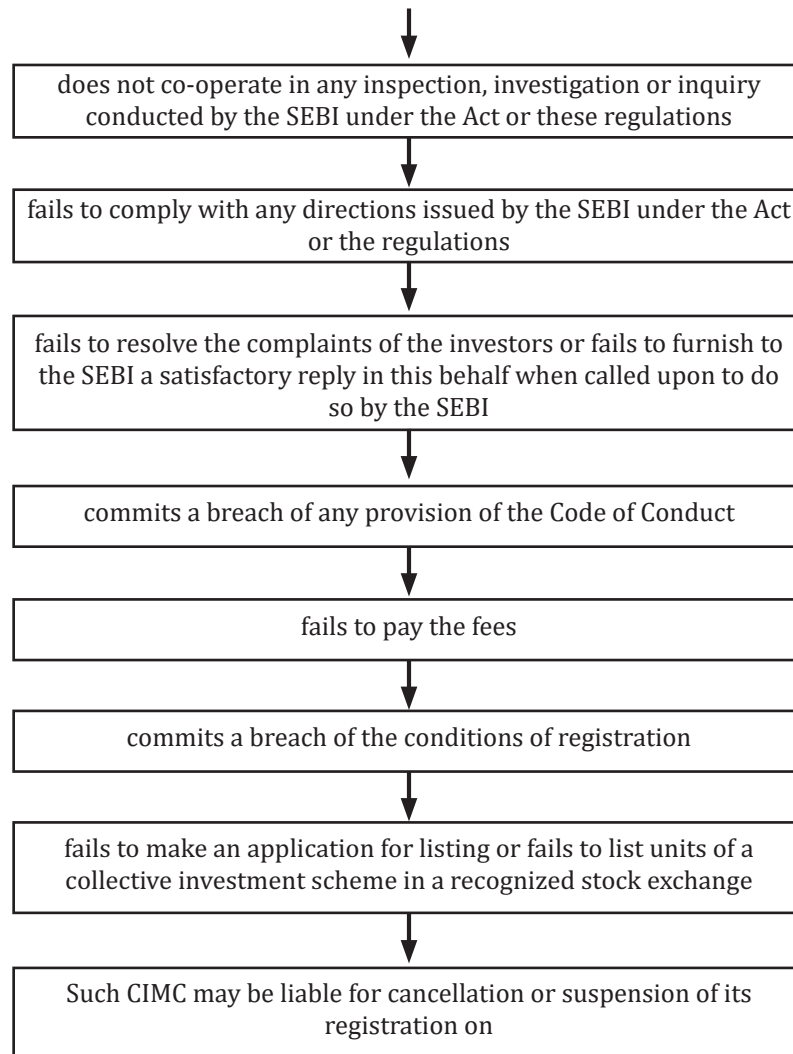
The calling of meeting of unit holders as well as transfer and transmission of units of collective investment scheme shall be as per the provisions of the Eighth Schedule.

PROCEDURE FOR ACTION IN CASE OF DEFAULT

Liability for action in case of default

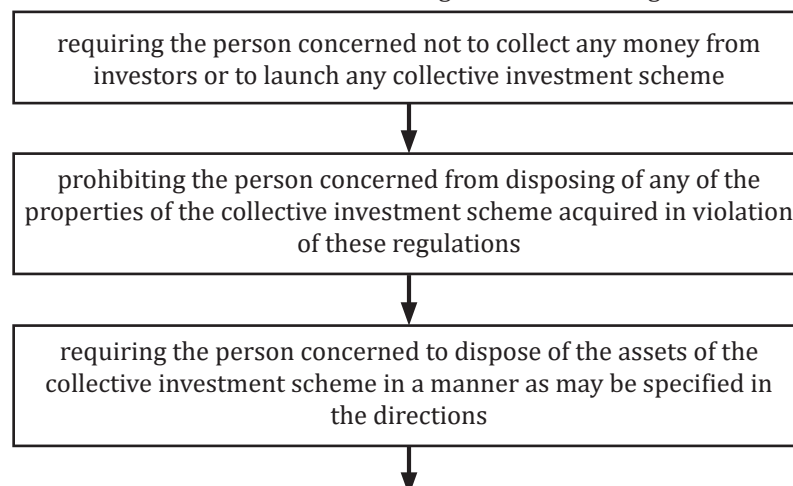
In case a Collective Investment Management Company

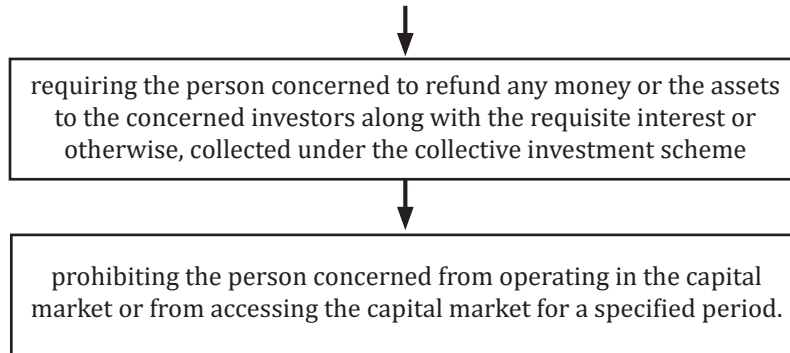




Directions by the SEBI

The SEBI may, in the interests of the securities market and the investors and without prejudice to its right to initiate action, including initiation of criminal prosecution under section 24 of the SEBI Act, 1992, give such directions as it deems fit in order to ensure effective observance of these regulations, including directions:





Action against intermediaries

SEBI may initiate action for suspension or cancellation of registration of an intermediary holding a certificate of registration under section 12 of the Act who fails to exercise due diligence in the performance of its functions or fails to comply with its obligations under these regulations. However no such certificate of registration shall be suspended or cancelled unless the procedure specified in the regulations applicable to such intermediary is complied with.

Appeal to the Central Government

Any person aggrieved by an order of the SEBI made under these regulations may prefer an appeal to a Securities Appellate Tribunal having jurisdiction in the matter.

PENAL PROVISIONS

As per Section 15D of the SEBI Act, 1992 –

Contravention	Penalty
If any person, who is required under SEBI Act or any rules or regulations made thereunder to obtain a certificate of registration from the SEBI for sponsoring or carrying on any collective investment scheme, including mutual funds, sponsors or carries on any collective investment scheme, including mutual funds, without obtaining such certificate of registration	He shall be liable to a penalty which shall not be less than one lakh rupees but which may extend to one lakh rupees for each day during which he sponsors or carries on any such collective investment scheme including mutual funds subject to a maximum of one crore rupees
If any person, registered with the SEBI as a collective investment scheme, including mutual funds, for sponsoring or carrying on any investment scheme, fails to comply with the terms and conditions of certificate of registration	He shall be liable to a penalty which shall not be less than one lakh rupees but which may extend to one lakh rupees for each day during which such failure continues subject to a maximum of one crore rupees
If any person, registered with the SEBI as a collective investment scheme, including mutual funds, fails to make an application for listing of its schemes as provided for in the regulations governing such listing	He shall be liable to a penalty which shall not be less than one lakh rupees but which may extend to one lakh rupees for each day during which such failure continues subject to a maximum of one crore rupees
If any person, registered as a collective investment scheme, including mutual funds, fails to despatch unit certificates of any scheme in the manner provided in the regulation governing such despatch	He shall be liable to a penalty which shall not be less than one lakh rupees but which may extend to one lakh rupees for each day during which such failure continues subject to a maximum of one crore rupees

If any person, registered as a collective investment scheme, including mutual funds, fails to refund the application monies paid by the investors within the period specified in the regulations	He shall be liable to a penalty which shall not be less than one lakh rupees but which may extend to one lakh rupees for each day during which such failure continues subject to a maximum of one crore rupees
If any person, registered as a collective investment scheme, including mutual funds, fails to invest money collected by such collective investment schemes in the manner or within the period specified in the regulations	He shall be liable to a penalty which shall not be less than one lakh rupees but which may extend to one lakh rupees for each day during which such failure continues subject to a maximum of one crore rupees

KEY ASPECTS FOR LAUNCHING COLLECTIVE INVESTMENT SCHEME

1. The company floating CIS shall have to seek registration with SEBI as Collective Investment Management Company (CIMC).
2. CIS shall be constituted as a two tiered structure comprising of a trust and a CIMC.
3. At the time of application for Registration as CIMC, these entities should have a minimum networth of Rs. 3 crores which shall have to be increased to Rs. 5 crores within three years from the date of grant of registration.
4. **Compulsory Filing of Offer Documents:** Every collective investment Scheme shall have to file offer documents with SEBI containing adequate disclosures to enable the investors to take informed investment decisions.
5. **Mandatory Rating Requirement:** Each collective investment scheme shall have to obtain a rating from recognised credit rating agencies such as CRISIL Limited, Fitch Ratings India Private Limited, ICRA Limited, CARE, SMERA.
6. The projects being undertaken must also be appraised by an empanelled appraising agency such as Agricultural Finance Corporation Ltd., North Eastern Development Finance Corporation Ltd. (NEDFI), Indian Institute of Forest Management, The Forest Research Institute (FRI).
7. **No Assured Return:** The collective investment schemes are prohibited from guaranteeing assured returns. Indicative returns, if any, provided by the collective investment scheme shall be based on the projections in the appraisal report.
8. **Advertisement Code:** Advertisements in respect of every collective investment scheme shall have to conform to the SEBI's advertisement code.
9. **Subscription Period:** No collective investment scheme shall be kept open for subscription for a period of more than 90 days. The collective investment schemes shall be close ended in nature. The collective investment schemes must indicate the minimum and maximum amount proposed to be raised over this period.
10. **Duration of collective investment Schemes:** The duration of the collective investment schemes shall be for a minimum period of 3 years.
11. **Insurance:** Compulsory Insurance cover for the assets of the collective investment scheme and personal indemnity cover for the CIMC shall be obtained.
12. **Listing:** Units issued under the Collective Investment Schemes are to be compulsorily listed on recognised stock exchanges.

Accounting/Valuation norms: Accounting/valuation norms as stipulated shall have to be followed by Collective Investment Schemes.

ROLE OF COMPANY SECRETARY

The Company Secretary shall ensure that the money mobilization carried out by the company will not trigger the parameters of CIS Regulations.

CASE LAWS

1	05.06.2020	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Dairyland Plantations (India) Limited – Noticee No. 1 • Mrs. Roshan D. Nariman – Noticee No. 2 • Ms. Taz N. Nariman – Noticee No. 3 • Ms. Jeroo Nariman – Noticee No. 4 • Mrs. Silloo R. Nariman – Noticee No. 5 • Mr. Urvaksh Naval Hoyvoy – Noticee No. 6 • Mrs. Shernaz Kershasp Patel – Noticee No. 7 • Mrs. Meher Khushru Patel – Noticee No. 8 • Mrs. Rukhshana Meher Anklesaria – Noticee No. 9 	Whole Time Member Securities and Exchange Board of India
---	------------	--	--

Facts of the Case:

Securities and Exchange Board of India (hereinafter referred to as “SEBI”) conducted an examination into the business activities being carried out by Dairyland Plantations (India) Limited (hereafter referred to as “Company/DPL/Noticee no.1”). The examination of the business activities of the Company revealed that the Company had launched a scheme named as Green Gold Bonds scheme (hereinafter referred to as “Scheme”) which apparently possessed the requisite ingredients of a collective investment scheme (hereinafter referred to as “CIS”). It was noticed that the said Scheme entailed a one-time payment of Rs. 5 000 in lieu of a unit of 5 Teakwood trees with a holding period of 20 years and on maturity, the contributor/ investor had the option to get the teak trees or the realised sale proceeds thereof. The examination of the details of the scheme further revealed that the Company had mobilised approx. Rs. 1,00,82,000/- (Rs One Crore and Eighty-Two Thousand) from 1660 contributors/investors. It was observed that the Scheme was launched by the Company during the period from 1992 to 1996 and during the said period as well as subsequently thereafter during the operation of the Scheme, the Noticees no. 2 to 9 were its Directors and were responsible for the affairs of the management of the business of the Company. It was also noticed that the said Scheme was being carried on without obtaining registration from SEBI, in violation of provisions of Securities and Exchange Board of India Act, 1992 (hereinafter referred to as “SEBI Act”) and SEBI (Collective Investment Schemes) Regulations, 1999 (hereinafter referred to as “CIS Regulations”).

It is noted that Section 12 (1B) of SEBI Act, which came into effect on January 25, 1995 prohibited a person from carrying out any CIS, unless he obtains registration from SEBI. However, the section permitted existing entity who were carrying out CIS activities prior to the commencement of the aforesaid provision to continue with the existing scheme till Regulations governing CIS are promulgated. Subsequently a separate CIS Regulations of SEBI was enacted which came into force on October 15, 1999 in terms of which, all the existing CIS (prior to the commencement of CIS Regulations) were required to apply for registration or else, were required to wind up the existing CIS after making repayment to the contributors/investors and also were further required to file a Winding Up and Repayment report (hereinafter referred to as “WRR”) with SEBI in terms of the said CIS Regulations. Accordingly, various companies including the Noticee Company, which were running CIS schemes at the time of promulgation of the afore-stated CIS Regulations, were asked vide several letters and public notices, to abide by the provisions of the CIS Regulations and submit their compliance reports as mandated under the said Regulations. However, the Noticee Company neither obtained provisional registration, nor applied for registration of its CIS Scheme by the prescribed date of March 31, 2000, and did not even take necessary steps for winding up of the Scheme. Therefore, a Show Cause Notice dated May 12, 2000 (hereinafter referred to as “SCN”) was issued to the Company calling upon it to show cause as to why suitable directions shall not be issued against it for continuing with its CIS activities, in violations of the provisions of SEBI Act the CIS Regulations.

Order:**SEBI issue following directions:-**

- a) The Noticee Company shall, within a month from the date of issue of this order, cause to effect a newspaper publication in one national daily in English and in Hindi each, and in a local daily with wide circulation in each of the States wherein the investors reside, mentioning in bold letters the name of the Scheme i.e. 'Green Gold Bonds Scheme' in the said News Papers and inviting complaints/claims from any investor in respect of the said Green Gold Scheme from contributors/investors that are still outstanding. The newspaper publications shall also contain an advisory, informing the investors to forward a copy of their complaints/claims, with the superscription "Complaints/Claims in the Matter of Dairyland Plantations (India) Ltd.", to SEBI.
- b) A period of one month from the date of the advertisement shall be provided to contributors/investors for submitting any claim/complaint as stated aforesaid.
- c) The Company shall furnish to SEBI the details of the investors viz; name of the investors, amount invested, year of investment, address and other material information etc., within a period of 15 days from the date of this order.
- d) An interest bearing escrow account shall be opened by the Noticee Company in a nationalised public sector bank and the entire outstanding amount payable to the investors under the above stated Scheme shall be transferred/deposited to this escrow account within one month from the date of this order.
- e) The Company shall wind up its existing CIS and refund the money collected by the Company under the Scheme to the contributors/investors which are due to them strictly as per the terms of offer of the scheme. Those investors who want to opt for repayment in the form of 5 Teak-wood trees and not in cash, the Noticees shall refund them in the form of Teak-wood Trees on a best efforts basis but in the event the repayments cannot be made in the form of Teak-wood trees for want of permission/authorisation to cut the trees or any other genuine hardships, those investors shall also be repaid their dues in cash as per the terms of the scheme.
- f) The present incumbent Directors (Noticees no. 4 to 6) shall ensure that the aforesaid directions are complied with.
- g) Noticee Company and present incumbent Directors shall submit to SEBI a final Winding Up and Repayment Report (WRR) in the prescribed format for the purpose along with information on the claims so received, contributors/ investors so refunded and other details of escrow account duly supported by list of all contributors/investors, their contact details, details of investments and corresponding refunds made to the investors, bank account statements of the company indicating refunds so made to the investors and receipts taken from the investors acknowledging such refunds along with a consolidated statement of such repayments having been made, duly certified by two Independent Chartered Accountants, within a period of six (06) months from the date of this Order.
- h) Any amount remaining balance in the aforesaid escrow account after making repayment to contributors/ investors, shall be transferred to Investor Protection and Education Fund established under the SEBI (Investor Protection and Education Fund) Regulations, 2009 after a lapse of 1 year from the date of this order.
- i) All the Noticee Directors along with the Company (Noticee No.1) except for the Noticee no. 2 and 3 (against whom the proceedings stand abated on account of death), are restrained from accessing the Securities Market including by issuing prospectus, offer document or advertisement soliciting money from the public and are further prohibited from buying, selling or otherwise dealing in securities, directly or indirectly in any manner, for a period of one (01) year with effect from the date of filing of WRR to SEBI. It is clarified that during the period of restraint, the existing holding of securities of the Noticees including units of mutual funds, shall remain frozen.
- j) In the event the Noticee Company and the present Directors fail to carry out the directions issued at sub-paragraph (a) to (h) above or any complaint is received hereinafter suggesting that the Company has

failed to pay all the dues to the investors, the Noticee Company and its Directors (Noticees no. 4, 6, 7, 8 and 9) shall be jointly and severally liable to refund to the contributors/ investors such amounts in the manner provided under the direction in sub-para (e) above within a period of 03 months from the end of the six (06) months as directed under sub-para (g) above.

- k) The Noticee Company and its present Directors shall not divert any funds raised from public at large and shall not alienate or dispose of or sell any of the assets of the Company except for the purpose of making refund to its investors as directed above.
- l) The Noticee Company and Director Noticees no. 4, 6, 7, 8 and 9 shall provide inventory of details of all their assets (movable and immovable) within a period of one (01) month from the date of this order.

2	25.02.2019	<i>Nicer Green Housing Infrastructure Developers Ltd. & Ors. (Appellant) vs. SEBI (Respondent)</i>	Securities	Appellate Tribunal
---	------------	--	------------	--------------------

In the absence of any evidence that the appellants had refunded and that they are ready and willing to pay the balance amount to investors in a time bound manner, SAT is of the opinion that there is no infirmity in the order passed by SEBI disposing of their representations.

Facts of the case:

The Nicer Green Housing Infrastructure Developers Ltd., Appellant No. 1 is a company incorporated under the Companies Act, 1956 as a public limited company and is engaged in the business of acquiring agricultural land and developing the same for the purpose of re-sale. SEBI found that the activity of fund mobilization by the appellant no. 1 under its scheme fell within the ambit of “Collective Investment Scheme” as defined under Section 11AA of Securities and Exchange Board of India Act, 1992 (hereinafter referred to as, ‘SEBI Act’).

SEBI issued an order dated November 9, 2015 under Section 19 read with Sections 11(1), 11B and 11(4) of the SEBI Act read with Regulation 65 of Securities and Exchange Board of India (Collective Investment Schemes) Regulations, 1999 issuing a slew of directions restraining the appellant and its directors from collecting any money from the investors or to launch or to carry out any investments schemes.

SEBI further directed to refund the money collected under its scheme to the investors and thereafter wind up the company. The appellants being aggrieved by the said order filed an Appeal before the Securities Appellate Tribunal wherein the appellants contended that they are ready and willing to comply with the order passed by SEBI contending that out of an amount of Rs. 31.71 crore collected the appellants have already refunded Rs. 27.48 crore and that the appellants are ready and willing to refund the balance amount in a time bound manner.

Order:

SAT finds that no proof has been filed either before SEBI or even before this Tribunal to show that the appellants had refunded a sum of Rs. 27.48 crore and that they are ready and willing to pay the balance amount in a time bound manner. In the absence of any evidence being filed, SAT is of the opinion that there is no infirmity in the order passed by SEBI disposing of their representations. The appeal lack merit and is dismissed summarily.

LESSON ROUND-UP

- A collective investment scheme is a trust based scheme that comprises a pool of assets that is managed by a collective investment scheme manager and is governed by the Collective Investment Schemes Regulations given by the SEBI.
- A collective investment scheme should be constituted in the form of a trust and the instrument of trust should be in the form of a deed duly registered under the provisions of the Indian Registration Act, 1908 executed by the Collective Investment Management Company in favour of the trustees named in such an instrument.
- Collective Investment Management Company is regulated by the SEBI (Collective Investment Schemes) Regulations, 1999.
- The SEBI (Collective Investment Schemes) Regulations, 1999 defines Collective Investment Management Company to mean a company incorporated under the Companies Act, 2013 and registered with SEBI under these regulations, whose object is to organize, operate and manage a collective investment scheme.
- Trustee means a person who holds the property of the collective investment scheme in trust for the benefit of the unit holders, in accordance with these regulations.
- The units of every collective investment scheme shall be listed immediately after the date of allotment of units and not later than six weeks from the date of closure of the collective investment scheme on each of the stock exchanges as mentioned in the offer document.
- No collective investment scheme shall provide guaranteed or assured returns.
- No collective investment scheme shall be open for subscription for more than 90 days.
- The trustee shall ensure that the Collective Investment Management Company shall make such disclosures to the unit holders as are essential in order to keep them informed about any matter which may have an adverse bearing on their investments.
- Any person aggrieved by an order of the SEBI made under these regulations may prefer an appeal to a Securities Appellate Tribunal having jurisdiction in the matter.

GLOSSARY

Fundamental Attributes	It means the investment objective and terms of a scheme.
Pooling	Pooling is the basic concept behind collective investments. The money of thousands of individual investors, who share a common investment objective, is pooled together to form a CIS portfolio.
Ponzi Scheme	A ponzi scheme is an investment from where clients are promised a large profit in short term at little or no risk at all.
Scheme	It means Collective Investment Scheme.
Unit Holders	Investors in unit trust/mutual funds.

TEST YOURSELF

(These are meant for recapitulation only. Answer to these questions are not to be submitted for evaluation)

1. What are the restrictions imposed on business activities for Collective Investment Management Company?
2. Discuss the schemes and arrangements which are not coming under the ambit of collective investment scheme.
3. What are the obligations of Collective Investment Management Company under the SEBI (Collective Investment Scheme) Regulations, 1999?
4. State the provisions relating to allotments of units and refund of money under the SEBI (Collective Investment Scheme) Regulations, 1999.
5. What should be the contents of the trust deed which is required to be executed under the SEBI (Collective Investment Scheme) Regulations, 1999.
6. What are the General Obligations of Collective Investment Scheme Company?
7. What the procedure of action by SEBI in case of default by Collective Investment Management Company?
8. “Co-ordination of Trustee and Collective Investment Management Company is absolutely necessary for success of a Collective Investment Scheme.” Explain in this context, the rights available to the trustee.

LIST OF FURTHER READINGS

- SEBI Circulars

OTHER REFERENCES (Including Websites/Video Links)

- <https://www.sebi.gov.in/index.html>
- https://www.sebi.gov.in/sebi_data/faqfiles/jan-2017/1485846814724.pdf

This image shows a blank sheet of white paper with horizontal ruling lines. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There are no margins, text, or other markings on the paper.

Lesson 14

Resolution of Complaints and Guidance

Key Concepts One Should Know

- SCORES
- Grievances
- Ombudsman
- Stipendiary Ombudsman
- Informal Guidance
- No-action letters
- Imperative Letters

Learning Objectives

To understand:

- SCORES Framework
- Process of lodging complaints on SCORES and time line for lodging complaints on SCORES
- Matters that not considered as complaints in SCORES
- Complaints against which type of companies cannot be dealt on SCORES
- Manner of handling the complaints by Listed Entities, intermediaries and Stock Exchange
- Concept of Ombudsman
- Power and Functions for SEBI Ombudsman and procedure for resolution before Ombudsman
- Informal Guidance Scheme

Regulatory Framework

- SEBI (Ombudsman) Regulations, 2003
- SEBI (Informal Guidance) Scheme, 2003
- SEBI Circulars

Lesson Outline

- Introduction
- Matters not considered as complaints in Scores
- Type of companies not covered under Scores
- Timeline for lodging complaint on SCORES
- Process for lodging complaint online in SCORE by investors
- Handling of the complaints by listed entities and SEBI registered intermediaries
- Handling of SCORES Complaints by Stock Exchange
- When are Investor Complaints Disposed of?
- When can SEBI take action for non- resolution of investor complaints?
- When can a case be referred for Arbitration?
- SEBI mobile application : Recent Development
- Case Laws
- SEBI (Ombudsman) Regulations, 2003
- SEBI (Informal Guidance) Scheme, 2003
- LESSON ROUND-UP
- GLOSSARY
- TEST YOURSELF
- LIST OF FURTHER READINGS
- OTHER REFERENCES

INTRODUCTION

SCORES (SEBI Complaints Redress System) is an online platform designed to help investors to lodge their complaints, pertaining to securities market, online with SEBI against listed companies and SEBI registered intermediaries. All complaints received by SEBI against listed companies and SEBI registered intermediaries are dealt through SCORES.

SEBI launched a centralized web based complaints redress system 'SCORES' in June 2011. The purpose of SCORES is to provide a platform for aggrieved investors, whose grievances, pertaining to securities market, remain unresolved by the concerned listed company or registered intermediary after a direct approach. SCORES also provides a platform, overseen by SEBI through which the investors can approach the concerned listed company or SEBI registered intermediary in an endeavor towards speedy redressal of grievances of investors in the securities market. It would, however, be advisable that investors may initially take up their grievances for redressal with the concerned listed company or registered intermediary, who are required to have designated persons/officer for handling issues relating to compliance and redressal of investor grievances.

The salient features of SCORES are:

- Centralised database of investor complaints
- Online movement of complaints to the concerned listed company or SEBI registered intermediary
- Online upload of Action Taken Reports (ATRs) by the concerned listed company or SEBI registered intermediary
- Online viewing by investors of actions taken on the complaint and its current status
- 5. SCORES is web enabled and provides online access 24 x7;
- Complaints and reminders thereon can be lodged online at the above website at anytime from anywhere;
- An email is generated instantaneously acknowledging the receipt of complaint and allotting a unique complaint registration number to the complainant for future reference and tracking;
- The complaint forwarded online to the entity concerned for its redressal;

MATTERS NOT CONSIDERED AS COMPLAINTS IN SCORES

- Complaint not pertaining to investment in securities market.
- Anonymous Complaints (except whistleblower complaints).
- Incomplete or un-specific complaints.
- Allegations without supporting documents.
- Suggestions or seeking guidance/explanation.
- Not satisfied with trading price of the shares of the companies.
- Non-listing of shares of private offer.
- Disputes arising out of private agreement with companies/intermediaries.
- Matter involving fake/forged documents.
- Complaints on matters not in SEBI purview.
- Complaints about any unregistered/ un-regulated activity.

Question: Which are the complaints that come under the purview of SEBI?

Answer: Complaints arising out of issues that are covered under SEBI Act, Securities Contract Regulation Act, Depositories Act and rules and regulation made there under and relevant provisions of Companies Act, 2013 are under the purview of SEBI

TYPE OF COMPANIES NOT COVERED UNDER SCORES

Complaints against the following companies cannot be dealt through SCORES even though the complaint may be against a listed entity/ SEBI registered intermediary:-

- Complaints against the companies which are unlisted/delisted, placed on the Dissemination Board of Stock Exchange.
- Complaints against a sick company or a company where a moratorium order is passed in winding up / insolvency proceedings.
- Complaints against the companies where the name of company is struck off from Registrar of Companies (RoC) or a Vanishing Company as per list published by Ministry of Corporate Affairs (MCA).Suspended companies, companies under liquidation, BIFR etc.
- Complaints that are sub-judice i.e. relating to cases which are under consideration by court of law, quasi-judicial proceedings etc.
- Complaints against companies, falling under the purview of other regulatory bodies viz. The Reserve Bank of India (RBI), The Insurance Regulatory and Development Authority of India (IRDAI), the Pension Funds Regulatory and Development Authority (PFRDA), Competition Commission of India (CCI), etc., or under the purview of other ministries viz., MCA, etc.

Question: Which companies are required to obtain SCORES authentication?

Answer: All registered intermediaries and listed companies are required to take SCORES authentication except stock brokers, sub brokers and Depository Participants. Stock Brokers, Sub-Brokers and Depository Participants are not required to obtain SCORES authentication since complaints against these intermediaries shall continue to be routed through the platforms of the concerned Stock Exchange/Depository.

TIME LINE FOR LODGING COMPLAINT ON SCORES

From 1st August 2018, an investor may lodge a complaint on SCORES within three years from the date of cause of complaint, where;

- Investor has approached the listed company or registered intermediary for redressal of the complaint and,
- The concerned listed company or registered intermediary rejected the complaint or,
- The complainant does not receive any communication from the listed company or intermediary concerned or,
- The complainant is not satisfied with the reply given to him or redressal action taken by the listed company or an intermediary.

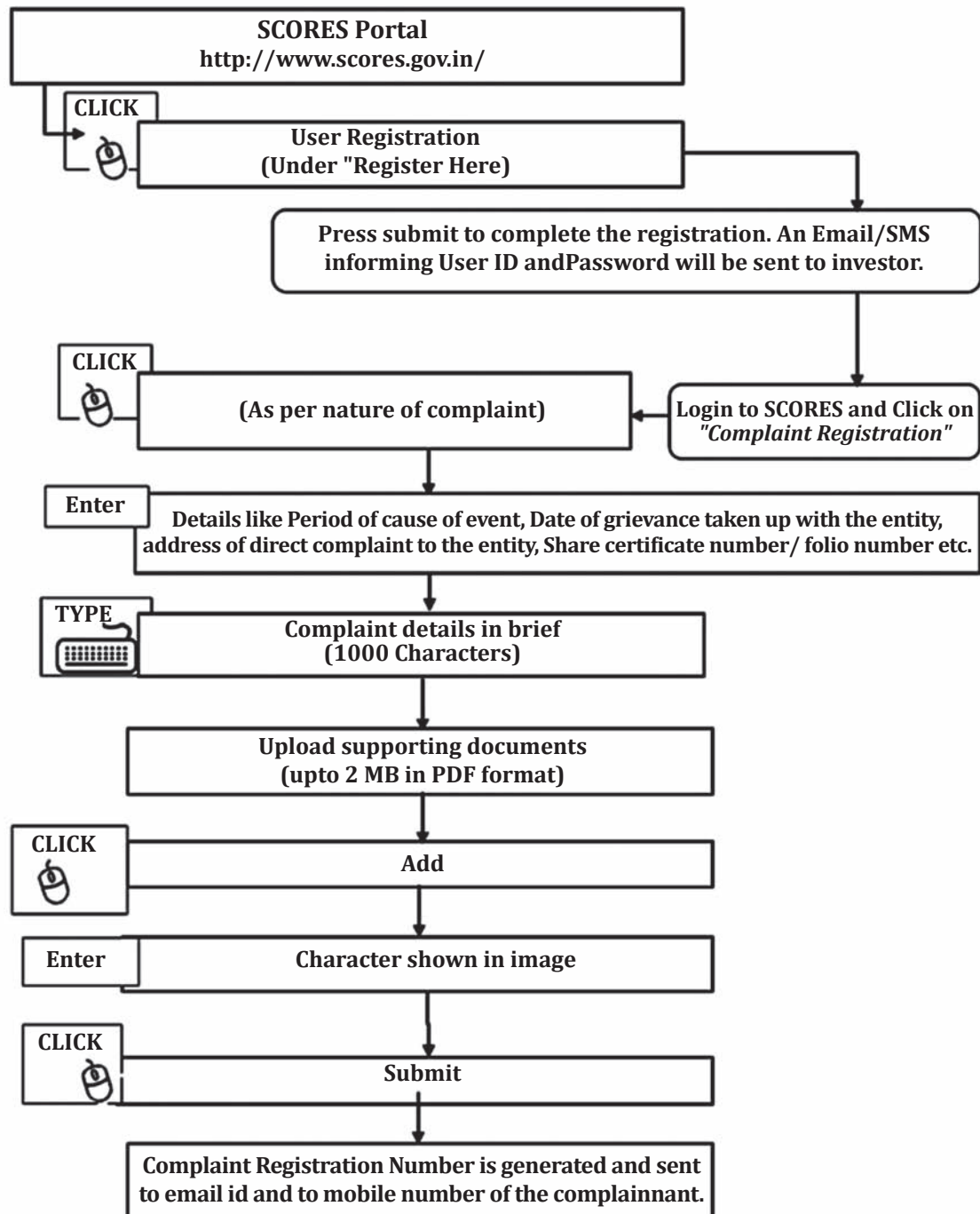
EXAMPLE

If the date of declaration of dividend by a company is 01.01.2015, as per the Companies Act, 2013 the Company has to pay the dividend within 30 days from the declaration of the dividend date to all its registered shareholder. If the Company fails to pay the declared dividend within 30 days i.e. 31.01.2015 as the dividend was declared on 01.01.2015, the date of cause of complaint would be 31.01.2015 and a complaint can be lodged on SCORES within 3 years from 31.01.2015 i.e. on or before 30.01.2018.

Question: What happen if an investor fails to lodge a complaint on SCORES within three years?

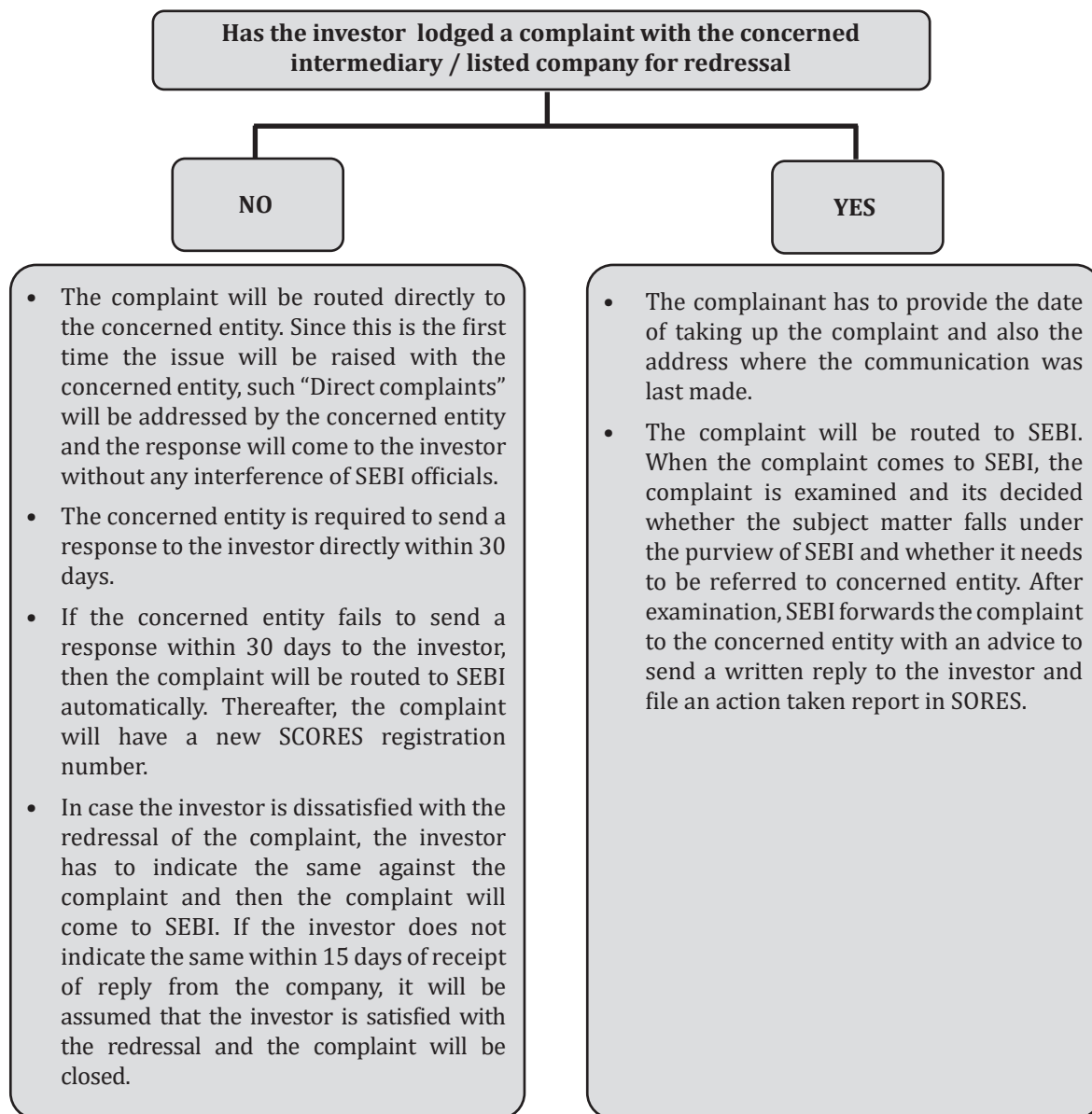
Answer: In case investor fails to lodge a complaint within the stipulated time of three years, he may directly take up the complaint with the entity concerned or may approach appropriate court of law.

PROCESS FOR LODGING COMPLAINT ONLINE ON SCORE BY INVESTORS



HANDLING OF THE COMPLAINTS BY LISTED ENTITIES AND SEBI REGISTERED INTERMEDIARIES

It was seen that investors frequently lodged complaint on SCORES without actually taking the matter up with the concerned company/ intermediary. In view of the same, from August 01, 2018, complaints will be handled as follows:-



Question: How long does it take the entity to respond to investor complaint?

Answer: Entities are required to submit the action taken report within a reasonable period but not later than 30 days.

HANDLING OF SCORES COMPLAINTS BY STOCK EXCHANGE

Stock exchanges will be the first recourse for the following categories of complaints against listed companies.

- Non updation of address /Signature or Corrections etc
- Non-receipt of Bonus
- Non receipt of Dividend
- Non receipt duplicate debt securities certificate
- Non-receipt of duplicate share certificate

- Non receipt of fractional entitlement
- Non receipt of interest for delay in dividend
- Non receipt of interest for delay in payment of interest on debt security
- Non receipt of interest for delay in redemption proceeds of debt security
- Non receipt of interest for delay in refunds
- Non receipt of interest on securities
- Non receipt of redemption amount of debt securities
- Non receipt of refund in Public/ Rights issue
- Non receipt of Rights Issue form
- Non receipt of securities after conversion/ endorsement/ consolidation/ splitting
- Non receipt of securities after transfer
- Non receipt of securities in public/ rights issue
- Non receipt of shares after conversion/ endorsement/ consolidation/ splitting
- Non receipt of shares after transfer
- Non receipt of shares after transmission
- Non receipt of shares in public/ rights issue (including allotment letter)
- Non-receipt of interest for delay in dispatch/credit of securities
- Receipt of refund/ dividend in physical mode instead of electronic mode
- Receipt of shares in physical mode instead of electronic mode
- Demat/Remat

Procedure for handling complaints by the stock exchanges

Investors are encouraged to initially take up their grievances for redressal with the concerned listed company directly. SCORES platform can also be used to submit grievances directly to the company for resolution, if the complainant has not approached the company earlier. Companies are expected to resolve the complaint directly.



In case the company does not redress the complaint within 30 days from the date of receipt of the complaint, such direct complaints shall be forwarded to Designated Stock Exchange (DSE) through SCORES.



At the time of lodging the complaint through SCORES platform, in case the complainant had approached the company earlier, the complainant shall submit all such details of the complaint in SCORES i.e., period of cause of event, date of grievance taken up with the entity, address of the company corresponded earlier, etc. Such complaints shall be forwarded to the DSE.



Upon receipt of the complaint through SCORES platform, the DSE shall take up the complaint with the company. The company is required to redress the complaint and submit an Action Taken Report (ATR) within 30 days from the date of receipt of such complaint.



In case the ATR is not submitted by the company within 30 days or DSE is of the opinion that the complaint is not adequately redressed and the complaint remains pending beyond 30 days, a reminder shall be issued by DSE to the listed company through SCORES directing expeditious redressal of the grievance within another 30 days.



On being adequately satisfied with the response of the company with respect to the complaint, the stock exchange shall submit an ATR to SEBI.



For any failure to redress investor grievances pending beyond 60 days by listed companies, stock exchange shall initiate appropriate action against the listed company.

Action of Stock Exchange for Failure to Redress Investor Complaints

In terms of SEBI circular SEBI/HO/CFD/CMD/CIR/P/2020/12 dated 22 January, 2020, Stock Exchanges shall, having regard to the interest of investors and the securities market, inter alia take action against listed companies for non-compliance with the provisions of the Listing Regulations and circulars/guidelines issued thereunder, including failure to ensure expeditious redressal of investor complaints under Regulation 13 of the Listing Regulations.

Stock exchanges shall levy a fine of Rs. 1000 per day per complaint on the listed entity for violation of Regulation 13 (1) of SEBI (LODR) Regulations, 2015 read with SEBI circular no. SEBI/HO/CFD/CMD/CIR/P/2020/12 dated 22 January, 2020. Fines shall also be levied on companies which are suspended from trading.

Timelines for handling of complaints and actions in case of non compliances

Sr No.	Activity	No of calendar days
1.	Complaint handling:	
a.	Complaint received in SCORES by the listed company	T
b.	Response to be obtained from Listed Company	Within T+30
c.	If no response received, alert to Listed Company in the form of reminder for non-redressal of complaint	T+31
d.	Response to be obtained from Listed Company	Within T+60
2.	Action in case of non-compliances:	
a.	Notice to Listed company intimating the fine @ Rs. 1000/- per day, per complaint to be levied for not resolving the complaints within 60 days	T+61
b.	Notice to Promoters for non-resolution of complaints and nonpayment of fine to the stock exchange.	T+76
c.	Freezing of promoters shareholdings (i.e. entire shareholding of the promoters in listed company as well as all other securities held in the demat account of the promoters) in demat account.	T+86
d.	Stock exchanges may take any other actions, as deemed appropriate.	
e.	Once Stock exchange has exhausted all options and if number of pending complaints exceed 20 or the value involved is more than Rs. 10 lakhs, the Exchange to forward the details of such Listed companies to SEBI for further action, if any	

WHEN ARE INVESTOR COMPLAINTS DISPOSED OF?

Complaints are disposed of by SEBI

- On receipt of satisfactory action taken report along with supporting documents, if any, from the concerned entity responsible for resolving the complaint.
- On failure by the investor/complainant to give complete details/documents required for redressal of their complaint within the prescribed time.
- When the concerned entity's case is pending with court/ other judicial authority.

WHEN CAN SEBI TAKE ACTION FOR NON-RESOLUTION OF INVESTOR COMPLAINTS?

For listed companies: SEBI has empowered stock exchanges to levy fine for non-redressal of investor complaints in terms of the relevant provisions of SEBI (Listing and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2015 to be read with SEBI circular No. SEBI/HO/OIAE/IGRD/CIR/P/2020/152 dated August 13, 2020 and circular No. SEBI/HO/CFD/CMD/CIR/P/2020/12 dated January 22, 2020.

If the complaint is not redressed/ fine is not paid, the stock exchanges can direct the depositories to freeze the entire shareholding of the promoter and promoter group in such entity as well as all other securities held in the demat account of the promoter and promoter group. If non-compliance continues, the stock exchanges may refer such cases to SEBI for enforcement actions, if any.

Notwithstanding the above, while the entity is directly responsible for redressal of investor complaints, SEBI can initiate action against recalcitrant entities including registered intermediaries and listed companies on the grounds of their failure to redress investor complaints.

WHEN CAN A CASE BE REFERRED FOR ARBITRATION?

If there is any dispute (claims, complaints, differences, etc.) between a client and a member of Stock Exchange (i.e. Stock Broker, Trading Member and Clearing Member) / a member of Depository [i.e. depository participant (DP)] which has not been resolved to their satisfaction, either party can prefer for an arbitration proceedings for settlement of their disputes.

Arbitration is a quasi-judicial process for settlement of disputes. Stock Exchanges/ Depositories provide an arbitration mechanism for settlement of disputes (claims, complaints, differences, etc.) between a client and a member/depositories participant (DP) through arbitration proceedings in accordance with the provisions of SEBI Act/ Regulations/ Circulars/ guidelines read with Section 2(4) of the Arbitration and Conciliation, Act, 1996.

The limitation period for filing an arbitration reference is governed by the law of limitation, i.e., The Limitation Act, 1963. To obtain information about how to file an arbitration claim, the following links may be seen:-

BSE: https://www.bseindia.com/static/investors/arbitration_mechanism.aspx

NSE: https://www.nseindia.com/invest/content/about_arbitration.htm

SEBI MOBILE APPLICATION: RECENT DEVELOPMENT

In its efforts to improve the ease of doing business, SEBI dated March 5, 2020, launched a Mobile Application for the convenience of investors to lodge their grievances in SEBI Complaints Redress System (SCORES).

SCORES mobile app will make it easier for investors to lodge their grievances with SEBI, as they can now access SCORES at their convenience of a smart phone. The Mobile App will encourage investors to lodge their complaints on SCORES rather than sending letters to SEBI in physical mode.

This is another effort of SEBI in improving digitalization in securities market. The App has all the features of SCORES which is presently available electronically where investors have to lodge their complaints by using internet medium. After mandatory registration on the App, for each grievance lodged, investors will get an acknowledgement via SMS and e-mail on their registered mobile numbers and e-mail ID respectively.

Investors can, not only file their grievances but also track the status of their complaint redressal. Investors can also key in reminders for their pending grievances. Tools like FAQs on SCORES for better understanding of the complaint handling process can also be accessed. Connectivity to the SEBI Toll Free Helpline number has been provided from the App for any clarifications/help that investors may require.

SCORES is a platform designed to help investors to lodge their complaints online with SEBI, pertaining to securities market, against listed companies, SEBI registered intermediaries and SEBI recognized Market Infrastructure Institutions. Since its launch in June 2011, SEBI on an average has received about 40,000 complaints every year. A total of 3,57,000 complaints has been resolved using SCORES platform, so far. As per SEBI norms, entities against

whom complaints are lodged are required to file an Action Taken Report with SEBI within 30 days of receipt of complaints.

The Mobile App “SEBI SCORES” is available on both iOS and Android platforms.

CASE LAWS

1.	17.03.2020	<i>Usha India Limited. (Noticee) vs. SEBI</i>	Adjudicating Officer, Securities and Exchange Board of India
----	------------	---	--

Fact of the Case:

Securities and Exchange Board of India (hereinafter referred to as, “SEBI”) vide Circular No. CIR/OIAE/2/2011 dated June 03, 2011, directed all listed companies to obtain SEBI Complaints Redressal System (hereinafter referred to as, “SCORES”) authentication and also redress any pending investor grievances in that platform only. Subsequently, SEBI also vide Circulars No CIR/OIAE/1/2012 dated August 13, 2012, No. CIR/OIAE/1/2013 dated April 17, 2013 and No CIR/OIAE/1/2014 dated December 18, 2014, (hereinafter referred to as, “SEBI circulars”) inter alia directed all companies whose securities were listed on Stock Exchanges to obtain SCORES authentication within a period of 30 days from the date of issue of this circular and also to redress the pending investor grievances within the stipulated time period.

It was alleged that Usha India Limited (hereinafter referred to as, “Noticee/Company”) had failed to obtain the SCORES authentication and to redress investor grievances pending therein within the timelines stipulated by SEBI, therefore not complying with the aforesaid SEBI Circulars.

Order

After taking into consideration all the facts and circumstances of the case, Adjudicating officer imposed a penalty of Rs. 1,00,000/- (Rupees One Lakh Only) under Section 15HB of the SEBI Act and Rs. 1,00,000/- (Rupees One Lakh Only) under section 15C of the SEBI Act, i.e. penalties totalling to Rs. 2,00,000/- (Rupees Two Lakh Only) on the Noticee viz. Usha India Limited, which will be commensurate with its non compliances.

2.	29.11.2017	<i>Shikhar Consultants Ltd. (Noticee) vs. SEBI</i>	Adjudicating Officer, Securities and Exchange Board of India
----	------------	--	--

Facts of the Case:

Securities and Exchange Board of India (hereinafter referred to as “SEBI”) had issued its first circular viz. CIR/OIAE/2/2011 dated June 03, 2011 for inter alia obtaining authentication on SEBI Complaints Redress System (hereinafter referred to as “SCORES”) for processing investor complaints received by SEBI. Thereafter, SEBI issued two more Circulars, i.e. CIR/OIAE/1/2012 dated August 13, 2012 and CIR/OIAE/1/2013 dated April 17, 2013 inter alia directing all the companies whose securities were listed on stock exchanges to obtain SCORES authentication and also redress the pending investor grievances within the stipulated time period. On December 18, 2014, SEBI issued Circular No. CIR/OIAE/1/2014 dated December 18, 2014 consolidating the earlier Circulars/ directions. The said Circular dated December 18, 2014 further inter alia stated that failure by any listed company to obtain SCORES authentication would not only be deemed as non-redressal of investor grievances, but, also indicate willful avoidance of the same and that failure to take action under the rescinded circulars before the date of issuance of SEBI Consolidated Circular, shall be deemed to have been done or taken or commenced under the provisions of Circular dated December 18, 2014. The aforementioned SEBI Circulars are hereinafter collectively referred to as the “SEBI Circulars”.

SEBI observed that Shikhar Consultants Ltd. (hereinafter referred to as the “Noticee”/ “Company”) had failed to comply with the said provisions of the SEBI Circulars.

It was, therefore, alleged that the Noticee has failed to obtain SCORES authentication and thereby violated the SEBI Circulars, thus, making the Noticee liable for imposition of penalty under Section 15HB of the Securities and Exchange Board of India Act, 1992 (hereinafter referred to as “the SEBI Act”).

ORDER BY SEBI

After taking into consideration all the facts and circumstances of the case, Adjudicating Officer imposed a penalty of Rs. 8,00,000/- (Rupees Eight Lakh Only) on the Noticee, Shikhar Consultants Ltd., under Section 15HB of the SEBI Act, which will be commensurate with the violations committed by the Noticee.

APPEAL TO SAT AGAINST ORDER OF SEBI

Shikhar Consultants Ltd. - Appellant Versus Securities and Exchange Board of India - Respondent

The appeal was filed to challenge the order passed by the Adjudicating Officer ('A. O.' for short) of Securities and Exchange Board of India ('SEBI' for short) on November 29, 2017. By the said order penalty of Rs. 8 lac was imposed on the appellant under Section 15HB of Securities and Exchange Board of India Act, 1992 ('SEBI Act' for short), inter-alia, for not complying with the directions contained in the SEBI circular dated August 13, 2012.

As per SEBI circular dated August 13, 2012, it was obligatory on part of all the listed companies including the appellant to obtain SCORES authentication by September 14, 2012.

Admittedly, the appellant did not apply for and obtain SCORES authentication within the time stipulated under the SEBI circular dated August 13, 2012. Appellant applied for SCORES authentication belatedly on July 26, 2017 and the same was granted to the appellant on July 31, 2017.

As the appellant failed to obtain SCORES authentication within the time stipulated in the circular August 13, 2012, the A. O. has held that the appellant is guilty of violating the SEBI's circular dated August 13, 2012 and, accordingly, imposed penalty of Rs. 8 lac on the appellant.

SAT ORDER DATED APRIL 9, 2018

By failing to obtain SCORES authentication within the stipulated time, appellant has violated the SEBI circular dated August 13, 2012 is not in dispute. However, apart from various mitigating factors set out hereinabove, it is seen that in several similar cases, the A. O. of SEBI has deemed it fit not to impose any penalty against those entities even though the minimum penalty imposable is Rs. 1 lac under Section 15HB of SEBI Act.

In these circumstances, while directing the adjudicating Officers of SEBI to ensure that they pass orders in consonance with the provisions of SEBI act, in the facts of present case, having regard to the mitigating factors set out hereinabove, SAT deem it proper to reduce the penalty from Rs. 8 lac to Rs. 1 lac being the minimum penalty imposable under Section 15HB of SEBI Act. Appeal is partly allowed in the aforesaid terms with no order as to costs.

OMBUDSMAN

Introduction

In terms of section 11 of the SEBI Act it is one of the duties of SEBI to protect the interests of investors in securities market by taking necessary steps as it deems fit. SEBI had been receiving complaints from the investors against listed companies particularly with respect to non receipt of refund orders, non receipt of shares certificates / unit certificates, non receipt of dividend and many more matters. The complaints against intermediaries regarding deficiency of service have been in a large number.

For redressal of the investor grievance, SEBI has been advising the companies or the intermediaries to redress the same. The investors have also been claiming damages / compensation / interest etc. The other course of action against the listed company is prosecution or imposition of monetary penalty of the erring companies. The available action against intermediaries is the suspension and cancellation of registration or imposition of monetary penalty. The above does not redress the grievance of investors or give any compensation to the investors. Therefore, issue of an alternative redressal mechanism which is cheap, fast, informal and efficient has been engaging the attention of SEBI.

Question: Who is Ombudsman?

Answer: Ombudsman in its literal sense is an independent person appointed to hear and act upon citizen's complaint about government services. This concept was invented in Sweden and the idea has been widely adopted. For example, various banks, insurance companies have appointed Ombudsman to attend to the complaints of their customers.

The SEBI has issued the SEBI (Ombudsman) Regulations, 2003. Regulation 2(l) of these Regulations defines Ombudsman as under:

“Ombudsman” means any person appointed under regulation 3 of these regulations and unless the context otherwise requires, includes stipendiary Ombudsman.

Regulation 2(n) of the Regulations defines **stipendiary Ombudsman** as a person appointed under regulation 9 for the purpose of acting as Ombudsman in respect of a specific matter or matters in a specific territorial jurisdiction and for which he may be paid such expenses, honorarium, sitting fees as may be determined by the SEBI from time to time.

The regulations further deal with establishment of office of Ombudsman, powers and functions of Ombudsman, procedure for redressal of Grievances and implementation of the award.

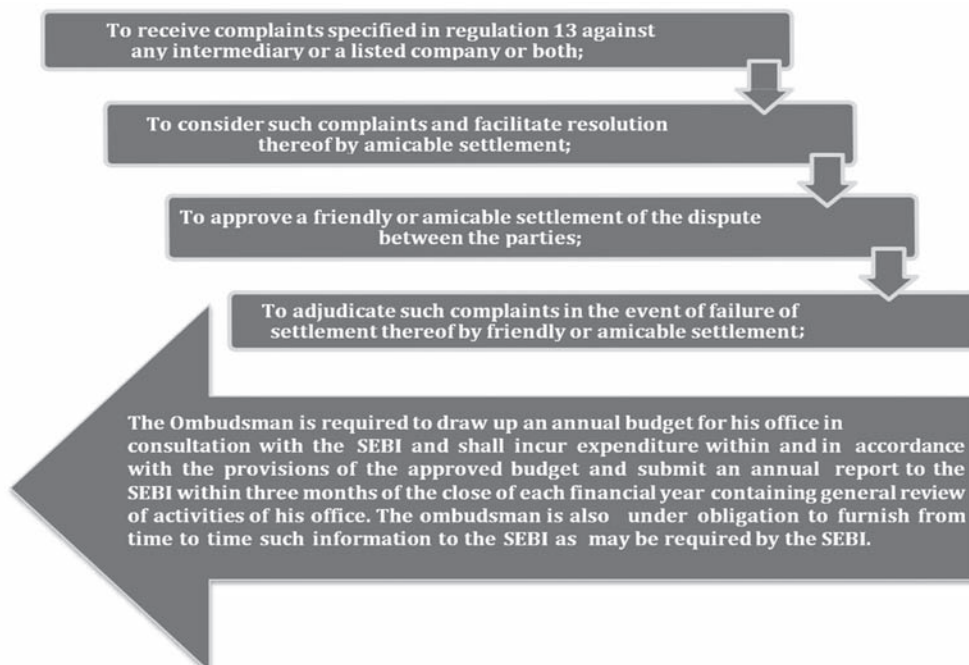
The term **“complaint”** under these Regulation means a representation in writing containing a grievance as specified in regulation 13 of these regulations; and **“complainant”** means any investor who lodges complaint with the Ombudsman and includes an investors association recognised by the SEBI.

An **“investor”** means a person who invests or buys or sells or deals in securities.

“Listed company” has been defined in the Regulations to mean a company whose securities are listed on a recognised stock exchange and includes a public company which intends to get its securities listed on a recognised stock exchange.

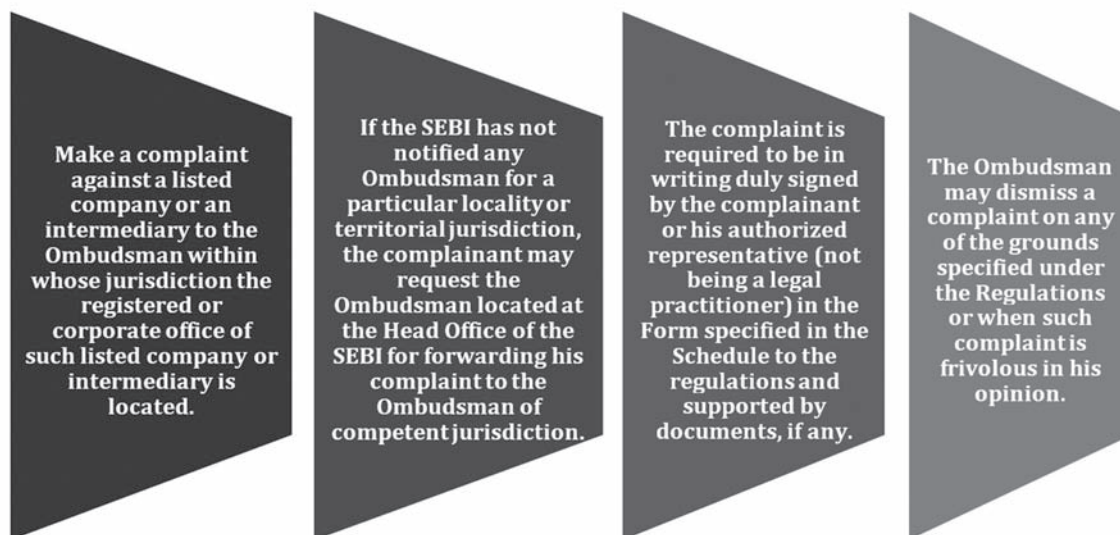
Territorial Jurisdiction

Every Ombudsman or Stipendiary Ombudsman exercises jurisdiction in relation to an area as may be specified by the SEBI by an order.

Powers and Functions of Ombudsman

Procedure for filing a complaint

Any person who has a grievance against a listed company or an intermediary relating to any of the matters specified above may himself or through his authorised representative or any investors association recognised by the SEBI:



No complaint to the Ombudsman shall lie –

- (a) unless the complainant had, before making a complaint to the SEBI or the Ombudsman concerned, made a written representation to the listed company or the intermediary named in the complaint and the listed company or the intermediary, as the case may be, had rejected the complaint or the complainant had not received any reply within a period of one month after the listed company or intermediary concerned received his representation or the complainant is not satisfied with the reply given to him by the listed company or an intermediary;
- (b) unless the complaint is made within six months from the date of the receipt of communication of rejection of his complaint by the complainant or within seven months after the receipt of complaint by the listed company or intermediary under clause (a) above;
- (c) if the complaint is in respect of the same subject matter which was settled through the Office of the SEBI or Ombudsman concerned in any previous proceedings, whether or not received from the same complainant or along with any one or more or other complainants or any one or more of the parties concerned with the subject matter;
- (d) if the complaint pertains to the same subject matter for which any proceedings before the SEBI or any court, tribunal or arbitrator or any other forum is pending or a decree or award or a final order has already been passed by any such competent authority, court, tribunal, arbitrator or forum;
- (e) if the complaint is in respect of or pertaining to a matter for which action has been taken by the SEBI under Section 11(4) of the Act or Chapter VIA or Section 12(3) of the Act or any other regulations made thereunder.

Power to call for information

- An Ombudsman may require the listed company or the intermediary named in the complaint or any other person, institution or authority to provide any information or furnish certified copy of any document relating to the subject matter of the complaint which is or is alleged to be in its or his possession.
- In the event of the failure of a listed company or the intermediary to comply with the requisition made without any sufficient cause, the Ombudsman may, if he deems fit, draw the inference that the information, if provided or copies if furnished, would be unfavourable to the listed company or intermediary.

- The Ombudsman is required to maintain confidentiality of any information or document coming to his knowledge or possession in the course of discharging his duties and shall not disclose such information or document to any person except and as otherwise required by law or with the consent of the person furnishing such information or document.
- The Ombudsman has been empowered to disclose information or document furnished by a party in a complaint to the other party or parties, to the extent considered by him to be reasonably required to comply with the principles of natural justice and fair play in the proceedings.
- However, these provisions shall not apply in relation to the disclosures made or information furnished by the Ombudsman SEBI or to the publication of Ombudsman's award in any journal or newspaper or filing thereof before any Court, Forum or Authority.

Settlement by Mutual Agreement

As soon as it may be practicable so to do, the Ombudsman shall cause a notice of the receipt of any complaint along with a copy of the complaint sent to the registered or corporate office of the listed company or office of the intermediary named in the complaint and endeavour to promote a settlement of the complaint by agreement or mediation between the complainant and the listed company or intermediary named in the complaint.

- If any amicable settlement or friendly agreement is arrived at between the parties, the Ombudsman may pass an award in terms of such settlement or agreement within one month from the date thereof and direct the parties to perform their obligations in accordance with the terms recorded in the award.
- For the purpose of promoting a settlement of the complaint, the Ombudsman may follow such procedure and take such actions as he may consider appropriate.

Award and Adjudication

- In case the matter is not resolved by mutually acceptable agreement within a period of one month of the receipt of the complaint or such extended period as may be permitted by the Ombudsman.
- He may, based upon the material placed before him and after giving opportunity of being heard to the parties, give his award in writing or pass any other directions or orders as he may consider appropriate.
- Such award shall be made within a period of three months from the date of the filing of the complaint.
- The Ombudsman should send his award to the parties to the adjudication to perform their obligations under the award.
- Within fifteen days from the receipt of the award a party, with notice to the other party, may request the Ombudsman to correct any computation errors, any clerical or typographical errors or any other errors of a similar nature occurring in the award.
- If the Ombudsman considers the request made above to be justified, he shall make the correction within fifteen days from the receipt of the request which shall form part of the award.

Finality of Award

- An award given by the Ombudsman shall be final and binding on the parties and persons claiming under them respectively.
- Any party aggrieved by the award on adjudication may file a petition before SEBI within one month from the receipt of the award or corrected award setting out the grounds for review of the award.

Review of Award

- The SEBI may review the award if there is substantial mis-carriage of justice, or there is an error apparent on the face of the award.
- Where a petition for review of the award, such petition shall not be entertained by the SEBI unless the party filing the petition has deposited with SEBI seventy-five percent of the amount mentioned in the award.
- Further, the SEBI may for reasons to be recorded in writing, waive or reduce the amount to be deposited.
- The SEBI may review the award and pass such order as it may deem appropriate, within a period of forty five days of the filing of the petition for review.
- The party so directed shall implement the award within 30 days of receipt of the order of SEBI on review or within such period as may be specified by the SEBI in the order disposing off the review petition.
- The award passed by the Ombudsman shall remain suspended till the expiry of period of one month for filing review petition or till the review petition is disposed off by the SEBI, as the case may be.

Evidence Act not to apply in the Proceedings before Ombudsman

In proceedings before the Ombudsman strict rules of evidence under the Evidence Act shall not apply and the Ombudsman may determine his own procedure consistent with the principles of natural justice.

Ombudsman shall decide whether to hold oral hearings for the presentation of evidence or for oral argument or whether the proceeding shall be conducted on the basis of documents and other materials.

However, it shall not be necessary for an investor to be present at the oral hearing of proceedings under these regulations and the Ombudsman may proceed on the basis of the documentary evidence submitted before him.

No legal practitioner shall be permitted to represent the defendants or respondents at the proceedings before the Ombudsman except where a legal practitioner has been permitted to represent the complainants by the Ombudsman.

Cost and Interest

The Ombudsman or the SEBI, as the case may be, have been empowered to award reasonable compensation along with interest including future interest till date of satisfaction of the award at a rate which may not exceed one percent per mensem.

The Ombudsman in the case of an award, or the SEBI in the case of order passed in petition for review of the award, as the case may be, may determine the cost of the proceedings in the award and include the same in the award or, in the order as the case may be. The Ombudsman or the SEBI may impose cost on the complainant for filing complaint or any petition for review, which is frivolous.

Implementation of the Award

The award will be implemented by the party so directed within one month of receipt of the award from the Ombudsman or an order of the SEBI passed in review petition or within such period as specified in the award or order of SEBI. If any person fails to implement the award or order of the SEBI passed in the review petition, without reasonable cause –

- (1) he shall be deemed to have failed to redress investors' grievances and shall be liable to a penalty under Section 15C of the SEBI Act;
- (2) he shall also be liable for –
 - (a) an action under Section 11(4) of the SEBI Act ; or
 - (b) suspension or delisting of securities; or
 - (c) being debarred from accessing the securities market; or

- (d) being debarred from dealing in securities; or dealing in securities; or
- (e) an action for suspension or cancellation of certificate of registration; or
- (f) such other action permissible which may be deemed appropriate in the facts and circumstances of the case.

Display of the Particulars of the Ombudsman

Every listed company or intermediary is required to display the name and address of the Ombudsman as specified by the SEBI to whom the complaints are to be made by any aggrieved person in its office premises in such manner and at such place, so that it is put to notice of the shareholders or investors or unit holders visiting the office premises of the listed company or intermediary. The listed company or intermediary is required to give full disclosure about the grievance redressal mechanism through Ombudsman in its offer document or client agreement. Any failure to disclose the grievance redressal mechanism through Ombudsman or any failure to display the particulars would attract the penal provisions contained in Section 15A of SEBI Act.

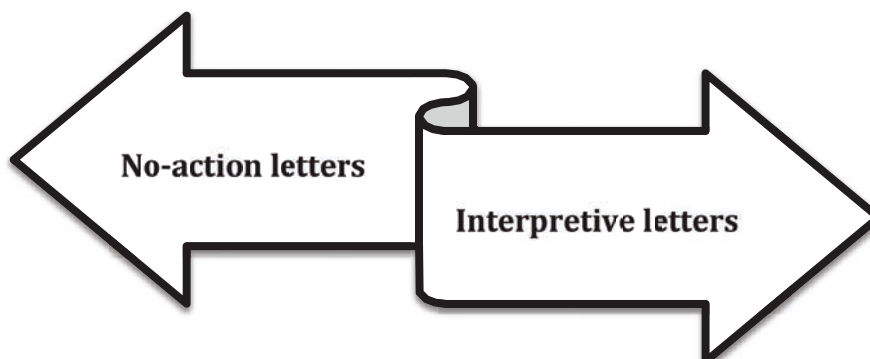
SEBI (INFORMAL GUIDANCE) SCHEME, 2003

In the interests of better regulation of and orderly development of the Securities market, SEBI has issued SEBI (Informal Guidance) Scheme 2003 w.e.f. 24.6.2003. The following persons may make a request for informal Guidance under the scheme:

- (a) any intermediary registered with the SEBI.
- (b) any listed company.
- (c) any company which intends to get any of its securities listed and which has filed either a listing application with any stock exchange or a draft offer document with the SEBI or the Central Listing authority.
- (d) any mutual fund trustee company or asset management company.
- (e) any acquirer or prospective acquirer under the SEBI (Substantial Acquisition of Shares & Takeovers) Regulations, 1997. (Now the SEBI Takeover Regulation, 2011)

The Guidance Scheme, further deals with various aspects such as the nature of request, fees to be accompanied alongwith request letter, disposal of requests, the SEBI's discretion not to respond certain types of requests and confidentiality of requests etc.

The informal guidance may be sought for and given in two forms:



- **No-action letters:** The SEBI indicates that the Department would or would not recommend any action under any Act, Rules, Regulations, Guidelines, Circulars or other legal provisions administered by SEBI to the Board if the proposed transaction described in a request made under para 6 is consummated.
- **Interpretive letters:** The SEBI provides an interpretation of a specific provision of any Act, Rules, Regulations, Guidelines, Circulars or other legal provision being administered by the SEBI in the context of a proposed transaction in securities or a specific factual situation.

The request seeking informal guidance should state that it is being made under this scheme and also state whether it is a request for a no-action letter or an interpretive letter and should be accompanied with prescribed fees and addressed to the concerned Department of the SEBI.

It should also describe the request, disclose and analyse all material facts and circumstances involved and mention all applicable legal provisions. The SEBI may dispose off the request as early as possible and in any case not later than 60 days after the receipt of the request.

The Department may give a hearing or conduct an interview if it feels necessary to do so. The request or shall be entitled only to the reply. The internal records or views of the SEBI shall be confidential.

The SEBI may not respond to the following types of requests:

- (a) those which are general and those which do not completely and sufficiently describe the factual situation;
- (b) those which involve hypothetical situations;
- (c) those requests in which the requestor has no direct or proximate interest;
- (d) where the applicable legal provisions are not cited;
- (e) where a no-action or interpretive letter has already been issued by that or any other Department on a substantially similar question involving substantially similar facts, as that to which the request relates;
- (f) those cases in which investigation, enquiry or other enforcement action has already been initiated;
- (g) those cases where connected issues are pending before any Tribunal or Court and on issues which are subjudice; and
- (h) those cases where policy concerns require that the Department does not respond.

Where a request is rejected for non-compliance, the fee, if any, paid by the requestor shall be refunded to him after deducting therefrom a sum of Rs. 5,000/- towards processing charges. However, SEBI is not be under any obligation to respond to a request for guidance made under this scheme, and shall not be liable to disclose the reasons for declining to reply the request.

Confidentiality of Request

- Any person submitting a letter or written communication under this scheme may request that it receive confidential treatment for a specified period of time not exceeding 90 days from the date of the Department's response.
- The request shall include a statement of the basis for confidential treatment.
- If the Department determines to grant the request, the letter or written communication will not be available to the public until the expiration of the specified period.
- If it appears to the Department that the request for confidential treatment should be denied, the requestor will be so advised and such person may withdraw the letter or written communication within 30 days of receipt of the advise, in which case the fee, if any, paid by him would be refunded to him.
- In case a request has been withdrawn under clause (c), no response will be given and the letter or written communication will remain with the SEBI but will not be made available to the public.
- If the letter or written communication is not withdrawn, it shall be available to the public together with any written staff response.
- A no-action letter or an interpretive letter issued by a Department constitutes the view of the Department but will not be binding on the SEBI, though the SEBI may generally act in accordance with such a letter.
- The letter issued by a Department under this scheme should not be construed as a conclusive decision or determination of any question of law or fact by the SEBI.
- Such a letter cannot be construed as an order of the SEBI under Section 15T of the Act and shall not be appealable.
- Where a no action letter is issued by a Department affirmatively, it means that the Department will not recommend enforcement action to the SEBI, subject to other provisions of this scheme.

- The guidance offered through the letters issued by Departments is conditional upon the requestor acting strictly in accordance with the facts and representations made in the letter.
- The SEBI shall not be liable for any loss or damage that the requestor or any other person may suffer on account of the request not being replied or being belatedly replied or the SEBI taking a different view from that taken in a letter already issued under this scheme.
- Where the Department finds that a letter issued by it under this scheme has been obtained by the requestor by fraud or misrepresentation of facts, notwithstanding any legal action that the Department may take, it may declare such letter to be non est and thereupon the case of the requestor will be dealt with as if such letter had never been issued.
- Where the SEBI issues a letter under this scheme, it may post the letter, together with the incoming request, on the SEBI website in accordance with the Guidance Scheme.

LESSON ROUND-UP

- In the developing countries, the growing number of investors, technically advanced financial markets, liberalised economy etc. necessitates imparting of financial education for better operation of markets and economy and in the interest of investor.
- SEBI has also launched a comprehensive securities market awareness campaign for educating investors through workshops, audio-visual clippings, distribution of educative investor materials/ booklets, dedicated investor website etc.
- SCORES is a web based centralized grievance redress system of SEBI which enables investors to lodge and follow up their complaints and track the status of redressal of such complaints online from the above website from anywhere.
- SEBI has issued SEBI (Ombudsman) Regulations, 2003 which deals with establishment of office of Ombudsman, powers and functions of Ombudsman, procedure for redressal of Grievances and implementation of the award.
- SEBI (Informal Guidance) Scheme, 2003 deals with various aspects such as the nature of request fees to be accompanied along with letter disposal of requests, SEBI discretion not request and certain types of request and confidentiality of requests, etc.

GLOSSARY

Arbitration	Arbitration is a procedure in which a dispute submitted, by agreement of the parties to one or more arbitrators who make a binding decision on the dispute.
Award	It means a finding in the form of direction or an order of an Ombudsman given in accordance with these regulations.
Complainant	It means any investor who lodges complaint with the Ombudsman and includes an investors association recognised by the Board.
Grievance Redress	Grievance Redress mechanism is part and parcel of the machinery of any administration. The grievance redress mechanism of an organisation is the gauge to measure its efficiency and effectiveness as it provides important feedback on the working of the administration.
Petition	A formal written request, typically one signed by many people, appealing to authority in respect of a particular cause.

TEST YOURSELF

(These are meant for recapitulation only. Answer to these questions are not to be submitted for evaluation.)

1. What is SCORES? Briefly discuss the salient features of SCORES.
2. Who are eligible to make a request under the SEBI (Informal Guidance) Scheme, 2003?
3. SEBI Complaints Redress System (SCORES) has been established to resolve the grievances of the Investors. What is the procedure for redressal of investor grievances using SCORES platform ? State the revised features.
4. What are the matters that cannot be considered as complaints under SCORES? Specify details.
5. Who is an Ombudsman? What is the powers and functions of an Ombudsman?
6. Discuss the various grounds under which a person can lodge a complaint either to the SEBI or to the Ombudsman.
7. Explain the types of requests which may not responded by SEBI under Informal Guidance Scheme.

LIST OF FURTHER READINGS

- SEBI Circulars
- SEBI Notification
- SEBI Orders
- SEBI Frequently Asked Question (FAQs)

OTHER REFERENCES (Including Websites/Video Links)

- <https://scores.gov.in/scores/Welcome.html>
- Sebi.gov.in

Lesson 15

Structure of Capital Market

Part I-Primary Market

Key Concepts One Should Know

- Financial Market
- Money Market
- Capital Market
- Market Regulators
- Participants
- Instruments
- Unified Payments Interface (UPI)
- Foreign Portfolio Investors
- Alternate Investment Funds
- Private Equity
- Anchor Investors
- Real Estate Investment Trusts
- Infrastructure Investment Trusts
- Applications supported by Blocked Amount

Learning Objectives

To understand:

- The role of financial market in the overall development of a country's economy
- The impact of financial sector on the economic performance of Country. Financial sector mobilizes the savings and channelize these savings across sectors that are in need of the same. This boosts the economy at global platform as well
- The financial institutions that provide a variety of financial products and services to cater to needs of the commercial sector
- The categories of financial institutions e.g. Insurance Companies, Pension Fund, Mutual Fund, Capital Market Intermediaries etc.
- Various types of new instruments like REITs and InvITs
- Various regulators in the financial market including SEBI, RBI, IRDAI and PFRDA
- The different categories of Investment Institutions include Venture Capital, Private Equity, Hedge Funds, Qualified Institutional Buyer, Pension Funds, Foreign Portfolio Investor etc.
- The Capital market instruments including different instruments like equity shares, shares with differential voting rights, preference shares, debentures, bonds, etc.

Lesson Outline

- Financial Market of India
- Need for regulators in Capital Market
- Investment Institutions in India
- Participants of Capital Markets
- Capital Market Instruments
- Mechanism for issuance of Securities in Primary Market
- Other market terminologies, like
- Book Building
- Applications Supported by Blocked Amount (ASBA)
- UPI
- Green Shoe Option

Regulatory Framework

- Securities & Exchange Board of India Act, 1992
- Reserve Bank of India Act, 1934
- SEBI (Foreign Portfolio Investors) Regulations, 2019
- SEBI (Alternative Investment Funds) Regulations, 2012
- Companies Act, 2013 and the rules made thereunder
- SEBI (Issue of Capital and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2018

FINANCIAL MARKETS IN INDIA

Introduction

Indian Financial Market, has been one of the oldest across the globe and is definitely the fastest growing and best among other financial markets of the emerging economies. The history of Indian capital markets is more than 200 years old, around the end of the 18th century. It was at this time that India was under the rule of the East India Company. The capital market of India initially developed around Mumbai; with around 200 to 250 securities brokers participating in active trade during the second half of the 19th century. Today we have our Bombay Stock Exchange (BSE), one among the world's largest exchange in terms of trading turnover in the same city. Indian Financial market is one of the well-developed markets in the world.



A Financial market enables efficient trade of securities, and transfer of funds, between lenders and borrowers and also creates securities for investment. People who have surplus funds invest in these securities to earn return on their investments.

Founded in 1875 in Bombay, after almost eight decades, BSE became the first Stock Exchange to be recognized by the Indian Government on 31st August, 1957 under the SCRA, 1957 and switched to electronic trading system in 1995.

BSE is the world's 7th largest Stock Exchange with an overall market capitalization above US\$2.8 trillion.

Functions of Financial Market

- It facilitates mobilisation and channelization of savings into the most productive uses.
- It helps in determining the price of the securities, on the basis of their demand and supply in the market.

- It provides liquidity to tradable assets, by facilitating the exchange, as the investors can readily sell their securities and convert assets into cash.
- It reduces cost by providing valuable information, regarding the securities traded in the financial market.
- It facilitates exchange of assets without physical delivery.

The financial markets are mainly divided into:

a. Money Market

Money Market is a segment of the financial market where **borrowing and lending of short-term funds** take place. The maturity of money market instruments ranges from one day to one year. In India, this market is regulated by both RBI (the Reserve bank of India) and SEBI (the Security and Exchange Board of India). The nature of transactions in this market is such that they are large in amount and high in volume. Thus, we can say that the entire market is dominated by a small number of large players.

The market consists of negotiable instruments having characteristics of **liquidity (quick conversion into money), minimum transaction costs and no loss in value** such as treasury bills, commercial papers, certificate of deposit, etc.

It performs the crucial role of providing an equilibrating mechanism to even out the short-term liquidity, surpluses & deficits & therefore facilitates the **conduct of monetary policy of an economy**.



b. Capital Market

Capital Market is that part of the financial system that is concerned with the industrial security market, government securities markets, and long-term loan market.

A market that serves the medium & long-term liquidity needs of borrowers & lenders and therefore embraces all terms of lending & borrowing. The capital market comprises institutions and mechanisms through which intermediate terms funds and long-term funds are pooled and made available to business, government and individuals. The capital market also encompasses the process by which securities already outstanding are transferred. This market is also referred to as the **Barometer of the Economy**.

It deals with instruments like shares, stocks, debentures and bonds. Companies turn to capital markets to raise funds needed to finance for the infrastructure facilities and corporate activities.

The capital market is a vital part of any financial system. The wave of economic reforms initiated by the government has influenced the functioning and governance of the capital market. The Indian capital market has undergone structural transformation since liberalisation. The chief aim of the reforms exercise is to improve market efficiency, make stock market transactions more transparent, curb unfair trade practices and to bring our financial markets up to international standards. Further, the consistent reforms in Indian capital market, especially in the secondary market resulting in modern technology and online trading have revolutionized the stock exchange.



Securities Market

Securities Market is a place where companies can raise funds by issuing securities such as equity shares, debt securities, derivatives, mutual funds, etc. to the investors (public) and also is a place where investors can buy or sell various securities (shares, bonds, etc.). It is therefore, a market where financial instruments/claims are commonly

& readily available for transfer by means of sale. Once the shares (or securities) are issued to the public, the company is required to list the shares (or securities) on the recognized stock exchanges. Securities Market is a part of the Capital Market.

The primary function of the securities market is to enable allocation of savings from investors to those who need it for business purposes. This is done when investors make investments in securities of companies/entities that are in need of funds. The investors are entitled to get benefits like interest, dividend, capital appreciation, bonus, etc. Such investments contribute to the economic development of the country.

Securities market has two inter-dependent & inseparable segments which are as follows-

1. Primary Market : The primary market deals with the issue of new instruments by the corporate sector such as equity shares, preference shares and debt instruments. Central and State Governments, various public sector undertakings (PSUs), statutory and other authorities such as state electricity boards and port trusts also issue bonds/debt instruments.

This market is of great significance for the economy of a country as it is through this market that funds flows for productive purposes from investors to entrepreneurs. The strength of the economy of a country is gauged by the activities of the Stock Exchanges. The primary market creates and offers the merchandise for the secondary market.

The primary market in which public issue of securities is made through a prospectus is a retail market and there is no physical location. Offer for subscription to securities is made to the investing community. It is also known as Initial Public Offer (IPO) Market.

There are two major types of issuers of securities:

- Corporate Entities (companies) which mainly issue equity instruments (shares) and debt instruments (bonds, debentures, etc.).
- Government (Central as well as State) which issues debt securities (dated securities and treasury bills).

In addition to IPOs, the Company has other options to raise capital:

- Qualified institutional placements (listed company issuing shares to Qualified Institutional Buyers (QIB).
- In International markets through the issuance of American Depositary Receipts (ADR), Global Depositary Receipts (GDRs), External Commercial Borrowings (ECB) etc.

2. Secondary Market : The secondary market or stock exchange is a market for trading and settlement of securities that have already been issued. The investors holding securities sell securities through registered brokers/sub-brokers of the stock exchange. Investors who are desirous of buying securities, purchase them through registered broker/sub-broker of the stock exchange. It may have a physical location like a stock exchange or a trading floor. Since 1995, trading in securities is screen-based and Internet-based trading has also made an appearance in India.

The secondary market provides a trading place for the securities already issued, to be bought and sold. It also provides liquidity to the initial buyers in the primary market to re-offer the securities to any interested buyer at any price, if mutually accepted. An active secondary market actually promotes the growth of the primary market and capital formation because investors in the primary market are assured of a continuous market and they can liquidate their investments. It is also known as Further Public Offer Market (FPO).

Difference between Primary and Secondary Market

Basis for comparison	Primary Market	Secondary Market
Meaning	The market place for issuing fresh securities	The market place for trading already issued securities
Objectives	To raise funds	Capital Appreciation
Scope	Includes issuance of new securities through Initial Public Offer (IPO)	Includes the further trading of securities already offered to the public
Another name	New issue market / IPO Market	After issue market / FPO Market

Purchasing of securities	Investors can purchase securities directly from the Company	Purchase and sale of securities is done by the investors among themselves
Financing	Primary market provides funds to new and old companies for their expansion and diversification	It does not provide funding to companies
Parties to transactions	Company and Investors	Investors among themselves
Major Intermediaries	Underwriters	Brokers
Price	Price as given in the offer document / red herring prospectus	Price fluctuates i.e. depends on demand and supply forces
Utilisation of fund	Fund gained from primary market becomes the capital of the company	Fund received from secondary market becomes income of investors

NEED FOR REGULATORS IN CAPITAL MARKET

In 1980's the development of stock markets attracted investments by individual shareholders. Once the stock markets started flourishing, there were many malpractices like non adherence to rules and regulation, price rigging, unofficial self-modulated merchant bankers, delayed delivery issues, etc. As a result, investors felt deceived and were losing trust in securities.

It was also this time when the Indian Financial Markets witnessed one of the biggest scams of the century – The Harshad Mehta Scam or other wise called as the Scam, 1992 which involved more than Rs. 4000 crores of market manipulations. The Indian Stock Market gradually crashed when the information came out.

As a measure, the Government sensed an urgent need to regulate the smooth and systematic functioning of exchanges and thus resulting in formation of SEBI. Before formation of SEBI, controller of capital issues was responsible for regulation of capital markets.

Indian Capital Markets are regulated and monitored by the Ministry of Finance, The Securities and Exchange Board of India and The Reserve Bank of India.

The Ministry of Finance regulates through the Department of Economic Affairs - Capital Markets Division. The division is responsible for formulating the policies related to the orderly growth and development of the securities markets (i.e. share, debt and derivatives) as well as protecting the interest of the investors. In particular, it is responsible for :

- institutional reforms in the securities markets,
- building regulatory and market institutions,
- strengthening investor protection mechanism, and
- providing efficient legislative framework for securities markets.

Before 1992, many factors obstructed the expansion of equity trading. Fresh capital issues were controlled through the Capital Issues Control Act. Trading practices were not transparent, and there was a large amount of insider trading. Recognizing the importance of increasing investor protection, several measures were enacted to improve the fairness of the capital market.

SEBI – The Capital Markets Regulator

The Securities and Exchange Board of India (SEBI) was established in 1988 through an administrative order, but the Act was passed after about four years and it became a statutory and really powerful Institution only since 1992. The Controller of Capital Issues was repealed and its office was abolished in 1992 and SEBI was established on 21 February, 1992 through an ordinance issued on 30 January, 1992. The SEBI Act replaced the ordinance on 4 April, 1992. Certain powers under certain sections of Securities Contracts Regulation Act (SCRA) and Companies Act (CA) have been delegated to the SEBI.

The regulatory powers of the SEBI were increased through the Securities Laws (Amendment) Ordinance of January 1995, which was subsequently replaced by an Act of Parliament.

The SEBI is under the overall control of the Ministry of Finance, and has its head office at Mumbai. It has now become a very important constituent of the financial regulatory framework in India. After the 2002 amendment, SEBI has been given powers to even pass interim orders, to investigate and to hold an enquiry and then to pass a final order, which can be a cease and desist order or it can be a monetary penalty. In the area of policy making, SEBI consults the government, RBI, IRDA, PFRDA etc. and after those consultations it can come out with its policy.

SEBI was established with the statutory powers to:

- Protecting the interest of investors;
- Promoting the development of the securities market; and
- Regulating the securities market.

SEBI acts as a watchdog for all the capital market participants and its main purpose is to provide such an environment for the financial market enthusiasts that facilitate efficient and smooth working of the securities market.

Through SEBI, the regulation model which is sought to be put in place in India is one in which every aspect of securities market regulation is entrusted to a single highly visible and independent organization, which is backed by a statute, and which is accountable to the Parliament and in which investors can have trust.

To ensure this the three main participants of the financial market should be taken care of, i.e. issuers of securities, investor, and financial intermediaries.

Issuers of securities: These are entities in the corporate field that raise funds from various sources in the market. SEBI makes sure that they get a healthy and transparent environment for their needs.

Investor: Investors are the ones who keep the markets active. SEBI is responsible for maintaining an environment that is free from malpractices to restore the confidence of general public who invest their hard-earned money in the markets.

Financial Intermediaries: These are the people who act as middlemen between the issuers and investors. They make the financial transactions smooth and safe.

SEBI necessarily has the twin task of regulation and development. Its regulatory measures are always meant to be subservient to the needs of the market development. Underlying those measures is the logic that rapid and healthy market development is the outcome of well-regulated structures. In this spirit, the SEBI endeavors to create an effective surveillance mechanism and encourage responsible and accountable autonomy on the part of all players in the market, who are expected and required to discipline themselves and observe the rules of the market.

Functions of SEBI

1. Protective Functions

As the name suggests, these functions are performed by SEBI to protect the interest of investors and other financial participants, including:

- Checking price rigging,
- Prevent insider trading,
- Promote fair practices,
- Create awareness among investors,
- Prohibit fraudulent and unfair trade practices.

2. Regulatory Functions

These functions are basically performed to keep a check on the functioning of the business in the financial markets, including:

- Designing guidelines and code of conduct for the proper functioning of financial intermediaries and corporate,
- Regulation of takeover of companies,
- Conducting inquiries and audit of exchanges,
- Registration of brokers, sub-brokers, merchant bankers etc.,
- Levying of fees,
- Performing and exercising powers,
- Register and regulate credit rating agency.

3. Development Functions

SEBI performs certain development functions also that include but they are not limited to –

- Imparting training to intermediaries,
- Promotion of fair trading and reduction of malpractices,
- Carry out research work,
- Encouraging self-regulating organizations,
- Buy-sell mutual funds directly from AMC through a broker.

Powers of SEBI

Quasi-Judicial (enforcement):

With this authority, SEBI can conduct hearings and pass Orders in cases of unethical and fraudulent trade practices. This ensures transparency, fairness, accountability and reliability in the capital market.

Example: SEBI vs. PACL Ltd. where SEBI with its order abstained the promoters and directors of PACL Ltd. from collecting any money from investors or launch or carry out any Collective Investment Schemes and shall wind up all the existing Collective Investment Schemes of PACL Limited and refund the monies collected by the said company under its schemes.

Quasi-Legislative:

Powers under this segment allow SEBI to draft rules and regulations for the protection of the interests of the investor.

Example: SEBI (Listing Obligation and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2015 is an example of the same. It aims at consolidating and streamlining the provisions of existing listing agreements for several segments of the financial market like equity shares, debentures, bonds and warrants, etc.. Such regulations formulated by SEBI aims to prevent any malpractice and fraudulent trading.

<p>Quasi-Executive:</p> <p>SEBI is authorised to file a case against anyone who violates its rules and regulation. It is empowered to inspect account books and other documents if it finds traces of any suspicious activity.</p>	<p>Power to issue informal guidance:</p> <p>SEBI introduced the SEBI (Informal Guidance) Scheme, 2003, which enables any participant or intermediary registered with SEBI to make a request for informal guidance. The intermediary can be a listed company, a company seeking listing, a mutual fund, a trustee company, an asset management company or an acquirer/prospective acquirer. The scheme enables an applicant to seek guidance from a department of SEBI. They can request the department of SEBI to issue either an interpretive letter and/or a no-action letter.</p>
---	---

Other Capital Market Regulators

Reserve Bank of India (RBI): The Reserve Bank of India (RBI) is India's central bank, also known as the banker's bank. The RBI controls monetary and other banking policies of the Indian government. It was established on April 1, 1935, in accordance with the Reserve Bank of India Act, 1934. The Preamble of the RBI describes its basic functions as:

- Regulating the issue of Bank notes,
- Securing monetary stability in India,
- Modernising the monetary policy framework to meet economic challenges.

Insurance Regulatory and Development Authority of India (IRDAI): IRDAI is a statutory body formed under an Act of Parliament, i.e., Insurance Regulatory and Development Authority Act, 1999 (IRDAI Act 1999) for overall supervision and development of the Insurance sector in India. The key objectives of the IRDAI include promotion of competition so as to enhance customer satisfaction through increased consumer choice and fair premiums, while ensuring the financial security of the Insurance market. The Insurance Act, 1938 is the principal Act governing the Insurance sector in India. It provides the powers to IRDAI to frame regulations which lay down the regulatory framework for supervision of the entities operating in the sector. Further, there are certain other Acts which govern specific lines of Insurance business and functions such as Marine Insurance Act, 1963 and Public Liability Insurance Act, 1991.

Pension Fund Regulatory and Development Authority (PFRDA): PFRDA is a statutory regulatory body set up under The Pension Fund Regulatory and Development Authority Act, 2013 with an objective to promote old age income security and protect the interests of NPS subscribers.

A. CAPITAL MARKET INVESTMENT INSTITUTIONS

Introduction

In any economy, financial institutions play an important role because all the financial dealings and matters are handled and monitored by such institutions. These institutions provide a variety of financial products and services to fulfil the varied needs of the commercial sector. Besides, they provide assistance to new enterprises, small and medium scale enterprises as well as industries established in backward areas. Thus, they have helped in reducing regional disparities by inducing widespread industrial development.

The Government of India, in order to provide adequate supply of credit to various sectors of the economy, has evolved a well-developed structure of financial institutions in the country. These financial institutions can be broadly categorized into all India institutions and State level institutions, depending upon the geographical coverage of their operations. At the national level, they provide long and medium-term loans at reasonable rates of interest and at state level they facilitate project financing.

National Level Institutions

A wide variety of financial institutions have been set up at the national level. These institutions cater to the diverse financial requirements of the entrepreneurs. They include development banks like IDBI, SIDBI, FIs like IFCI, IIBI; TFCI and Insurance Companies like LIC, GIC, UTI; etc. They can further be classified into following types:

1. All-India Development Banks (AIDBs):- Includes those development banks which provide institutional credit not only to large and medium scale enterprises but also help in promotion and development of small scale industrial units.

Following are the banks which caters to the need for the growth of different sectors on India :

- **Industrial Development Bank of India (IDBI):-** It was established in July 1964 as an apex financial institution for industrial development in the country. It caters to the diversified needs of medium and large scale industries in the form of financial assistance, both directly and indirectly and also promote institutions engaged in industrial development. Direct assistance is provided by way of project loans, underwriting of and direct subscription to industrial securities, soft loans, technical refund loans, etc. Indirect assistance is provided in the form of refinance facilities to industrial concerns.
- **Industrial Finance Corporation of India (IFCI):-** It is a financial institution set up under the IFCI Act 1948, in order to pioneer long-term institutional credit to medium and large scale enterprises. It aims to provide financial assistance to industry by way of rupee and foreign currency loans, underwrites/subscribes the issue of stocks, shares, bonds and debentures of industrial concerns, etc. It has also diversified its activities in the financing of merchant banking, syndication of loans, formulation of rehabilitation programmes, assignments relating to amalgamations and mergers, etc.
- **Small Industries Development Bank of India (SIDBI):-** It was set up by the Government of India in April 1990, as a wholly owned subsidiary of IDBI. It is the principal financial institution for promotion, financing and development of small scale industries in the economy. It aims to empower the Micro, Small and Medium Enterprises (MSME) sector with a view to contributing to the process of economic growth, employment generation and balanced regional development.
- **Industrial Investment Bank of India Ltd (IIBI):-** It was set up in 1985 under the Industrial Reconstruction Bank of India Act, 1984, as the principal credit and reconstruction agency for sick industrial units. It was converted into IIBI on March 17, 1997, as a full-fledged development financial institution. It assists industry mainly in medium and large sector through wide ranging products and services. Besides project finance, IIBI also provides short duration non-project asset-backed financing in the form of underwriting/direct subscription, deferred payment guarantees and working capital/ other short-term loans to companies to meet their fund requirements.

2. Specialised Financial Institutions (SFIs):- These are the institutions which have been set up to serve the increasing financial needs of trade and commerce in the area of venture capital, credit rating and leasing, etc.

Following institutions are considered as SFIs in our country:

- **IFCI Venture Capital Funds Ltd (IVCF):-** IVCF formerly known as Risk Capital & Technology Finance Corporation Ltd (RCTC), is a subsidiary of IFCI Ltd. It was promoted with the objective of broadening entrepreneurial base in the country by facilitating funding to ventures involving innovative product/ process/ technology. Initially, it started providing financial assistance by way of soft loans to promoters under its 'Risk Capital Scheme'. Since 1988, it also started providing finance under 'Technology Finance and Development Scheme' to projects for commercialization of indigenous technology for new processes, products, market or services. Over the years, it has acquired great deal of experience in investing in technology-oriented projects.
- **ICICI Venture Funds Ltd:-** Formerly known as Technology Development & Information Company of India Limited (TDICI), it was founded in 1988 as a joint venture with the Unit Trust of India. Subsequently, it became a fully owned subsidiary of ICICI. It is a technology venture finance company, set up to sanction project finance for new technology ventures. The industrial units assisted by it are in the fields of computer, chemicals/ polymers, drugs, diagnostics and vaccines, biotechnology, environmental engineering, etc.

- **Tourism Finance Corporation of India Ltd. (TFCI):-** It is a specialised financial institution set up by the Government of India for promotion and growth of tourist industry in the country. Apart from conventional tourism projects, it provides financial assistance for non-conventional tourism projects like amusement parks, ropeways, car rental services, ferries for inland water transport, etc. It has also expanded the scope of its activities by including financing of real estate projects, infrastructure projects and manufacturing projects.

3. Investment Institutions:- These are the most popular form of financial intermediaries, which particularly cater to the needs of small savers and investors. They deploy their assets largely in marketable securities.

Following are the Investment Institutions established by the Government :

- **Life Insurance Corporation of India (LIC):-** It was established in 1956 as a wholly-owned corporation of the Government of India. It was formed by the Life Insurance Corporation Act, 1956, with the objective of spreading life insurance much more widely and in particular to the rural area. It also extends assistance for development of infrastructure facilities like housing, rural electrification, water supply, sewerage, etc. In addition, it extends resource support to other financial institutions through subscription to their shares and bonds, etc.
- **Unit Trust of India (UTI):-** It was set up as a body corporate under the UTI Act, 1963, with a view to encourage savings and investment. It mobilises savings of small investors through sale of units and channelises them into corporate investments mainly by way of secondary capital market operations.

For more than two decades it remained the sole vehicle for investment in the capital market by the Indian citizens. Thus, its primary objective is to stimulate and pool the savings of the middle and low income groups and enable them to share the benefits of the rapidly growing industrialisation in the country. In December 2002, the UTI Act, 1963 was repealed with the passage of Unit Trust of India (Transfer of Undertaking and Repeal) Act, 2002, paving the way for the bifurcation of UTI into 2 entities, UTI-I and UTI-II with effect from 1st February, 2003.

- **General Insurance Corporation of India (GIC):-** It was formed by the enactment of the General Insurance Business (Nationalisation) Act, 1972 (GIBNA), for the purpose of superintending, controlling and carrying on the business of general insurance or non-life insurance such as accident, fire, etc. Initially, GIC had four subsidiary branches, namely, National Insurance Company Ltd, The New India Assurance Company Ltd, The Oriental Insurance Company Ltd and United India Insurance Company Ltd. But these branches were delinked from GIC in 2000 to form an association known as 'GIPSA' (General Insurance Public Sector Association).

Test your Knowledge:

Differentiate between the All-India Development Banks and Specialized Financial Institutions.

State Level Institutions

Several financial institutions have been set up at the State level which supplement the financial assistance provided by the All India institutions. They act as a catalyst for promotion of investment and industrial development in the respective States. They broadly consist of 'State financial corporations' and 'State industrial development corporations'.

- **State Financial Corporations (SFCs):-** These are the State-level financial institutions which play a crucial role in the development of small and medium enterprises in the concerned States. They provide financial assistance in the form of term loans, direct subscription to equity/debentures, guarantees, discounting of bills of exchange and seed/ special capital, etc. SFCs have been set up with the objective of catalysing higher investment, generating greater employment and widening the ownership base of industries. They have also started providing assistance to newer types of business activities like floriculture, tissue culture, poultry farming, commercial complexes and services related to engineering, marketing, etc. **There are around 18 State Financial Corporations (SFCs) in the country.**
- **State Industrial Development Corporations (SIDCs):-** These corporations have been established under the erstwhile Companies Act, 1956, as wholly-owned undertakings of State Governments. They have been set up with the objectives of promoting industrial development in the respective States and providing financial

assistance to small entrepreneurs. They are also involved in setting up of medium and large industrial projects in the joint sector/ assisted sector in collaboration with private entrepreneurs or wholly-owned subsidiaries. They undertake a variety of promotional activities such as preparation of feasibility reports; conducting industrial potential surveys; entrepreneurship training and development programmes; as well as developing industrial areas and industrial estates.

Test your Knowledge:

State Financial Corporations are different from State Industrial Development Corporations. If yes, how? Enumerate giving examples.

PARTICIPANTS OF CAPITAL MARKET

Qualified Institutional Buyers

Qualified Institutional Buyers (QIBs) are investment institutions who buy the shares of a company on a large scale. QIBs are those institutional investors who are generally perceived to possess expertise and the financial proficiency to evaluate and to invest in the Capital Markets.

If the investor is not capable, either by his/her individual financial limit or not permitted, to invest individually till he invests a specified statutorily fixed amount, then he usually participates indirectly through certain institutions, through which he can invest limited sums according to the viability of both, himself and institution.

The institution is usually a collective group of people in which a large number of investors repose faith and the institution collects a large investible sum from various investors to invest in the market. When investing through the institution, investors usually have limited control on their investments in comparison to the individual investment as they hand over the amount for investment to the institution and they, in turn, engage experts to have a vigil on the market.

There are various types of institutions defined in the rules and regulations, but to qualify as a 'Qualified Institutional Buyer' (QIB), certain regulations formulated by the SEBI needs to be kept in mind. As the name itself suggests, it is in the form of an institution and under the institutionalized mechanism, they invest in the company.

According to Regulation 2(1)(ss) of Securities and Exchange Board of India (Issue of Capital and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2018, Qualified Institutional Buyer comprises of —

- (i) a mutual fund, venture capital fund, Alternative Investment Fund and foreign venture capital investor registered with SEBI;
- (ii) foreign portfolio investor other than individuals, corporate bodies and family offices;
- (iii) a public financial institution;
- (iv) a scheduled commercial bank;
- (v) a multilateral and bilateral development financial institution;
- (vi) a state industrial development corporation;
- (vii) an insurance company registered with the Insurance Regulatory and Development Authority;
- (viii) a provident fund with minimum corpus of twenty five crore rupees;
- (ix) a pension fund with minimum corpus of twenty five crore rupees;
- (x) National Investment Fund set up by the Government of India;
- (xi) Insurance funds set up and managed by army, navy or air force of the Union of India;
- (xii) Insurance funds set up and managed by the Department of Posts, India;
- (xiii) Systemically important non-banking financial companies.

Foreign Portfolio Investor

Foreign Portfolio Investor (FPI) means a person who has been registered under Chapter II of SEBI (Foreign Portfolio Investors) Regulations, 2019 which shall be deemed to be an intermediary in terms of the provisions of the SEBI Act, 1992.

Categories of FPI

Category I FPIs include:

- (i) Government and Government related investors such as central banks, sovereign wealth funds, international or multilateral organizations or agencies including entities controlled or at least 75% directly or indirectly owned by such Government and Government related investor(s);
- (ii) Pension funds and university funds;
- (iii) Appropriately regulated entities such as insurance or reinsurance entities, banks, asset management companies, investment managers, investment advisors, portfolio managers, broker dealers and swap dealers;
- (iv) Entities from the Financial Action Task Force member countries, or from any country specified by the Central Government by an order or by way of an agreement or treaty with other sovereign Governments, which are–
 - I. appropriately regulated funds;
 - II. unregulated funds whose investment manager is appropriately regulated and registered as a Category I foreign portfolio investor. However the investment manager undertakes the responsibility of all the acts of commission or omission of such unregulated fund;
 - III. university related endowments of such universities that have been in existence for more than five years;
- (v) An entity (A) whose investment manager is from the Financial Action Task Force member country and such an investment manager is registered as a Category I foreign portfolio investor; or (B) which is at least seventy-five per cent owned, directly or indirectly by another entity, eligible under sub-clause (ii), (iii) and (iv) of clause (a) of this regulation and such an eligible entity is from a Financial Action Task Force member country. However such an investment manager or eligible entity undertakes the responsibility of all the acts of commission or omission of the applicants seeking registration under this sub-clause.

Category II FPIs include all the investors not eligible under Category I foreign portfolio investors such as –

- (i) appropriately regulated funds not eligible as Category-I foreign portfolio investor;
- (ii) endowments and foundations;
- (iii) charitable organisations;
- (iv) corporate bodies;
- (v) family offices;
- (vi) individuals;
- (vii) appropriately regulated entities investing on behalf of their client, as per conditions specified by the Board from time to time;
- (viii) Unregulated funds in the form of limited partnership and trusts.

Explanation: An applicant incorporated or established in an International Financial Services Centre shall be deemed to be appropriately regulated.

Alternative Investment Funds

Alternative investment funds (AIFs) are defined in Regulation 2(1)(b) of the SEBI (Alternative Investment Funds) Regulations, 2012. It refers to any privately pooled investment fund, (whether from Indian or foreign sources), in

the form of a trust or a company or a body corporate or a Limited Liability Partnership (LLP) which are not presently covered by any Regulation of SEBI governing fund management (like, Regulations governing Mutual Fund or Collective Investment Scheme) nor coming under the direct regulation of any other sectoral regulators in India- IRDA, PFRDA, RBI. Hence, in India, AIFs are private funds which are otherwise not coming under the jurisdiction of any regulatory agency in India.

According to SEBI (AIF) Regulations, 2012, “Alternative Investment Fund” means any fund established or incorporated in India in the form of a trust or a company or a limited liability partnership or a body corporate which,-

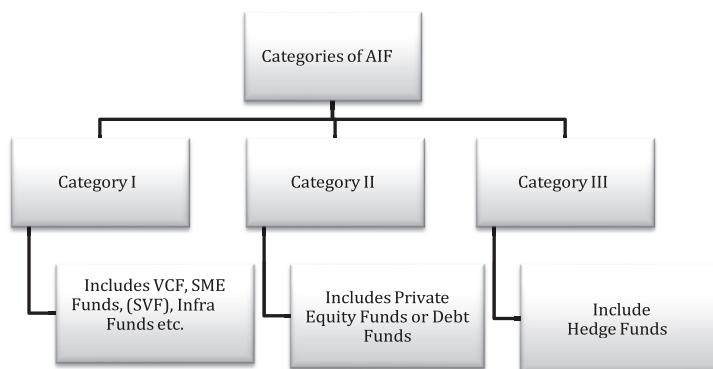
- (i) is a privately pooled investment vehicle which collects funds from investors, whether Indian or foreign, for investing it in accordance with a defined investment policy for the benefit of its investors; and
- (ii) is not covered under the SEBI (Mutual Funds) Regulations, 1996, SEBI (Collective Investment Schemes) Regulations, 1999 or any other regulations of SEBI to regulate fund management activities.

However, the following shall not be considered as Alternative Investment Fund for the purpose of these regulations; -

- (i) Family trusts set up for the benefit of ‘relatives’ as defined under Companies Act, 2013.
- (ii) ESOP Trusts set up under the SEBI (Shares Based Employee Benefits) Regulations, 2014 or as permitted under Companies Act, 2013.
- (iii) Employee welfare trusts or gratuity trusts set up for the benefit of employees.
- (iv) Holding companies within the meaning of Section 2(46) of the Companies Act, 2013.
- (v) Other special purpose vehicles not established by fund managers, including securitization trusts, regulated under a specific regulatory framework.
- (vi) Funds managed by securitisation company or reconstruction company which is registered with the Reserve Bank of India under Section 3 of the Securitisation and Reconstruction of Financial Assets and Enforcement of Security Interest Act, 2002.
- (vii) Any such pool of funds which is directly regulated by any other regulator in India.

Thus, the definition of AIFs includes venture capital fund, hedge funds, private equity funds, commodity funds, Debt Funds, infrastructure funds, etc., while, it excludes Mutual funds or collective investment schemes, family trusts, employee benefit schemes, employee welfare trusts or gratuity trusts, ‘holding companies’ within the meaning of Section 2(46) of the Companies Act, 2013, securitization trusts regulated a specific regulatory framework, and funds managed by securitization company or reconstruction company which is registered with the RBI under Section 3 of the Securitization and Reconstruction of Financial Assets and Enforcement of Security Interest Act, 2002.

One AIF can float several schemes. Investors in these funds are large institutions, high net worth individuals and corporates. In India AIF is regulated by the SEBI (Alternative Investment Funds) Regulations, 2012.



Categories of Alternative Investment Funds

- **Category I** : which invests in start-up or early stage ventures or social ventures or SMEs or infrastructure or other sectors or areas which the government or regulators consider as socially or economically desirable and shall include venture capital funds (VCF), SME Funds, social venture funds (SVF), infrastructure funds and such other Alternative Investment Funds as may be specified;
- **Category II** : which does not fall in Category I and III and which does not undertake leverage or borrowing other than to meet day-to-day operational requirements and as permitted in these regulations;
- **Category III** : which employs diverse or complex trading strategies and may employ leverage including through investment in listed or unlisted derivatives.

Venture Capital

Venture Capital is one of the innovative financing resource for a company in which the promoter has to give up some level of ownership and control of business in exchange for capital for a limited period, say, 3-5 years. Venture Capital is generally equity investments made by Venture Capital funds, at an early stage in privately held companies, having potential to provide a high rate of return on their investments. It is a resource for supporting innovation, knowledge-based ideas and technology and human capital-intensive enterprises.

“Venture Capital Fund” means an Alternative Investment Fund which invests primarily in unlisted securities of start-ups, emerging or early-stage venture capital undertakings mainly involved in new products, new services, technology or intellectual property right based activities or a new business model and shall include an angel fund.

Essentially, a venture capital company is a group of investors who pool investments focused within certain parameters. The participants in venture capital firms can be institutional investors like pension funds, insurance companies, foundations, corporations or individuals but these are high risk investments which may give high returns or high loss.

Areas of Investment

Different venture groups prefer different types of investments. Some specialize in seed capital and early expansion while others focus on exit financing. Biotechnology, medical services, communications, electronic components and software companies seem to be the most likely attraction of many venture firms and receiving the most financing. Venture capital firms finance both early and later stage investments to maintain a balance between risk and profitability.

In India, software sector has been attracting a lot of venture finance. Besides media, health and pharmaceuticals, agri-business and retailing are the other areas that are favoured by a lot of venture companies.

Private Equity

Private equity is a type of equity (finance) and one of the asset classes who takes securities and debt in operating companies that are not publicly traded on a stock exchange. Private equity is essentially a way to invest in some assets that isn't publicly traded, or to invest in a publicly traded asset with the intention of taking it private. As a source of investment capital, private equity comes from High Net-worth Individuals (HNI) & firms that purchase stakes in private companies or acquire control of public companies with plans to make them private & consequently delist from the stock exchange. Unlike stocks, mutual funds, and bonds, private equity funds usually invest in more illiquid assets companies.

By purchasing companies, the firms gain access to those assets and revenue sources of the company, which can lead to very high returns on investments. Another feature of private equity transactions is their extensive use of debt in the form of high-yield bonds. By using debt to finance acquisitions, private equity firms can substantially increase their financial returns.

Private equity consists of investors and funds that make investments directly into private companies or conduct buyouts of public companies. Capital for private equity is raised from retail and institutional investors, and can be

used to fund new technologies, expand working capital within an owned company, make acquisitions, or to strengthen a balance sheet. The major of private equity consists of institutional investors and accredited investors who can commit large sums of money for long periods of time.

Private equity investments often demand long holding periods to allow for a turn around of a distressed company or a liquidity event such as IPO or sale to a public company. Generally, the private equity fund raise money from investors like angel investors, institutions with diversified investment portfolio like – pension funds, insurance companies, banks, funds of funds etc.

Types of Private Equity

Private equity investments can be divided into the following categories:

- **Leveraged Buyout (LBO):** This refers to a strategy of making equity investments as part of a transaction in which a company, business unit or business assets is acquired from the current shareholders typically with the use of financial leverage. The companies involved in these type of transactions that are typically more mature and generate operating cash flows.
- **Venture Capital:** It is a broad sub-category of private equity that refers to equity investments made, typically in less mature companies, for the launch, early development, or expansion of a business.
- **Growth Capital:** This refers to equity investments, mostly minority investments, in the companies that are looking for capital to expand or restructure operations, enter new markets or finance a major acquisition without a change of control of the business.

Angel Fund

Angel fund refers to money pool created by high networth individuals or companies (generally known as Angel Investor), for investing in start up business. Angel fund is defined in SEBI (Alternate Investment Funds) (amendment) Regulations, 2013 as a sub-category of Venture Capital Fund under category I-AIF that raises funds from angel investors and invests in accordance with regulations specified by SEBI.

An angel investor or angel (also known as a business angel, informal investor, angel funder, private investor, or seed investor) is an affluent individual who provides capital for a business start-up, usually in exchange for convertible debt or ownership equity. A small but increasing number of angel investors invest online through equity crowd funding or organize themselves into angel groups or angel networks to share research and pool their investment capital, as well as to provide advice to their portfolio companies.

Angel investments are typically the earliest equity investments made in start-up companies. They commonly band together in investor networks. Often these networks are based on regional, industry investor or academic affiliation. Angel Investors are often former entrepreneurs themselves, and typically enjoy working with companies at the earliest stages of business formation.

The effective Angels help entrepreneurs to shape business models, create business plans and connect to resources - but without stepping into a controlling or operating role. Often Angels are entrepreneurs who have successfully built companies, or have spent a part of their career in coaching young companies.

Anchor Investors

Anchor investor means a Qualified Institutional Buyer (QIB) who makes an application for a value of at least 10 crore rupees in a public issue on the main board made through the book building process or makes an application for a value of atleast Rs. 2 crore for an public issue on the SME exchange made in accordance with Chapter IX of the SEBI (ICDR) Regulations, 2018.

Allocation to anchor investors shall be on a discretionary basis and subject to the following:

- (I) In case of public issue on the main board, through the book building process:
 - (i) Maximum of 2 such investors shall be permitted for allocation upto Rs.10 crore.

- (ii) Minimum of 2 and maximum of 15 such investors shall be permitted for allocation above Rs.2 crore and upto Rs. 25 crore, subject to minimum allotment of Rs.1 crore per such investor.
 - (iii) In case of allocation above Rs.25 crore; a minimum of 5 such investors and a maximum of 15 such investors for allocation upto Rs.25 crore and an additional 10 such investors for every additional Rs.25 crore or part thereof, shall be permitted, subject to a minimum allotment of Rs.1 crore per such investor.
- (II) In case of public issue on the SME exchange, through the book building process:
- (i) Maximum of 2 such investors shall be permitted for allocation up to two crore rupees;
 - (ii) Minimum of 2 and maximum of 15 such investors shall be permitted for allocation above 2 crore rupees and up to 25 crore rupees, subject to minimum allotment of 1 crore rupees per such investor;
 - (iii) In case of allocation above 25 crore rupees; a minimum of 5 such investors and a maximum of 15 such investors for allocation up to 25 crore rupees and an additional 10 such investors for every additional 25 crore rupees or part thereof, shall be permitted, subject to a minimum allotment of 1 crore rupees per such investor.

The bidding for anchor investors shall open one day before the issue opening date allocation to Anchor Investors shall be completed on the day of bidding by Anchor Investors. Shares allotted to the Anchor Investor shall be locked-in for 30 days from the date of allotment in the public issue.

Upto 60% of the portion available for allocation to QIB shall be available to anchor investor(s) for allocation/ allotment ("anchor investor portion") and one-third of the anchor investor portion shall be reserved for domestic mutual funds.

Test your Knowledge:

State the differences between Angel Funds and Anchor Investors

High Net Worth Individuals

HNIs or high net worth individuals is a class of individuals who are distinguished from other retail segment based on their net wealth, assets and investible surplus. While there is no standard put forth for the classification, the definition of HNIs varies with the geographical area as well as financial markets and institutions.

Though there is no specific definition, generally in the Indian context, individuals with over Rs. 2 crore investible surplus may be considered to be HNIs while those with investible wealth in the range of Rs. 25 lac - Rs. 2 crore may be deemed as Emerging HNIs.

Explanation

If you apply for amount under Rs. 2 lakhs, you are considered as a retail investor. There may be so many ways in which HNIs are categorized and defined, there is no single bracket that could put them under one roof.

Pension Fund

Pension Fund means a fund established by an employer to facilitate and organize the investment of employees' retirement funds which is contributed by the employer and employees. The pension fund is a common asset pool meant to generate stable growth over the long term, and provide pensions for employees when they reach the end of their working years and commence retirement. Pension funds are commonly run by some sort of financial intermediary for the company and its employees like National Pension Scheme (NPS) is managed by UTIAMC (Retirement Solutions), although some larger corporations operate their pension funds in-house. Pension funds control relatively large amounts of capital and represent the largest institutional investors in many nations.

Pension funds play a huge role in development of the economy and it play active role in the Indian equity market. This pension fund ensures a change in their investment attitudes and in the regulatory climate, encouraging them to increase their investment levels in equities and would have a massive impact on capital market and on the economy as a whole.

Legislations

There are three defining Acts for pensions in India:

1. **Pensions under the EPF & MP Act 1952:** These include the Employees Provident Fund, Employees Pension Scheme, and Employees Deposit Linked Insurance Scheme.
2. **Pensions under the Coal mines PF & MP Act 1948:** These include Coal mines provident fund, Coal mines pension scheme & Coal mines linked insurance scheme.
3. **Gratuity under the Payment of Gratuity Act, 1972:** There are other provident funds in India like Assam Tea Plantations PF, J&K PF, and Seamen's PF etc.

Pensions broadly divided into two sectors:

A-Formal sector Pensions

Formal sector pensions in India can be divided into three categories; viz pensions under an Act or Statute, Government pensions and voluntary pensions.

B-Informal sector Pensions

This scheme will cover unorganized workers who are working or engaged as home based workers, street vendors, agriculture workers, construction workers, among others.

Atal Pension Yojana (APY)

Government of India (GoI) is concerned about the old age income security of the working poor and is focused on encouraging and enabling them to save for their retirement. To address the longevity risks among the workers in unorganized sector and to encourage the workers in unorganized sector to voluntarily save for their retirement, the GoI has announced a new scheme called Atal Pension Yojana (APY) in 2015-16 budget. The APY is focused on all citizens in the unorganized sector. The scheme is administered by the Pension Fund Regulatory and Development Authority (PFRDA) through NPS architecture. Under the APY, there is guaranteed minimum monthly pension for the subscribers ranging between Rs. 1000 and Rs. 5000 per month. The benefit of minimum pension would be guaranteed by the GoI.

Government Pension

Government pensions in India are referred to under the Directive Principles of State Policy and are therefore not covered under a Statute. The Government amended the regulations to put in place the new pension system.

The old scheme continues for the existing employees (i.e. those who joined service prior to January 1, 2004). Pensions for government employees would include employees of the central as well as the state governments.

- (a) Central Government Pensions like Civil servants' pensions, Defenses, Railways, Posts.
- (b) State Government Pensions, Bank pensions like Reserve Bank of India (RBI), Public Sector Banks, National Bank for Agriculture and Rural Development (NABARD) and other banks pensions.

Superannuation schemes are also sold in the market. These are typically the retirement plans sold by Mutual funds and Insurance companies (Life Insurance & Postal Life Insurance).

CAPITAL MARKET INSTRUMENTS

Equity shares

Equity shares, commonly referred to as ordinary share also represents the form of fractional ownership in which a shareholder, as a fractional owner, undertakes the maximum entrepreneurial risk associated with a business venture. The holder of such shares is the member of the company and has voting rights.

According to explanation (i) to Section 43 of Companies Act, 2013 "equity share capital", with reference to any company limited by shares, means all share capital which is not preference share capital. Section 43 further provides

for equity share capital (i) with voting rights, or (ii) with differential rights as to dividend, voting or otherwise in accordance with such rules as may be prescribed.

Equity capital and further issues of equity capital by a company are generally based on the condition that they will rank pari passu along with the earlier issued share capital in all respects. However, as regards dividend declared by the company such additional capital shall be entitled to dividend ratably for the period commencing from the date of issue to the last day of the accounting year, unless otherwise specified in the articles or in the terms of the issue.

Important characteristics of equity shares are

Equity shares, have voting rights at all general meetings of the company. These votes have the affect of controlling the management of the company.

Equity shares have the right to share the profits of the company in the form of dividend (cash) and bonus shares. However, even equity shareholders cannot demand declaration of dividend by the company which is left to the discretion of the Board of Directors.

When the company is wound up, payment towards the equity share capital will be made to the respective shareholders only after payment of the claims of all the creditors and the preference share capital.

Equity share holders enjoy different rights as members under the Companies Act, 2013 such as:

- (a) The right to vote on every resolution placed before the company – (Section 47)
- (b) The rights to subscribe to shares at the time of further issue of capital by the company (Pre-emptive Right) – (Section 62)
- (c) Right to appoint proxy to attend and vote at the meeting on his behalf – (Section 105)
- (d) Right to receive copy of annual accounts of the company – (Section 136)
- (e) Right to receive notice of the meeting of members – (Section 101)
- (f) Right to inspection of various statutory registers maintained by the company – (Section 94)
- (g) Right to requisition extraordinary general meeting of the company – (Section 100)

SEBI (Listing Obligations and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2015 also specifies that the listed entity shall seek to protect and facilitate the exercise of the following rights of shareholders:

- (a) right to participate in, and to be sufficiently informed of, decisions concerning fundamental corporate changes,
- (b) opportunity to participate effectively and vote in general shareholder meetings,
- (c) Being informed of the rules, including voting procedures that govern general shareholder meetings,
- (d) opportunity to ask questions to the board of directors, to place items on the agenda of general meetings, and to propose resolutions, subject to reasonable limitations,
- (e) Effective shareholder participation in key corporate governance decisions, such as the nomination and election of members of board of directors,

- (f) exercise of ownership rights by all shareholders, including institutional investors,
- (g) adequate mechanism to address the grievances of the shareholders,
- (h) protection of minority shareholders from abusive actions by, or in the interest of, controlling shareholders acting either directly or indirectly, and effective means of redress.

Shares with Differential Voting Rights

Shares with differential voting rights (“DVR”) refer to equity shares holding differential rights as to dividend and/or voting. Section 43 (a) (ii) of the Companies Act, 2013 allows a company limited by shares to issue DVRs as part of its share capital. Introduced for the first time in 2000 and issued by Tata Motors first, DVRs are seen as a viable option for raising investments and retaining control over the company at the same time. Section 43(2) of the Companies Act 2013 read with Companies (Share Capital & Debenture) Rules, 2013 provides that companies can issue equity shares with differential rights subject to the following conditions including:

- Articles of association of the company must authorize the issue;
- The voting power in respect of shares with differential rights of the Company shall not exceed 74% of total voting power including voting power in respect of equity shares with differential rights issued at any point of time;
- Approval of shareholders by passing ordinary resolution in General Meeting;
- The Company should not have defaulted in:
 - filing annual returns and financial statements for the last three years;
 - repayment of matured deposits or declared dividend;
 - redemption of its preference shares/debentures which are due for redemption;
 - repayment of term loan taken from any public financial institution or state level financial institution or from a scheduled bank that has become due and payable;
 - statutory dues of the employees of the company.

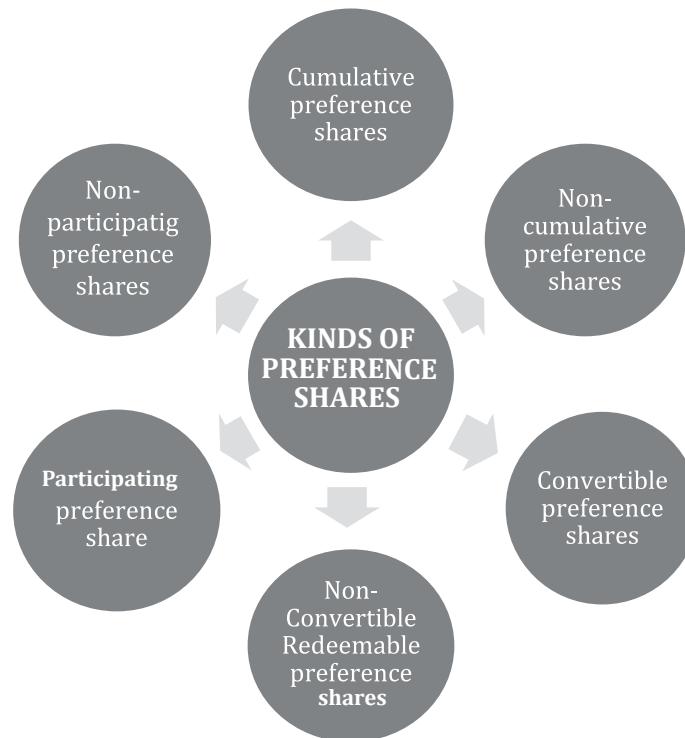
Preference Shares

Preference shares are that part of a company’s share capital which carry a preferential right to:

- dividend at a fixed rate or amount; and
- repayment of capital in case of winding-up of the company.

Preference shares enjoy a preferential right to dividend and repayment of capital in case of winding-up of the company. Governed by the provisions of Section 55 of the Companies Act, the main drawback of preference shares is that they carry limited voting rights. Generally, an equity share confers on its holder a right to vote on all resolutions that require shareholder approval under the Act, any other law, or the articles of association of the company. A preference share carries voting rights only with respect of matters which directly affect the rights of the preference shareholders.

In this regard, the **Act clarifies** a resolution relating to winding-up and repayment or reduction of capital is deemed to directly affect the rights of the preference shareholders. Due to these limitations on voting rights, a preference shareholder does not have much control over the company. However, a preference shareholder may acquire voting rights on par with an equity shareholder if the dividend on preference shares is in arrears.



Issuer desirous of making an offer of non-convertible redeemable preference shares to the public is required to list on one or more recognized stock exchanges. Issuer may list its non-convertible redeemable preference shares issued on private placement basis on a recognized stock exchange. [This section has been discussed in Lesson No. 2 of Company Law Subject (Executive Programme)]

Debentures

Section 2(30) of the Companies Act, 2013 defines debentures. “Debenture” includes debenture stock, bonds or any other instrument of a company evidencing a debt, whether constituting a charge on the assets of the company or not.

However,

- (a) the instruments referred to in Chapter III-D of the Reserve Bank of India Act, 1934; and
- (b) such other instrument, as may be prescribed by the Central Government in consultation with the Reserve Bank of India, issued by a company, shall not be treated as debenture.

The important features of a debenture are:

1. It is issued by a company as a certificate of indebtedness.
2. It usually indicates the date of redemption and also provides for the repayment of principal and payment of interest at specified date or dates.
3. In case of secured debentures, it creates a charge on the undertaking or the assets of the company.
4. Debentures holders do not have any voting rights.
5. Company shall pay interest, irrespective of profits.

Debenture is a document evidencing a debt or acknowledging it and any document which fulfils either of these conditions is a Debenture.

6. While issuance of debentures, the company shall ensure that the parameters for designation of deposits under Companies (Acceptance of Deposits) Rules, 2014 are not triggered.

Categories of Debentures

Based on convertibility, debentures can be classified under three categories:

- **Fully Convertible Debentures (FCDs)** : These are converted into equity shares of the company with or without premium as per the terms of the issue, on the expiry of specified period or periods. If the conversion is to take place at or after eighteen months from the date of allotment but before 36 months, the conversion is optional on the part of the debenture holders in terms of SEBI (ICDR) Regulations. Interest will be payable on these debentures upto the date of conversion as per transfer issue.
- **Non Convertible Debentures (NCDs)** : These debentures do not carry the option of conversion into equity shares and are therefore redeemed on the expiry of the specified period or periods. The issuer is required to list its Public issue of NCDs on stock exchange as per SEBI (Issue and Listing of Debt Securities) Regulations, 2008. NCDs can be also issued on private placement basis.
- **Partly Convertible Debentures (PCDs)** : These may consist of two kinds namely-convertible and non-convertible. The convertible portion is to be converted into equity shares at the expiry of specified period. However, the non-convertible portion is redeemed at the expiry of the stipulated period. If the conversion takes place at or after 18 months, the conversion is optional at the discretion of the debenture holder.

Optionally Fully Convertible Debenture (OFCD)

The Optionally Fully Convertible Debenture is a kind of debenture which can be converted into shares at the expiry of a certain period at a predetermined price, if the debt holder (investor) wishes to do so. The “securities” as defined u/s 2(81) of Companies Act, 2013 means securities as defined in clause (h) of section 2 of the Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, 1956, and includes hybrids. Hence after analysing the above definition of “OFCD”, “hybrid” and “securities” it could be rightly concluded that an OFCD being a hybrid security falls under the definition of “securities” as defined u/s 2 (h) of securities Contract (Regulation) Act, 1956 and u/s 2(81) of Companies Act, 2013 as it inherits the characteristics of debentures initially and also that of the shares at a later stage if the option to convert the securities into shares being exercised by the security holder. [This section has been discussed in Lesson No. 4 of Company Law Subject (Executive Programme)]

Bonds

Bonds are the debt security where an issuer is bound to pay a specific rate of interest agreed as per the terms of payment and repay principal amount at a later time. The bond holders are generally like a creditor where a company is obliged to pay the amount. The amount is paid on the maturity of the bond period. Generally these bonds duration would be for 5 to 10 years.

Characteristics of a Bond

1. Bond has a fixed face value, which is the amount to be returned to the investor upon maturity.
2. Fixed maturity date, which can range from a few days to 20-30 years or even more.
3. All bonds repay the principal amount after the maturity date.
4. Provides regular payment of interest, semi-annually or annually.
5. Interest is calculated as a certain percentage of the face value known as a ‘coupon payment’.
6. Generally considered as less risky investment as compared to equity.
7. It helps to diversify and grow investor’s money.

Types of Bond

Government Bonds

These are the bonds issued either directly by Government of India or by the Public Sector Undertakings (PSU's) in India. These bonds are secured as they are backed up with security from Government. These are generally offered with low rate of interest compared to other types of bonds.

Corporate Bonds

These are the bonds issued by the private corporate companies. Indian corporates issue secured or non secured bonds. However care to be taken to consider the credit rating given by Credit Rating Agencies before investing in these bonds.

Banks and other financial institutions bonds

These bonds are issued by banks or any financial institution. The financial market is well regulated and the majority of the bond markets are from this segment.

Tax saving bonds

In India, the tax saving bonds are issued by the Government of India for providing benefit to investors in the form of tax savings. Along with getting normal interest, the bond holder would also get tax benefit. In India, all these bonds are listed in National Stock Exchange and Bombay Stock Exchange in India, hence they can be easily liquidated and sold in the open market.

Test your Knowledge:

How is a Bond different from a Debenture?

Foreign Currency Convertible Bonds (FCCBS)

'Foreign Currency Convertible Bond' (FCCB) means a bond issued by an Indian company expressed in foreign currency, and the principal and interest in respect of which is payable in foreign currency.

The FCCBs are unsecured instruments which carry a fixed rate of interest and an option for conversion into a fixed number of equity shares of the issuer company. Interest and redemption price (if conversion option is not exercised) is payable in dollars. FCCBs shall be denominated in any freely convertible Foreign Currency. However, it must be kept in mind that FCCB, issue proceeds need to conform to ECB end use requirements.

Foreign investors also prefer FCCBs because of the Dollar denominated servicing, the conversion option and, the arbitrage opportunities presented by conversion of the FCCBs into equity shares at a discount on prevailing Indian market price. In addition, 25% of the FCCB proceeds can be used for general corporate restructuring.

Example

Suppose a company 'A' issues bonds with following terms –

Issue Price of the Bond Rs. 1000 Coupon rate 2%

Maturity 2 years

Convertible into equity shares @ Rs.800 per share

Now suppose an investor subscribes to 4 of these bonds. Thus the total investment is Rs.4000. On this investment, he is entitled to get an interest @ 2% for 2 years. On the maturity date, i.e. after 2 years, the investor will have an option – to either claim full redemption of the amount from the company or get the bonds converted into fully paid equity shares @ Rs. 800 per share. Thus if he goes for the conversion he will be entitled to 5 (4000/800) equity shares. The choice he makes will depend on the market price of the share on the date of conversion.

If the shares of the company 'A' is trading at lower than Rs.800, let's say Rs.500, the investor will be better off by claiming full redemption of his bonds and buying the shares from the market. In this case, he will get 8 (4000/500) equity shares as against 5 which he was getting on conversion. Similarly if the market price of the share is higher than Rs. 800, the investor will benefit by getting its shares converted. Thus, on the day of maturity, an investor will seek full redemption if the conversion price is higher than the current market price, and will go for conversion if the conversion price is less than the current market price.

Foreign Currency Exchangeable Bonds (FCEBs)

The FCEB is used to raise funds from the international markets against the security and exchangeability of shares of another company. Foreign Currency Exchangeable Bond (FCEB) means –

- A bond expressed in foreign currency.
- The principal and the interest in respect of which is payable in foreign currency.
- Issued by an issuing company, being an Indian company.
- Subscribed by a person resident outside India.
- Exchangeable into equity shares of another company, being offered company which is an Indian company.

Either wholly or partly or on the basis of any equity related warrants attached to debt instruments. It may be noted that issuing company to be the part of promoter group of offer or company and the offeror company is to be listed and is to be eligible to receive foreign investment. Under this option, an issuer company may issue FCEBs in foreign currency, and these FCEBs are convertible into shares of another company (off company) that forms part of the same promoter group as the issuer company.

Example: Company ABC Ltd. issues FCEBs, then the FCEBs will be convertible into shares of company XYZ Ltd. that are held by company ABC Ltd. and where companies ABC Ltd. and XYZ Ltd. form part of the same promoter group. Unlike FCCBs that convert into shares of issuer itself, FCEBs are exchangeable into shares of Offered Company (OC). Also, relatively, FCEB has an inherent advantage that it does not result in dilution of shareholding at the OC level.

Can you now differentiate between Foreign Currency Convertible Bond (FCCB) and Foreign Currency Exchangeable Bond (FCEB)?

Indian Depository Receipts

According to Section 2(48) of the Companies Act, 2013 “Indian Depository Receipt” means any instrument in the form of a depository receipt created by a domestic depository in India and authorized by a company incorporated outside India making an issue of such depository receipts.

An IDR is an instrument denominated in Indian Rupee in the form of a depository receipt created by a domestic depository (Custodian of securities registered with SEBI) against the underlying equity of issuing company to enable foreign companies to raise funds from Indian Securities Markets. In an IDR, foreign companies would issue shares, to a domestic (Indian) depository, which would in turn issue depository receipts to investors in India. The actual shares underlying the IDRs would be held by an Overseas Custodian, which shall authorize the Indian depository to issue the IDRs. To that extent, IDRs are derivative instruments because they derive their value from the underlying shares. **Standard**

Section 390 of the Companies Act, 2013 and rule 13 of Companies (Registration of Foreign Companies) Rules, 2014 lays down the procedure for issue of Indian Depository Receipts. Apart from this a company has to comply with Chapter X and XA of SEBI (ICDR) Regulations, 2018 to issue IDRs or a rights issue of IDRs.

Chartered PLC is only company to offer IDR in the Indian market. The foreign company issuing IDRs need to

comply with the requirements of rules prescribed under Companies Act, SEBI Regulations and RBI notifications/circulars.

Derivatives

Derivatives can be of different types like futures, options, swaps, caps, floor, collars etc. The most popular derivative instruments are futures and options.

The term Derivative has been defined in Securities Contracts (Regulations) Act, as:-

Derivative includes: -

- (A) a security derived from a debt instrument, share, loan, whether secured or unsecured, risk instrument or contract for differences or any other form of security;
- (B) a contract which derives its value from the prices, or index of prices, of underlying securities;
- (C) commodity derivatives; and
- (D) such other instruments as may be declared by the Central Government to be derivatives.

A derivative is a financial instrument that derives its value from an underlying asset. This underlying asset can be stocks, bonds, currency, commodities, metals and even intangible, assets like stock indices.

Currency derivatives :

Currency derivatives are financial contracts between the buyer and seller involving the exchange of two currencies at a future date, and at a stipulated rate. Currency Derivative trading is similar to Stock Futures and Options trading. However, the underlying asset are currency pairs (such as USDINR or EURINR) instead of stocks. Currency Options and Currency Futures trading is done in the Foreign Exchange markets. Forex rates are the value of a foreign currency relative to domestic currency. The major participants of Currency trading in India are banks, corporations, exporters and importers.

Benefits of Currency derivatives:

- Diversification of investments
- Easy investment in currencies
- Hedging opportunity to importers & exporters
- Trading opportunity due to volatility in currency
- Exchange-traded and hence systematically regulated
- Provides transparent rates

Commodity Derivatives:

Commodity is a physical good attributable to a natural resource that is tradable and supplied without substantial differentiation by the general public. Commodities trade in physical (spot) markets and in futures and forward markets. Spot markets involve the physical transfer of goods between buyers and sellers; prices in these markets reflect current (or very near term) supply and demand conditions.

Commodity derivatives are financial instruments whose value is based on underlying commodities, such as oil, gas, metals, agricultural products and minerals. Other assets such as emissions trading credits, freight rates and even the weather can also underlie commodity derivatives.

Commodity Derivatives markets are a good source of critical information and indicator of market sentiments. Since, commodities are frequently used as input in the production of goods or services, uncertainty and volatility in commodity prices and raw materials makes the business environment erratic, unpredictable and subject to unforeseeable risks.

Volatility in raw material costs affects businesses and can be significant given that commodity prices are driven by supply and demand from domestics as well as global markets. Ability to manage or mitigate risks by using suitable hedging in commodity derivative products, can positively affect business performance.

Futures

Future refers to a future contract which means an exchange traded forward contract to buy or sell a predetermined quantity of an asset on a predetermined future date at a predetermined price. Contracts are standardized and there's centralized trading ensuring liquidity.

The idea behind financial future contracts is to transfer future changes in security prices from one party in the contract to the other and hence it offers a means to manage risk in participating financial market. It is a means for reducing risk or assuming risk in the hope of profit and it basically transfer value rather than create it.

There are two positions that one can take in a future contract:

- **Long Position-** This is when a futures contract is purchased and the buyer agrees to receive delivery of the underlying asset. (Stock/Indices/Commodities)
- **Short Position-** This is when a futures contract is sold and the seller agrees to make delivery of the underlying asset. (Stock/Indices/Commodities)

Currency Futures:

A currency future, also known as FX future, is a futures contract to exchange one currency for another at a specified date in the future at a price (exchange rate) that is fixed on the purchase date. Generally, the price of a future contract is in terms of INR per unit of other currency e.g. US Dollars. Currency future contracts allow investors to hedge against foreign exchange risk. Currency Derivatives are available on four currency pairs viz. US Dollars (USD), Euro (EUR), Great Britain Pound (GBP) and Japanese Yen (JPY). Cross Currency Futures & Options contracts on EUR-USD, GBP-USD and USD-JPY are also available for trading in Currency Derivatives segment.

Currency Future and Options Contracts (involving Indian Rupee) on Exchanges in International Financial Services Centers (IFSC)

SEBI (International Financial Services Centers) Guidelines, 2015 specified currency derivatives as permissible securities in which dealing may be permitted by stock exchanges in IFSC. RBI, announced its decision to allow Rupee derivatives (with settlement in foreign currency) to be traded in IFSC.

Currency futures and options contracts involving Indian Rupee (with settlement in foreign currency), the position limits for eligible market participants, per currency pair per stock exchange, shall be as follows:

- **Trading Members (positions on proprietary basis as well as clients' position)** – Gross open position across all contracts not to exceed 15% of the total open interest or USD 1 billion equivalent, whichever is higher.
- **Institutional Investors** – Gross open position across all contracts not to exceed 15% of the total open interest or USD 1 billion equivalent, whichever is higher.
- **Eligible Foreign Investors** – Gross open position across all contracts not to exceed 15% of the total open interest or USD 1 billion equivalent, whichever is higher.
- **Other Clients** – Gross open position across all contracts not to exceed 6% of the total open interest or USD 100 million equivalent, whichever is higher.

Options

Options Contract give its holder the right, but not the obligation, to take or make delivery on or before a specified date at a stated price. But this option is given to only one party in the transaction while the other party has an obligation to take or make delivery. Since the other party has an obligation and a risk associated with making good the obligation, he receives a payment for that. This payment is called as option premium.

Unlike future contracts which is an obligation, option contract is a general right to buy or sale wherein the right to buy is referred to as a call option, whereas the right to sell is known as a put option.

Option contracts are classified into two types on the basis of which party has the option:

- **Call option** - A call option is with the buyer and gives the holder a right to take delivery.
- **Put option** - The put option is with the seller and gives the right to take delivery.

Option Contracts are classified into two types on the basis of time at which the option can be exercised:-

- **European Option** – European style options are those contacts where the option can be exercised only on the expiration date. Options traded on Indian stock exchanges are of European Style.
- **American Option** – American style options are those contacts where the option can be exercised on or before the expiration date.

Example

Case 1

Rajesh purchases 1 lot of Infosys Technologies MAY 3000 Put and pays a premium of Rs. 250. This contract allows Rajesh to sell 100 shares of Infosys at Rs. 3000 per share at any time between the current date and the end of May. In order to avail this privilege, all Rajesh has to do is pay a premium of Rs. 25,000 (Rs. 250 a share for 100 shares).

Case 2

If an investor is of the opinion that a particular stock say “Ray Technologies” is currently overpriced in the month of February and hence expect that there will be price corrections in the future. However he doesn't want to take a chance, just in case the prices rise. So the best option for the investor would be to take a Put option on the stock.

Lets assume the quotes for the stock are as under:

Spot Rs. 1040

May Put at 1050 Rs.10

May Put at 1070 Rs. 30

So the investor purchases 1000 “Ray Technologies” Put at strike price of Rs.1070 and Put price of Rs. 30/-. The investor pay Rs. 30,000 as Put premium.

The position of investor in two different scenarios have been discussed below:

1. May Spot price of Ray Technologies = Rs.1020
2. May Spot price of Ray Technologies = Rs.1080

In the first situation you have the right to sell 1000 “Ray Technologies” shares at Rs.1,070/-the price of which is Rs. 1020/-. By exercising the option the investor earn Rs. (1070-1020) =Rs.50 per Put, which amounts to Rs. 50,000/-. The net income in this case is Rs. (50000-30000) =Rs. 20,000.

The buyer of a put has purchased a right to sell. The owner of a put option has the right to sell.

In the second price situation, the price is more in the spot market, so the investor will not sell at a lower price by exercising the Put. He will have to allow the Put option to expire unexercised. In the process the investor only lose the premium paid which is Rs. 30,000.

While buyer of an options has limited risk (Premium Amount), seller of an option has very high risk (Market Price- Strike Price or Strike Price - Market Price), as the case may be, depending on whether it is an call or put option.

As of now, all futures and options are Cash settled.

Warrant

Warrant means an option issued by a company whereby the buyer is granted the right to purchase a number of shares (usually one) of its equity share capital at a given exercise price during a given period.

The holder of a warrant has the right but not the obligation to convert them into equity shares. Thus in the true sense, a warrant signifies optional conversion. In case the investor benefits by conversion of warrant, then he will convert the warrants, else he may simply let the warrant lapse. The companies listed on the Exchange can issue warrants in accordance with SEBI (ICDR) Regulations, 2018.

For example if the conversion price of the warrant is Rs. 70/- and the current market price is Rs.110/-, then the investor will convert the warrant and enjoy the capital gain of Rs.40/-. In case the conversion is at Rs.70/- and the current market price is Rs.40/-, then the investor will simply let the warrant lapse without conversion.

Real Estate Investment Trusts ('REITs')

A real estate investment trust ("REIT") is a collective investment scheme that owns, operates or finances income-producing real estate. REITs provide all investors the chance to own valuable real estate, present the opportunity to access dividend-based income and total returns, and help communities grow, thrive, and revitalize.

REITs allow anyone to invest in portfolios of real estate assets the same way they invest in other industries – through the purchase of individual company stock or through a mutual fund or exchange traded fund (ETF). The stockholders of a REIT earn a share of the income produced through real estate investment – without buying any finance property. Benefits of REITs include:

- **Less Capital Intensive:** Direct investment in real estate property is very capital intensive. But each shares of REITs will be comparatively more affordable (it will not require large capital outflows).
- **Suitable for small Investors:** Investing through REITs will eliminate dealing with builders, thereby avoiding potential exposure to big builders.
- **Transparency:** REITs stocks are listed in stock market, hence details will be available on public domain
- **Assured Dividends:** REITs generates income in form of dividend. REITs dividend payment is relatively assured as most of their income is in the form of rental (lease) income.
- **Tax Free:** Dividend earned by the investors of REIT will be tax free.
- **Fast Capital Appreciation:** Capital appreciation can be phenomenal.
- **Easy to buy:** Investment in REITS easier than investment in Real Estate properties

REITs are similar to mutual funds and shares and they provide income by way of :

- Dividend to its shareholders.
- Capital Appreciation as REIT stocks are listed in BSE and NSE

Infrastructure Investment Trusts ('InvITs')

Considering the importance of infrastructure sector with an aim to provide a suitable platform for financing / refinancing infrastructure projects and allow the investors to participate in the growth story of infrastructure, the Government introduced a new investment vehicle named Infrastructure Investment Trusts ('InvITs') in 2014.

The primary objective of InvITs is to promote the infrastructure sector of India by encouraging more individuals to invest in it. Typically, such a tool is designed to pool money from several investors to be invested in income-generating assets. The cash flow thus generated is distributed among investors as dividend income. When compared to Real Estate Investment Trust or REITs, the structure and operation of both are quite similar.

An InvIT is established as a trust and is registered with the SEBI. Typically, infrastructure investment trust SEBI comprises 4 elements, namely –

- **Trustee** : They are required to be registered with SEBI as debenture trustees. Also, they are required to invest at least 80% into infra assets that generate steady revenue.
- **Sponsor** : Typically, a body corporate, LLP, promoter or a company with a net worth of at least Rs. 100 crore classifies as a sponsor. Further, they must hold at least 15% of the total InvITs with a minimum lock-in period of 3 years or as notified by any regulatory requirement. When it comes to a public-private partnership or PPP projects, sponsors serve as a Special Purpose Vehicle (SPV).
- **Investment manager** : As a body corporate of LLP, an investment manager supervises all the operational activities surrounding InvITs.
- **Project manager** : The authority is mostly responsible for executing projects. However, in the case of PPP projects, it serves as an entity that also supervises ancillary responsibilities.

Securitized Debt Instruments

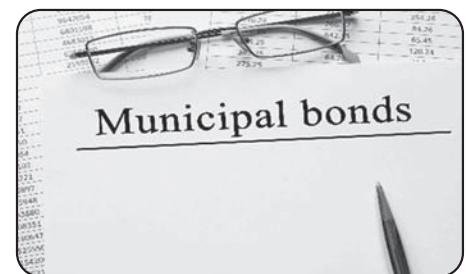
Securitized debt instruments are financial securities that are created by securitizing individual loans (debt). Securitization is a financial process that involves issuing securities that are backed by assets, most commonly debt. The assets are transformed into securities, and the process is called securitization. The owner of the securities receives an income from the underlying assets; hence, the term asset-backed securities.

Securitized debt instruments come with various advantages over conventional forms of investing and are more valuable to a portfolio. **One of the most common types of securitized debt is mortgage-backed securities.**

Securitized debts can lower interest rates and free up capital for the bank, but they can also encourage lending for reasons other than making a profit. SEBI had laid down the framework for public offer and listing of securitized debt instruments vide SEBI (Public Offer and Listing of Securitized Debt Instruments) Regulations, 2008 and had specified listing agreement for Securitized Debt Instruments. A few privately placed SDIs have already been listed on exchanges.

Municipal Bonds

Municipal bonds are also referred to as 'muni bonds'. The urban local government and agencies issue these bonds. Municipal bonds are issued when a government body wants to raise funds for projects such as infra-related, roads, airports, railway stations, schools, and so on. SEBI issued guidelines in 2015 for the urban local bodies to raise funds by issuing municipal bonds. Municipal bonds exist in India since the year 1997. Bangalore Municipal Corporation is the first urban local body to issue municipal bonds in India. Ahmedabad followed Bangalore in the succeeding years. The municipal bonds lost the ground after the initial investors' attraction it received and failed to raise the desired amount of funds. To revive the municipal bonds, SEBI came up with guidelines for the issue of municipal bonds in 2015.



Municipality should meet the following eligibility criteria to issue municipal bonds in India:

- The municipality must not have a negative net worth in each of the three previous years.
- The municipality must have no default in the repayment of debt securities and loans availed from the banks or non-banking financial companies in the last year.

- The municipality, promoter and directors must not be enlisted in the willful defaulters published by the Reserve Bank of India (RBI). The municipality should have no record of default in the payment of interest and repayment of principal with respect to debt instruments.

Exchange Traded Funds (ETF)

- An Exchange Traded fund (ETF) is a security that tracks an index, commodity, bonds, or a basket of assets like an index fund and is traded in the securities market. In simple words, ETFs are funds that track indexes such as Sensex, Nifty, etc.
- When you buy shares/units of an ETF, you actually buy shares/units of a portfolio that tracks the performance of the index. ETFs just reflect the performance of the index they track.
- Unlike regular mutual funds, ETFs trade like a common stock on the stock exchange and the price of an ETF changes as per the trading in the market takes place.
- The trading value of an ETF depends on the net asset value of the underlying stock that it represents. ETFs, generally, have higher daily liquidity and lower fees than mutual fund schemes.

MECHANISM FOR ISSUANCE OF SECURITIES IN PRIMARY MARKET

Book Building

Book building is a systematic process of generating, capturing and recording investor's demand for shares during IPO or other securities during their issuance process in order to support efficient price discovery. This process is also known as price discovery method.

The SEBI (ICDR) Regulations, 2018 defines book building as follows:

Book building means a process undertaken to elicit demand and to assess the price for determination of the quantum or value of specified securities or Indian Depository Receipts, as the case may be, in accordance with the SEBI (ICDR) Regulations, 2018.

The book building process in India is very transparent. All investors including small investors can see demand for the shares of the company at various price points on the website of the Exchange before applying. According to this method, share prices are determined on the basis of real demand for the shares at various price levels in the market.

Net Offer to Public through Book Building Process

In case of an issue made through the book building process as per regulation 26(1), then the allocation in the net offer to public category shall be as follows:

- not less than 35 % to retail individual investors
- not less than 15 % to non-institutional investors
- not more than 50% to qualified institutional buyers, 5 % of which shall be allocated to mutual fund

In case of an issue made through the book building process under regulation 26(2), the allocation in the net offer to public category shall be as follows:

- not more than 10% to retail individual investors
- not more than 15% to non-institutional investors
- not less than 75% to qualified institutional buyers, 5% of which shall be allocated to mutual fund

In an issue made other than through the book building process, allocation in the net offer to public category shall be made as follows:

- Minimum 50% to retail individual investors; and Remaining to:
 - (i) individual applicants other than RII and
 - (ii) other investors including corporate bodies or institutions, irrespective of the number of specified securities applied for

Note: -

1. In case of an issue made through Book Building process under regulation 6(1) and 6(2), addition of 5% allocation available to mutual funds shall be eligible for allocation under the balance available for qualified institutional buyers.
2. The issuer may allocate up to 60% of the portion available for allocation to qualified institutional buyers to an anchor investor.
3. For above purpose, if the retail individual investor category is entitled to more than 50% on proportionate basis, the retail individual investors shall be allocated that higher percentage.

Book building Process

- Company appoints Lead Book Runners/Co Book Runners, Lead Merchant Banker (LMB) to act as Lead Book Runner. If more than one LBM/LBR, inter-se, allocation of responsibilities to be decided.
- Filing of draft offer document with SEBI for obtaining observation and, application to Exchanges for in-principle approval for listing.
- Filing of Red herring prospectus with SEBI, Stock Exchange and Registrar of Companies (ROC).
- Lead Book Runners (LBR) appoints Syndicate members (SM), to underwrite the issue.
- LBR/SM to finalise bidding/collection centers who are either:
 - (a) SEBI Registered stock broker.
 - (b) Self-certified Syndicate Bank (for ASBA facility).
- Pre issue advertisement shall be made.
- Bidding and allocation for anchor investors one day before opening of issue.
- Issue opens and Investor submits forms at bidding centers.
- Electronic Bidding Process and determination of price.
- Registration of final prospectus with ROC.
- Allocation/Manner of Allotment.
- In case of Book Built Issue, the issuer in consultation with merchant banker, fixes the price band.
- In case of Fixed Price Issue, the issuer in consultation with merchant banker, fixes the price of the shares to be offered (Face Value + Share Premium) and makes an offer. If the investors subscribe minimum 90% of the offer, the issue will be successful else the entire application money has to be refunded back.

Example

Let's take an example.

Number of shares issued by the Company = 100. Price band = Rs. 30 – Rs. 40.

Now let's check what individuals have bid for.

Bid	Number of shares	Price per share (Rs.)	Cumulative demand
1	20	40	20
2	10	38	30
3	20	37	50
4	30	36	80
5	20	35	100
6	20	33	120
7	20	30	140

The shares will be sold at the Bid 5 price of 20 shares for Rs.35.

Because Bidders 1 to 5 are willing to pay at least Rs. 35 per share. The total bids from Bidders 1 to 5 ensure all 100 shares will be sold (20 + 10 + 20 + 30 + 20). The cut-off price is therefore Bid 5's price = Rs. 35.

Bidders 1 to 5 get allotments at that price. Bidders 6 and 7 don't get an allotment because their bids are below the cut-off price. On allotment, the extra amount paid will be refunded to the investor. Since the cut-off price is Rs. 35, the 10 shares will cost Rs. 350 (10 x Rs. 35). The balance Rs. 50 will be refunded to the investor.

Application Supported by Block Amount (ASBA)

ASBA means "Application Supported by Blocked Amount". If an investor is applying through ASBA, his application money shall be debited from the bank account only if his/her application is selected for allotment after the basis of allotment is finalized.

ASBA is an application by an investor containing an authorization to Self-Certified Syndicate Bank (SCSB) to block the application money in the bank account, for subscribing to an issue.

Self-Certified Syndicate Bank

Self-Certified Syndicate Bank (SCSB) is a bank which offers the facility of applying through the ASBA process. A bank desirous of offering ASBA facility shall submit a certificate to SEBI as per the prescribed format for inclusion of its name in SEBI's list of SCSBs.

A SCSB shall identify its Designated Branches (DBs) at which an ASBA investor shall submit ASBA form and shall also identify the Controlling Branch (CB) which shall act as a coordinating branch for the Registrar to the issue, Stock Exchanges and Merchant Bankers. The SCSB, its DBs and CB shall continue to act as such, for all issues to which ASBA process is applicable. The SCSB may identify new DBs for the purpose of ASBA process and intimate details of the same to SEBI, after which SEBI will add the DB to the list of SCSBs maintained by it. The SCSB shall communicate the following details to Stock Exchanges for making it available on their respective websites; these details shall also be made available by the SCSB on its website:

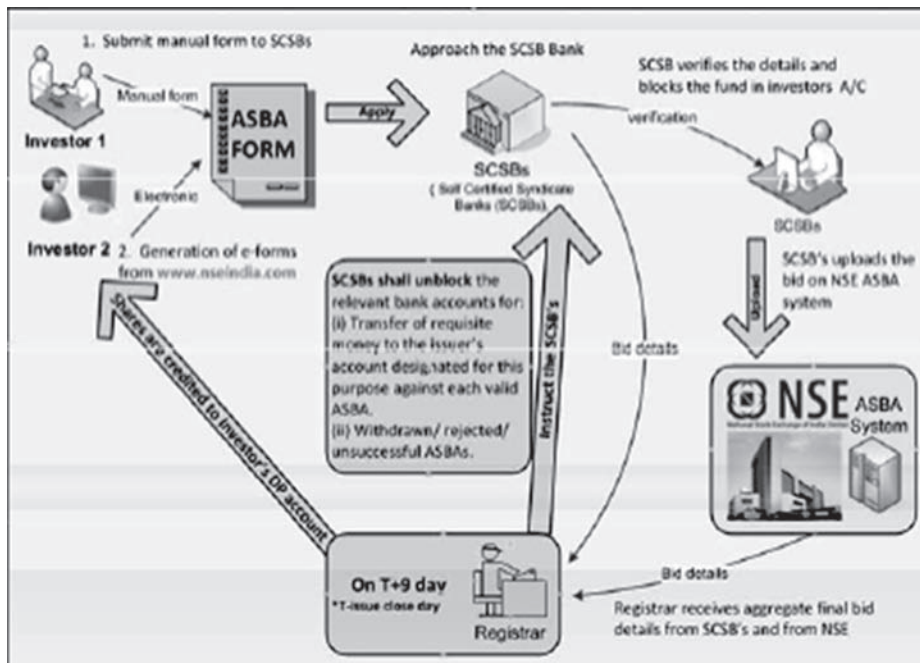
- (i) Name and address of all the SCSB.
- (i) Addresses of DBs and CB and other details such as telephone number, fax number and email ids.
- (i) Name and contacts details of a nodal officer at a senior level from the CB.

ASBA Process

An ASBA investor submits an ASBA physically or electronically through the internet banking facility, to the SCSB with whom the bank account to be blocked is maintained, then the SCSB blocks the application money in the bank account specified in the ASBA, on the basis of an authorization to this effect given by the account holder in the ASBA. The application money remains blocked in the bank account till finalization of the basis of allotment in the issue or till withdrawal/failure of the issue or till withdrawal/rejection of the application, as the case may be.

The application data shall thereafter be uploaded by the SCSB in the electronic bidding system through a web enabled interface provided by the Stock Exchanges. Once the basis of allotment is finalized, the Registrar to the issue sends an appropriate request to the SCSB for unblocking the relevant bank accounts and for transferring the requisite amount to the issuer's account. In case of withdrawal/failure of the issue, the amount shall be unblocked by the SCSB on receipt of information from the pre-issue merchant bankers.

A retail investor has the option of making application through ASBA or through cheque. However, non-retail investors i.e. Qualified Institutional Buyers and Non-Institutional Investors, shall mandatorily make use of ASBA facility for making application in public/rights issue.



Advantages of ASBA facility:

Applying through ASBA facility has the following advantages:

- The investor need not pay the application money by cheque rather the investor submits ASBA which accompanies an authorization to block the bank account to the extent of the application money.
- The investor does not have to bother about refunds, as in ASBA only that much money to the extent required for allotment of securities, is deducted from the bank account only when his application is selected for allotment after the basis of allotment is finalized.
- The investor continues to earn interest on the application money as the same remains in the bank account, which is not the case in other modes of payment.

The investor deals with the known intermediary, i.e., its own bank.

Use of Unified Payments Interface (UPI) with ASBA in Public Issue Process

UPI

Unified Payments Interface (UPI) is an instant payment system developed by the National Payments Corporation of India (NPCI), an RBI regulated entity. UPI is built over the IMPS (Immediate Payment Service) infrastructure and allows you to instantly transfer money between any two parties' bank accounts. UPI as a payment mechanism is available for all public issues for which Red Herring Prospectus is filed after January 01, 2019.

How is public issue application using UPI different from public issue application using ASBA submitted with intermediaries?

Public issue application using UPI is a step towards digitizing the offline processes involved in the application process by moving the same online. This requires you to create a UPI ID and PIN using any of the UPI enabled mobile application. The UPI ID can be used for blocking of funds and making payment in the public issue process. One can accept the request to block the funds for the amount they have bid by entering their UPI PIN in the mobile application.

The money shall be blocked and shall be automatically remitted to the Escrow Bank, in case of allotment. UPI in public issue process shall essentially bring in comfort, ease of use and reduce the listing time for public issues.

Some FAQs related to UPI

(A) How can “UPI as a payment option” be used in the public issue process?

1. UPI as part of bidding :

- Investor will fill in the bid details in the application form as per the existing process along with his UPI ID.
- As per the existing process, investor may submit the application with any of the intermediary (Syndicate Member / Registered Stock Brokers / Registrar and Transfer Agents / Depository Participants), who, on receipt of application will upload the bid details along with UPI id in the stock exchange bidding platform.
- The stock exchange will electronically share the bid details, along with investors UPI id, with the Escrow/ Sponsor Bank appointed by the issuer company.

2. UPI as part of blocking:

- The Escrow/Sponsor Bank will initiate a mandate request on the investor i.e. request the investor to authorize blocking of funds equivalent to applicant amount and subsequent debit of funds in case of allotment.
- The request raised by the Escrow/Sponsor Bank, would be electronically received by the investor as SMS/intimation on his/her bank provided mobile no. linked to UPI ID.
- Upon validation of block request by the investor, the said information would be electronically received by the investors' bank, where the funds, equivalent to application amount, would get blocked in investors account. Intimation regarding confirmation of such block of funds in investors account would also be received by the investor.

3. UPI as part of payment for shares post allocation process:

- The registrar to the issue, based on information of bidding and blocking received from stock exchange, would undertake reconciliation and prepare the basis of allotment.
- Upon approval of such basis the instructions would be sent to sponsor bank to initiate process for credit of funds in the public issue escrow account and unblocking excess money.
- Based on authorization given by investor using UPI PIN at the time of blocking, the funds, equivalent to the allotment, would be debited from investors account and remaining funds, if any, would be unblocked.

(B) Whether use of UPI, as a payment mechanism in public issues, is mandatory?

The applicability of UPI as a payment mechanism has been prescribed in a Phased manner as under:

- **Phase I:** From January 01, 2019, the UPI mechanism for retail individual investors through intermediaries will be made effective along with the existing process and existing timeline of T+6 days. The same will continue, for a period of 3 months or floating of 5 main board public issues, whichever is later.
- **Phase II:** Thereafter, for applications by retail individual investors through intermediaries, the existing process of physical movement of forms from intermediaries to Self-Certified Syndicate Banks (SCSBs) for blocking of funds will be discontinued and only the UPI mechanism with existing timeline of T+6 days will continue, for a period of 3 months or floating of 5 main board public issues, whichever is later.
- **Phase III:** Subsequently, final reduced timeline will be made effective using the UPI mechanism.

(C) Up to what limit one can apply for a public issue in UPI?

The limit for IPO application is 2 Lakhs per transaction on UPI.

(D) Are all category of investors eligible to apply in public issues using UPI for payment?

No. Only retail individual investors are allowed to use UPI for payment in public issues. Qualified Institutional Buyers and High Net-worth Individuals shall continue to apply as per the existing process.

GREEN SHOE OPTION

A company desirous of availing this option, should in the resolution of the general meeting authorising the public issue, seek authorization also for the possibility of allotment of further shares to the 'Stabilizing Agent' (SA) at the end of the stabilization period.

GSO in the system of IPO using book-building method was recognised by SEBI in India through its new guidelines on 14th August 2003 (vide SEBI/ CFD/DIL/DIP/ Circular No. 11). ICICI bank was the first to use Green Shoe Option in its public issue through book building mechanism in India.

Green Shoe Option (GSO) means an option of allocating shares in excess of the shares included in the public issue and operating a post-listing price stabilizing mechanism in accordance with the provisions of Regulations 45 of the SEBI (ICDR) Regulations, 2018.

ILLUSTRATION

Consider a company planning an IPO of say, 100,000 shares, at a book-built price of Rs. 100/-, resulting in an IPO size of Rs. 100,00,000. As per the ICDR Regulations, the over-allotment component under the Green Shoe mechanism could be up to 15% of the IPO, i.e. up to 15,000 shares, i.e. Green Shoe shares. Prior to the IPO, the stabilising agent would borrow such number of shares to the extent of the proposed Green Shoe shares from the pre-issue shareholders. These shares are then allotted to investors along with the IPO shares. The total shares issued in the IPO therefore stands at 115,000 shares. IPO proceeds received from the investors for the IPO shares, i.e. Rs.100,00,000–100,000 shares at the rate of Rs.100 each, are remitted to the Issuer Company, while the proceeds from the Green Shoe Shares (Rs.15,00,000/-, being 15,000 shares x Rs.100/-) are parked in a special escrow bank account, i.e. Green Shoe Escrow Account. During the price stabilisation period, if the share price drops below Rs.100, the stabilising agent would utilise the funds lying in the Green Shoe Escrow Account to buy these back shares from the open market. This gives rise to the following three situations:

- **Situation #1** - where the stabilising agent manages to buyback all of the Green Shoe Shares, i.e., 15,000 shares;
- **Situation #2** - where the stabilising agent manages to buyback none of the Green Shoe Shares;
- **Situation #3** - where the stabilising agent manages to buy-back some of the Green Shoe Shares, say 10,000 shares.

Let us examine each of these situations separately:

Situation #1 – Where all Green Shoe Shares are bought back: In this situation, funds in the Green Shoe Escrow Account (Rs.15,00,000, in this case) would be deployed by the stabilising agent towards buying up shares from the open market. Given that the prices prevalent in the market would be less than the issue price of Rs. 100, the stabilising agent would have sufficient funds lying at his disposal to complete this operation. Having bought back all of the 15,000 shares, these shares would be temporarily held in a special depository account with the depository participant (Green Shoe Demat Account), and would then be returned back to the lender shareholders, within a maximum period of two days after the stabilisation period.

Situation #2 – Where none of the Green Shoe Shares are bought back: This situation would arise in the (very unlikely) event that the share prices have fallen below the Issue Price, but the stabilising agent is unable to find any sellers in the open market, or in an event where the share prices continue to trade above the listing price, and therefore there is no need for the stabilising agent to indulge in price stabilisation activities.

In either of the above-said situations, the stabilising agent is under a contractual obligation to return the 15,000 shares that had initially been borrowed from the lending shareholder(s). Towards meeting this obligation, the issuer company would allot 15,000 shares to the stabilising agent into the Green Shoe Demat Account (the consideration being the funds lying the Green Shoe Escrow Account), and these shares would then be returned by the stabilising agent to the lending shareholder(s), thereby squaring off his responsibilities.

Situation #3 – Where some of the Green Shoe Shares are bought back, say 10,000 shares: This situation could arise in an event where the share prices witness a drop in the initial stages of the price stabilisation period, but recover towards the latter stages.

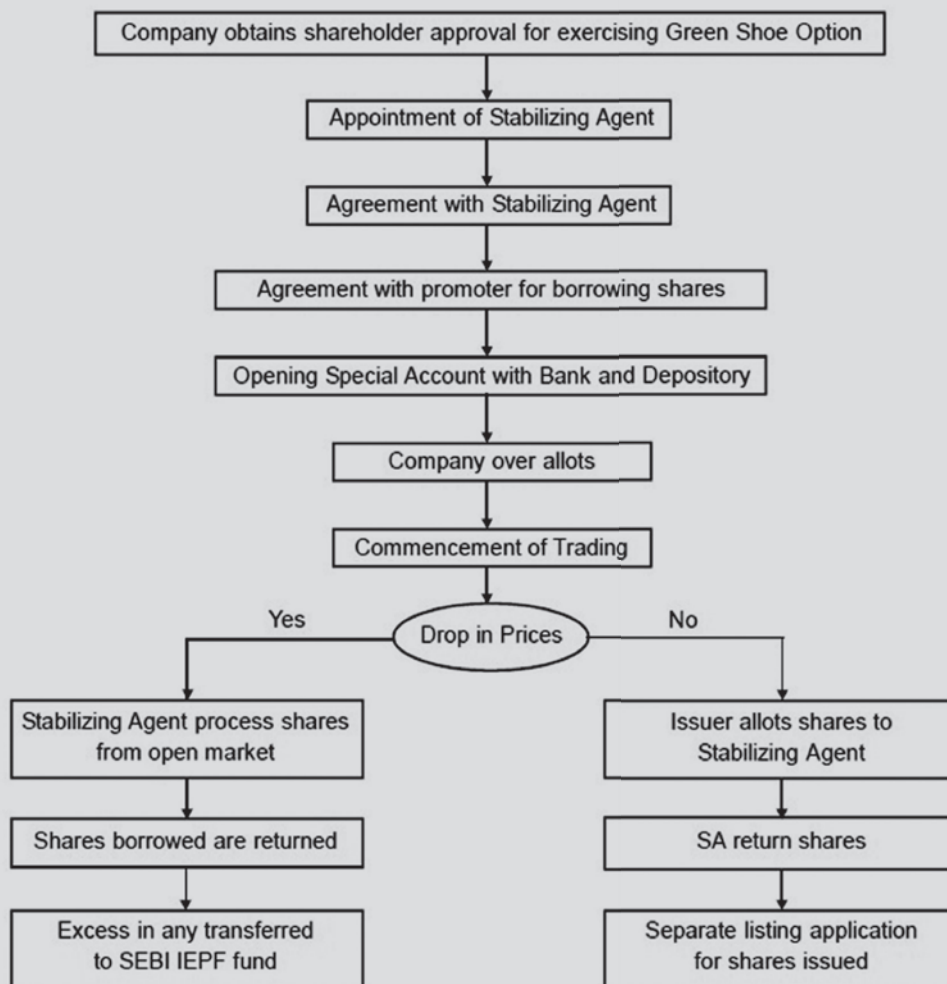
In this situation, the stabilising agent has a responsibility to return 15,000 shares to the lending shareholder(s), whereas the stabilising activities have yielded only 10,000 shares.

Similar to the instance mentioned in Situation #2 above, the issuer company would allot the differential 5,000 shares into the Green Shoe Demat Account to cover up the shortfall, and the stabilising agent would discharge his obligation to the lending shareholder(s) by returning the 15,000 shares that had been borrowed from them.

Both in Situation #2 and #3, the issuer company would need to apply to the exchanges for obtaining listing/trading permissions for the incremental shares allotted by them, pursuant to the Green Shoe mechanism.

Any surplus lying in the Green Shoe Escrow Account would then be transferred to the Investor Protection and Education Fund established by SEBI, as required under ICDR Regulations and the account shall be closed thereafter.

GREEN SHOE OPTION PROCESS



[illegible]

Part II- Secondary Market

Key Concepts One Should Know

- Stock Exchange
- Trading Mechanism
- Market Participants
- Margins
- Book Closure & Record Date
- Bulk Deal/Block Deal
- SENSEX/NIFTY
- NIFTY Sectoral Indices
- NIFTY Thematic Indices
- Market Surveillance

Learning Objectives

To understand:

- Operation of stock exchanges,
- Stock Exchange Trading Mechanism,
- Various market participants in the securities market
- How NIFTY and SENSEX are calculated,
- Basics of trading in securities market,
- Grievance redressal in a securities market, etc
- Impact of various policies in securities market

Regulatory Framework

- Securities & Exchange Board of India Act, 1992
- Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, 1956
- The Companies Act, 2013 and the rules made thereunder

Lesson Outline

- Stock Exchanges in India
- Trading Mechanism in the Stock Exchange
- Types of securities
- Market participants
- Margin
- Block Deal/Bulk Deal
- SENSEX/NIFTY
- Basics of Investing
- Market surveillance
- Grievance redressal in Securities Market
- Risk Management in Secondary Market
- Impact of various policies on Stock Markets
- LESSON ROUND-UP
- GLOSSARY
- TEST YOURSELF
- LIST OF FURTHER READINGS
- OTHER REFERENCES

STOCK EXCHANGE

Stock exchange is a market place for buying and selling of securities and ensuring liquidity to them in the interest of the investors. The stock exchanges are virtually the nerve center of the capital market and reflect the health of the country's economy as a whole.

The Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, 1956, has defined Stock Exchange as:

- (a) any body of individuals, whether incorporated or not, constituted before corporatization and demutualization under Sections 4A and 4B, or
- (b) a body corporate incorporated under the Companies Act, 2013 whether under a scheme of corporatization and demutualization or otherwise, for the purpose of assisting, regulating or controlling the business of buying, selling or dealing in securities.

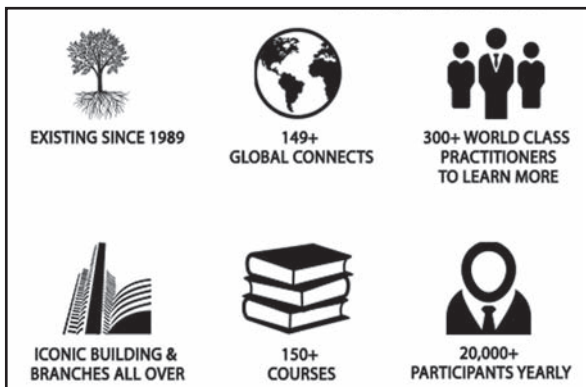
Stock exchange as an organized security market provides marketability and price continuity for shares and helps in a fair evaluation of securities in terms of their intrinsic worth. Thus it helps orderly flow and distribution of savings between different types of investments.

Stock markets play a significant role in the development of any economy. They facilitate mobilization of funds from small investors & channelize them into various development needs of various sectors of the economy.

This institution performs an important part in the economic-upliftment of a country, acting as a free market for securities where prices are determined by the forces of supply and demand. Apart from the above basic function it also assists in mobilizing funds for the Government and the Industry and to supply a channel for the investment of savings in the performance of its functions.

The Stock exchanges in India as elsewhere have a vital role to play in the development of the country in general and industrial growth of companies in the private sector in particular and helps the Government to raise internal resources for the implementation of various development programmes in the public sector. As a segment of the capital market it performs an important function in mobilizing and channelizing resources which remain otherwise scattered. Thus the Stock Exchanges trap the new resources and stimulate a broad based investment in the capital structure of industries.

Indian stock market marks to be one of the oldest stock market in Asia. It dates back to the close of 18th century when the East India Company used to transact loan securities. In the 1830s, trading on corporate stocks and shares in Bank and Cotton presses took place in Bombay. Though the trading was broad but the brokers were hardly half dozen during 1840 and 1850. An informal group of 22 stockbrokers began trading under a banyan tree opposite the Town Hall of Bombay from the mid 1850s, each investing a (then) princely amount of Rs. 1. This banyan tree still stands in the Horniman Circle Park, Mumbai. In 1860, the exchange flourished with 60 brokers.



In fact the 'Share Mania' in India began with the American Civil War broke and the cotton supply from the US to Europe stopped. Further the brokers increased to 250. The informal group of stockbrokers organized themselves as the Native Share and Stockbrokers Association which, in 1875, was formally organized as the Bombay Stock Exchange (BSE). In 1956, the Government of India recognized the Bombay Stock Exchange as the first stock exchange in the country under the Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act. National Stock Exchange of India Ltd. (NSE) was given recognition as a stock exchange under the Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, 1956 in April 1993, NSE is India's 1st demutualized stock

exchange and was demutualized from the date of its inception. NSE commenced operations in the Wholesale Debt Market (WDM) segment in June, 1994 and commenced electronic trading in Capital Market 1st time in India in November, 1994. NSE is also instrumental in bringing the dematerialization of trading in India.

Since the initiation of the financial liberalisation programme in 1992, there have been substantial regulatory, structural, institutional and operational changes in the securities market of the country. These reforms were carried out with the objective of improving market efficiency, enhancing transparency, preventing unfair trade practices and bringing the Indian securities market up to international standards.

Role of Stock Exchanges

- **Acts as a continuous market for securities:** Investors can invest in any securities, but in case of any risk, they can exit from that security and freshly re-enter into whichever security they feel as secure.
- **Responsible for securities evaluation:** The stock price indicates the performance and stability of the company. Through these investors decide according to their risk appetite whether to enter or exit or hold. The stock exchange acts as a regulator for the securities price evaluation for all the listed stocks.
- **Mobilizes savings:** Most of the public cannot invest the bulk amount in securities, so they invest in indirect ways such as mutual funds and investment trusts, and these are mobilized by stock exchanges.
- **Enables healthy speculation:** Stock exchange encourages businessmen and provides healthy speculation opportunities to speculate and gain profits from fluctuations in stock prices.
- **Protect investors:** Stock exchange ensures the protection of the funds of investors by allowing only genuine companies to be listed in the stock exchange.
- **Ensures liquidity:** Banks and some other institutions like Life Insurance Corporation (LIC) invest their funds in the stocks and earn a profit within a short period and are sold immediately if there is any necessity of funds. Thus there is an opportunity to liquidate immediately at any time if required in the stock market.
- **Acts as an economic barometer:** The country's economic growth is measured with the trends in the stock market. An upward trend in the stock market denotes growth potential and downward trend denotes the fall in the economy. Hence the stock exchange is called as an economic barometer as it indicates conditions prevailing in the country.
- **Exercise vigilance/control on companies:** Every company listed on an exchange must produce their annual reports and an audited balance sheet to the stock exchange. Such reports being available in public domain promotes transparency.
- **Attracts foreign capital:** Foreign Institutional Investors (FII) are likely to invest in developing economy as the rate of returns will be high in developing economies due to growth opportunities.
- **Stock exchanges ensure Safety of Capital and Fair Dealing:** The transactions made in the stock exchange are made available to the public under well-defined rules and regulations abided by laws. This ensures safety and fair dealings for the average investors.
- **Regulate company management:** The firms wanting to get their securities listed must follow certain rules and fulfil certain conditions. Stock exchanges safeguard the interest of the investors and regulate the company management.

Indian Stock Exchanges

Trading in the Indian stock market majorly takes place in the below two stock exchanges -

- BSE - BSE Limited (Formerly Bombay Stock Exchange)
- NSE - National Stock Exchange of India

The Bombay Stock Exchange (BSE) has been in existence since 1875, whereas the National Stock Exchange (NSE), on the other hand, was founded in 1992 and started trading in 1994. However, both BSE and NSE exchanges follow the same trading mechanism, trading hours, settlement process, etc.

TRADING MECHANISM

In the Indian securities market various products are trading like equity shares, warrants, debenture, etc. The trading in the securities of the company takes place in dematerialised form in India. Dematerialization is the process by which physical certificates of an investor are converted to an equivalent number of securities in electronic form and credited to the investor's account with his Depository Participant (DP). Trading in the securities of the company takes place on the screen based platforms provided by the Exchanges. Currently for equity shares the settlement cycle is (T+2 days) (T means trading day/Transaction day). Any shares which are traded on the Exchange are required to be settled by the clearing corporation of the exchange on 2 working day.

In electronic trading order received are matched electronically on a strict price/time priority and hence cuts down on time, cost and risk of error, as well as on fraud resulting in improved operational efficiency. It enables market participants, irrespective of their geographical locations, to trade with one another simultaneously. It provides full anonymity by accepting orders, big or small, from brokers without revealing their identity, thus providing equal access to everybody. It also provides a perfect audit trail, which helps to resolve disputes by logging in the trade execution process in entirety.

Regulation 40 of the SEBI (Listing Obligations and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2015 stipulates that except in case of transmission or transposition of securities, requests for effecting transfer of securities shall not be processed unless the securities are held in the dematerialized form with a depository.

In accordance with the Rule 9A of The Companies (Prospectus and Allotment of Securities) Rules, 2014, every unlisted public company shall issue the securities only in dematerialised form and facilitate dematerialisation of all its existing securities in accordance with provisions of the Depositories Act, 1996 and regulations made there under.

Every unlisted public company making any offer for issue of any securities or buyback of securities or issue of bonus shares or rights offer shall ensure that before making such offer, entire holding of securities of its promoters, directors, key managerial personnel has been dematerialised in accordance with provisions of the Depositories Act, 1996 and regulations made there under.

Every holder of securities of an unlisted public company, who intends to transfer such securities on or after 2nd October, 2018, shall get such securities dematerialised before the transfer or who subscribes to any securities of an unlisted public company (whether by way of private placement or bonus shares or rights offer) on or after 2nd October, 2018 shall ensure that all his existing securities are held in dematerialized form before such subscription.

TYPES OF SECURITIES

Listed Securities	The securities of companies, which have signed the listing agreement with a stock exchange, are traded as “Listed Securities” in that exchange.
Permitted Securities	To facilitate the market participants to trade in securities of such companies, which are actively traded at other stock exchanges in India but are not listed on an exchange, trading in such securities is facilitated as “permitted securities” provided they meet the relevant norms specified by the stock exchange.

MARKET PARTICIPANTS

Market Participants in Securities Market include buyers, seller and various intermediaries between the buyers and sellers. Some of these entities are briefed below:

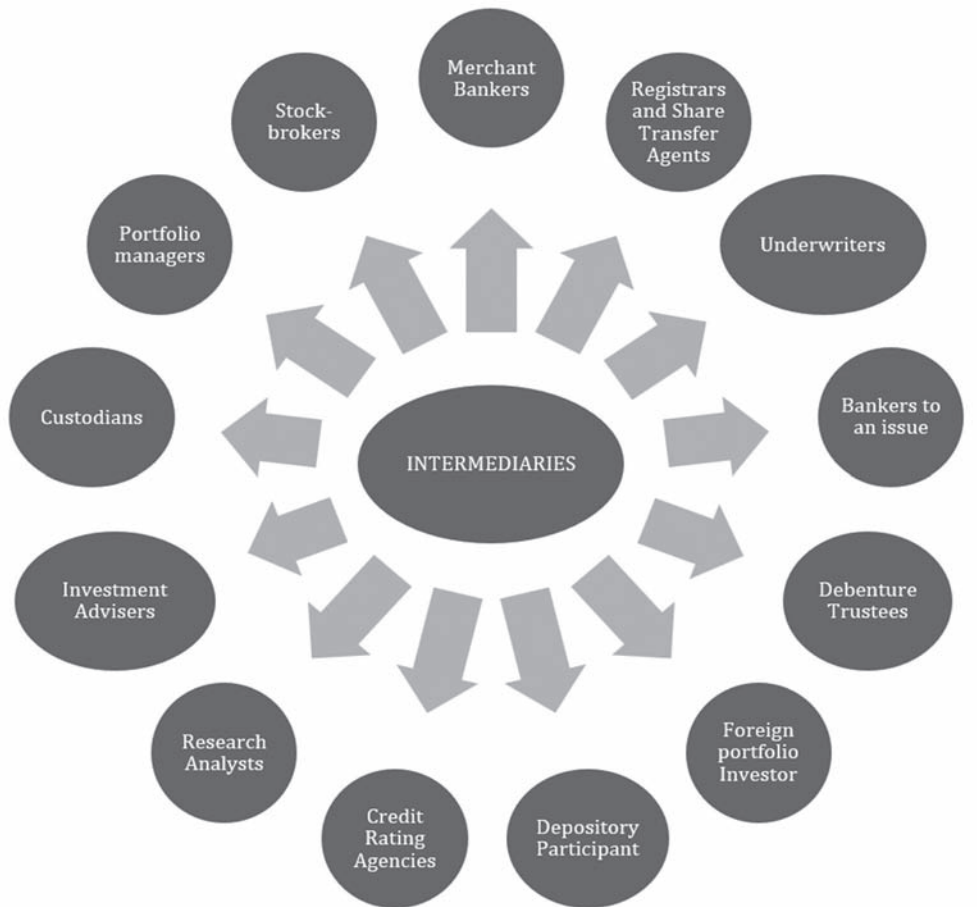
- **Market Intermediaries**

Intermediaries are service providers and are an integral part of any financial system. The Market Regulator, i.e., SEBI regulates various intermediaries in the primary and secondary markets through its regulations for these respective intermediaries. SEBI has defined the role of each of the intermediary, the eligibility criteria for granting registration, their functions and responsibilities and the code of conduct to which they are bound. These regulations also empower SEBI to inspect the functioning of these intermediaries and to collect fees from them and to impose penalties on erring entities.

The objectives of these intermediaries are-

- To smoothen the process of investment.
- To establish a link between the investors and the users of funds.
- Corporations and Governments do not market their securities directly to the investors. Instead, they hire the services of the market intermediaries to represent them to the investors.
- Investors, particularly small investors, find it difficult to make direct investment. A small investor desiring to invest may be able to diversify across issuers to reduce risk. He may not be equipped to assess and monitor the credit risk of issuers. Market intermediaries help investors to select investments by providing investment consultancy, market analysis and credit rating of investment instruments.

- In order to operate in secondary market, the investors have to transact through share brokers. Registrars and Share Transfer Agents, Custodians and Depositories Participants are capital market intermediaries that provide important infrastructure services for both primary and secondary markets.



- Stock Exchanges**

Stock Exchanges offer a trading platform for buyers and sellers to carry out transaction in issued securities.

Trading occurs on the stock exchanges like NSE, BSE through electronic trading terminals which attribute anonymous order matching. Stock exchanges also appoint clearing and settlement agencies and clearing banks that manage the funds and securities settlement that arise out of these trades.

- Depositories**

Depositories are institutions that hold securities (like shares, debentures, bonds, government securities, mutual fund units) of investors in electronic form.



- **Depository Participant**

A Depository Participant (DP) is an agent of the depository through which it interfaces with the investors and provides depository services. Investors enable depository participants to hold and transact in securities in the dematerialized form. While the investor-level accounts in securities are held and maintained by the DP, the company level accounts of securities issued is held and maintained by the depository.

With the approval of SEBI Depository Participants are appointed by the depository. Investors can open a demat account with a registered Depository Participant. They also provide services related to transactions in the securities held in dematerialized form. Demat account is essential as:

- » No stocks can be brought or sold without a demat account
- » Direct investment cannot be made without a demat account
- » Mandated by SEBI for transactions of listed company securities.

- **Trading Members/Stock Brokers & Sub-Brokers**

- » Trading members or Stock Brokers are registered members of a Stock Exchange, who assist the investors in buying/selling of securities. All secondary market transactions on stock are conducted through registered brokers of the stock exchange. Trading members can be individuals (sole proprietor), Partnership Firms or Corporate bodies, who are permitted to become members of recognized stock exchanges subject to completion of prescribed requirements.
- » A sub-broker is an entity who is not a member of Stock Exchange but who acts on behalf of a trading member or Stock Broker as an agent for assisting the investors in buying, selling or dealing in securities all the way through such trading member or Stock Broker with whom he is connected. Sub-brokers assist in increasing the reach of brokers to a larger number of investors.
- » Trades have to be routed only through the trading terminals of registered brokers of an exchange, to be accepted and executed on the electronic system.
- » SEBI registration to a broker is approved based on aspects such as capital competence, availability of adequate office space, equipment and manpower to successfully perform his activities, experience in securities trading etc.
- » Brokers receive a commission for their services, which is called as brokerage. Maximum brokerage chargeable to customers is fixed by individual stock exchanges.
- » Several brokers offer research, analysis and advice about securities to buy and sell, to their investors.

- **Custodians**

A Custodian is a body that is charged with the accountability of holding funds and securities of its large clients, characteristically institutions such as banks, insurance companies, and foreign portfolio investors. In addition to safeguarding securities, a custodian also settles transactions in these securities and keeps record of corporate actions on behalf of its clients and aids in:

- » Maintaining a client's securities and funds account
- » Collecting the benefits or rights accruing to the client in respect of securities held
- » Keeping the client informed of the actions taken or to be taken on their portfolios.

- **Clearing Corporation**

Clearing Corporations play a vital role in protecting the interest of investors in the securities market. Clearing agencies ensure that members on the Stock Exchange meet their obligations to deliver funds or securities. These agencies act as a legal counter party to all trades and guarantee settlement of all transactions on the Stock Exchanges. It can be a part of an exchange or a separate entity.

- **Merchant Bankers**

Merchant bankers are bodies registered with SEBI and act as issue managers, investment bankers or lead managers. Investors were enabled through depository participants to hold and transact in securities in the dematerialized form. They are single point contact for issuers during a

Test your Knowledge:

Prepare a note explaining in brief, the role of various intermediaries in the Stock Market.

new issue of securities. They connect and co-ordinate with other mediators such as registrars, brokers, bankers, underwriters and credit rating agencies in managing the issue process.

MARGINS

An advance payment of a portion of the value of a stock transaction. The amount of credit a broker or lender extends to a customer for stock purchase.

“Initial margin” in this context means the minimum amount, calculated as a percentage of the transaction value, to be placed by the client, with the broker, before the actual purchase. The broker may advance the balance amount to meet full settlement obligations.

“Maintenance margin” means the minimum amount, calculated as a percentage of market value of the securities, calculated with respect to last trading day’s closing price, to be maintained by client with the broker.

When the balance deposit in the client’s margin account falls below the required maintenance margin, the broker shall promptly make margin calls. However, no further exposure can be granted to the client on the basis of any increase in the market value of the securities.

The broker may liquidate the securities if the client fails to meet the margin calls made by the broker or fails to deposit the cheques on the day following the day on which the margin call has been made or the cheque has been dishonored.

The broker may also liquidate the securities in case the client’s deposit in the margin account (after adjustment for mark to market losses) falls to 30% or less of the latest market value of the securities, in the interregnum between making of the margin call and receipt of payment from the client.

The broker must disclose to the stock exchange details on gross exposure including the name of the client, unique identification number, name of the scrip and if the broker has borrowed funds for the purpose of providing margin trading facilities, name of the lender and amount borrowed, on or before 12 Noon on the following day.

Stock exchanges disclose scrip wise gross outstanding in margin accounts with all brokers to the market. Such disclosures regarding margin trading done on any day shall be made available after the trading hours on the following day through the website.

BOOK CLOSURE AND RECORD DATE

Book closure is the periodic closure of the Register of Members and Transfer Books of the company, to take a record of the shareholders to determine their entitlement to dividends or to bonus or right shares or any other rights pertaining to shares.

Record date is the date on which the records of a company are closed for the purpose of determining the stock holders to whom dividends, proxy rights etc. are to be sent.

In accordance with Section 91 of the Companies Act, 2013 a company may close the register of members for a maximum of 45 days in a year and for not more than 30 days at any one time subject to giving of previous notice by advertisement at least once in a vernacular newspaper in the principal vernacular language of the district and having a wide circulation in the place where the registered office of the company is situated, and at least once in English language in an English newspaper circulating in that district and having wide circulation in the place where the registered office of the company is situated. Book closure/record date is necessary for the purpose of paying dividend, rights issue, bonus issue, etc. For the companies whose securities are listed on the Exchange are required to comply with the SEBI (LODR) Regulation 2015. As per SEBI (LODR) Regulation 2015 the companies are required to give 7 working days advance notice of book closure or record date to stock exchange where the securities of the companies are listed.

BLOCK DEAL

The SEBI vide letter MRD/DoP/SE/Cir - 19/05 dated September 02, 2005 and CIR/MRD/DP/118/2017 dated October 26, 2017 guidelines outlining a facility of allowing Stock Exchanges to provide separate trading window to facilitate execution of large trades. The Exchanges have introduced new block window mechanism for the block trades from January 01, 2018.

- Session Timings:
 - (a) Morning Block Deal Window: This window shall operate between 08:45 AM to 09:00 AM.
 - (b) Afternoon Block Deal Window: This window shall operate between 02:05 PM to 2:20 PM.
- In the block deal the minimum order size for execution of trades in the Block deal window shall be Rs.10 Crore.
- The orders placed shall be within $\pm 1\%$ of the applicable reference price in the respective windows as stated above.
- The stock exchanges disseminates the information on block deals such as the name of the scrip, name of the client, quantity of shares bought/sold, traded price, etc to the general public on the same day, after the market hours.

BULK DEAL

Bulk deal is a trade, where total quantity bought or sold is more than 0.5% of the number of equity shares of a listed company.

Bulk deal can be transacted by the normal trading window provided by brokers throughout the trading hours in a day. Bulk deals are market driven and take place throughout the trading day.

The stock broker, who facilitates the trade, is required to reveal to the stock exchange about the bulk deals on a daily basis.

Bulk orders are visible to everyone. If the bulk deal happens through a single trade, it should be notified to the exchange immediately upon the execution of the order. If it happens through multiple trades, it should be notified to the exchange within one hour from the closure of the trading.

STOCK MARKET INDEX

An Index is used to give information about the price movements of products in the financial, commodities or any other markets. Financial indexes are constructed to measure price movements of stocks, bonds, T-bills and other forms of investments. Stock market indexes are meant to capture the overall behaviour of equity markets. A stock market index is created by selecting a group of stocks that are representative of the whole market or a specified sector or segment of the market. An Index is calculated with reference to a base period and a base index value.

Stock market indexes are useful for a variety of reasons. Some of them are :

- They provide a historical comparison of returns on money invested in the stock market against other forms of investments such as gold or debt.
- They can be used as a standard against which to compare the performance of an equity fund.
- It is a lead indicator of the performance of the overall economy or a sector of the economy.
- Stock indexes reflect highly up to date information.
- Modern financial applications such as Index Funds, Index Futures, Index Options play an important role in financial investments and risk management.

BASIS OF SENSEX

Sensitive Index or Sensex is the stock market index indicator for the BSE. It is also sometimes referred to as BSE S&P Sensex. It was first published in 1986 and is based on the market weighed stock index of 30 companies based on the financial performance. The large, established companies that represent various industrial sectors are a part of this.

The calculation of Sensex is done by a Free-Float method that came into existence from September 1, 2003. The level of Sensex is a direct indication of the performance of 30 stocks in the market. The free-float method takes into account the proportion of the shares that can be readily traded in the market. This does not include the ones held by various shareholders and promoters or other locked-in shares not available in the market.

Steps to calculate Sensex:

- The market capitalization is taken into account. This is done by multiplying all the shares issued by the company with the price of its stock.
- BSE determines a Free-Float factor that is a multiple of the market capitalization of the company. This helps in determining the Free-Float market capitalization based on the details submitted by the company.
- Ratio and Proportion are used based on the base index of 100. This helps to determine the Sensex.

NIFTY

National Stock Exchange Fifty or Nifty is the market indicator of NSE. It is a collection of 50 stocks. It is also referred to as Nifty 50. It is owned and managed by India Index Services and Products Ltd. (IISL).

Nifty is calculated through the Free-Float market capitalization weighted method. It multiplies the Equity capital (expressed in terms of number of shares outstanding) with a price, to derive the market capitalization. To determine the Free-Float market capitalization, equity capital (as stated earlier) is multiplied by a price which is further multiplied with IWF (Investible Weight Factors) which is the factor for determining the number of shares available for trading freely in the market. The Index is determined on a daily basis by taking into consideration the current market value (Free Float market capitalization) divided by base market capital and then multiplied by the Base Index Value of 1000.

These indices are broad-market indices, consisting of the large, liquid stocks listed on the Exchange. They serve as a benchmark for measuring the performance of the stocks or portfolios such as mutual fund investments. Some of them are:

- NIFTY 50 Index
- NIFTY Next 50 Index
- NIFTY 100 Index
- NIFTY 200 Index
- NIFTY 500 Index
- NIFTY Midcap 150 Index
- NIFTY Midcap 50 Index
- NIFTY Midcap 100 Index
- NIFTY Smallcap 250 Index
- NIFTY Smallcap 50 Index
- NIFTY Smallcap 100 Index
- NIFTY Large Midcap 250 Index
- NIFTY Mid Smallcap 400 Index

BASICS OF INVESTING – A GUIDANCE TO BUDDING INVESTORS

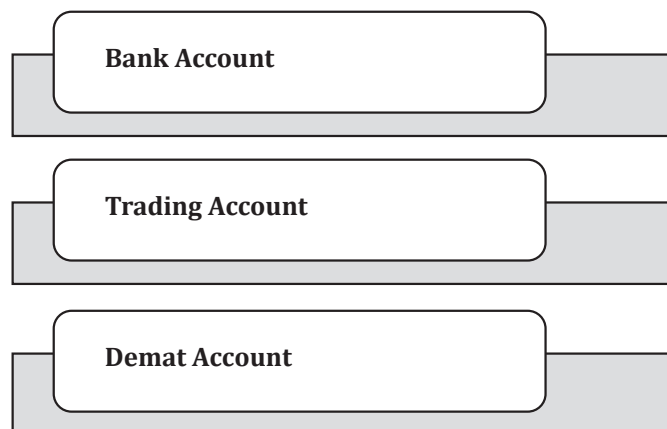
Before one starts investing in securities market, one needs to understand and identify their investment goals, objectives and risk appetite (the extent up to which they are willing to take risk). Every investment decision should reflect needs and requirements and should be as per investors desired preferences. For example, whether investor is willing to invest in safe products which give steady returns or if he wants to take slightly higher risk and invest in products which may give you higher returns. Every investment comes with the risk of change in the inherent value of that investment. For example, investment in shares of automobile industry will attract the risk attached with the automobile industry (sales may go up or down or one brand of cars may be sold more than other brand, etc.). Once investor decides goals and identifies risk appetite, they need to decide the amount they want to invest and the time period over which they want to invest. The ability to take risk differs from investor to investor and could be dependent on the goals as well as the age of the investor. The investors should also be well informed about their rights, responsibilities.

Investors should make informed decision before investing in the shares of a company. They should carefully read all the information related to the company such as disclosures related to the company, its promoters, the project details, financial details, etc. These details can be found on the websites of the stock exchanges.

Key risks in investing in securities market:

- **Market risk or Systematic Risk:** It means that an investor may experience losses due to factors affecting the overall performance of financial markets and general economy of the country.
- **Unsystematic Risk:** Unsystematic risk can be described as the uncertainty attached with a particular company or industry.
- **Inflation risk:** Inflation risk is also called as purchasing power risk. It is defined as the chance that the cash flows from an investment would lose their value in future because of a decline in its purchasing power due to inflation.
- **Liquidity risk:** Liquidity risk arises when an investment can't be bought or sold quickly enough.
- **Business Risk:** It refers to the risk that a business of a company might be affected or may stop its operations due to any unfavorable operational, market or financial situation.
- **Volatility Risk:** Volatility risk arises as the Companies' stock prices may fluctuate over time.
- **Currency Risk:** It refers to the potential risk of loss from fluctuating foreign exchange rates that an investor may face when he has invested in foreign currency or made foreign currency-traded investments.

Pre-requisites for investing in securities market:



- Bank account.
- Trading account or broking account with a SEBI registered stock broker of a recognized Stock Exchange. This account is used to buy and sell securities on the Stock Exchanges. To open a trading account, you have to fill account opening form and submit the signed Know Your Client (KYC) documents.
- Demat account provides the facility of holding of securities in dematerialized/electronic form. The demat account can be opened with depository participant (DP) of any of the Depositories.

Know Your Client (KYC) process for opening an account:

- KYC is mandatory under the Prevention of Money Laundering Act, 2002 and Rules framed thereunder.
- While opening of Demat / Trading / Bank account, client have to submit officially valid documents (OVDs) as proof of identity and proof of address and these documents form a part of the KYC requirements.
- An investor can establish his identity and address through relevant supporting prescribed documents such as PAN card / Unique Identification (UID) (Aadhaar) / Passport / Voter ID card / Driving license, etc.

- Once the KYC form is submitted, a unique KYC Identification Number (KIN) is generated and communicated to the client by SMS/Email.
- KYC is a one-time process and is valid across all the intermediaries.

MARKET SURVEILLANCE

Market surveillance plays a vital role in ensuring market integrity which is the core objective of regulators. Market integrity is achieved through combination of surveillance, inspection, investigation and enforcement of relevant laws and rules.

Globally market surveillance is either conducted by the Regulators or Exchanges or both. In India, the primary responsibility of market surveillance has been entrusted to Stock Exchanges and is being closely monitored by SEBI.

Millions of orders are transmitted electronically every minute and therefore surveillance mechanisms to detect any irregularities must also be equally developed. Exchanges adopt automated surveillance tools that analyze trading patterns and are installed with a comprehensive alerts management system.

Market Surveillance is broadly categorised in 2 parts viz, Preventive Surveillance and Post trade Surveillance.

A. Preventive Surveillance –

- **Stringent On boarding norms for Trading Members** - Stringent net worth, back ground, viability etc. checks while on boarding Trading Members.
- **Index circuit filters** - It brings coordinated trading halt in all equity and equity derivative markets at 3 stages of the index movement, either way viz., at 10%, 15% and 20% based on previous day closing index value.
- **Trade Execution Range** - Orders are matched and trades take place only if the trade price is within the reference price and execution range.
- **Order Value Limitation** - Maximum Order Value limit allowed per order.
- **Cancel on logout** - All outstanding orders are cancelled, if the enabled user logs out.
- **Kill switch** - All outstanding orders of that trading member are cancelled if trading member executes kill switch.
- **Risk reduction mode** - Limits beyond which orders level risk management shall be initiated instead of trade level.
- **Compulsory close out** - Incoming order, if it results in member crossing the margins available with the exchange, such order will be partially or fully cancelled, as the case may be, and further disallow the trading member to create fresh positions.
- **Capital adequacy check** - Refers to monitoring of trading member's performance and track record, stringent margin requirements, position limits based on capital, online monitoring of member positions and automatic disablement from trading when limits are breached.
- **Fixed Price Band/Dynamic Price band** - Limits applied within which securities shall move; so that volatility is curbed orderliness is brought about. For non-derivative securities price band is 5%, 10% & 20%. For Derivative products an operating range of 10% is set and subsequently flexed based on market conditions.
- **Trade for Trade Settlement** - The settlement of scrip's available in this segment is done on a trade for trade basis and no netting off is allowed.
- **Periodic call auction** - Shifting the security from continuous to call auction method.
- **Rumour Verification** - Any unannounced news about listed companies is tracked on online basis and letter seeking clarification is sent to the companies and the reply received is disseminated.

B. Post trade surveillance -

- **End of day alert** – Alerts generated using statistical tools. The tool highlights stocks which have behaved abnormally from its past behaviour.
- **Pattern recognition model** – Models designed using high end tools and trading patterns which itself identifies suspects involving in unfair trading practice.
- **Transaction alerts for member** - As part of surveillance obligation of members the alerts are downloaded to members under 14 different heads.

Preventive approach adapted by Stock Exchange/SEBI has been fruitful. However, they are fully aware that the suite of measure in force have to be upgraded, expanded and added to be able to successful in this preventive approach.

SEBI has introduced various market surveillance measure like price band, circuit filter, trade for trade segment.

GRIEVANCE REDRESSAL IN SECURITIES MARKET - SCORES

There will be occasions when an investor has a complaint against, a listed company or an intermediary registered with the SEBI. In the event of such complaint, the investor should first approach the concerned company/intermediary against whom there is a complaint. Sometimes the response received may not be satisfactory. Therefore, investors should know as to which authority they should approach, to get their complaints redressed.

SEBI launched a centralized web based complaints redress system SEBI Complaints Redress System 'SCORES' in June 2011. The purpose of SCORES is to provide a platform for aggrieved investors, whose grievances, pertaining to securities market, remain unresolved by the concerned listed company or registered intermediary after a direct approach. SCORES also provides a platform, overseen by SEBI through which the investors can approach the concerned listed company or SEBI registered intermediary in an endeavor towards speedy redressal of grievances of investors in the securities market. It would, however, be advisable that investors may initially take up their grievances for redressal with the concerned listed company or registered intermediary, who are required to have designated persons/officials for handling issues relating to compliance and redressal of investor grievances. SEBI has issued various circulars/directions from time to time with respect to SCORES.



Complaints arising out of issues that are covered under SEBI Act, Securities Contract Regulation Act, Depositories Act and rules and regulation made there under and relevant provisions of Companies Act, 2013 come under the purview of the SEBI.

The salient features of SCORES are:

1. Centralised database of investor complaints;
2. Online movement of complaints to the concerned listed company or SEBI registered intermediary;
3. Online upload of Action Taken Reports (ATRs) by the concerned listed company or SEBI registered intermediary;
4. Online viewing by investors of actions taken on the complaint and its current status;
5. SCORES is web enabled and provides online access 24 x7;

6. Complaints and reminders there on can be lodged online at the above website at anytime from anywhere;
7. An email is generated instantaneously acknowledging the receipt of complaint and allotting a unique complaint registration number to the complainant for future reference and tracking;
8. The complaint forwarded online to the entity concerned for its redressal.

RISK MANAGEMENT IN SECONDARY MARKET

The performance of secondary market has a vital bearing on the performance of primary market. A number of measures were taken to modernise the stock exchanges in the country. These measures focused on infrastructure development, transparency, efficiency and enhanced investor protection. Risk management was further strengthened during the year by implementing a comprehensive system of margins, exposure limits and improving the efficiency of clearing and settlement systems through the introduction of settlement guarantee funds. With a view to enhancing market safety, SEBI fixed intra-day trading and gross exposure limits for brokers. SEBI continued to maintain a constant interface with the stock exchanges on various issues concerning investor protection, automated market infrastructure and overall improvement in quality of intermediation. SEBI also directed its efforts towards encouraging the stock exchanges to become effective as self-regulatory institutions. Automated screen based trading which was introduced in the country through the setting up of the OTCEI and NSE and subsequently introduced by the BSE had brought about a qualitative improvement in the market and its transparency. Transaction costs and time were also significantly reduced. During the year several of the smaller exchanges also introduced on-line screen based trading.

The key risk management measures initiated by SEBI include-

- Categorization of securities into groups 1, 2 and 3 for imposition of margins based on their liquidity and volatility.
- VaR (value at risk) based margining system.
- Specification of mark to Market margins.
- Specification of Intra-day trading limits and Gross Exposure Limits.
- Real time monitoring of the Intra-day trading limits and Gross Exposure Limits by the Stock Exchanges.
- Specification of time limits of payment of margins.
- Collection of margins on upfront basis.
- Index based market wide circuit breakers.
- Automatic de-activation of trading terminals in case of breach of exposure limits.
- VaR based margining system has been put in place based on the categorization of stocks based on the liquidity of stocks depending on its impact cost and volatility. It addresses 99% of the risks in the market.
- Additional margins have also been specified to address the balance 1% cases.
- Collection of margins from institutional clients on T+1 basis.

IMPACT OF VARIOUS POLICIES ON STOCK MARKETS

1. FED Policy

The Federal Reserve System is the central bank of the United States. It performs five general functions to promote the effective operation of the U.S. economy and, more generally, the public interest. The Federal Reserve:

- conducts the nation's monetary policy to promote maximum employment, stable prices, and moderate long-term interest rates in the U.S. economy;
- promotes the stability of the financial system and seeks to minimize and contain systemic risks through active monitoring and engagement in the U.S. and abroad;

- promotes the safety and soundness of individual financial institutions and monitors their impact on the financial system as a whole;
- fosters payment and settlement system safety and efficiency through services to the banking industry and the U.S. government that facilitate U.S. dollar transactions and payments; and
- promotes consumer protection and community development through consumer-focused supervision and examination, research and analysis of emerging consumer issues and trends, community economic development activities, and the administration of consumer laws and regulations.

How change in US Fed rate can impact India?

The Fed Funds Rate is the interest rate at which the top US banks borrow overnight money from common reserves. All American banks are required to park a portion of their deposits with the Federal Reserve in cash, as a statutory requirement.

Actually, fed fund rate gives the direction in which US interest rates should be heading at any given point of time. If the Fed is increasing the interest rates, lending rates for companies and retail borrowers will go up and vice versa. In India, hike in repo rate may not impact the countries outside India. On the other hand, US interest rates matter a lot to global capital flows. Some of the world's richest institutions and investors have their base in USA. They constantly compare Fed rates with interest rates across the world to make their allocation decisions.

In the globalised world, markets are connected. An increase in Fed rates will be negative in general for the US stock market and if it leads to another round of sell-offs, it will also have ripple effects on the Indian market.

Any changes in the Fed Fund Rates impact the domestic borrowing market to a large extent. For instance, if the Fed rates go up, it will make the RBI hesitant in cutting rates at that time. The reason is that if RBI cut rates it will lead to heavy pullout of foreign investors from the Indian bond market.

An important discussion: Rupee vs. Dollar:

If the Fed rates are hiked, the value of the dollar would go up, thus weakening Indian rupee in comparison. This might hurt India's forex reserves and imports. However, the weaker rupee is good for India's exports but low global demand and stiff competition would not leave much room for Indian exporters to capitalise the situation. **DBS** said that India's financing requirements will keep the rupee vulnerable to rising US rates this year.

Bond market pressure:

Due to the higher Fed rates, US' 10-year bond yields are expected to go up, which will also put pressure on India's 10-year government bond yields.

RBI repo rate:

With higher Fed rates weakening the Rupee, India's imports bill is likely to go up putting pressure on the RBI to either increase repo rates or at least refrain from cutting rates in the upcoming monetary policy meetings.

2. Credit Policy of RBI

The Reserve Bank of India has a credit policy which aims at pursuing higher growth with price stability. Higher economic growth means to produce more quantity of goods and services in different sectors of an economy; The term monetary policy is also known as RBI's credit policy or money management policy. It is basically the central bank's view on what should be the supply of money in the economy and also in what direction the interest rates should move in the banking system. It refers to the use of credit policy instruments which are at the disposal of central bank to regulate the availability, cost and use of money and credit to promote economic growth, price stability, optimum levels of output and employment, balance of payments equilibrium, stable currency or any other goal of government's economic policy.

The credit policy aims at increasing finance for the agriculture and industrial activities. When credit policy is implemented, the role of other commercial banks is very important. Commercial banks flow of credit to different sectors of the economy depends on the actual cost of credit and availability of funds in the economy.

The objectives of a monetary policy are similar to the five year plans of our country. In a nutshell it is basically a plan to ensure growth and stability of the monetary system. The significance of the monetary policy is to attain the following objectives.

- **Rapid Economic Growth:** It is an important objective as it can play a decisive role in the economic growth of country. It influences the interest rates and thus has an impact on the investment. If the RBI adopts an easy credit policy, it would be doing so by reducing interest rates which in turn would improve the investment outlook in the country. This would in turn enhance the economic growth. However faster economic growth is possible if the monetary policy succeeds in maintaining income and price stability.
- **Exchange Rate Stability:** Another important objective is maintaining the exchange rate of the home currency with respect to foreign currencies. If there is volatility in the exchange rate, then the international community loses confidence in the economy. So it is necessary for the monetary policy to maintain the stability in exchange rate. The RBI by altering the foreign exchange reserves tries to influence the demand for foreign exchange and tries to maintain the exchange rate stability.
- **Price Stability:** The monetary policy is also supposed to keep the inflation of the country in check. Any economy can suffer both inflation and deflation both of which are harmful to the economy. So the RBI has to maintain a fair balance in ensuring that during recession it should adopt an 'easy money policy' whereas during inflationary trend it should adopt a 'dear money policy'
- **Balance of Payments (BOP) Equilibrium:** Another key objective is to maintain the BOP equilibrium which most of the developing economies don't tend to have. The BOP has two aspects which are 'BOP surplus' and 'BOP deficit'. The former reflects an excess money supply in the domestic economy, while the latter stands for stringency of money. If the monetary policy succeeds in maintaining monetary equilibrium, then the BOP equilibrium can be achieved.
- **Neutrality of Money:** RBI's policy should regulate the supply of money. It is possible that the change in money supply causes disequilibrium and the monetary policy should neutralize it. However this objective of a monetary policy is always criticized on the ground that if money supply is kept constant then it would be difficult to attain price stability.

Bank Rate: is the rate at which RBI discount bills for commercial banks. This banking system involves commercial and Co-operative Banks, Industrial Development Bank of India, IFC, EXIM Bank and other approved financial institutions. Funds are provided through lending directly or rediscounting or buying money market instruments like Commercial Bills or Treasury Bills. Increase in Bank Rate increases the cost of borrowing by commercial banks which results in the reduction of credit volume to the banks and hence declines the money supply. Increase in Bank Rate means tightening of RBI's Monetary Policy.

Various Quantitative instrument of Credit Policy:

- **Repo Rate:** The rate at which the Commercial Banks borrow money from RBI. Reduction in Repo Rate helps the Commercial Banks to get money at a cheaper rate and an Increase in Repo Rate discourages the Commercial Banks to get money as the rate increases and becomes expensive. The increase in the Repo Rate will increase the cost of borrowing and lending of the banks which will discourage the public to borrow money and encourages them to deposit.
- **Cash Reserve Ratio (CRR) :** Cash reserve ratio is the amount which the commercial banks have to maintain as cash deposit with the Reserve Bank of India. RBI may increase the CRR if it thinks that there is large amount of money supply in the economy. Conversely, it will decrease the CRR if it is of the opinion that inflation is in control and the industry needs a monetary boost up. The reduction in CRR will provide more money in the hands of commercial banks which it will pass it on to the industry. More money in the hands of industry will boost up production, consumption and employment.

- **Statutory Liquidity Ratio (SLR) :** Statutory Liquidity Ratio is the amount which commercial banks have to keep it with itself. So, SLR is the amount of money which banks have to keep in its custody at all times. SLR is also a very powerful tool to control liquidity in the economy. To encourage industries to boost up their production, SLR may be decreased to put more money in the hands of commercial banks. An increase in SLR is used as an inflation control measure to control price rise.
- **Reverse Repo Rate (RRR):** is the rate at which the RBI borrows money from the Commercial Banks. An increase in the reverse repo rate will decrease the money supply and vice-versa, other things remaining constant. An increase in Reverse Repo Rate means that Commercial Banks will get more incentives to park their funds with the RBI, therefore decreasing the supply of money in market. An increase in the Repo Rate and the Reverse Repo Rate indicates strengthening of RBI's Monetary Policy.

3. Inflation Index

An index is just a collection of data that serves as a baseline for future reference. We use the index model in all areas of life, from the stock market, to inflation. We index wage levels, corporate profits as a percentage of GDP, and almost anything else that can be measured. We do this to compare where we are now to where we have been in the past.

An inflation index is an economic tool used to measure the rate of inflation in an economy. There are several different ways to measure inflation, leading to more than one inflation index with different economists and investors preferring one method to another, sometimes strongly.

Inflation Indices

In India, Consumer Price Index (CPI) and Wholesale Price Index (WPI) are two major indices for measuring inflation. In United States, CPI and PPI (Producer Price Index) are two major indices.

The Wholesale Price Index (WPI) was main index for measurement of inflation in India till April 2014 when RBI adopted new Consumer Price Index (CPI) (combined) as the key measure of inflation.

a. Wholesale Price Index

Wholesale Price Index (WPI) is computed by the Office of the Economic Adviser in Ministry of Commerce & Industry, Government of India. It was earlier released on weekly basis for Primary Articles and Fuel Group. However, since 2012, this practice has been discontinued. Currently, WPI is released monthly.

Salient notes on WPI are as follows:

Base Year

Current WPI Base year is 2004-05=100. It's worth note that the base year for CPI is 2012 currently. This is one reason for increasing difference between CPI and WPI in recent times.

Items

There are total 676 items in WPI and inflation is computed taking 5482 price quotations. These items are divided into three broad categories viz. (1) Primary Articles (2) Fuel & power and (3) Manufactured Products.

WPI does not take into consideration the retail prices or prices of the services.

b. Consumer Price Index

Consumer Price Indices (CPI) released at national level are:

- CPI for Industrial Workers (IW)
- CPI for Agricultural Labourers (AL)/ Rural Labourers (RL)
- CPI (Rural/Urban/Combined).

While the first two are compiled and released by the Labour Bureau in the Ministry of Labour and Employment, the third by the Central Statistics Office (CSO) in the Ministry of Statistics and Programme Implementation. In India, RBI uses CPI (combined) released by CSO for inflation purpose. Important notes on this index are as follows:

Base Year

Base year for CPI (Rural, Urban, Combined) is 2012=100.

Number of items

The number of items in CPI basket include 448 in rural and 460 in urban. Thus, it makes it clear that CPI basket is broader than WPI basket. The items in CPI are divided into 6 main groups.

Key differences between WPI & CPI

- Primary use of WPI is to have inflationary trend in the economy as a whole. However, CPI is used for adjusting income and expenditure streams for changes in the cost of living.
- WPI is based on wholesale prices for primary articles, administered prices for fuel items and ex-factory prices for manufactured products. On the other hand, CPI is based on retail prices, which include all distribution costs and taxes.
- Prices for WPI are collected on voluntary basis while price data for CPI are collected by investigators by visiting markets.
- CPI covers only consumer goods and consumer services while WPI covers all goods including intermediate goods transacted in the economy.
- WPI weights primarily based on national accounts and enterprise survey data and CPI weights are derived from consumer expenditure survey data.

Impact of Policies on Indian Stock Market

Since monetary policies are influenced by inflation and inflationary expectations in the economy it is therefore, critical that inflation index should be able to predict future inflation with reasonable accuracy. Generally, when a country is operating in a low interest rate regime, borrowers can borrow money at a lower interest rate. This aids in increased purchasing power of the consumers. The demand for the goods increase and subsequently sensing a higher demand, the prices will also raise. This condition drives the inflation rates higher. When the inflation rates have raised more than the optimal levels, the Reserve Bank of India (RBI) steps in to increase interest rate to control inflation rate. When inflationary pressure starts building in the economy, RBI hikes the repo rate and/or cash reserve ratio (CRR) to manage the money supply causing higher inflation.

Maintaining an optimal inflation rate is the primary task of Monetary Policy decision makers of any nation. An optimal inflation rate ensures a healthy economy. More often than not, the policy makers tend to spur growth in a stalled economy by slashing the interest rates, thereby increasing the money available in the markets. However, in order to implement such rate cuts the inflation rate should be at an optimal level. So, it becomes a the prime responsibility of Reserve Bank to monitor Wholesale Price Index (WPI) and Consumer Price Index (CPI) to ensure that economy is balance.

A rise in the inflation rate impacts market sentiments. A higher inflation rate drives the interest rates higher and hence borrowing becomes costly for the banks, corporates and financial institutions. Therefore, the valuations of capital-intensive companies and sectors may come under pressure as their margins decrease due to the higher interest burden.

However, the markets are governed by many factors and the direction cannot be determined by reading just one factor. Global sentiments and global funds inflows are other crucial factors that impact the direction of stock markets significantly.

LESSON ROUND-UP

- A wide variety of financial institutions have been set up at the national level. They include development banks like IDBI, SIDBI, IFCI, IIBI; specialized financial institutions like IVCF, ICICI Venture Funds Ltd, TFCI and investment institutions like LIC, GIC, UTI, etc.
- All FPIs are required to be mandatorily registered into three broad categories i.e. Category I, Category II, Category III under SEBI (Foreign Portfolio Investors) Regulations, 2014.
- Venture Capital is generally equity investments made by Venture Capital funds, at an early stage in privately held companies, having potential to provide a high rate of return on their investments.
- Debenture is a document evidencing a debtor acknowledging it and any document which fulfils either of these conditions is a debenture.
- The FCCBs are unsecured instruments which carry a fixed rate of interest and an option for conversion into a fixed number of equity shares of the issuer company.
- Issue of IDRs is regulated by section 390 of the Companies Act, 2013, Rule 13 of the Companies (Registration of Foreign Companies) Rules, 2014 and Chapter X & XA of SEBI (ICDR) Regulations, 2009.
- A real estate investment trust ("REIT") is a company that owns, operates or finances income-producing real estate.
- Book Building means a process undertaken by which a demand for the securities proposed to be issued by a body corporate is build up and a 'Fair Price' and 'Quantum' of securities to be issued is finally determined.
- ASBA is an application for subscribing to an issue, containing an authorization to block the application money in a bank account.
- Book closure is the periodic closure of the Register of Members and Transfer Books of the company, to take a record of the shareholders to determine their entitlement to dividends or to bonus or right shares or any other rights pertaining to shares.
- UPI as a payment mechanism is available for all public issues for which Red Herring Prospectus is filed after January 01, 2019.
- Self-Certified Syndicate Bank (SCSB) is a bank which offers the facility of applying through the ASBA process.
- Stock exchange is a market place for buying and selling of securities and ensuring liquidity to them in the interest of the investors.
- Securities traded in the stock exchanges can be classified as Listed cleared Securities and Permitted Securities.
- An Index is used to give information about the price movements of products in the financial, commodities or any other markets.
- National Stock Exchange Fifty or Nifty is the market indicator of NSE. It is a collection of 50 stocks. It is also referred to as Nifty 50.
- The trading in the securities of the company takes place in dematerialised form in India.
- Market surveillance plays a vital role in ensuring market integrity which is the core objective of regulators. Market integrity is achieved through combination of surveillance, inspection, investigation and enforcement of relevant laws and rules.
- There are various factors and monetary policies which has a significant impact on the working of stock markets in India like RBI Monetary Policy, Consumer Price Index (CPI), Wholesale Price Index (WPI) and US FED Policy.

GLOSSARY

Circuit Breaker	A system to curb excessive speculation in the stock market, applied by the Stock Exchange authorities, when the index spurts or plunges by more than a specified per cent. Trading is then suspended for some time to let the market cool down.
Clearing	Settlement or clearance of accounts, for a fixed period in a Stock Exchange.
Closing Price	The rate at which the last transaction in a security is struck before the close of the trading hours.
Credit Risk	The risk that a counterparty will not settle an obligation for full value, either when due or at any time thereafter. Credit risk includes pre-settlement risk (replacement cost risk) and settlement risk (principal risk).
Demutualization	Process of transition from “mutually-owned” association to a company “owned by shareholders”. In other words, transformation of the legal structure from a mutual form to a business corporation form and privatisation of the corporations so constituted, is referred to as demutualization.
Fill or Kill (FoK) Order	An order that requires the immediate purchase or sale of a specified amount of stock, though not necessarily at one price. If the order cannot be filled immediately, it is automatically cancelled (killed).
Interest Rate Risk	The risk that movements in the interest rates may lead to a change in expected return.
Liquidity Adjustment Facility (LAF)	Under the scheme, repo auctions (for absorption of liquidity) and reverse repo auctions (for injection of liquidity) will be conducted on a daily basis (except Saturdays). It will be same-day transactions, with interest rates decided on a cut-off basis and derived from auctions on a uniform price basis.
Mark to market margin (MTM)	Collected in cash for all futures contracts and adjusted against the available Liquid Net worth for option positions. In the case of Futures Contracts MTM may be considered as Mark to Market Settlement.
Market Maker	A member firm who give two way quotation for particular security (ies) and who is under an obligation to buy and sell them subject to certain conditions such as overall exposure, spread etc.
Netting:	A system whereby outstanding financial contracts can be settled at a net figure, i.e. receivables are offset against payables to reduce the credit exposure to a counterparty and to minimize settlement risk.
Screen based trading	Form of trading that uses modern telecommunication and computer technology to combine information transmission with trading in financial markets.
Trading member	A member of the derivatives exchange or derivatives segment of a stock exchange who settles the trade in the clearing corporation or clearing house through a clearing member.

TEST YOURSELF

(These are meant for recapitulation only. Answer to these questions are not to be submitted for evaluation.)

1. Briefly explain about different types of National Level Financial Institutions.
2. What do you understand by private equity? Discuss about different categories of private equity.
3. What do you understand by Book Building? Explain the book building process.
4. Briefly explain about the impact of various monetary policies on Indian stock market.
5. Distinguish between:
 - (a) Primary and Secondary Market
 - (b) Repo rate and reverse repo rate
 - (c) Real Estate Investment Trusts (REITs) and Infrastructure Investment Trusts (InvITs)
 - (d) Currency derivatives and Commodity derivatives
 - (e) Block Deal and Bulk Deal
 - (f) Debenture Trustee and Custodian of Securities
6. "Bonds are the debt security where an issuer is bound to pay a specific rate of interest." Explain
7. "Calculation of Sensex is done by a Free-Float method." Elucidate
8. Define Alternate Investment Fund. Explain in brief different categories of AIF
9. "Indian Stock Market is impacted by change in FED policy and FED rate". Comment briefly
10. Mr. Zolan wants to invest in stock market. He requests your help in understanding basics of investing. Explain in details the basics of investing and prerequisites for investing in stock market
11. Write brief notes on:
 - (a) Green Shoe Option
 - (b) Exchange Traded Funds
 - (c) Municipal Bonds
 - (d) Debenture Trustee
 - (e) Angel Fund
 - (f) US FED Policy
12. Explain in detail role of stock exchanges in India
13. Mr. Menon is a HNI, having business interests across industries. He wanted to use the UPI technology for investment in IPO of a Company famous for its ice-cream brand. What is the process
14. What are NIFTY sectoral indices. Explain any five such indices
15. Explain in brief the regulators in Indian Capital Markets.
16. How does market surveillance try to ensure market integrity in the securities market? Explain.
17. What are the key risk management measures initiated by SEBI in the secondary market? Describe.
18. How is Pension Fund different from Government Pension? State the legislations governing pension in India.

19. Akash Ltd. issued 50 Lakh equity shares at a price of Rs.200 per share. The company provided Green Shoe Option for stabilizing the post listing price of the shares. The issue was oversubscribed and it was decided that stabilizing agent would borrow maximum number of shares permitted by SEBI (ICDR) regulations.

Due to rise in price during Green Shoe Option period, only 5 Lakh shares could be bought back at the price of Rs.180.

You are required to:

- i. Calculate the number of shares that the stabilizing agent needs to borrow in this case at the time of allotment and explain the same with relevant provisions.
- ii. Explain the responsibility of Issuer Company in the above case with respect to shortfall while exercising Green Shoe Option.
- iii. Calculate the amount if any, to be transferred to Investor Protection and Education Fund.

LIST OF FURTHER READINGS

- SEBI Circulars
- SEBI Notifications
- SEBI Orders
- SEBI Manual
- Regulations/Rules/Guidelines/Circulars issued by SEBI, RBI, MCA etc. from time to time

OTHER REFERENCES (Including Websites/Video Links)

www.sebi.gov.in
www.mca.gov.in
www.icsi.edu
www.nseindia.com
www.bseindia.com
www.nsdl.co.in
www.cdslindia.com

[illegible]

Lesson 16 Securities Market Intermediaries

Key Concepts One Should Know

- Intermediaries
- Net Worth
- Self Regulatory Organization
- Underwriting
- Custodial Services
- Financial Planning
- Investment Advice
- Portfolio

Learning Objectives

To understand:

- Conceptual Understanding on Intermediaries
- The Process of Registration of Intermediaries
- Regulatory framework of the intermediaries operating in the Primary and the Secondary markets
- The role and responsibilities of various intermediaries
- General Obligations of various intermediaries
- The Internal audit of various intermediaries.

Lesson Outline

- Introduction
- SEBI (Intermediaries) Regulations, 2008
- Registration of Intermediaries
- Regulatory Framework for Intermediaries
 - a. Merchant Bankers
 - b. Registrars and Share Transfer Agents
 - c. Bankers to an issue
 - d. Debenture Trustees
 - e. Stock-brokers
 - f. Portfolio managers
 - g. Custodians
 - h. Investment Advisers
 - i. Research Analysts
 - j. Credit Rating Agencies
 - k. Depository Participant
 - l. Foreign Portfolio Investor
- Case Laws
- Internal Audit of Intermediaries by Company Secretary in Practice
- Role of Company Secretary
- LESSON ROUNDUP
- GLOSSARY
- TEST YOURSELF
- LIST OF FURTHER READINGS
- OTHER REFERENCES

Regulatory Framework

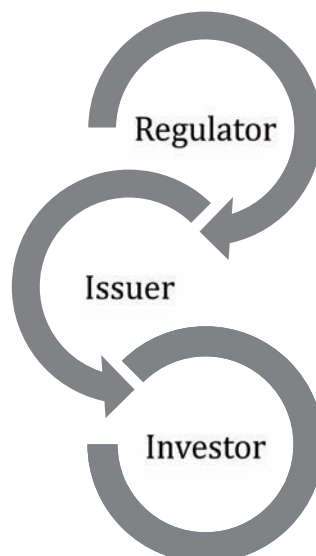
- SEBI (Intermediaries) Regulations, 2008
- SEBI (Merchant Bankers) Regulations, 1992
- SEBI (Registrars to an Issue and Share Transfer Agents) Regulations, 1993
- SEBI (Bankers to an Issue) Regulations, 1994
- SEBI (Debenture Trustees) Regulations, 1993
- SEBI (Stock Brokers) Regulations, 1992
- SEBI (Portfolio Managers) Regulations, 2020
- SEBI (Custodian) Regulations, 1996
- SEBI (Investment Advisers) Regulations, 2013
- SEBI (Research Analysts) Regulations, 2014
- SEBI (Credit Rating Agencies) Regulations, 1999
- SEBI (Depositories and Participants) Regulations, 2018
- SEBI (Foreign Portfolio Investors) Regulations, 2019
- SEBI {KYC (Know Your Client) Registration Agency (KRA)}, Regulations, 2011
- Prevention of Money Laundering Act, 2002 and SEBI master circular on PMLA

INTRODUCTION

Intermediaries are service providers and are an integral part of any financial system. The Market Regulator, i.e., SEBI regulates various intermediaries in the primary and secondary markets through its regulations for these respective intermediaries. SEBI has defined the role of each of the intermediary, the eligibility criteria for granting registration, their functions and responsibilities and the code of conduct to which they are bound. These regulations also empower SEBI to inspect the functioning of these intermediaries and to collect fees from them and to impose penalties on erring entities.

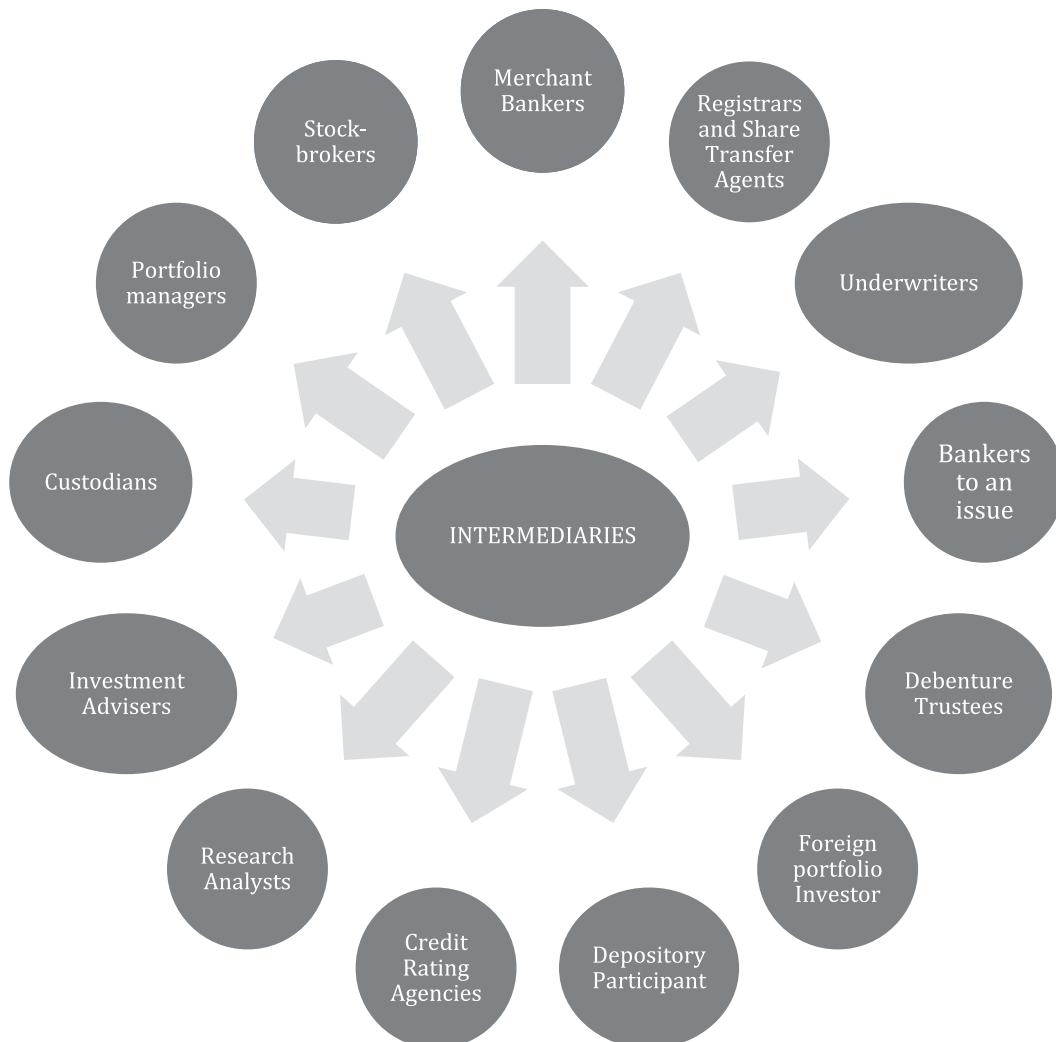
As per Section 11 of SEBI Act, it is the duty of SEBI to register and regulate the working of stock brokers, share transfer agents, bankers to an issue, trustees of trust deeds, registrars to an issue, merchant bankers, underwriters, portfolio managers, investment advisers and such other intermediaries who may be associated with securities market in any manner.

The capital market intermediaries are vital link between investor, issuer and regulator.



The objectives of these intermediaries are-

- To smoothen the process of investment;
- To establish a link between the investors and the users of funds;
- Corporations and Governments do not market their securities directly to the investors. Instead, they hire the services of the market intermediaries to represent them to the investors;
- Investors, particularly small investors, find it difficult to make direct investment. A small investor desiring to invest may be able to diversify across issuers to reduce risk. He may not be equipped to assess and monitor the credit risk of issuers. Market intermediaries help investors to select investments by providing investment consultancy, market analysis and credit rating of investment instruments;
- In order to operate in secondary market, the investors have to transact through share brokers. Registrars and Share Transfer Agents, Custodians and Depositories Participants are capital market intermediaries that provide important infrastructure services for both primary and secondary markets.

The following market intermediaries are involved in the Securities Market:**SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE BOARD OF INDIA (INTERMEDIARIES) REGULATIONS, 2008**

The SEBI introduced the SEBI Intermediaries Regulations in order to regulate the activities of intermediaries in the financial markets such as registrars to an issue, participants, asset management companies, clearing member of a clearing corporation or clearing house, foreign portfolio investors and trading members of a derivative segment or currency derivatives segment of a stock exchange.

In order to act as an intermediary, a person is required to apply to the SEBI for the grant of a certificate to act as an intermediary, as per the SEBI Intermediaries Regulations. The SEBI grants a certificate in the form specified in the relevant regulations on satisfaction of the eligibility of the applicant. A person may carry on the activities of one or more intermediaries only if it obtains a separate certificate to carry on each such activity.

Intermediaries are required to provide the SEBI with a certificate on April 1 of each year certifying, inter alia, compliance with obligations, responsibilities and fulfilment of eligibility criteria on a continuous basis. Further, they are required to redress investor grievances within 45 days of receipt thereof or within the time specified by the SEBI, when called upon by the SEBI.

An intermediary and its directors, officers, employees and key management personnel are required to abide by the code of conduct specified in the SEBI Intermediaries Regulations, under which they are required to, inter alia, ensure investor protection, promptly disburse dividends on behalf their clients, avoid conflict of interest and ensure that good corporate policies and corporate governance policies are in place.

SEBI may appoint inspecting authorities to undertake inspection of the books of accounts, records and documents of an intermediary for any purpose. In case of default, the SEBI may take actions including but not limited to, suspension of certificate of registration for a specified period, cancellation of registration, warning the intermediary, prohibit taking up any new assignment or contract or launch a new scheme for a specified period, and debaring a branch or an office from carrying out activities for a specified period.

According to SEBI (Intermediaries) Regulations, 2008, “intermediary” means a person mentioned in clauses (b) and (ba) of sub-section (2) of section 11 and sub-section (1) and (1A) of section 12 of the Act and includes an asset management company in relation to the SEBI (Mutual Funds) Regulations, 1996, a clearing member of a clearing corporation or clearing house, foreign portfolio investors and a trading member of a derivative segment or currency derivatives segment of a stock exchange **but does not include foreign venture capital investor, mutual fund, collective investment scheme and venture capital fund.**

REGISTRATION OF INTERMEDIARIES

- **Application for Registration:** An application, for grant of a certificate to act as an intermediary, has to be made to the SEBI in Form A of Schedule I with such additional information as required to be provided under the relevant regulations, and the application fee, as specified in the relevant regulations. The applicant seeking registration to act as a stock broker or sub-broker or a trading member or a clearing member or a depository participant has to make the application along with certain additional information through the stock exchange or through the clearing corporation of which the applicant is a member or trading member or through the depository in which the applicant proposes to act as a participant, as the case may be.
- **Process of Application:** The stock exchange, the clearing corporation, the depository or the specified self regulatory organization, as the case may be, has to examine the eligibility of the applicant in terms of these regulations, relevant regulations and the rules, regulations or bye-laws of the concerned stock exchange, clearing corporation, depository or the self regulatory organization and forward the application with the application fees to the SEBI along with its recommendation as early as possible but not later than 30 days of receipt of the complete application with the specified application fees.

Note: An applicant or an intermediary as the case may be may carry on the activities of one or more intermediaries only if it obtains a separate certificate to carry on each such activity.

- **Additional Information:** The SEBI may require the applicant to furnish further information or clarifications, regarding matters relevant to the activity of such an intermediary or which may otherwise be considered necessary by the SEBI, to consider and dispose of the application.
- **Furnishing of additional information:** The applicant has to furnish such information and clarification to the satisfaction of the SEBI, within the time specified in this regard by the SEBI.
- **Verification / Inspection:** While considering the application, the information furnished by the applicant and its eligibility, the SEBI may, if it so desires, verify the information by physical verification of documents, office space, and inspect the availability of office space, infrastructure, and technological support which the applicant is required to have.

- **Consideration of Application**

For considering the eligibility of the applicant and grant of certificate to such applicant, the SEBI shall take into account all matters which it deems relevant to the activities in the securities market, including but not limited to the following –

- ♦ whether the applicant have in the past been refused certificate by the SEBI and if so, the ground for such refusal;
- ♦ whether the applicant, its directors or partners, or trustees, as the case may be or its principal officer is involved in any pending litigation connected with the securities market which has an adverse bearing on the business of the applicant or on development or functioning of the securities markets;
- ♦ whether the applicant satisfies the eligibility criteria;
- ♦ whether the grant of a certificate to the applicant is in the interest of the investors ;
- ♦ whether the grant of a certificate to the applicant is in the interest of the development of the securities market.

- **Rejection of Application:** Any application for grant of certificate:-

- ♦ which is not complete in all respects and does not conform to the requirements in Form A and the requirements specified in the relevant regulation;
- ♦ which does not contain such additional information as required by the SEBI;
- ♦ which is incorrect, false or misleading in nature;
- ♦ where the applicant is not in compliance with the eligibility requirements as set out under these regulations or the relevant regulations;
- ♦ where the applicant is not a fit and proper person;
- ♦ where the principal officer does not have the requisite qualification or experience as required under the relevant regulations;
- ♦ can be rejected by the SEBI for reasons to be recorded by the SEBI in writing;

However, the applicant has to be given an opportunity in writing to make good the deficiencies within the time specified by the SEBI, for the purpose.

Further, where an application is rejected for the reason that it contains false or misleading information, no such opportunity may be given and the applicant cannot make any application for grant of certificate under these regulations or any other regulations for a period of 1 year from the date of such rejection.

- **Granting of Certificate:** The SEBI on being satisfied that the applicant is eligible, shall grant a certificate in the form specified in the relevant regulations and send an intimation to the applicant in this regard.
- **Conditional Registration:** Where a pending proceeding before the Board or any court or tribunal may result in the suspension or cancellation of the certificate, the SEBI may give a conditional registration.
- **Separate Certificate for other activity:** When an intermediary, who has been granted a certificate and who has filed Form A under these regulations, wishes to commence a new activity which requires a separate certificate under the relevant regulations, it has to, while seeking such certificate, not be required to file Form A, and has to furnish to the SEBI only such additional information as is required under the relevant regulations.
- **Conditions of Certificate:** Any certificate granted by the SEBI to an intermediary has to be subject to the conditions that: -
 - ♦ where the intermediary proposes to change its status or constitution, it has to obtain prior approval of the SEBI for continuing to act as an intermediary after such change in status or constitution;
 - ♦ it has to pay the applicable fees in accordance with the relevant regulations;
 - ♦ it has to abide by the provisions of the securities laws and the directions, guidelines and circulars as may be issued thereunder;

- ♦ it has to continuously comply with the requirements of Regulation 4;
- ♦ it has to meet the eligibility criteria and other requirements specified in these regulations and the relevant regulations.

The SEBI may impose other conditions as it may deem fit in the interest of investors or orderly development of the securities market or for regulation of the working of the intermediary and the intermediary has to comply with such conditions.

- **Deemed Approval:** A request for prior approval which is complete in all respects has to be disposed off by the SEBI within a period of 60 days from the date of receipt of such request and where the decision of the SEBI has not been communicated to the intermediary within the said period of 60 days, the prior approval has to be deemed to have been granted.
- **Effect of refusal to grant certificate or expiry of certificate:** Where an intermediary has failed to make an application or where an existing intermediary has been refused grant of certificate under these regulations, the intermediary has to:
 - ♦ forthwith cease to act as such intermediary;
 - ♦ transfer its activities to another intermediary which has been granted a certificate for carrying on such activity and allow its clients or investors to withdraw or transfer their securities or funds held in its custody without any additional cost to such client or investor;
 - ♦ make provisions as regards liability incurred or assumed by the intermediary;
 - ♦ take such other action, within the time period and in the manner, as may be required under the relevant regulations or as may be directed by the SEBI.
- **Period of validity of certificate**

The certificate granted to an intermediary has to be permanent unless surrendered by the intermediary or suspended or cancelled in accordance with these regulations.

GENERAL OBLIGATIONS OF INTERMEDIARIES

- (1) An intermediary shall provide the SEBI with a certificate of its compliance officer on the 1st April of each year certifying:
 - (a) the compliance by the intermediary with all the obligations, responsibilities and the fulfillment of the eligibility criteria on a continuous basis under these regulations and the relevant regulations;
 - (b) that all disclosures made in Form A and under the relevant regulations are true and complete.
- (2) Each intermediary shall prominently display a photocopy of the certificate at all its offices including branch offices.
- (3) The intermediary shall also prominently display the name and contact details of the compliance officer to whom complaint may be made in the event of any investor grievance.
- (4) The intermediary shall maintain such books, accounts and records as specified in the relevant regulations.

Redressal of investor grievances

The intermediary shall make endeavours to redress investor grievances promptly but not later than 45 days of receipt thereof and when called upon by the SEBI to do so it shall redress the grievances of investors within the time specified by the SEBI.

The intermediary shall maintain records regarding investor grievances received by it and redressal of such grievances.

The intermediary shall at the end of each quarter of a Financial Year ending on 31st March upload information about the number of investor grievances received, redressed and those remaining unresolved beyond three months of the receipt thereof by the intermediary on the website specified by the SEBI.

Appointment of compliance officer

An intermediary shall appoint a compliance officer for monitoring the compliance by it of the requirements of the Act, rules, regulations, notifications, guidelines, circulars and orders made or issued by the SEBI or the Central Government, or the rules, regulations and byelaws of the concerned stock exchanges, or the self regulatory organization, where applicable.

However the intermediary may not appoint compliance officer if it is not carrying on the activity of the intermediary.

The compliance officer shall report to the intermediary or its board of directors, in writing, of any material non-compliance by the intermediary.

Investment advice

An intermediary, its directors, officers, employees or key management personnel shall not render, directly or indirectly, any investment advice about any security in the publicly accessible media, whether real-time or non-real-time, unless a disclosure of its interest, direct or indirect, including its long or short position in the said security has been made, while rendering such advice.

If an intermediary's directors, officers, employees or key management personnel are rendering such advice, the intermediary shall ensure that while rendering such advice he discloses his interest, the interest of his dependent family members and that of the employer including employer's long or short position in the said security.

An intermediary shall not make a recommendation to any client or investor who may be expected to rely thereon to acquire, dispose of or retain any securities unless he has reasonable grounds to believe that the recommendation is suitable.

Code of conduct

An intermediary and its directors, officers, employees and key management personnel shall continuously abide by the code of conduct specified in Schedule III.

REGULATORY FRAMEWORK FOR INTERMEDIARIES

SEBI has issued regulations in respect of each intermediary to ensure proper services to be rendered by them to the investors and the capital market.

Sl No.	Intermediary Name	Definition	Role and Responsibilities	SEBI Regulation	Net worth Requirement
1.	Merchant Banker	'Merchant Banker' means any person engaged in the business of issue management either by making arrangements regarding selling buying or subscribing to securities or acting as manager/consultant/advisor or rendering corporate advisory services in relation to such issue management.	It is necessary for an issuer to appoint a merchant banker for : (a) Managing of public issue of securities; (b) Underwriting connected with the aforesaid public issue management business; (c) Managing/Advising on international offerings of debt/equity i.e. GDR, ADR, bonds and other instruments; (d) Private placement of securities; (e) Primary or satellite dealership of government securities; (f) Corporate advisory services related to securities market including takeovers, acquisition and disinvestment;	SEBI (Merchant Bankers) Regulations, 1992	Not less than Rs. 5 crore

			(g) Stock broking; (h) Advisory services for projects; (i) Syndication of rupee term loans; (j) International financial advisory services.			
		GENERAL OBLIGATIONS AND RESPONSIBILITIES	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Every merchant banker shall abide by the Code of Conduct.• No merchant banker, shall carry on any business other than that in the securities market.• Every merchant banker shall keep and maintain the books of account, records and documents.• Every merchant banker shall furnish to the SEBI half-yearly unaudited financial results.• The merchant banker shall preserve the books of account and other records and documents for a minimum period of five years.• Every merchant banker acting as an underwriter shall enter into an agreement with each body corporate on whose behalf it is acting as an underwriter.• Every merchant banker shall appoint a compliance officer who shall be responsible for monitoring the compliance of the Act, rules and regulations, notifications, guidelines, instructions, etc., issued by the SEBI or the Central Government and for redressal of investors’ grievances.			
2.	Registrars and Share Transfer Agents	<p>“Registrar to an Issue’ means the person appointed by a body corporate or any person or group of persons to carry on the following activities on its or his or their behalf :</p> <p>(i) collecting application for investor in respect of an issue;</p> <p>(ii) keeping a proper record of applications and monies received from investors or paid to the seller of the securities; and</p> <p>(iii) assisting body corporate or person or group of persons in –</p> <p>(a) determining the basis of allotment of the securities in consultation with the stock exchange</p>	Pre-issue Activities <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Sending instructions to Banks for reporting of collection figures and collection of applications.• Providing Practical inputs to the Lead Manager and Printers regarding the design of the Bid cum-Application form.• Facilitate and establish information flow system between clients , Banks and Managers to the issue.• Liaisoning with Regulatory Authorities such as SEBI & Stock Exchanges.	SEBI (Registrars to an Issue and Share Transfer Agents) Regulations, 1993	For category I is Rs. 50,00,000 and category II is Rs. 25,00,000.	

		<p>(b) finalising the list of person entitled to allotment of securities</p> <p>(c) processing and dispatching of allotment letters, refund orders or certificates and other related documents in respect of the issue</p> <p>‘Share Transfer Agent’ means:</p> <p>(i) any person who on behalf of any body corporate, maintains the records of holders of securities issued by such body corporate and deals with all matters connected with the transfer and redemption of its securities;</p> <p>(ii) the department or division, by whatever name called, of a body corporate performing the activities as share transfer agents if at any time the total number of holders of its securities issued exceed one lakh.</p>	<p>Activities during the Issue</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Collection and Reporting of daily Collection figures. • Collection of Data and Forms from Banks. • Liaisoning with clients and Intermediaries to the Issue. <p>Post Issue Activities</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Data capturing & validation • Reconciliation • Provide Allotment Alternatives in consultation with Client / Merchant Banker and Stock Exchanges • Facilitating Listing • Uploading of data to the Depositories for crediting of securities electronically • Dispatch of Refund orders / Share Certificates / Credit Advise • Periodic Report submission to Regulatory Authorities • Reconciliation of Refund payments • Attending to post issue Investor queries • Web-based investor enquiry system for allotment / refund details 		
		<p>GENERAL OBLIGATIONS AND RESPONSIBILITIES</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Every registrar to an issue and share transfer agent holding a certificate shall at all times abide by the Code of Conduct. • Registrar to an issue shall not to act as such registrar for any issue of securities in case he or it is an associate of the body corporate issuing the securities. • Every registrar to an issue and share transfer agent being a body corporate shall keep and maintain proper books of accounts and records. • The registrar to an issue or share transfer agent shall preserve the books of accounts and other records and documents maintained for a minimum period of eight years. • Every registrar to an issue and share transfer agent shall appoint a compliance officer who shall be responsible for monitoring the compliance of the Act, rules and regulations, notifications, guidelines, instructions etc. issued by the SEBI or the Central Government and for redressal of investors’ grievances. 		

3.	Bankers to an issue	<p>'Banker to an Issue' means a scheduled bank or such other banking company as may be specified by the SEBI from time to time, carrying on all or any of the following activities:</p> <p>(i) Acceptance of application and application monies;</p> <p>(ii) Acceptance of allotment or call monies;</p> <p>(iii) Refund of application monies;</p> <p>(iv) Payment of dividend or interest warrants.</p>	Bankers to the issue, as the name suggests, carries out all the activities of ensuring that the funds are collected and transferred to the Escrow accounts. While one or more banks may function as Bankers to the Issue as well as collection banks, others may do the limited work of collecting the applications for securities along with the remittance in their numerous branches in different centres. The banks are expected to furnish prompt information and records to the company and to the lead manager for monitoring and progressing the issue work.	SEBI (Bankers to an Issue) Regulations, 1994	--
		GENERAL OBLIGATIONS AND RESPONSIBILITIES	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Every banker to an issue shall maintain books of account, records and the documents. • Every banker to an issue shall furnish the information to the SEBI when required. • Every banker to an issue shall enter into an agreement with the body corporate for whom it is acting as banker to an issue. • Every banker to an issue shall inform the SEBI forthwith if any disciplinary action is taken by the Reserve Bank against the banker to an issue only in relation to issue payment work. • Every banker to an issue shall abide by the code of conduct. • Every banker to an issue shall appoint a compliance officer who shall be responsible for monitoring the compliance of the Act, rules and regulations, notifications, guidelines, instructions, etc., issued by the SEBI or the Central Government and for redressal of investors' grievances. 		
4.	Debenture Trustees	"Debenture Trustee" means a trustee appointed in respect of any issue of debentures of a body corporate.	<p>Duties of the debenture trustees are: -</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • satisfy itself that the prospectus or letter of offer does not contain any matter which is inconsistent with the terms of the issue of debentures or with the trust deed. • satisfy itself that the covenants in the trust deed are not prejudicial to the interest of the debenture holders. 	SEBI (Debenture Trustees) Regulations, 1993	Not less than Rs. 10 crore

			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • call for periodical status/ performance reports from the issuer company within 7 days of the relevant board meeting or within 45 days of the respective quarter whichever is earlier. • communicate promptly to the debenture holders defaults, if any, with regard to payment of interest or redemption of debentures and action taken by the trustee therefor. • ensure that the company does not commit any breach of the terms of issue of debentures or covenants of the trust deed and take such reasonable steps as may be necessary to remedy any such breach. • inform the debenture holders immediately of any breach of the terms of issue of debentures or covenants of the trust deed. • ensure the implementation of the conditions regarding creation of security for the debentures. • ensure that the assets of the company issuing debentures and of the guarantors, if any, are sufficient to discharge the interest and principal amount at all times and that such assets are free from any other encumbrances except those which are specifically agreed to by the debenture holders. • call for reports on the utilization of funds raised by the issue of debentures. • do such acts as are necessary in the event the security becomes enforceable. 		
--	--	--	---	--	--

			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • call for reports on the utilization of funds raised by the issue of debentures. • take steps to convene a meeting of the holders of debentures as and when such meeting is required to be held. • ensure that the debentures have been converted or redeemed in accordance with the terms of the issue of debentures. • perform such acts as are necessary for the protection of the interest of the debenture holders and do all other acts as are necessary in order to resolve the grievances of the debenture holders. • take possession of trust property in accordance with the provisions of the trust deed. • to take appropriate measures for protecting the interest of the debenture holders as soon as any breach of the trust deed or law comes to his notice. • inform the SEBI immediately of any breach of trust deed or provision of any law, which comes to the knowledge of the trustee. • exercise due diligence to ensure compliance by the body corporate, with the provisions of the Companies Act, Securities and Exchange Board of India (Listing Obligations and Disclosure Requirement), Regulations, 2015, the listing agreement of the stock exchange or the trust deed or any other regulations issued by the SEBI pertaining to debt issue. 		
--	--	--	---	--	--

5.	Stock-brokers	"Stock Broker" means a person having trading rights in any recognised stock exchange and includes a trading member.	A stock broker plays a very important role in the secondary market helping both the seller and the buyer of the securities to enter into a transaction. The buyer and seller may be either a broker or a client. When executing an order, the stock broker may on behalf of his client buy or sell securities from his own account i.e. as principal or act as an agent. For each transaction he has to issue necessary contract note indicating whether the transaction has been entered into by him as a principal or as an agent for another. While buying or selling securities as a principal, the stock broker has to obtain the consent of his client and the prices charged should be fair and justify by the conditions of the market. Stock broker may also act as an underwriter.	SEBI (Stock Brokers) Regulations, 1992	As specified in Schedule VI of these Regulations.
		GENERAL OBLIGATIONS AND RESPONSIBILITIES	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Every Stock Broker shall keep and maintain the proper books of account, records and documents. • Every stock broker shall preserve the books of account and other records maintained for a minimum period of five years. • Every stock broker shall appoint a compliance officer who shall be responsible for monitoring the compliance of the Act, rules and regulations, notifications, guidelines, instructions, etc., issued by the SEBI or the Central Government and for redressal of investors' grievances. 		
6.	Portfolio managers	"Portfolio manager" means a body corporate, which pursuant to a contract with a client, advises or directs or undertakes on behalf of the client (whether as a discretionary portfolio manager or otherwise) the management or administration of a portfolio of securities or goods or funds of the client, as the case may be:	A portfolio manager plays a pivotal role in deciding the best investment plan for an individual as per his income, age as well as ability to undertake risks. A portfolio manager is responsible for making an individual aware of the various investment tools available in the market and benefits associated with each plan. Make an individual realize why he actually needs to invest and which plan would be the best for him. A portfolio manager is responsible for designing customized investment solutions for the clients according to their financial needs.	SEBI (Portfolio Managers) Regulations, 2020	Not less than Rs. 5 crores.

		<p>Provided that the Portfolio Manager may deal in goods received in delivery against physical settlement of commodity derivatives.</p> <p>“Discretionary portfolio manager” means a portfolio manager who under a contract relating to portfolio management, exercises or may exercise, any degree of discretion as to the investment of funds or management of the portfolio of securities of the client, as the case may be.</p>			
		<p>GENERAL OBLIGATIONS AND RESPONSIBILITIES</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Every portfolio manager shall abide by the Code of Conduct as specified Schedule III of SEBI (Portfolio Managers) Regulations, 2020. • The portfolio manager shall, before taking up an assignment of management of funds and portfolio on behalf of a client, enter into an agreement in writing with such client that clearly defines the inter se relationship and sets out their mutual rights, liabilities and obligations relating to management of portfolio containing the details as specified in Schedule IV. • The discretionary portfolio manager shall individually and independently manage the funds of each client in accordance with the needs of the client, in a manner which does not partake character of a Mutual Fund, whereas the non-discretionary portfolio manager shall manage the funds in accordance with the directions of the client. • The portfolio manager shall not accept from the client, funds or securities worth less than fifty lakh rupees. However the minimum investment amount per client shall be applicable for new clients and fresh investments by existing clients • The portfolio manager shall act in a fiduciary capacity with regard to the client's funds. • The portfolio manager shall segregate each client's holding in securities in separate accounts. • The portfolio manager shall keep the funds of all clients in a separate account to be maintained by it in a Scheduled Commercial Bank. • The portfolio manager shall transact in securities within the limitation placed by the client himself with regard to dealing in securities under the provisions of the Reserve Bank of India Act, 1934. • The portfolio manager shall not derive any direct or indirect benefit out of the client's funds or securities. • The portfolio manager shall not borrow funds or securities on behalf of the client. 		

			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The portfolio manager shall not lend securities held on behalf of the clients to a third person except as provided under these regulations. • The portfolio manager shall ensure proper and timely handling of complaints from his clients and take appropriate action immediately. • The portfolio manager shall ensure that any person or entity involved in the distribution of its services is carrying out the distribution activities in compliance with these regulations and circulars issued thereunder from time to time. • Every portfolio manager shall keep and maintain the books of accounts, records and documents as prescribed. • Every portfolio manager shall furnish to the SEBI a net worth certificate issued by a chartered accountant as and when required by the SEBI. • The portfolio manager shall preserve the books of account and other records and documents mentioned under this chapter for a minimum period of five years. • Every portfolio manager shall appoint a compliance officer who shall be responsible for monitoring the compliance of the Act, rules and regulations, notifications, guidelines, instructions etc., issued by the Board or the Central Government and for redressal of investors' grievances. 		
7.	Custodians	<p>"Custodian" is a person who carries on or propose to carry on the business of providing custodial services to the client. The custodian keeps the custody of the securities of the client. The custodian also provides incidental services such as maintaining the accounts of securities of the client, collecting the benefits or rights accruing to the client in respect of securities.</p>	<p>The custodian-</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Administrate and protect the assets of the clients. • Open a separate custody account and deposit account in the name of each client. • Record assets. • Conduct registration of securities. 	SEBI (Custodian) Regulations, 1996	Minimum of Rs. 50 crores.
		GENERAL OBLIGATIONS AND RESPONSIBILITIES	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Every custodian shall abide by the Code of Conduct. • Where a custodian is carrying on any activity besides that of acting as custodian then the activities relating to his business as custodian shall be separate and segregated from all other activities. • Every custodian shall have adequate mechanisms for the purposes of reviewing, monitoring, evaluating and inspection the custodian's controls, systems, procedures and safeguards. • No custodian shall assign or delegate its functions as a custodian to any other person unless such person is a custodian. • Every custodian shall open a separate custody account for each client, in the name of the client whose securities are in its custody and the assets of one client shall not be mixed with those of another client. 		

			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Every custodian shall enter into an agreement with each client on whose behalf it is acting as custodian. • Every custodian shall have adequate internal controls to prevent any manipulation of records and documents including audits for securities, goods and rights or entitlements arising from the securities and goods held by it on behalf of its client. • Every custodian shall maintain the records and documents. • Every custodian shall appoint a compliance officer who shall be responsible for monitoring the compliance of the Act, rules and regulations, notifications, guidelines, instructions, etc., issued by the SEBI or the Central Government and for redressal of investors' grievances. • Where any information is called for by the SEBI, it shall be the duty of the custodian to furnish such information within such reasonable period as the SEBI may specify. 		
8.	Investment Advisers	<p>"Investment Adviser" means any person, who for consideration, is engaged in the business of providing investment advice to clients or other persons or group of persons and includes any person who holds out himself as an investment adviser, by whatever name called.</p>	<p>Investment advisers are those, who provide investment advice. "Investment advice" means advice relating to investing in, purchasing, selling or otherwise dealing in securities or investment products, and advice on investment portfolio containing securities or investment products, whether written, oral or through any other means of communication for the benefit of the client and shall include financial planning.</p> <p>However, investment advice given through newspaper, magazines, any electronic or broadcasting or telecommunications medium, which is widely available to the public shall not be considered as investment advice for the purpose of these regulations.</p>	SEBI (Investment Advisers) Regulations, 2013	<p>Investment advisers who are non-individuals shall have a net worth of not less than Rs. 50 lakh</p> <p>Investment advisers who are individuals shall have net tangible assets of value not less than Rs. 5 lakh</p>
		GENERAL OBLIGATIONS AND RESPONSIBILITIES	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • An investment adviser shall act in a fiduciary capacity towards its clients and shall disclose all conflicts of interests as and when they arise. • An investment adviser shall not receive any consideration by way of remuneration or compensation or in any other form from any person other than the client being advised, in respect of the underlying products or securities for which advice is provided. • An investment adviser shall maintain an arms-length relationship between its activities as an investment adviser and other activities. 		

			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • An investment adviser which is also engaged in activities other than investment advisory services shall ensure that its investment advisory services are clearly segregated from all its other activities, in the manner as prescribed hereunder. • An investment adviser shall ensure that in case of any conflict of interest of the investment advisory activities with other activities, such conflict of interest shall be disclosed to the client. • An investment adviser shall not divulge any confidential information about its client, which has come to its knowledge, without taking prior permission of its clients, except where such disclosures are required to be made in compliance with any law for the time being in force. • An investment advisor shall not enter into transactions on its own account which is contrary to its advice given to clients for a period of fifteen days from the day of such advice. • An investment advisor shall follow Know Your Client procedure as specified by the SEBI from time to time. • An investment adviser shall abide by Code of Conduct. • An investment adviser shall not act on its own account, knowingly to sell securities or investment products to or purchase securities or investment product from a client. • In case of change in control of the investment adviser, prior approval from the SEBI shall be taken. • Investment advisers shall furnish to the SEBI information and reports as may be specified by the SEBI from time to time. • It shall be the responsibility of the investment adviser to ensure compliance with the certification and qualification requirements. 		
9.	Research Analysts	<p>“Research analyst” means a person who is primarily responsible for:-</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> i. preparation or publication of the content of the research report; or ii. providing research report; or iii. making ‘buy/sell/hold’ recommendation; or iv. giving price target; or v. offering an opinion concerning public offer, <p>with respect to securities that are listed or to be listed in a stock exchange, whether or not any such person has the job title of ‘research analyst’ and includes any other entities engaged in issuance of research report or research analysis.</p>	Research analyst study Companies and industries, analyse raw data, and make forecasts or recommendations about whether to buy, hold or sell securities. They analyse information to provide recommendations about investments in securities to their clients. Investors often view analysts as experts and important sources of information about the securities they review and often rely on their advice. There are basically three broad types of analysts, viz. sell-side analysts, buy-side analysts and independent analysts.	SEBI (Research Analysts) Regulations, 2014	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Body corporate or limited liability partnership firm – not less than Rs. 25 Lakh. • Individual or partnership firm shall have net tangible assets of value not less than Rs. 1 Lakh.

		GENERAL RESPONSIBILITIES	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Research analyst or research entity shall maintain an arms-length relationship between its research activity and other activities.• Research analyst or research entity shall abide by Code of Conduct.• In case of change in control of the research analyst or research entity, prior approval from the SEBI shall be taken.• Research analyst or research entity shall furnish to the SEBI information and reports as may be specified by the SEBI from time to time.• It shall be the responsibility of the research analyst or research entity to ensure that its employees or partners, as may be applicable, comply with the certification and qualification requirements at all times.• Research analyst or research entity shall maintain the records.• All records shall be maintained either in physical or electronic form and preserved for a minimum period of five years.• Research analyst or research entity shall conduct annual audit in respect of compliance with these regulations from a member of Institute of Chartered Accountants of India or Institute of Company Secretaries of India.• Research analyst or research entity which is a body corporate or limited liability partnership firm shall appoint a compliance officer who shall be responsible for monitoring the compliance of the provisions of the Act, these regulations and circulars issued by the SEBI.		
10.	Credit Rating Agencies	“Credit rating agency” means a body corporate which is engaged in, or proposes to be engaged in, the business of rating of securities that are listed or proposed to be listed on a stock exchange recognized by the SEBI.	Credit rating is extremely important as it not only plays a role in investor protection but also benefits industry as a whole in terms of direct mobilization of savings from individuals. Rating also provide a marketing tool to the company and its investment bankers in placing company’s debt obligations with a investor base that is aware of, and comfortable with, the level of risk. Ratings also encourage discipline amongst corporate borrowers to improve their financial structure and operating risks to obtain a better rating for their debt obligations and thereby lower the cost of borrowing.	SEBI (Credit Rating Agencies) Regulations, 1999	Minimum Rs. 25 crores

		GENERAL OBLIGATIONS	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Every credit rating agency shall abide by the Code of Conduct. • Every credit rating agency shall enter into a written agreement with each client whose securities it proposes to rate. • Every credit rating agency shall, during the lifetime of securities rated by it continuously monitor the rating of such securities. • Every credit rating agency shall disseminate information regarding newly assigned ratings, and changes in earlier rating promptly through press releases and websites, and, in the case of securities issued by listed companies, such information shall also be provided simultaneously to the concerned regional stock exchange and to all the stock exchanges where the said securities are listed. • Every credit rating agency shall disclose Rating Definitions and Rationale. • Where any information is called for by the SEBI from a credit rating agency for the purposes of these regulations, including any report relating to its activities, the credit rating agency shall furnish such information to the SEBI. • Every credit rating agency shall comply with such guidelines, directives, circulars and instructions as may be issued by the SEBI from time to time. • Every credit rating agency shall appoint a compliance officer who shall be responsible for monitoring the compliance of the Act, rules and regulations, notifications, guidelines, instructions etc. issued by the SEBI or the Central Government. • Every credit rating agency shall keep and maintain books of accounts, records and documents for a minimum period of five years. 		
11.	Depository Participant (DP)	A DP is an agent of the depository through which it interfaces with the investor and provides depository services.	<p>Depository Participant (DP) is described as an Agent (law) of the depository. They are the intermediaries between the depository and the investors.</p> <p>They execute pledge requests and off market transfers and on market transfer request of the investors who hold shares in demat form.</p> <p>Further transmission requests of investors shall also be handled. Demat/Remat requests also handled in consultation with RTI/ STAs.</p>	SEBI (Deposit-ories and Participants) Regulations, 2018	Depository participant- As specified in Regulation 35 to these Regulations.

12.	Foreign Portfolio Investor	<p>“Foreign Portfolio Investor” means a person who has been registered under Chapter II of Securities and Exchange Board of India (Foreign Portfolio Investors) Regulations, 2019 and shall be deemed to be an intermediary in terms of the provisions of the SEBI Act, 1992.</p>	<p>(a) A foreign portfolio investor shall, at all times, abide by the code of conduct;</p> <p>(b) comply with the provisions of these regulations, as far as they may apply, circulars issued thereunder and any other terms and conditions specified by the SEBI from time to time;</p> <p>(c) forthwith inform the SEBI and designated depository participant in writing, if any information or particulars previously submitted to the SEBI or designated depository participant are found to be false or misleading, in any material respect;</p> <p>(d) forthwith inform the SEBI and designated depository participant in writing, if there is any material change in the information including any direct or indirect change in its structure or ownership or control, previously furnished by him to the SEBI or designated depository participant;</p> <p>(e) as and when required by the SEBI or any other Government agency in India, submit any information, record or documents in relation to its activities as a foreign portfolio investor;</p> <p>(f) forthwith inform the SEBI and the designated depository participant, in case of any penalty, pending litigation or proceedings, findings of inspections or investigations for</p>	SEBI (Foreign Portfolio Investors) Regulation, 2019	–
-----	----------------------------	--	--	--	---

			<p>which action may have been taken or is in the process of being taken by an overseas regulator against it;</p> <p>(g) obtain a Permanent Account Number from the Income Tax Department;</p> <p>(h) in relation to its activities as foreign portfolio investor, at all times, subject itself to the extant Indian laws, rules, regulations, guidelines and circulars issued from time to time;</p> <p>(i) be a fit and proper person based on the criteria specified in Schedule II of the Securities and Exchange Board of India (Intermediaries) Regulations, 2008;</p> <p>(j) undertake necessary KYC on its shareholders/ investors in accordance with the rules applicable to it in the jurisdiction where it is organised; provide any additional information or documents including beneficiary ownership details of their clients as may be required by the designated depository participant or the SEBI or any other enforcement agency to ensure compliance with the Prevention of Money Laundering Act, 2002 and the rules and regulations specified thereunder; the Financial Action Task Force standards and circulars issued from time to time by the SEBI; and</p> <p>(k) ensure that securities held by foreign portfolio investors are free from all encumbrances.</p>		
--	--	--	--	--	--

CASE LAWS

1	01.07.2020	<i>Mr. Vishal Vijay Shah (Noticee) in the Maharashtra Polybutenes Limited vs. SEBI</i>	Whole Time Member, Securities and Exchange Board of India
---	------------	--	---

Facts of the Case:

In the facts of the instant proceedings, it is observed that the Vishal Vijay Shah (“Noticee”), a registered Stock Broker had received funds in the client and settlement bank accounts from third parties in cash and had made payments to third parties on behalf of clients. It is further observed that the Noticee had also made withdrawal of cash from the client bank accounts. Under the SEBI Circulars, a responsibility has been cast on the Stock Broker to ensure that payments are received directly from the respective clients and not from third parties. Accordingly, the Noticee should have taken expedient steps to ensure that funds received from third parties are exceptionally dealt with and suitable explanations should have been asked from the client when such blatant third party monetary amounts were received. However, there is nothing on record to suggest that such steps were indeed taken.

Further, the Noticee in its submissions has itself admitted to having carried out such irregular practices. The aforementioned conduct of the Noticee clearly demonstrates that it failed to maintain fairness in the conduct of its business, exercise due skill and care and comply with the statutory requirements. Thus, in addition to the violation of the SEBI Circulars the Noticee has also violated the provisions of Clauses A(1), (2) & (5) of the Code of Conduct as specified under Schedule II read with Regulation 9(f) of the Stock Brokers Regulations.

The BSE had earlier conducted inspection of the Noticee and upon a consideration of the BSE Inspection Reports in light of the Inspection Report, it is observed that the violations committed by the Noticee in the instant proceedings are repetitive in nature. Further, it is a well settled position of law that SEBI may initiate multiple proceedings for the same set of violations.

Order:

The Noticee had violated the aforementioned provisions of the Stock Brokers Regulations and aforementioned SEBI Circulars. Having regard to the facts and circumstances of the instant proceedings, SEBI accepted the recommendation of the Designated Authority that the Certificate of Registration of the Noticee be suspended for a period of one year.

2	05.06.2020	<i>Narendra Singh Tanwar, Proprietor of M/s Capital True Financial Services (Noticee) vs. SEBI</i>	Whole Time Member, Securities Exchange Board of India
---	------------	--	---

Facts of the Case:

SEBI had received a complaint against Mr. Narendra Singh Tanwar, Proprietor of M/s Capital True Financial Services (hereinafter referred to as “Noticee”), a registered Investment

Adviser (hereinafter referred to as “IA”) inter alia alleging that a promise was made on behalf of the Noticee to the complainant assuring him a huge return of Rs. 28.80 lakh on a meagre investment of Rs. 20,000/- over a short period of 4 months and 10 days. Pursuant to such an assurance, an amount of Rs. 1,30,000/- was transferred by the complainant to the Noticee towards first instalment of the service fee, out of total service fee of Rs. 4,47,200/- demanded by the Noticee in instalments. However, after suffering loss on the very first day of availing the services of the Noticee, the complainant asked the Noticee to return the amount paid to him. As the Noticee refused to refund the money so taken by it as service fee and also stopped attending the phone calls of the complainant, a complaint was lodged with SEBI. The said complaint was forwarded to the Noticee for resolution and to submit an Action Taken Report (ATR) in the SEBI Complaints Redress System (SCORES).

Order:

In view of the foregoing findings and in the interest of investors and for the protection of their rights, SEBI issue following directions:

- i. The Certificate of Registration as Investment Adviser bearing Registration number INA000009038 issued in favour of the Noticee was cancelled.
- ii. The Noticee shall forthwith cease and desist from acting as an Investment Adviser.
- iii. The Noticee shall not use the term 'Investment Adviser' directly or indirectly in any manner whatsoever on the letter-head, on the website, signage board, or otherwise.
- iv. The Noticee was debarred from accessing the securities market and is further prohibited from buying, selling or otherwise dealing in securities, directly or indirectly, or being associated with securities market in any manner, for a period of 2 years and during the period of restraint, the existing holding of securities including the holding of units of mutual funds of the Noticees shall remain frozen.

3	29.05.2020	<i>Arihant Capital Markets Ltd. (Noticee) vs. SEBI</i>	Adjudicating Officer, Securities Exchange Board of India
---	------------	--	--

Facts of the case:

SEBI conducted investigation into trading activities of certain entities in the scrip of Moryo Industries Ltd. for the period of January 15, 2013 to August 31, 2014. Based on the findings of the investigation, SEBI initiated adjudication proceedings against Arihant Capital Markets Ltd. (hereinafter be referred to as, the "Noticee") under Section 15HB of the Securities and Exchange Board of India Act, 1992, for the alleged violation of Clause A(2) of the Code of Conduct for Stock Brokers as specified under Schedule II read with Regulation 7 (as existed at the relevant time) of the Securities and Exchange Board of India (Stock Broker and Sub Brokers) Regulations, 1992.

Order:

In view of the above, after considering all the facts and circumstances of the case and exercising the powers conferred upon SEBI under Section 15-I (2) of the SEBI Act, 1992 read with Rule 5 of the Adjudication Rules, SEBI imposed monetary penalty of Rs.5,00,000/- (Rupees Five Lakhs only) on the Noticee.

4.	31.03.2020	<i>Jaypee Capital Services Ltd (Noticee) vs. SEBI</i>	Whole Time Member, Securities and Exchange Board of India
----	------------	---	---

Facts of the case

Securities and Exchange Board of India (hereinafter referred to as 'SEBI') granted a Certificate of Registration as a Depository Participant to Jaypee Capital Services Limited (JCSL/Noticee) in accordance with provisions of SEBI (Depositories and Participants) Regulations, 1996 (DP Regulations) initially for a period of five years which was valid from August 11, 2006 to August 10, 2011. The certificate of registration was, thereafter, renewed in 2011 for a further period of five years and the renewed certificate was valid till August 10, 2016.

SEBI received a letter dated April 05, 2016 from Central Depository Services (India) Limited (hereinafter referred to as 'CDSL') informing that it has terminated the agreement with the Noticee w.e.f April 04, 2016 due to non-compliance on the part of JCSL with the bye-laws of CDSL. CDSL vide the said letter also requested SEBI to cancel the certificate of registration granted to the Noticee at act as a Depository Participant with immediate effect. Thereafter, National Securities Depositories Limited (hereinafter referred to as "NSDL") vide its letter dated April 22, 2016 informed SEBI that it has also terminated the agreement with JCSL w.e.f May 23, 2016 due to the non-compliance on part of JCSL with the various bye-laws of NSDL.

Based on the information provided by the Depositories viz. CDSL and NSDL, as above, it was alleged that the Noticee was no longer eligible to be admitted as a participant of depository and had failed to inform SEBI about the termination of its agreements with CDSL and NSDL.

Order

The failure on the part of the Noticee to inform SEBI of the termination of the agreement by the depositories would therefore have to be considered as a violation of Clause 14 of the Code of Conduct for the DPs as given under third schedule read with Regulation 20AA of the DP Regulations.

Whole Time Member, in exercise of powers conferred under Section 19 of the Securities and Exchange Board of India Act, 1992 read with Regulation 28(2) of the SEBI (Intermediaries) Regulations, 2008, hereby cancel the certificate of registration granted to the Noticee / Jaypee Capital Services Limited (SEBI Registration No. IN-DP-NSDL-291-2008/IN-DP-CDSL-368- 2006) with immediate effect.

“self regulatory organization” means an organization of a class of intermediaries duly recognised by or registered with the SEBI and includes a stock exchange.

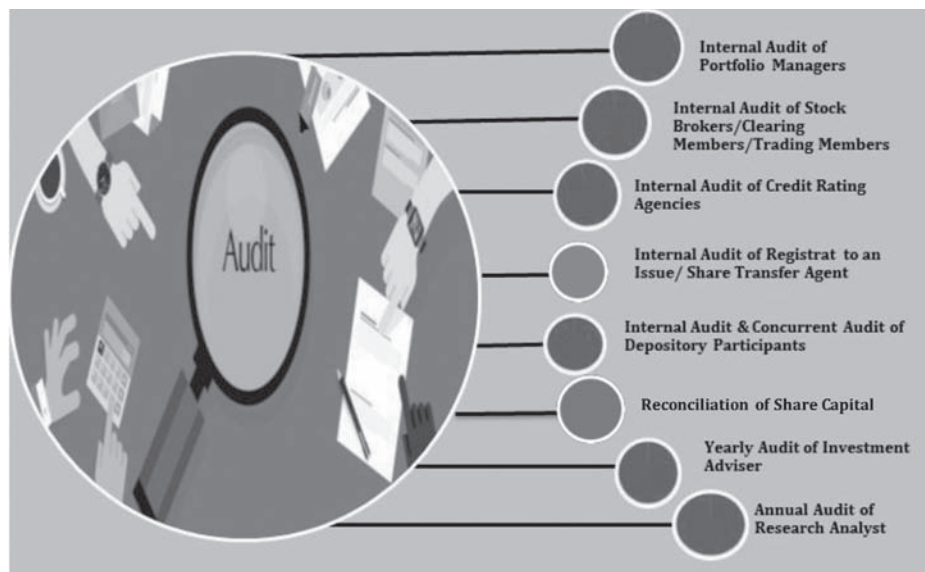
INTERNAL AUDIT OF INTERMEDIARIES BY COMPANY SECRETARY IN PRACTICE

Efficient internal control systems and processes are pre-requisite for good governance. The governance being a dynamic concept requires constant evaluation and monitoring of the systems and processes. In the context of Capital Markets, capital markets intermediaries are an important constituent of overall governance framework. Being an important link between regulators, investors and issuers, they are expected to ensure that their internal controls are so efficient that ensure effective investor service at all times and provide regulators comfort as to the compliance of regulatory prescription. In this direction SEBI has authorised Practising Company Secretaries to undertake internal audit of various capital market intermediaries and issue quarterly certificate with respect to reconciliation of share capital audit.

Every market intermediary shall appoint a company secretary as a compliance officer who shall be responsible for monitoring the compliance of the Act, rules and regulations, notifications, guidelines, instructions etc. issued by SEBI or the Central Government and for redressal of investors' grievances. The compliance officer shall immediately and independently report to SEBI for any non-compliance observed by him.

A portfolio manager with professional experience and expertise in the field, studies the market and adjusts the investment mix for his client on a continuing basis to ensure safety of investment and reasonable returns therefrom.

Every Portfolio manager is required to appoint a Practising Company Secretary or a Practising Chartered Accountant for conducting the internal audit.



ROLE OF COMPANY SECRETARY

Various Capital Market Intermediaries appoint a company secretary as a compliance officer who shall be responsible for monitoring the compliance of the Act, rules and regulations, notifications, guidelines, instructions etc. issued by SEBI or the Central Government and for redressal of investors' grievances. The compliance officer shall immediately and independently report to SEBI for any non-compliance observed by him.

LESSON ROUND-UP

- The role of intermediaries makes the market vibrant, and to function smoothly and continuously. Intermediaries possess professional expertise and play a promotional role in organising a perfect match between the supply and demand for capital in the market.
- As per Section 11 of SEBI Act, it is the duty of SEBI to register and regulate the working of stock brokers, sub-brokers, share transfer agents, bankers to an issue, trustees of trust deeds, registrars to an issue, merchant bankers, underwriters, portfolio managers, investment advisors and such other intermediaries who may be associated with securities market in any manner.
- Merchant Bankers are the key intermediaries between the company and issue of capital. The activities of the Merchant Bankers in the Indian capital market are regulated by SEBI (Merchant Bankers) Regulation, 1992.
- Underwriting is compulsory for a public issue. It is necessary for a public company which invites public subscription for its securities to ensure that its issue is fully subscribed.
- Bankers to the issue, as the name suggests, carries out all the activities of ensuring that the funds are collected and transferred to the Escrow accounts.
- A stock broker plays a very important role in the secondary market helping both the seller and the buyer of the securities to enter into a transaction.
- A portfolio manager with professional experience and expertise in the field, studies the market and adjusts the investment mix for his client on a continuing basis to ensure safety of investment and reasonable returns therefrom.
- Every Portfolio manager is required to appoint a Practising Company Secretary or a Practising Chartered Accountant for conducting the internal audit.
- Custodian means any person who carries on or proposes to carry on the business of providing custodial services.
- Investment adviser means any person, who for consideration is engaged in the business of providing investment advice to clients or other group of persons and includes any person who holds out himself as an investment adviser, by whatever name called.

GLOSSARY

Financial Planning	It includes analysis of client's current financial situation, identification of their financial goals, and developing and recommending financial strategies to realize such goals.
KYC	Know your Client (KYC) means the procedure prescribed by SEBI for identifying and verifying the Proof of Address, Proof of Identity and compliance with rules, regulations, guidelines and circulars issued by SEBI or any other authority for Prevention of Money Laundering from time to time.
Netting	A system whereby outstanding financial contracts can be settled at a net figure, i.e. receivables are offset against payables to reduce the credit exposure to a counterparty and to minimize settlement risk.
Portfolio Investment Profit	A collection of securities owned by an individual or an institution (such as a mutual fund) that may include stocks, bonds and money market securities.
Adviser	A financial planner or financial intermediary who offers advice on personal financial matters. Advisers may be paid an upfront or an ongoing commission for the investments that they recommend.

TEST YOURSELF

(These are meant for recapitulation only. Answer to these questions are not to be submitted for evaluation.)

1. Discuss the types of market intermediaries in the Securities market.
2. Explain the process of granting Certificate of Registration to Intermediaries.
3. What is Deemed approval in case of process of granting Certificate of Registration to Intermediaries
4. The Registrar to an Issue and Share Transfer Agents constitute an important category of intermediaries in the securities market. List out the 'pre-issue' and 'post-issue' work undertaken by them.
5. What is meant by Research Analysts? Elucidate the capital adequacy norms laid down under SEBI (Research Analysts) Regulations, 2014 for registration as a Research Analysts.
6. Briefly discuss about the internal audit of intermediaries required to be conducted by a Company Secretary in Practice.
7. Write short notes on:
 1. Merchant Banker
 2. Debenture Trustee
 3. Custodian
 4. Investment Advisers
 5. Foreign Portfolio Investors

LIST OF FURTHER READINGS

- SEBI Circulars
- SEBI Master Circulars
- Depositories Bye-Laws
- SEBI Annual Reports
- SEBI Monthly Bulletin
- SEBI FAQs
- SEBI Orders

OTHER REFERENCES (Including Websites/Video Links)

- <https://www.sebi.gov.in/index.html>
- <https://www.nseindia.com/>
- <https://www.bseindia.com/>
- <http://sat.gov.in/>
- <https://nsdl.co.in/>
- <https://www.cdslindia.com/>

EXECUTIVE PROGRAMME

SECURITIES LAWS AND CAPITAL MARKETS

EP-SL&CM

WARNING

It is brought to the notice of all students that use of any malpractice in Examination is misconduct as provided in the explanation to Regulation 27 and accordingly the registration of such students is liable to be cancelled or terminated. The text of regulation 27 is reproduced below for information:

“27. Suspension and cancellation of examination results or registration.

In the event of any misconduct by a registered student or a candidate enrolled for any examination conducted by the Institute, the Council or any Committee formed by the Council in this regard, may suo motu or on receipt of a complaint, if it is satisfied that, the misconduct is proved after such investigation as it may deem necessary and after giving such student or candidate an opportunity of being heard, suspend or debar him from appearing in any one or more examinations, cancel his examination result, or registration as student, or debar him from re-registration as a student, or take such action as may be deemed fit.

EXECUTIVE PROGRAMME

SECURITIES LAWS AND CAPITAL MARKETS

TEST PAPER

(This Test Paper is for recapitulate and practice for the students. Students need not to submit responses/ answers to this test paper to the Institute)

Time allowed: 3 hours

Maximum Mark: 100

PART I – SECURITIES LAWS (70 MARK S)

Question No. 1

- (i) Sona Ltd. applied for listing of instruments in a recognized stock exchange. However, permission was refused by the stock exchange. Can the company appeal to SAT against such refusal? Explain.
(5 marks)
- (ii) SEBI has imposed a penalty of Rs. 20 crore on Delta Company Ltd. However, due to problem of liquidity, the company is unable to pay the amount of penalty. Explain, how the amount can be recovered by the SEBI under the provisions of SEBI Act, 1992.
(5 marks)
- (iii) “The holding of securities in dematerialise form is not mandatory”. Explain the relevant provisions with reference to the Depositories Act.
(5 marks)

Attempt all parts of either Question No. 2 or 2A

Question No. 2

- (i) An IPO is made by ABC Ltd., which is a listed company on the stock exchange. The Managing Director of the company directs the Company Secretary to prepare details of half yearly compliance requirements as per the SEBI(Listing Obligations and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2015. Explain the same.
(5 marks)
- (ii) An acquirer, holding 25% or more but less than maximum permissible non-public shareholding of the Target Company can acquire such additional shares as would entitle him to exercise more than 5% of the voting rights in any financial year. Explain the statement indicating the creeping acquisition limit for making an open offer by an acquirer.
(5 marks)
- (iii) Surya Company Ltd. entered into listing agreement on 21st May, 2021 as per SEBI(Listing Obligations and Disclosure Requirements) Regulations, 2015 with Bombay Stock Exchange (BSE). The Company is planning to conduct a Board Meeting of its Directors on 28th June, 2021 for consideration of its Annual Financial Results. Whether the company needs to give prior intimation to the BSE ? Explain the matters for which prior intimation of the Board Meeting shall be given to the BSE under SEBI Regulations.
(7 marks)
- (iv) What do you mean by Whistle Blower Policy? Explain.
(3 marks)

Question No. 2A

- (i) The Managing Director of Rakesh Ltd., a listed company wishes to implement the procedure for voluntary delisting from a few stock exchanges subject to listing of at least one stock exchange having nationwide terminals. As a Company Secretary prepare a note on your Managing Director in the light of SEBI (Delisting of Equity Shares) Regulations, 2021.

(5 marks)

- (ii) The financial data of XYZ Ltd. as on 31st March, 2019 are as under :

- (i) Authorised Share Capital :Rs. 700 crore
- (ii) Paid-up Capital :Rs. 300 crore
- (iii) Free Reserves :Rs. 800 crore

The company has pending convertible debenture of Rs. 150 crore, due for conversion in financial year 2019-20. The company proposes to issue bonus shares in the ratio of 1 : 1 after conversion of debenture. You being a company secretary, advise on the procedure to be followed by referring SEBI regulations.

(7 marks)

- (iii) An Ombudsman has issued an award in a complaint proceeding to your Company. Aggrieved by the award of Ombudsman, directors of your company have decided to file petition before the SEBI. As a company secretary, advise the Board of directors of your company regarding provisions and procedures to be adopted for filing such petition under the SEBI (Ombudsman) Regulations, 2003.

(8 marks)

Question No. 3

- (i) The price of equity share of a listed company viz. ABC Ltd. increased from Rs. 10 to high of Rs. 50 i.e. a rise of 500% during the period 1st April, 2019 to 30th Sept., 2019. ABC Ltd. had entered into a Share Purchase Agreement (SPA) with the proposed acquirer(s) to acquire 40% of the subscribed equity share capital as of 31st Aug., 2019 which would result in change of management. This initial discussion on the deal was made on 1st April, 2019 but SPA was signed on 25th April, 2019. During 1st April, 2019 to 30th Sept., 2019, the promoter and his wife dealt in the script of ABC Ltd. Referring to the provisions of SEBI (Prohibition of Insider Trading) Regulations, 2015, answer the following :

- (i) Define Unpublished Price Sensitive Information.
- (ii) Whether there was any Unpublished Price Sensitive Information (UPSI) ?
- (iii) What will be the date of UPSI ?
- (iv) What are the factors to be taken into account by the adjudicating officer while imposing penalty for the act?

(8 marks)

- (ii) SEBI Complaints Redress System (SCORES) has been established to resolve the grievances of the Investors. What is the procedure for redressal of investor grievances using SCORES platform ? What are the matters that cannot be considered as complaints under SCORES ?

(7 marks)

- (iii) Richards Estates Ltd. ("Target Company") is a listed company. The promoter group shareholding in the target company is 47%. It proposes to transfer of 2% shares held by one promoter group to another promoter group. The target company sought your advise as a practicing Company Secretary on the applicability of exemption provided under SEBI (Substantial Acquisition of Shares and Takeover) Regulations for making compulsory open offer.

(5 marks)

Question No. 4

- (i) Mr. Hira is appointed as the nominee director on the Board of PQ Ltd. by Indra Financial Services Ltd.? PQ Ltd. has issued ESOS to Mr. Hira as its employee. Whether Mr. Hira is eligible to receive the option granted by PQ Ltd.? If so, describe the approval and eligibility conditions required to be comply for ESOS under SEBI (Share Based Employee Benefits) Regulations, 2014?

(10 marks)

- (ii) Sweat equity shares may be issued to employee and directors of the company. In light of this statement explain the provisions with respect to issue of sweat equity shares under SEBI (Issue of Sweat Equity) Regulations, 2002.

(5 marks)***Attempt all parts of either Question no. 5 or Question no 5A*****Question No. 5**

- (i) What do you mean by 'Research Analysts' ? Elucidate the net worth requirements, and role and responsibilities of Research Analyst as per SEBI (Research Analyst) Regulations, 2014.

(5 marks)

- (ii) "An Alternative Investment Fund which has been granted registration under a particular category cannot change its category subsequent to registration, except with the approval of the SEBI". Enumerate the conditions for approval of SEBI.

(5 marks)

- (iii) What do you know about Market Surveillance ? How does market surveillance try to ensure market integrity in the securities market ? Explain.

(5 marks)**OR****Question No. 5A**

- (i) The stock market of a developing countries is normally attractive for the foreign investors. A foreign endowments fund is planning to invest in equity shares of Indian companies. State the category under which this Foreign Portfolio Investor (FPI) be covered. Will your answer be different if it is a central bank of a foreign country ?

(5 marks)

- (ii) What is Unified Payments Interface (UPI)? How is public issue application using UPI different from public issue application using ASBA submitted with intermediaries? Explain.

(5 marks)

- (iii) The Companies Act, 2013 has authorised equity share capital with differential rights as to dividend, voting or otherwise read with rules under Companies (Share Capital and Debentures) Rules, 2014. Briefly explain the conditions for issue of shares with differential voting rights under the Act.

(5 marks)**Question No. 6**

- (i) What do you understand by Market surveillance? Briefly explain the different types of Market surveillance.

(7 marks)

(ii) Write short notes on the following:

- a) Basis of SENSEX
- b) Indian Depository Receipts

(4 marks each)

BIBLIOGRAPHY

<https://www.sebi.gov.in/>

<https://www.rbi.org.in/>

<http://www.mca.gov.in/>

<https://www.nseindia.com/>

<https://www.bseindia.com/>

<https://www.amfiindia.com/>

<https://www.nsdl.co.in/>

<https://www.cdslindia.com/index.html>

<http://www.financialexpress.com/economy/rupee-dives-market-cautious-how-a-hike-in-us-fed-rates-tomorrowcan-impact-india/1105381/>

<https://www.gktoday.in/academy/article/measurement-of-inflation-in-india/>

<https://www.mbaskool.com/business-articles/finance/175-rbi-credit-policy-significance-and-limitations.html>

<https://www.thebalance.com/what-is-an-inflation-index-357609>

<https://www.federalreserve.gov/>

http://miraeassetmf.co.in/uploads/downloads/Impact_of_Inflation.pdf

<https://indiacorplaw.in/2015/07/sebis-action-on-illegal-collective.html>

<http://www.delisting.in>